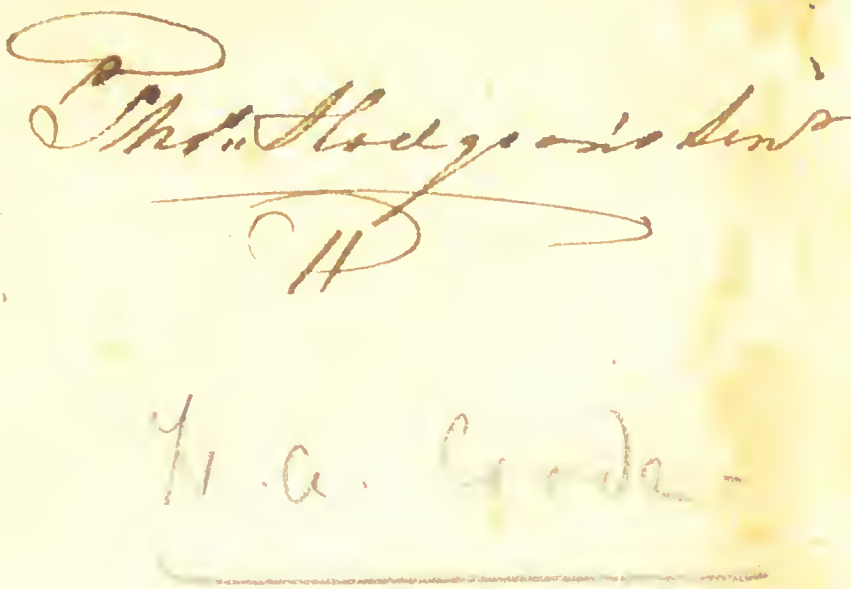
58,872 supp B

CULPEPER, N.

20

Peter



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2016 with funding from
Wellcome Library

https://archive.org/details/b28742084

THE

ENGLISH PHYSICIAN

ENLARGED;

WITH THREE HUNDRED AND SIXTY-NINE

MEDICINES,

MADE OF

ENGLISH HERBS.

BEING

AN ASTROLOGO-PHYSICAL DISCOURSE OF THE VULGAR HERBS OF THIS NATION,

CONTAINING

A complete Method of Physic, whereby a Man may preserve his Body in Health, or cure himself, being sick, with such Things only as grow in England, they being most fit for English Bodies.

SHEWING,

I. The Way of making Plaisters, Ointments, Oils, Poultices, Syrups, Decoctions, Juleps, or Waters of all Sorts, or Physical Herbs, that you may have them ready for your Use at all times of the Year.
II. What Planet governeth each Herb or Tree (used in Physic) that groweth in England.
III. The Time of gathering all Herbs, both Vulgarly and Astrologically.
IV. The Way of drying and keeping the Herbs all the Year.
V. The Way of keeping their Juice ready for Use at all Times.
VI. The Way of making and keeping all kinds of Useful Compounds made of Herbs.
VII. The Way of mixing Medicines according to the Cause and Mixture of the Disease and Part of the Body afflicted.

BY NICH. CULPEPPER, GENT.
Student in Physic and Astrology.

Manchester:
PRINTED BY S. RUSSELL, DEANSGATE.
1806.

WELLCOME
LIBRARY
INSTITUTE

32784

AN

ALPHABETICAL TABLE

Of all the HERBS *and* PLANTS *in this book; as also what* PLANET *governeth each of them.*

A

Amara dulcis. *Mercury.* P. 1
All Heal. *Mars.* 2
Alkanet. *Venus.* 3
Adder's Tongue. *Moon* in *Cancer.* 4
Agrimony. *Jupiter,* and the sign *Cancer.* 5
Water Agrimony. *Jupiter,* and the sign *Cancer.* 6
Alehoof. *Venus.* 7
Alexander, or Alisander. *Jupiter.* 8
Black Alder Tree. *Venus.* 9
Common Alder Tree. *Venus.* 10
Angelica. *Sun* in *Leo.* 11
Amaranthus. *Saturn.* 12
Anemone. *Mars.* 13
Garden Arrach. *Moon.* 14
Arrach wild and stinking. *Venus,* and the sign *Scorpio.* *ib.*
Archangel, red, white, yellow. *Venus.* 15
Arsmart, and dead Arsmart. *Saturn,* and the other sorts under *Mars.* 16
Asarabacca. *Mars.* 18
Asparagus, and prickly Sparagus. *Jupiter.* 19
Artichokes. *Venus.* 126
Ash Tree. *Sun.* 20
Avens. *Jupiter.* 21
Arum. See Cuckow pint.
Alecost. See Costmary.
Aparine. See Clever.
Acanthus. See Brank Ursine.
Ammi, and Ammios. See Bishop's Weed.

B

Balm. *Jupiter.* 22
Barbary. *Mars.* 23
Barley. *Saturn.* *ib.*
Garden Basil, or Sweet Basil. *Mars,* and under the sign *Scorpio.* 24
The Bay Tree. *Sun,* under the sign *Leo.* 25
Beans. *Venus.* 26
French Beans. *Venus.* 27
Ladies Bedstraw. *Venus.* *ib.*
Beets; the red under *Saturn,* and the white under *Jup.* 28
Water Betony, called also Brown Wort, and Bishop's Leaves. *Jupiter.* 29
Wood Betony. *Jupiter,* and the sign *Aries.* 30
Beech Tree. *Saturn.* 32
Bilberries. *Jupiter.* *ib.*
Bifoil. *Saturn.* 33
Birch Tree. *Venus.* 34
Birds Foot. *Saturn.* *ib.*
Bishop's Weed, or Bulwort. *Venus.* 35
Bistort. *Saturn.* 36
One Blade. *Sun.* 37
Bramble, or Black-berry-bush. *Venus* in *Aries.* 38
Blites. *Venus.* *ib.*
Borage and Bugloss. *Jupiter.* 39
Blue-bottle and Blue-blow. *Saturn.* 40
Brank ursine and Bears breech. *Moon.* 41
Briony. *Mars.* 42
Brookline. *Mars.* 44

Butcher's-broom and Bruscus. *Mars.* 44
Broom and Broom rape. *Mars.* 45
Buck's-horn Plantain. *Sat.* 46
Buck's-horn. *Saturn.* 47
Bugles, or Brown Bugles. *Ven.* 48
Burnet. *Sun.* 49
Butter-bur. *Sun.* 50
Burdock. *Venus.* 51
Bitter-sweet. See Amara dulcis.
Spanish Bugloss. See Alkanet.
Bruisewort. See Sopewort.
Bare-foot. See black Helebore.
Baldmoney. See Gentian.
Brimstone-wort. See Fennel,
Berba-avon. See Cuckow pint.
Balsam herb. See Costmary.
Bull's-foot. See Colt's-foot.
Blessed Thistle. See Carduus Benedictus.
Bipennula. See Burnet.
Bastard Agrimony. See Water Agrimony.

C

Cabbages and Coleworts. *Moon.* 52
The Sea Colewort. *Moon.* 53
Calamint or Mountain Mint. *Mercury.* 54
Camomile. *Sun.* 55
Water Caltrops, or Caltrops. *Moon.* 56
Campions Wild. *Sun.* *ib.*
Carduus Benedictus. *Mars.* 57
Carrots. *Mercury.* 58
Carraway. *Mercury.* 59
Celandine *Sun.* 60
The lesser Celandine. *Mars.* 61
The ordinary small Centaury. *Sun.* 62
The Cherry Tree. *Venus.* 64
Winter Cherry. *Venus.* *ib.*
Chervil Cerefolium. *Jupiter.* 65
Sweet Chervil, and Sweet Cicely. *Jupiter.* 66
Chesnut Tree. *Jupiter.* 67
Earth Chesnuts and Ciper Nuts. *Venus.* *ib.*
Chickweed. *Moon.* *ib.*
Chick Pease, or Cicers. *Ven.* 68
Cinquefoil. *Jupiter.* 69
Cives, Chives, and Chivet. *Mars.* 70
Clary, or Clear Eyes. *Moon.* 71
Wild Clary, or Christ's Eye. *Moon.* 72
Cleavers, and Clavers. *Moon.* *ib.*
Clown's Woundwort. *Sat.* 73
Cock's Head. *Venus.* 74
Columbines. *Venus.* 75
Coltsfoot, or Coughwort. *Venus.* *ib.*
Comfrey. *Saturn.* 76
Coralwort. *Moon.* 77
Costmary. *Jupiter.* 78
Cudweed, or Cotton Weed. *Venus.* 79
Cowslips. *Venus.* 80
Crabs Claws. *Venus.* *ib.*
Black Cresses. *Mars.* 81
Sciatica Cresses. *Saturn.* *ib.*
Water Cresses. *Moon.* 82
Crosswort. *Saturn.* 83
Crowfoot. *Mars.* 84
Cuckowpint, or Pintle, or Calvesfoot. *Mars.* 84
Cucumbers, or Cowcumbers. *Moon.* 86
Ceterach. See Spleenwort.
Carpenters Herb. See Self Heal.
Cammock. See Rest-harrow.
Corn Rose. See Poppy.
Champetys. See Ground Pine.
Callions. See Orchis.
Catmint. See Nep.
Cuckow Flowers. See Ladies Smock.
Christmas Herb. See Black Hellebore.
Call me to you. See Heart's Ease.
Crane's Bill. See Dove's Foot.
Crop. See Darnel.
Middle Consound, Comfrey, or Herb Carpenter. See Bugle.
Corn Flowers. See Blue Bottle.
Cummin Royal, and Ethiopian Cummin Seed. For both see Bishop's Weed.
Clovewort. See Avens.
Catsfoot. See Alehoof.

D.

Daisies. *Venus*, and under the sign *Cancer*. 87
Dandelion. *Jupiter*. 88
Darnel. *Saturn*. 89
Dill. *Mercury*. *ib*.
Devil's Bit. *Venus*. 90
Docks. *Jupiter*. 91
Dodder of Thyme, and other Dodders. *Saturn*. 92
Dog's Grass. *Jupiter*. 93
Dove's Foot. *Mars*. 94
Duck's Meal. *Cancer* claims the herb, and the *Moon* will be lady of it. *ib*.
Down, or Cotton Thistle. *Mars*. 95
Dragons. *Mars*. *ib*.
Dyer's Weed. See Wold and Weld.
Dittander. See Pepper Wort.
Dog's Stone. See Orchis.
Dewberry Bush. See Gooseberry Bush.
Drop Wort. See Filipendula.
Dentaria. See Coral Wort.
Dragon Wort. See Bistort.
Dog's and Goat's Arrach. See Arrach, wild and stinking.

E.

Elder Tree. *Venus*. 96
Dwarf Elder. *Venus*. *ib*.
Elm Tree. *Saturn*. 97
Endive. *Venus*. 98
Elicampane. *Mercury*. 99
Eringo. 100
Eye Bright. The *Sun* claims dominion over it, and is under the *Lion*. 105
Epithimum. See Dodder of Thyme.
Earth Nuts. See Earth Chesnuts.
English Serpentary. See Bistort.
Eupatorium. See Water Agrimony.

F.

Fern. *Mercury*. 102
Water Fern. *Saturn*. *ib*.
Featherfew. *Venus*. 103
Fennel. *Mercury*, and under *Virgo*. 104
Sow Fennel, and Hog's Fennel. *Mercury*. 105
Figwort. *Venus*. 106
Filipendula. *Venus*. 107
Fig Tree. *Jupiter*. *ib*.
The Yellow Water Flag, or Flower de luce. *Moon*. 108
Flax-weed. *Mars*. 109
Flea Wort. *Saturn*. 110
Flux-weed. *Saturn*. 111
Flower de luce 112
Fluellin, or Lluellin. *Moon*. 113
Foxglove. *Venus*. 114
Fumitory. *Saturn*. 115
Furz Bush. *Mars*. 116
Felwort. See Gentian.
Frog's Foot. See Crow's Foot.
Fresh Water Soldier. See Crabs Claws.
Fool's Foot. See Colt's Foot.
Five Finger, or five leaved grass. See Cinquefoil,
Fig-wort. See the lesser Celandine.
Flower-gentle, Florimen, and Velvet Flower. See Amaranthus.

G.

Garlick. *Mars*. 116
Gentian. *Mars*. 117
Glove Gilliflowers. *Jupiter*. 118
Germander. *Mercury*. 119
Stinking Gladwin. *Saturn*. 120
Golden rod. *Venus*. 121
Gout-wort, or herb Gerard. *Saturn*. 122
Gromwel. *Venus*. *ib*.
Gooseberry-bush. *Venus*. 123
Winter-green. *Saturn*. *ib*.
Groundsel. *Venus*. 124
Garden Patience. See Monk's Rhubarb.
Goat-stones. See Orchis.
Gofts. See Furz Bush.
Quick grass, or Couch-grass. See Dog-grass.
Gold-knobs. Gold-cups. See Crow-foot.
Goose-grass, or Goose-share. See Clevers.
Ground-nuts. See Earth Chesnuts.

Gill-go by Ground, and Gill creep by Ground. See Ale-hoof.

H

Heart's-ease. *Saturn.* 125
Heart's-tongue. *Jupiter.* 126
Hazel-nut. *Mercury.* 127
Hawk-weed. *Saturn.* *ib.*
Hawthorn. *Mars.* 129
Hemlock. *Saturn.* *ib.*
Hemp. *Saturn.* 130
Henbane. *Saturn.* 131
Hedge-hyssop. *Mars.* 132
Black Hellebore. *Saturn.* 133
Herb Robert. *Venus.* 134
Herb Truelove. *Venus.* 135
Hyssop. *Jupiter.* 136
Hops. *Mars.* *ib.*
Horehound. *Mercury.* 137
Horse-tail. *Saturn.* 138
Houseleek. *Jupiter.* 139
Hounds-tongue. *Mercury.* 140
Holly, Holm, or Hulver-bush. *Saturn.* 141

J.

St. John's-wort. *Sun,* and the sign *Leo.* 161
Ivy. *Saturn.* 142
Juniper-bush. *Sun.* *ib.*

K.

Kidney-wort. *Venus.* 144
Knapweed. *Saturn.* 145
Knotgrass. *Saturn.* 146
King's clever. See Melilot.
Knight's Pound-wort. See Crab-claws.
Knee-holm, Knee-holly, Knee-bulver. See Butcher's-broom.

L.

Lady's Mantle. *Venus.* 147
Lavender. *Mercury.* 148
Lavender Cotton. *Mercury.* *ib.*
Lady's Smock. *Moon.* 149
Lettuce. *Moon.* *ib.*
Water-Lily, white and yellow. *Moon.* 150
Lily of the Valley, Convel-Lily, May-Lily, and Lily Confancy, *Mercury.* 151
White Lilies. *Moon.* *ib.*
Liquorice. *Mercury.* 152
Liver-wort. *Jupiter.* 153
Loose-strife. *Moon.* *ib.*
Loose-strife, with spiked heads of flowers. *Moon.* 154
Lovage. *Saturn.* 155
Lung-wort. *Jupiter.* 156

M.

Madder. *Mars.* 156
Maiden-Hair, or Wall-rue. *Mercury.* 157
Golden Maiden-Hair. *Mercury.* 158
Mallows and Marshmallows. *Venus.* *ib.*
Maple Tree. *Jupiter.* 161
Wild, Bastard, and Grove Marjoram. *Mercury.* *ib.*
Sweet Marjoram. *Mercury.* 162
Marigolds. *Sun.* 163
Masterwort. *Mercury.* *ib.*
Sweet Maudlin. *Jupiter.* 164
Medlar. *Saturn.* 164
Melilot, or King's Clover. *Mercury.* 165
French and Dog Mercury. *Venus.* 166
Mint. *Venus.* 168
Misselto. *Sun.* 170
Money-wort. *Venus.* 171
Moon-wort. *Moon.* 172
Mosses. *Saturn.* 173
Motherwort. *Venus.* *ib.*
Mouse-ear. *Moon.* 174
Mugwort. *Venus.* 175
Mulberry-tree. *Mercury.* 176
Mullein. *Saturn.* 177
Mustard. *Mars.* 178
Hedge Mustard. *Mars.* 179
Medic fetch. See Cock's-head.
Myrrhis. See Chervil.
Macedonian parsley-seed. See Alexander.

N.

Nailwort. 180
Net Catmint. *Venus.* 181
Nettles. *Mars.* *ib.*
Nightshade. *Saturn.* 183
Dead Nettles. See Archangel.

O.

Oak. *Jupiter.* 184

Oats. 184
One Blade. *Sun.* 185
Orchis. *Venus.* *ib.*
Onions. *Mars.* 186
Orpine. *Moon.* 187
One-berry, or Herb-True-love. *Venus.* 135
Orgains, Origanum. See Wild Marjoram.
Osmond Royal. See Water Fern.
Ox-tongue. See Bugloss.
Oyster-loit. See Bistort.
Orach and Oragi. See Garden Arrach.
Oroponax-wort. See All-heal.
Orchanet. See Alkanet.

P.

Parsley. *Mercury.* 187
Parsley-piert, or Parsley Break-stone. 188
Parsnep. *Venus.* 189
Cow Parsnep. *Mercury.* 190
Peach-Tree. *Venus.* *ib.*
Pear-Tree. 192
Pellitory of Spain. *Mercury.* *ib.*
Pellitory of the Wall. *Mercury.* 193
Penny-royal. *Venus.* 195
Peony, masculine and feminine. *Sun.* 196
Pepper-wort. *Mercury.* 197
Periwinkle. *Venus.* 198
St. Peter's-wort. *Sun.* 199
Pimpernel. *Sun.* 200
Ground pine. *Mars.* 201
Plantain. *Venus.* 202
Plumbs. *Venus.* 203
Polypody of the Oak. *Saturn.* 204
Poplar-tree. *Saturn.* 205
Poppy white and black, and the wild Poppy or Corn-rose. *Moon.* 206
Purslain. *Moon.* 209
Primroses. *Venus.* 210
Privet. *Moon.* *ib.*

Q.

Queen of the Meadows, Meadow sweet, or Mead sweet. *Venus.* 210
Quince-tree. *Saturn.* 211

R.

Radish and Horse-radish. *Mars.* 212
Ragwort. *Venus.* *ib.*
Rattle-grass, red and yellow. *Moon.* 214
Rest-harrow, or Cammock. *Mars.* 215
Rocket. *Mars.* 216
Winter-rocket, or Winter-cresses. *Venus.* 218
Red Roses. *Jupiter.* 218
Rosa solis, or Sun-dew. *Sun.* 221
Rosemary. *Sun.* 222
Rhubarb, or Raphontick. *Mars.* 223
Garden Patience, or Monks Rhubarb, or Bastard Rhubarb. *Mars.* 225
Meadow Rue. 227
Garden Rue. *Sun,* and under *Leo.* 227
Rupture-wort. *Saturn* 229
Rushes. *Saturn.* 230
Rye. *ib.*

S.

Saffron. *Sun.* 231
Sage. *Jupiter.* *ib.*
Wood-sage. *Venus.* 232
Solomon's Seal. *Saturn.* 233
Samphire. *Jupiter.* 234
Sanicle. *Venus.* 235
Saracens Confound, or Saracens Wound-wort. *Saturn.* 236
Sauce-alone, or Jack by the hedge. *Mercury.* 237
Winter and Summer Savory. *Mercury.* 238
Savine. *Mars.* *ib.*
The common white Saxifrage. *Moon.* 239
Burnet Saxifrage. *Moon.* *ib.*
Scabius, three sorts. *Mercury.* 240
Scurvy-grass. *Jupiter.* 242
Self-heal, and Sickle-wort. *Venus.* 243
Service-tree. *Saturn.* *ib.*
Shepherd's-purse. *Saturn.* 244
Smallage. *Mercury.* 245
Sope-wort. *Venus.* *ib.*

Sorrel. *Venus.* 246
Wood Sorrel. *Venus.* 247
Sow Thistle. *Venus.* 248
Southernwood. *Mercury.* *ib*
Spignel. *Venus.* 249
Spleen-wort. *Saturn.* 250
Star Thistle. *Mars.* *ib.*
Strawberries. *Venus.* 251
Succory. *Jupiter.* 252
Stone crop, small Housleek. *Moon.* 253

T.

English Tobacco. *Mars.* 254
Tarmarisk-tree. *Saturn.* 255
Garden Tansy. *Venus.* *ib.*
Wild Tansy. *Venus.* 256
Thistles. *Mars.* 257
Melancholy Thistle. *Capricorn,* and therefore under *Saturn* and *Mars.* 258
Our Lady's Thistle. *Jupiter.* *ib.*
Woolly or Cotton Thistle. *Mars.* 259
Fullers Thistle, or Teasle. *Venus.* 260
Treacle and Mithridite Mustard. *Mars.* *ib.*
Black-thorn, or Sloe Bush. 261
Thorough-wax or Thoroughleaf. 262
Thyme. *ib.*
Thyme (Mother of) *Venus.* 263
Tormentil, or Sept-foil. *Sun.* *ib.*
Turnsole, or Heliotropium. *Sun.* 265
Meadow Trefoil, or Honey-suckles. *Mercury.* *ib.*
Heart-Trefoil. *Sun.* 266
Pearl Trefoil. *Moon.* *ib.*

V.

Garden Valerian. *Mercury.* 267
Vervain. *Venus.* 268
The Vine. *Venus.* 269
Violets. *Venus.* 270
Vipers Buglos. *Sun.* 271

W.

Wall Flowers, or Winter Gilliflowers. *Moon.* 272
Walnut. *Sun.* 273
Wold, Weld, or Dyers Weed. *Mars.* 274
Wheat. *Venus.* 275
The Willow-tree. *Moon.* 276
Woad. *Saturn.* *ib.*
Woodbine, or Honey-suckle. *Mercury.* 277
Wormwood. *Mars.* 278
Whitlow-grass. 280

Y

Yarrow, called Nose bleed, Milfoil, and Thousand-leaf. *Venus.* 284

APPENDIX.

Directions for making Syrups, Conserves, Oils, Ointments, Plaisters, &c. 285, and following pages.

THE

ENGLISH PHYSICIAN

ENLARGED.

AMARA DULCIS.

CONSIDERING divers shires in this nation give divers names to one and the same herb, and that the common name which it bears in one county, is not known in another; I shall take the pains to set down all the names that I know of each herb: Pardon me for setting that name first, which is most common to myself. Besides amara dulcis, some call it mortal, others bitter-sweet; some woody night-shade, and others felon-wort.

Description.] It grows up with woody stalks even to a man's height, and sometimes higher. The leaves fall off at the approach of winter, and spring out of the same stalk at spring-time: The branch is compassed about with a whitish bark, and hath a pith in the middle of it: The main branch brancheth itself into many small ones with claspers, laying hold on what is next to them, as vines do: it bears many leaves, they grow in no order at all, at least in no regular order: The leaves are longish, though somewhat broad, and pointed at the ends: many of them have two little leaves growing at the end of their foot-stalk; some have but one, and some none. The leaves are of a pale green colour; the flowers are of a purple colour, or of a perfect blue like to violets, and they stand many of them together in knots; the berries are green at first, but when they are ripe they are very red; if you taste them, you shall find them just as the crabs which we in Sussex call bitter sweets, viz. sweet at first, and bitter afterwards.

Place.] They grow commonly almost throughout England, especially in moist and shady places.

Time.] The leaves shoot out about the latter end of March if the temperature of the air be ordinary, it flowereth in July, and the seeds are ripe soon after, usually in the next month.

Government and Virtues.] It is under the planet Mercury, and a notable herb of his also, if it be rightly gathered under his influence. It is excellent good to remove witchcraft both in men and beasts, as also all sudden diseases whatsoever. Being tied round about the neck, is one of the most admirable remedies for the vertigo or dizziness in the head that is; and that is the reason (as Tragus saith) the people in Germany commonly hang it about their cattle's necks, when they fear any such evil hath betided them: Country people commonly use to take the berries of it, and having bruised them, they apply them to felons, and thereby soon rid their fingers of such troublesome guests.

We have now showed you the external use of the herb; we shall speak a word or two of the internal, and so conclude. Take notice, it is a mercurial herb, and therefore of very subtle parts, as indeed all mercurial plants are; therefore take a pound of the wood and leaves together, bruise the wood (which you may easily do, for it is not so hard as oak) then put it into a pot, and put to it three pints of white wine, put on the pot-lid and shut it close; and let it infuse hot over a gentle fire twelve hours, then strain it out, so have you a most excellent drink to open obstructions of the liver and spleen, to help difficulty of breath, bruises and falls, and congealed blood in any part of the body, it helps the yellow-jaundice, the dropsy and black jaundice, and to cleanse women newly brought to bed. You may drink a quarter of a pint of the infusion every morning. It purgeth the body very gently, and not churlishly, as some hold. And when you find good by this, remember me.

They that think the use of these medicines is too brief, it is only for the cheapness of the book; let them read those books of mine, of the last edition, viz. *Reverius*, *Veslingus*, *Riolanus*, *Johnson*, *Sennertus*, and *Physic for the Poor*.

ALL-HEAL.

IT is called all-heal, Hercules's all-heal, and Hercules' woundwort, because it is supposed that Hercules learned the herb and its virtues from Chiron, when he learned physic of him. Some call it panev, and others opopane wort.

Descript.] Its root is long, thick, and exceeding full of juice, of a hot and biting taste, the leaves are great and large, and winged almost like ash-tree leaves, but that they are something hairy, each leaf consisting of five or six pair of such wings set one against the other upon foot-stalks, broad below, but narrow towards the end; one of the leaves is a little deeper at the bottom than the other, of a fair yellowish, fresh green colour: they are of a bitterish taste, being chewed in the mouth. From among these ariseth up a stalk, green in colour, round in

form, great and strong in magnitude, five or six feet high in altitude, with many joints, and some leaves thereat; towards the top come forth umbels of small yellow flowers, after which are passed away, you may find whitish, yellow, short, flat seeds, bitter also in taste.

Place.] Having given you the description of the herb from the bottom to the top, give me leave to tell you, that there are other herbs called by this name; but because they are strangers in England, I give only the description of this, which is easily to be had in the gardens of divers places.

Time.] Although Gerrard saith, That they flower from the beginning of May to the end of December, experience teacheth them that keep it in their gardens, that it flowers not till the latter end of the summer, and sheds its seed presently after.

Government and Virtues.] It is under the dominion of Mars, hot biting, and choleric; and remedies what evils Mars afflicts the body of man with, by sympathy, as viper's flesh attracts poison, and the loadstone iron. It kills the worms, helps the gout, cramp, and convulsions, provokes urine, and helps all joint-aches. It helps all cold griefs of the head, the vertigo, falling sickness, the lethargy, the wind cholic, obstructions of the liver and spleen, stone in the kidneys and bladder. It provokes the terms, expels the dead birth: It is excellent good for the griefs of the sinews, itch, stone, and tooth-ach, the biting of mad dogs and venomous beasts, and purgeth choler very gently.

ALKANET.

BESIDES the common name, it is called orchanet, and Spanish bugloss, and by apothecaries, enchusa.

Descript.] Of the many sorts of this herb, there is but one known to grow commonly in this nation; of which one take this description: It hath a great and thick root, of a reddish colour, long, narrow, hairy leaves, green like the leaves of bugloss, which lie very thick upon the ground; the stalks rise up compassed round about, thick with leaves, which are lesser and narrower than the former; they are tender, and slender, the flowers are hollow, small, and of a reddish colour.

Place.] It grows in Kent near Rochester, and in many places in the west country, both in Devonshire and Cornwall.

Time.] They flower in July, and the beginning of August, and the seed is ripe soon after, but the root is in its prime, as carrots and parsnips are, before the herb runs up to stalk.

Government and Virtues.] It is an herb under the dominion

of Venus, and indeed one of her darlings, though somewhat hard to come by. It helps old ulcers, hot inflammations, burnings by common fire, and St. Anthony's fire, by antipathy to Mars; for these uses, your best way is to make it into an ointment; also, if you make a vinegar of it, as you make vinegar of roses, it helps the morphew and leprosy: if you apply the herb to the privities, it draws forth the dead child. It helps the yellow-jaundice, spleen, and gravel in the kidneys. Dioscorides saith, it helps such as are bitten by a venomous beast, whether it be taken inwardly, or applied to the wound; nay, he saith further, if any one that hath newly eaten it, do but spit into the mouth of a serpent, the serpent instantly dies. It stays the flux of the belly, kills worms, helps the fits of the mother. Its decoction made in wine, and drank, strengthens the back, and easeth the pains thereof: It helps bruises and falls, and is as gallant a remedy to drive out the small pox and measles as any is; an ointment made of it, is excellent for green wounds, pricks or thrusts.

ADDER'S TONGUE, OR SERPENT'S TONGUE.

Descript.] THIS herb hath but one leaf, which grows with the stalk a finger's length above the ground, being flat and of a fresh green colour; broad like water plantain, but less, without any rib in it; from the bottom of which leaf, on the inside, riseth up (ordinarily) one, sometimes two or three slender stalks, the upper half whereof is somewhat bigger, and dented with small dents of a yellowish green colour, like the tongue of an adder serpent (only this is as useful as they are formidable.) The roots continue all the year.

Place.] It grows in moist meadows, and such like places.

Time.] It is to be found in May or April, for it quickly perisheth with little heat.

Government and Virtues.] It is an herb under the dominion of the Moon and Cancer, and therefore if the weakness of the retentive faculty be caused by an evil influence of Saturn in any part of the body governed by the Moon, or under the dominion of Cancer, this herb cures it by sympathy: It cures these diseases after specified, in any part of the body under the influence of Saturn, by antipathy.

It is temperate in respect of heat, but dry in the second degree. The juice of the leaves drank with the distilled water of horse-tail, is a singular remedy for all manner of wounds in the breasts, bowels, or other parts of the body, and is given with good success unto those that are troubled with casting, vomiting, or bleeding at the mouth or nose, or otherwise downwards. The said juice

given in the distilled water of oaken-buds, is very good for women who have their usual courses, or the whites flowing down too abundantly. It helps sore eyes. Of the leaves infused or boiled in oil, omphacine, or unripe olives, set in the sun for certain days, or the green leaves sufficiently boiled in the said oil, is made an excellent green balsam, not only for green and fresh wounds, but also for old and inveterate ulcers, especially if a little fine clear turpentine be dissolved therein. It also stayeth and refresheth all inflammations that arise upon pains by hurts and wounds.

What parts of the body are under each planet and sign, and also what disease may be found in my astrological judgment of diseases; and for the internal work of nature in the body of man; as vital, animal, natural and procreative spirits of man; the apprehension, judgment, memory; the external senses, *viz.* Seeing, hearing, smelling, tasting and feeling; the virtuous attractive, retentive, digestive, expulsive, &c. under the dominion of what planets they are, may be found in my *Ephemeris* for the year 1651. In both which you shall find the chaff of authors blown away by the fame of Dr. Reason, and nothing but rational truths left for the ingenious to feed upon.

Lastly, To avoid blotting paper with one thing many times, and also to ease your purses in the price of the book, and withal to make you studious in physic; you have at the latter end of the book, the way of preserving all herbs either in juice, conserve, oil, ointment or plaister, electuary, pilis or troches.

AGRIMONY.

Descript.] THIS hath divers long leaves (some greater, some smaller) set upon a stalk, all of them dented about the edges, green above, and greyish underneath, and a little hairy withal. Among which ariseth up usually but one strong, round, hairy, brown stalk, two or three feet high, with smaller leaves set here and there upon it. At the top hereof grow many small yellow flowers, one above another, in long spikes; after which come rough heads of seed, hanging downwards, which will cleave to and stick upon garments, or any thing that shall rub against them. The knot is black, long, and somewhat woody, abiding many years, and shooting afresh every spring; which root, though small, hath a reasonable good scent.

Place.] It groweth upon banks, near the sides of hedges.

Time.] It flowereth in July and August, the seed being ripe shortly after.

Government and Virtues.] It is an herb under Jupiter, and the sign Cancer; and strengthens those parts under the planet

and sign, and removes diseases in them by sympathy, and those under Saturn, Mars and Mercury, by antipathy, if they happen in any part of the body governed by Jupiter, or under the signs Cancer, Sagitary or Pisces, and therefore must needs be good for the gout, either used outwardly in oil or ointment, or inwardly in an electuary, or syrup, or concerted juice; for which see the latter end of this book.

It is of a cleansing and cutting faculty, without any manifest heat, moderately drying and binding. It openeth and cleanseth the liver, helpeth the jaundice, and is very beneficial to the bowels, healing all inward wounds, bruises, hurts, and other distempers. The decoction of the herb made with wine, and drank, is good against the biting and stinging of serpents, and helps them that make foul, troubled or bloody water, and makes them piss very clearly speedily. It also helpeth the cholic, cleanseth the breast, and rids away the cough. A draught of the decoction taken warm before the fit, first removes, and in time rids away the tertian or quartan agues. The leaves and seeds taken in wine, stays the bloody flux; outwardly applied, being stamped with old swines grease, it helpeth old sores, cancers, and inveterate ulcers, and draweth forth thorns and splinters of wood, nails, or any other such things gotten in the flesh. It helpeth to strengthen the members that be out of joint: and being bruised and applied, or the juice dropped in it helpeth foul and imposthumed ears.

The distilled water of the herb is good for all the said purposes, either inward or outward, but a great deal weaker.

It is a most admirable remedy for such whose liver are annoyed either by heat or cold. The liver is the former of blood, and blood the nourisher of the body, and agrimony a strengthener of the liver.

I cannot stand to give you a reason in every herb why it cureth such diseases; but if you peruse my judgment in the herb wormwood, you shall find them there, and it will be well worth your while to consider it in every herb, you shall find them true throughout the book.

WATER AGRIMONY.

IT is called in some countries, water hemp, bastard hemp, and bastard agrimony, eupatorium, and hepatorium, because it strengthens the liver.

Descript.] The root continues a long time, having many long slender strings. The stalk grows up about two feet high, sometimes higher. They are of a dark purple colour. The branches are many, growing at distances the one from the other, the one from one side of the stalk, the other from the opposite point,

The leaves are winged, and much indented at the edges. The flowers grow at the top of the branches, of a brown yellow colour, spotted with black spots, having a substance within the midst of them like that of a daisy: If you rub them between your fingers, they smell like rosin or cedar when it is burnt. The seeds are long, and easily stick to any woollen thing they touch.

Place.] They delight not in heat, and therefore they are not so frequently found in the southern parts of England as in the northern, where they grow frequently: You may look for them in cold grounds, by ponds and ditches' sides, as also by running waters; sometimes you shall find them grow in the midst of waters.

Time.] They all flower in July or August, and the seed is ripe presently after.

Government and Virtues.] It is a plant of Jupiter, as well as the other agrimony, only this belongs to the celestial sign Cancer. It healeth and drieth, cutteth and cleanseth thick and tough humours of the breast, and for this I hold it inferior to but few herbs that grow. It helps the cachexia or evil disposition of the body, the dropsy and yellow jaundice. It opens obstructions of the liver, mollifies the hardness of the spleen, being applied outwardly. It breaks imposthumes taken inwardly: It is an excellent remedy for the third day ague. It provokes urine and the terms; it kills worms, and cleanseth the body of sharp humours, which are the cause of itch and scabs; the herb being burnt, the smoke thereof drives away flies, wasps, &c. It strengthens the lungs exceedingly. Country people give it to their cattle when they are troubled with the cough, or broken-winded.

ALEHOOF, OR GROUND-IVY.

SEVERAL counties give it several names, so that there is scarce an herb growing of that bigness that has got so many: It is called cats-foot, ground-ivy, gill-go-by-ground, and gill-creep-by-ground, turnhoof, haymaids, and alehoof.

Descript.] This well known herb lieth, spreadeth, and creepeth upon the ground, shooteth forth roots, at the corners of tender jointed stalks, set with two round leaves at every joint somewhat hairy, crumpled, and unevenly dented about the edges with round dents; at the joints likewise, with the leaves towards the ends of the branches, come forth hollow, long flowers, of a blueish purple colour, with small white spots upon the lips that hang down. The root is small with strings.

Place.] It is commonly found under hedges, and on the sides of ditches, under houses, or in shadowed lanes, and other waste grounds, in almost every part of this land.

Time.] They flower somewhat early, and abide a great while; the leaves continue green until winter, and sometimes abide, except the winter be very sharp and cold.

Government and Virtues.] It is an herb of Venus, and therefore cures the diseases she causes by sympathy, and those of Mars by antipathy; you may usually find it all the year long except the year be extremely frosty; it is quick, sharp, and bitter in taste, and is thereby found to be hot and dry; a singular herb for all inward wounds, exulcerated lungs, or other parts, either by itself, or boiled with other the like herbs; and being drank, in a short time it easeth all griping pains, windy and choleric humours in the stomach, spleen or belly; helps the yellow jaundice, by opening the stoppings of the gall and liver, and melancholy, by opening the stoppings of the spleen; expelleth venom or poison, and also the plague; it provokes urine and women's courses; the decoction of it in wine drank for some time together, procureth ease unto them that are troubled with the sciatica, or hip-gout: as also the gout in hands, knees, or feet; if you put to the decoction some honey and a little burnt allum, it is excellent good to gargle any sore mouth or throat, and to wash the sores and ulcers in the privy parts of man or woman; it speedily helpeth green wounds, being bruised and bound thereto. The juice of it boiled with a little honey and verdigrease, both wonderfully cleanse fistulas, ulcers, and stayeth the spreading or eating of cancers and ulcers; it helpeth the itch, scabs, wheals, and other breakings out in any part of the body. The juice of celandine, field-daisies, and ground-ivy clarified, and a little fine sugar dissolved therein, and dropped into the eyes, is a sovereign remedy for all pains, redness, and watering of them; as also for the pin and web, skins and films growing over the sight; it helpeth beasts as well as men. The juice dropped into the ears, doth wonderfully help the noise and singing of them, and helpeth the hearing which is decayed. It is good to tun up with new drink, for it will clarify it in a night, that it will be the fitter to be drank the next morning; or if any drink be thick with removing, or any other accident, it will do the like in a few hours.

ALEXANDER.

IT is also called alisander, horse-parsley, and wild-parsley, and the black pot-herb; the seed of it is that which is usually sold in apothecaries shops for Macedonian parsley-seed.

Descript.] It is usually sown in all the gardens in Europe, and so well known, that it needs no farther description.

Time.] It flowereth in June and July; the seed is ripe in August.

Government and Virtues.] It is an herb of Jupiter, and therefore friendly to nature, for it warmeth a cold stomach, and openeth a stoppage of the liver and spleen; it is good to move women's courses, to expel the after-birth, to break wind, to provoke urine and helpeth strangury; and these things the seeds will do likewise. If either of them be boiled in wine, or being bruised and taken in wine, is also effectual against the biting of serpents. And you know what alexander pottage is good for, that you may no longer eat it out of ignorance, but out of knowledge.

THE BLACK ALDER-TREE.

Descript.] THIS tree seldom groweth to any great bigness, but for the most part abideth like a hedge-bush, or a tree spreading its branches, the woods of the body being white, and a dark red cole, or heart; the outward bark is of a blackish colour, with many whitish spots therein; but the inner bark next the wood is yellow, which being chewed, will turn the spittle near into a saffron colour. The leaves are somewhat like those of an ordinary alder-tree, or the female cornet, or dogberry-tree, called in Sussex dog-wood, but blacker, and not so long. The flowers are white, coming forth with the leaves at the joints, which turn into small round berries, first green, afterwards red, but blackish when they are thorough ripe, divided, as it were, into two parts, wherein is contained two small round and flat seeds. The root runneth not deep into the ground, but spreads rather under the upper crust of the earth.

Place.] This tree or shrub may be found plentifully in St. John's wood by Hornsey, and the woods upon Hamstead-heath; as also a wood called the Old Park in Barcomb in Essex, near the brooks' sides.

Time.] It flowereth in May, and the berries are ripe in September.

Government and Virtues.] It is a tree of Venus, and perhaps under the celestial sign Cancer. The inner yellow bark hereof purgeth downwards both choler and phlegm, and the watery humours of such that have the dropsy, and strengthens the inward parts again by binding. If the bark hereof be boiled with agrimony, wormwood, dodder, hops and some fennel, with smallage, endive, and succory-roots, and a reasonable draught taken every morning for some time together, it is very effectual against the jaundice, dropsy, and the evil disposition of the body, especially if some suitable purging medicines have been taken before, to void the grosser excrements: It purgeth and strengtheneth the liver and spleen, cleansing them from such

evil humours and hardness as they are afflicted with. It is to be understood that these things are performed by the dried bark; for the fresh green bark taken inwardly provokes strong vomitings, pains in the stomach, and gripings in the belly; yet if the decoction may stand and settle two or three days, until the yellow colour be changed black, it will not work so strongly as before, but will strengthen the stomach, and procure an appetite to meat. The outward bark contrariwise doth bind the body, and is helpful for all lasks and fluxes thereof, but this also must be dried first, whereby it will work the better. The inner bark thereof boiled in vinegar is an approved remedy to kill lice, to cure the itch, and take away scabs, by drying them up in a short time. It is singularly good to wash the teeth, to take away the pains, to fasten those that are loose, to cleanse them, and keep them sound. The leaves are good fodder for kine, to make them give more milk.

If in the spring-time you use the herbs before-mentioned, and will take but a handful of each of them, and to them add an handful of elder buds, and having bruised them all, boil them in a gallon of ordinary beer, when it is new; and having boiled them half an hour, add to this three gallons more, and let them work together, and drink a draught of it every morning, half a pint, or thereabouts, it is an excellent purge for the spring, to consume the phlegmatic quality the winter hath left behind it, and withal to keep your body in health, and consume those evil humours which the heat of summer will readily stir up. Esteem it as a jewel.

THE COMMON ALDER-TREE.

Descript.] GROWETH to a reasonable height, and spreads much if it like the place. It is so generally well known unto country people, that I conceive it needless to tell that which is no news.

Place and Time.] It delighteth to grow in moist woods, and watery places: flowering in April or May, and yielding ripe seed in September.

Government and Use.] It is a tree under the dominion of Venus, and of some watery sign or other, I suppose Pisces; and therefore the decoction, or distilled water of the leaves, is excellent against burnings and inflammations, either with wounds or without, to bathe the place grieved with, and especially for that inflammation in the breast, which the vulgar call an ague.

If you cannot get the leaves (as in winter it is impossible) make use of the bark in the same manner.

The leaves and bark of the alder-tree are cooling, drying, and

binding. The fresh leaves laid upon swellings dissolve them, and stay the inflammations. The leaves put under the bare feet galled with travelling, are a great refreshing to them. The said leaves gathered while the morning dew is on them, and brought into a chamber troubled with the fleas, will gather them thereunto, which being suddenly cast out, will rid the chamber of those troublesome bed-fellows.

ANGELICA.

TO write a description of that which is so well known to be growing almost in every garden, I suppose is altogether needless; yet for its virtues it is of admirable use.

In time of Heathenism, when men had found out any excellent herb, they dedicated it to their gods; as the bay-tree to Apollo, the oak to Jupiter, the vine to Bacchus, the poplar to Hercules. These the papists following as the Patriarchs they dedicate to their saints; as our lady's thistle to the Blessed Virgin, St. John's wort to St. John, and another wort to St. Peter, &c. Our physicians must imitate like apes (though they cannot come off half so cleverly) for they blasphemously call phansies or hearts-ease, *an herb of the Trinity*, because it is of three colours. And a certain ointment, *an ointment of the Apostles*, because it consists of twelve ingredients: Alas, I am sorry for their folly, and grieved at their blasphemy. God send them wisdom the rest of their age, for they have their share of ignorance already. Oh! why must ours be blasphemous, because the heathens and papists were idolatrous? Certainly they have read so much in old rusty authors, that they have lost all their divinity; for unless it were amongst the ranters, I never read or heard of such blasphemy. The heathens and papists were bad, and ours worse; the papists giving idolatrous names to herbs for their virtues' sake, not for their fair looks; and therefore some called this an herb of the *Holy Ghost*, others more moderate called it angelica, because of its angelical virtues, and that name it retains still, and all nations follow it so near as their dialect will permit.

Government and Virtues.] It is an herb of the Sun in Leo; let it be gathered when he is there, the Moon applying to his good aspect; let it be gathered either in his hour, or in the hour of Jupiter, let Sol be angular; observe the like in gathering the herbs of other planets, and you may happen to do wonders. In all epidemical diseases caused by Saturn, that is as good a preservative as grows: It resists poison, by defending and comforting the heart, blood, and spirits; it doth the like against the plague and all epidemical diseases, if the root be taken in powder to the weight of half a dram at a time, with some good treacle in carduus water, and the party thereupon laid to sweat in his bed; if

treacle be not to be had, take it alone in carduus or angelica-water. The stalks or roots candied and eaten fasting, are good preservatives in time of infection; and at other times to warm and comfort a cold stomach. The root also steeped in vinegar, and a little of that vinegar taken sometimes fasting, and the root smelled unto, is good for the same purpose. A water distilled from the root simply, as steeped in wine, and distilled in a glass, is much more effectual than the water of the leaves; and this water, drank two or three spoonfuls at a time, easeth all pains and torments coming of cold and wind, so that the body be not bound; and taken with some of the root in powder at the beginning, helpeth the pleurisy, as also all other diseases of the lungs and breast, as coughs, phthysic, and shortness of breath; and a syrup of the stalks do the like. It helps pains of the cholic, the strangury and the stoppage of the urine; procureth women's courses, and expelleth the after-birth, openeth the stoppings of the liver and spleen, and briefly easeth and discusseth all windiness and inward swellings. The decoction drunk before the fit of an ague, that they may sweat (if possible) before the fit comes, will, in two or three times taking, rid it quite away; it helps digestion, and is a remedy for a surfeit. The juice, or the water being dropped into the eyes or ears, helps dimness of sight and deafness; the juice put into the hollow teeth, easeth their pains. The root in powder, made up into a plaister with a little pitch, and laid on the biting of mad dogs, or any other venomous creature, doth wonderfully help. The juice or the water dropped, or tents wet therein, and put into filthy dead ulcers, or the powder of the root (in want of either) doth cleanse and cause them to heal quickly, by covering the naked bones with flesh; the distilled water applied to places pained with the gout, or sciatica, doth give a great deal of ease.

The wild angelica is not so effectual as the garden; although it may be safely used to all the purposes aforesaid.

AMARANTHUS.

BESIDES its common name, by which it is best known to the florists of our days, it is called flower gentle, flower velure, floramor, and velvet flower.

Descript.] It being a garden flower, and well known to every one that keeps it, I might forbear the description; yet, notwithstanding, because some desire it, I shall give it. It runneth up with a stalk a cubit high, streaked, and somewhat reddish towards the root, but very smooth, divided towards the top with small branches, among which stand long broad leaves of a reddish green colour, slippery; the flowers are not properly

flowers, but tuffs, very beautiful to behold, but of no smell, of a reddish colour; if you bruise them, they yield juice of the same colour, being gathered, they keep their beauty a long time; the seed is of a shining black colour.

Time.] They continue in flower from August till the time the frost nips them.

Government and Virtues.] It is under the dominion of Saturn, and is an excellent qualifier of the unruly actions and passions of Venus, though Mars also should join with her. The flowers dried and beaten into powder, stop the terms in women, and so do almost all other red things. And by the icon, or image of every herb, the ancients at first found out their virtues. Modern writers laugh at them for it; but I wonder in my heart, how the virtues of herbs came at first to be known, if not by their signatures; the moderns have them from the writings of the an-ancients; the ancients had no writings to have them from: But to proceed. The flowers stop all fluxes of blood; whether in man or woman bleeding either at the nose or wound. There is also a sort of amaranthus that bears a white flower, which stops the whites in women, and the running of the reins in men, and is a most gallant antivenereal, and a singular remedy for the French pox.

ANEMONE.

CALLED also wind flower, because they say the flowers never open but when the wind bloweth, Pliny is my author; if it be not so, blame him. The seed also (if it bears any at all) flies away with the wind.

Place and Time.] They are sown usually in the gardens of the curious, and flower in the spring-time. As for description I shall pass it, being well known to all those that sow them.

Government and Virtues.] It is under the dominion of Mars, being supposed to be a kind of crow-foot. The leaves provoke the terms mightily, being boiled, and the decoction drunk. The body being bathed with the decoction of them, cures the leprosy. The leaves being stamped and the juice snuffed up in the nose, purgeth the head mightily; so doth the root, being chewed in the mouth, for it procureth much spitting, and bringeth away many watery and phlegmatic humours, and is therefore excellent for the lethargy. And when all is done, let physicians prate what they please, all the pills in the dispensatory purge not the head like to hot things held in the mouth. Being made into an ointment, and the eye-lids anointed with it, it helps inflammations of the eyes, whereby it is palpable, that every stronger draweth its weaker like. The same ointment is excellent good to cleanse malignant and corroding ulcers.

GARDEN ARRACH.

CALLED also orach, and arage.

Descript.] It is so commonly known to every house-wife, it were labour lost to describe it.

Time.] It flowereth and seedeth from June to the end of August.

Government and Virtues.] It is under the government of the Moon; in quality cold and moist like unto her. It softeneth and looseneth the body of man being eaten, and fortifieth the expulsive faculty in him. The herb, whether it be bruised and applied to the throat, or boiled, and in like manner applied, it matters not much, it is excellent good for swellings in the throat; the best way, I suppose, is to boil it, and having drunk the decoction inwardly, apply the herb outwardly: The decoction of it besides, is an excellent remedy for the yellow jaundice.

ARRACH, WILD AND STINKING.

CALLED also vulvaria, from that part of the body, upon which the operation is most; also dogs arrach, goats arrach and stinking motherwort.

Descript.] This hath small and almost round leaves, yet a little pointed and without dent or cut, of a dusky mealy colour growing on the slender stalks and branches that spread on the ground, with small flowers in clusters set with the leaves, and small seeds succeeding like the rest perishing yearly, and rising again with its own sowing. It smells like rotten fish, or something worse.

Place.] It grows usually upon dunghills.

Time.] They flower in June and July, and their seed is ripe quickly after.

Government and Virtues.] Stinking arrach is used as a remedy to help women pained, and almost strangled with the mother, by smelling to it; but inwardly taken there is no better remedy under the moon for that disease. I would be large in commendation of this herb, were I but eloquent. It is an herb under the dominion of Venus, and under the sign Scorpio; it is common almost upon every dunghill. The works of God are given freely to man, his medicines are common and cheap, and easy to be found. ('Tis the medicines of the College of Physicians that are so dear and scarce to find.) I commend it for an universal medicine for the womb, and such a medicine as will easily, safely, and speedily cure any disease thereof, as the fits of the mother, dislocation, or falling out thereof; it cools the womb being over-heated. And let me tell you this, and I will

tell you the truth, heat of the womb is one of the greatest causes of hard labour in child-birth. It makes barren women fruitful. It cleanseth the womb if it be foul, and strengthens it exceedingly; it provokes the terms if they be stopped, and stops them if they flow immoderately; you can desire no good to your womb, but this herb will effect it; therefore if you love children, if you love health, if you love ease, keep a syrup always by you, made of the juice of this herb, and sugar, (or honey, if it be to cleanse the womb) and let such as be rich keep it for their poor neighbours; and bestow it as freely as I bestow my studies upon them, or else let them look to answer it another day, when the Lord shall come to make inquisition of blood.

ARCHANGEL.

TO put a gloss upon their practice, the physicians call an herb (which country people vulgarly know by the name of dead nettle) archangel; whether they savour more of superstition or folly, I leave to the judicious reader. There is more curiosity than courtesy to my countrymen used by others in the explanation as well of the names, as description of this so well known herb; which that I may not also be guilty of, take this short description first of the red archangel.

Descript.] This has divers square stalks, somewhat hairy, at the joints whereof grow two sad green leaves dented about the edges, opposite to one another to the lowermost upon long foot stalks, but without any toward the tops, which are somewhat round, yet pointed, and a little crumpled and hairy; round about the upper joints, where the leaves grow thick, are sundry gaping flowers of a pale reddish colour; after which come the seeds three or four in a husk. The root is smaller and thready, perishing every year; the whole plant hath a strong scent, but not stinking.

White archangel hath divers square stalks, none standing straight upward, but bending downward, whereon stand two leaves at a joint, larger and more pointed than the other, dented about the edges, and greener also, more like unto nettle leaves, but not stinking, yet hairy. At the joints with the leaves stand larger and more open gaping white flowers, husks round about the stalks, but not with such a bush of leaves and flowers set in the top, as is on the other wherein stand small roundish black seeds; the root is white, with many strings at it, not growing downward, but lying under the upper crust of the earth, and abideth many years increasing; this hath not so strong a scent as the former.

Yellow archangel is like the white in the stalks and leaves;

but that the stalks are more straight and upright, and the joints with leaves are farther asunder, having longer leaves than the former, and the flowers a little larger and more gaping, of a fair yellow colour in most, in some paler. The roots are like white, only they creep not so much under the ground.

Place.] They grow almost every way (unless it be in the middle of the street) the yellow most usually in the wet grounds of woods, and sometimes in the dryer, in divers counties of this nation.

Time.] They flower from the beginning of the spring all the summer long.

Virtues and Use.] The archangels are somewhat hot and drier than the stinging nettles, and used with better success for the stopping and hardness of the spleen, than they, by using the decoction of the herb in wine, and afterwards applying the herb hot into the region of the spleen as a plaister, or the decoction with spunges. Flowers of the white archangel are preserved or conserved to be used to stay the whites, and the flowers of the red to stay the reds in women. It makes the heart merry, drives away melancholy, quickens the spirits, is good against quartan agues, stauncheth bleeding at mouth and nose, if it be stamped and applied to the nape of the neck; the herb also bruised, and with some salt and vinegar and hog-grease, laid upon an hard tumour or swelling, or that vulgarly called the king's evil, do help to dissolve or discuss them; and being in like manner applied, doth much allay the pains, and give ease to the gout, sciatica, and other pains of the joints and sinews. It is also very effectual to heal green wounds, and old ulcers; also to stay their fretting, gnawing and spreading. It draweth forth splinters, and such like things gotten into the flesh, and is very good against bruises and burnings. But the yellow archangel is most commended for old, filthy, corrupt sores and ulcers, yea, although they grow to be hollow, and to dissolve tumours. The chief use of them is for women, it being an herb of Venus, and may be found in my *Guide for Women*.

ARSSMART.

THE hot arssmart is called also water-pepper, or culrage. The mild arssmart is called dead arssmart, persicaria, or peach-wort, because the leaves are so like the leaves of a peach-tree; it is also called plumbago.

Description of the Mild.] This hath broad leaves set at the great red joint of the stalks; with semi-circular blackish marks on them, usually either blueish or whitish, with such like seed following. The root is long, with many strings thereat, perishing yearly; this hath no sharp taste (as another sorth hath,

which is quick and biting) but rather sour like sorrel, or else a little drying, or without taste.

Place.] It grows in watry places, ditches, and the like, which for the most part are dry in summer.

Time.] It flowereth in June, and the seed is ripe in August.

Government and Virtues.] As the virtue of both these is various, so is also their government; for that which is hot and biting, is under the dominion of Mars, but Saturn challengeth the other, as appears by that leaden coloured spot he hath placed upon the leaf.

It is of a cooling and drying quality, and very effectual for putrified ulcers in man or beast, to kill worms, and cleanse the putrified places. The juice thereof dropped in, or otherwise applied, consumeth all cold swellings, and dissolveth the congealed blood of bruises by strokes, falls, &c. A piece of the root, or some of the seeds bruised, and held to an aching tooth, taketh away the pain. The leaves bruised and laid to the joint that hath a felon thereon taketh it away. The juice destroyeth worms in the ears, being dropped into them; if the hot arssmart be strewed in a chamber, it will soon kill all the fleas; and the herb or juice of the cold arssmart, put to a horse or other cattle's sores, will drive away the fly in the hottest time of summer; a good handful of the hot biting arssmart put under a horse's saddle, will make him travel the better, although he were half tired before. The mild arssmart is good against all imposthumes and inflammations at the beginning, and to heal green wounds.

All authors chop the virtues of both sorts of arssmart, together, as men chop herbs to the pot, when both of them are of clean contrary qualities. The hot arssmart groweth not so high or tall as the mild doth, but hath many leaves of the colour of peach leaves, very seldom or never spotted; in other particulars it is like the former, but may easily be known from it, if you will but be pleased to break a leaf of it cross your tongue, for the hot will make your tongue to smart, so will not the cold. If you see them both together, you may easily distinguish them, because the mild hath far broader leaves: and our College of Physicians, out of the learned care of the public good, *Anglice*, their own gain, mistake the one for the other in their *New Master-piece*, whereby they discover, 1. Their ignorance. 2. Their carelessness; and he that hath but half an eye, may see their pride without a pair of spectacles. I have done what I could to distinguish them in the virtues, and when you find not the contrary named, use the cold. The truth is, I have not yet spoken with Dr. Reason, nor his brother Dr. Experience concerning either of them.

ASARABACCA.

Descript.] ASARABACCA hath many heads rising from the roots, from whence come many smooth leaves, every one upon his own footstalks, which are rounder and bigger than violet leaves, thicker also, and of a dark green shining colour on the upper side, and of a pale yellow green underneath, little or nothing dented about the edges, from among which rise small, round, hollow, brown green husks, upon short stalks, about an inch long, divided at the brims into five divisions, very like the cups or heads of the henbane seed, but that they are smaller: and these be all the flowers it carrieth, which are somewhat sweet, being smelled unto, and wherein, when they are ripe, is contained small cornered rough seeds, very like the kernels or stones of grapes or raisins. The roots are small and whitish, spreading divers ways in the ground, increasing into divers heads; but not running or creeping under the ground, as some other creeping herbs do. They are somewhat sweet in smell, resembling nardus, but more when they are dry than green; and of a sharp but not unpleasant taste.

Place.] It groweth frequently in gardens.

Time.] They keep their leaves green all winter; but shoot forth new in the spring, and with them come forth those heads or flowers which give ripe seed about midsummer, or somewhat after.

Government and Virtues.] 'Tis a plant under the dominion of Mars, and therefore inimical to nature. This herb being drank, not only provoketh vomiting but purgeth downward, and by urine also, purgeth both choler and phlegm: If you add to it some spikenard, with the whey of goat's milk, or honeyed water, it is made more strong, but it purgeth phlegm more manifestly than choler, and therefore doth much help pains in the hips, and other parts; being boiled in whey, they wonderfully help the obstructions of the liver and spleen, and therefore profitable for the dropsy and jaundice; being steeped in wine and drank, it helps those continual agues that come by the plenty of stubborn humours; an oil made thereof by setting in the sun, with some laudanum added to it, provoketh sweating, (the ridge of the back being anointed therewith) and thereby driveth away the shaking fits of the ague. It will not abide any long boiling, for it loseth its chief strength thereby; nor much beating, for the finer powder doth provoke vomits and urine, and the coarser purgeth downwards.

The common use hereof is, to take the juice of five or seven leaves in a little drink to cause vomiting; the roots have also the same virtue, though they do not operate so forcibly; they are

very effectual against the biting of serpents, and therefore are put as an ingredient both into mithridate and Venice treacle. The leaves and roots being boiled in lee, and the head often washed therewith while it is warm, comforteth the head and brain that is ill affected by taking cold, and helpeth the memory.

I shall desire ignorant people to forbear the use of the leaves; the roots purge more gently, and may prove beneficial in such as have cancers, or old putrified ulcers, or fistulas upon their bodies, to take a dram of them in powder in a quarter of a pint of white wine in the morning. The truth is, I fancy purging and vomiting medicines as little as any man breathing doth, for they weaken nature, nor shall ever advise them to be used, unless upon urgent necessity. If a physician be nature's servant, it is his duty to strengthen his mistress as much as he can, and weaken her as little as may be.

ASPARAGUS, SPARAGUS, OR SPERAGE.

Descript.] IT riseth up at first with divers white and green scaly heads, very brittle and easy to break while they are young, which afterward rise up in very long and slender green stalks, of the bigness of an ordinary riding wand, at the bottom of most, or bigger or lesser, as the roots are of growth; on which are set divers branches of green leaves shorter and smaller than fennel to the top; at the joints whereof come forth small yellowish flowers, which turn into round berries, green at first, and of an excellent red colour when they are ripe, shewing like bead or coral, wherein are contained exceeding hard black seeds, the roots are dispersed from a spongeous head into many long, thick, and round strings, wherein is sucked much nourishment out of the ground, and increaseth plentifully thereby.

PRICKLY ASPARAGUS, OR SPERAGE.

Descript.] IT groweth usually in gardens, and some of it grows wild in Appleton meadows in Gloucestershire, where the poor people do gather the buds of young shoots, and sell them cheaper than our garden asparagus, is sold at London.

Time.] They do for the most part flower, and bear their berries late in the year, or not at all, although they are housed in winter.

Government and Virtues.] They are both under the dominion of Jupiter. The young buds or branches boiled in ordinary broth, make the belly soluble and open, and boiled in white wine, provoke urine, being stopped, and is good against

the strangury or difficulty of making water; it expelleth the gravel and stone out of the kidneys, and helpeth pains in the reins. And boiled in white wine or vinegar, it is prevalent for them that have their arteries loosened, or are troubled with the hip-gout or sciatica. The decoction of the roots boiled in wine and taken, is good to clear the sight, and being held in the mouth easeth the tooth-ach; and being taken fasting several mornings together, stirreth up bodily lust in man or woman (whatever some have written to the contrary.) The garden asparagus nourisheth more than the wild, yet hath it the same effects in all the afore-mentioned diseases: The decoction of the roots in white wine, and the back and belly bathed therewith, or kneeling or lying down in the same, or sitting therein as a bath hath been found effectual against pains and reins of the bladder, pains of the mother and cholic, and generally against all pains that happen to the lower parts of the body, and no less effectual against stiff and benumbed sinews, or those that are shrunk by cramps and convulsions, and helpeth the sciatica.

ASH TREE.

THIS is so well known, that time will be mispent in writing a description of it; and therefore I shall only insist upon the virtues of it.

Government and Virtues.] It is governed by the sun: and the young tender tops, with the leaves taken inwardly, and some of them outwardly applied are singularly good against the biting of viper, adder, or any other venomous beast; and the water distilled therefrom being taken a small quantity every morning fasting, is a singular medicine for those that are subject to dropsy, or to abate the greatness of those that are too gross or fat. The decoction of the leaves in white wine helpeth to break the stone, and expel it, and cureth the jaundice. The ashes of the bark of the ash made into lee, and those heads bathed therewith, which are leprous, scabby, or scald, they are thereby cured. The kernels within the husks, commonly called ashen keys, prevail against stitches and pains in the sides, proceeding of wind, and voideth away the stone by provoking urine.

I can justly except against none of all this, save only the first, *viz.* That ash-tree tops and leaves are good against the bitings of serpents and vipers. I suppose this had its rise from Gerard or Pliny, both which hold, That there is such an antipathy between an adder and an ash-tree, that if an adder be encompassed round with ash-tree leaves, she will sooner run through the fire than through the leaves: The contrary to which is the truth, as both my eyes are witness. The rest are virtues something likely, only if it be in winter when you cannot get the leaves, you may safely

use the bark instead of them. The keys you may easily keep all the year, gathering them when they are ripe.

AVENS, CALLED ALSO COLEWORT, AND HERB BONET.

Descript.] THE ordinary avens hath many long, rough, dark, green winged leaves, rising from the root, every one made of many leaves set on each side of the middle rib, the largest three whereof grow at the end, and are snipped or dented round about the edges; the other being small pieces, sometimes two and sometimes four, standing on each side of the middle rib underneath them. Among which do rise up divers rough or hairy stalks about two feet high, branching forth with leaves at every joint not so long as those below, but almost as much cut in on the edges, some into three parts, some into more. On the tops of the branches stand small, pale, yellow flowers, consisting of five leaves, like the flowers of cinquefoil, but larger, in the middle whereof standeth a small green herb, which when the flower is fallen, groweth to be round, being made of many long greenish purple seeds (like grains) which will stick upon your clothes. The root consists of many brownish strings or fibres, smelling somewhat like unto cloves, especially those which grow in the higher, hotter, and drier grounds, and in free and clear air.

Place.] They grow wild in many places under hedges' sides, and by the path-ways in fields; yet they rather delight to grow in shadowy than sunny places.

Time.] They flower in May and June for the most part, and their seed is ripe in July at the farthest.

Government and Virtues.] It is governed by Jupiter, and that gives hopes of a wholesome healthful herb. It is good for the diseases of the chest or breast, for pains, and stitches in the side, and to expel crude and raw humours from the belly and stomach, by its sweet savour and warming quality. It dissolves the inward congealed blood happening by falls or bruises, and the spitting of blood, if the roots, either green or dry, be boiled in wine and drank; as also all manner of inward wounds or outward, if washed or bathed therewith. The decoction also being drank, comforts the heart, and strengtheneth the stomach and a cold brain, and therefore is good in the spring-time to open obstructions of the liver, and helpeth the wind cholic; it also helps those that have fluxes, or are bursten, or have a rupture; it taketh away spots or marks in the face, being washed therewith. The juice of the fresh root, or powder of the dried root, hath the same effect with the decoction. The root in the spring-time steeped in wine, doth give it a delicate savour and taste, and being drank fasting every morning, comforteth the heart, and is a

good preservative against the plague, or any other poison. It helpeth digestion, and warmeth a cold stomach, and openeth obstructions of the liver and spleen.

It is very safe; you need have no dose prescribed; and is very fit to be kept in every body's house.

BALM.

THIS herb is so well known to be an inhabitant almost in every garden, that I shall not need to write any description thereof, although the virtues thereof, which are many, may not be omitted.

Government and Virtues.] It is an herb of Jupiter, and under Cancer, and strengthens nature much in all its actions. Let a syrup made with the juice of it and sugar (as you shall be taught at the latter end of this book) be kept in every gentlewoman's house to relieve the weak stomachs and sick bodies of their poor sickly neighbours; as also the herb kept dry in the house, that so with other convenient simples, you may make it into an eluctuary with honey, according as the disease is, as you shall be taught at the latter end of my book. The Arabian physicians have extolled the virtues thereof to the skies: although the Greeks thought it not worth mentioning. Seraphio saith, It causeth the mind and heart to become merry, and reviveth the heart, faintings and swoonings, especially of such who are overtaken in sleep, and driveth away all troublesome cares and thoughts out of the mind, arising from melancholy or black choler; which Avicen also confirmeth. It is very good to help digestion, and open obstructions of the brain, and hath so much purging quality in it (saith Avicen) as to expel those melancholy vapours from the spirits and blood which are in the heart and arteries, although it cannot do so in other parts of the body. Dioscorides saith, That the leaves steeped in wine, and the wine drank, and the leaves externally applied, is a remedy against the stings of a scorpion, and the bitings of mad dogs; and commendeth the decoction thereof for women to bathe or sit in to procure their courses; it is good to wash aching teeth therewith, and profitable for those that have the bloody-flux. The leaves also, with a little nitre taken in drink, are good against the surfeit of mushrooms, helps the griping pains of the belly; and being made into an electuary, it is good for them that cannot fetch their breath: Used with salt, it takes away wens, kernels, or hard swellings in the flesh or throat; it cleanseth foul sores, and easeth pains of the gout. It is good for the liver and spleen. A tansy or caudle made with eggs, and juice thereof while it is young, putting to it some sugar and rose-water, is good for a woman in child-bed, when the after-birth is not thoroughly

voided, and for their faintings upon or in their sore travail. The herb bruised and boiled in a little wine and oil, and laid warm on a boil, will ripen it, and break it.

BARBERRY.

THIS shrub is so well known by every boy and girl that hath but attained to the age of seven years, that it needs no description.

Government and Virtues.] Mars owns the shrub, and presents it to the use of my countrymen to purge their bodies of choler. The inner rind of the barberry-tree boiled in white wine, and a quarter of a pint drank each morning, is an excellent remedy to cleanse the body of choleric humours, and free it from such diseases as choler causeth, such as scabs, itch, tetters, ringworms, yellow jaundice, boils, &c. It is excellent for hot agues, burnings, scaldings, heat of the blood, heat of the liver, bloody-flux: for the berries are as good as the bark, and more pleasing: they get a man a good stomach to his victuals, by strengthening the attractive faculty which is under Mars, as you may see more at large at the latter end of my *Ephemeris* for the year 1651: The hair washed with the lee made of ashes of the tree and water, will make it turn yellow, viz. of Mar's own colour. The fruit and rind of the shrub, the flowers of broom and of heath, or furz, cleanse the body of choler by sympathy, as the flowers, leaves, and bark of the peach tree do by antipathy; because these are under Mars, that under Venus.

BARLEY.

THE continual usefulness hereof hath made all in general so acquainted herewith, that it is altogether needless to describe it, several kinds hereof plentifully growing, being yearly sown in this land. The virtues thereof take as followeth.

Government and Virtues.] It is a notable plant of Saturn: if you view diligently its effects by sympathy and antipathy, you may easily perceive a reason of them; as also why barley bread is so unwholesome for melancholy people. Barley in all the parts and compositions thereof (except malt) is more cooling than wheat, and a little cleansing: And all the preparations thereof, as barley-water and other things made thereof do give great nourishment to persons troubled with fevers, agues, and heats in the stomach. A poultice made of barley meal or flour boiled in vinegar and honey, and a few dry figs put into them, dissolveth all hard imposthumes, and assuageth inflammations, being thereto applied. And being boiled with melilot and camomile-flowers, and some linseed, fenugreek, and rue in

powder, and applied warm, it easeth pains in side and stomach, and windiness of the spleen. The meal of barley and fleawort boiled in water, and made a poultice with honey and oil of lilies applied warm, cureth swellings under the ears, throat, neck, and such like; and a plaister made thereof with tar, wax, and oil, helpeth the king's evil in the throat; boiled with sharp vinegar into a poultice, and laid on hot, helpeth the leprosy; being boiled in red wine with pomegranate rinds, and myrtles, stayeth the lask or other flux of the belly; boiled with vinegar and quince, it easeth the pains of the gout; barley-flour, white salt, honey, and vinegar mingled together, taketh away the itch speedily and certainly. The water distilled from the green barley in the end of May, is very good for those that have defluctions of humours fallen into their eyes, and easeth the pain being dropped into them; or white bread steeped therein, and bound on the eyes, doth the same.

GARDEN BAZIL, OR SWEET BAZIL.

Descript.] THE greater or ordinary bazil riseth up usually with one upright stalk diversely branching forth on all sides, with two leaves at every joint, which are somewhat broad and round, yet pointed, of a pale green colour, but fresh; a little snipped about the edges, and of a strong healthy scent. The flowers are small and white, and standing at the tops of the branches, with two small leaves at the joints, in some places green, in others brown, after which come black seed. The root perisheth at the approach of winter, and therefore must be new sown every year.

Place.] It groweth in gardens.

Time.] It must be sowed late, and flowers in the heart of Summer, being a very tender plant.

Government and Virtues.] This is the herb which all authors are together by the ears about, and rail at one another (like lawyers.) Galen and Dioscorides hold it not fitting to be taken inwardly; and Chrysippus rails at it with downright Billingsgate rhetoric; Pliny, and the Arabian physicians, defend it.

For mine own part, I presently found that speech true;

Non nostrum inter nos tantas componere lites.

And away to Dr. Reason went I, who told me it was an herb of Mars, and under the Scorpion, and perhaps therefore called basilicon, and it is no marvel if it carry a kind of virulent quality with it. Being applied to the place bitten by venomous beasts, or stung by a wasp or hornet, it speedily draws the poison to it. *Every like draws his like.* Mizaldus affirms, that, being laid to rot in horse-dung, it will breed venomous beasts. Hilarius, a French physician, affirms upon his own knowledge, that an ac-

quaintance of his, by common smelling to it, had a scorpion bred in his brain. Something is the matter this herb and rue will not grow together, no, nor near one another; and we know rue is as great an enemy to poison as any that grows.

To conclude. It expelleth both birth and after-birth; and as it helps the deficiency of Venus in one kind, so it spoils all her actions in another. I dare write no more of it.

THE BAY TREE.

THIS is so well known that it needs no description; I shall therefore only write the virtues thereof, which are many.

Government and Virtues.] I shall but only add a word or two to what my friend hath written, viz. That it is a tree of the sun, and under the celestial sign Leo, and resisteth witchcraft very potently, as also all the evils old Saturn can do the body of man, and they are not a few; for it is the speech of one, and I am mistaken if it were not Mizaldus, that neither witch nor devil, thunder or lightning, will hurt a man in the place where a bay-tree is. Galen said, That the leaves or bark do dry and heal very much, and the berries more than the leaves; the bark of the root is less sharp and hot, but more bitter, and hath some astriction withal, whereby it is effectual to break the stone, and good to open obstructions of the liver, spleen, and other inward parts, which bring the jaundice, dropsy, &c. The berries are very effectual against all poison of venomous creatures, and the sting of wasps and bees; as also against the pestilence, or other infectious diseases, and therefore put into sundry treacles for that purpose; they likewise procure women's courses; and seven of them given to a woman in sore travail of child-birth, doth cause a speedy delivery, and expel the after-birth, and therefore not to be taken by such as have not gone out their time, lest they procure abortion, or cause labour too soon. They wonderfully help all cold and rheumatic distillations from the brain, to the eyes, lungs or other parts; and being made into an electuary with honey, do help the consumption, old coughs, shortness of breath, and thin rheums; as also the meagrim. They mightily expel the wind, and provoke urine; help the mother, and kill the worms. The leaves also work the like effects. A bath of the decoction of the leaves and berries, is singularly good for women to sit in, that are troubled with the mother, or the diseases thereof, or the stoppings of their courses, or for the diseases of the bladder, pains in the bowels by wind and stopping of urine. A decoction likewise of equal parts of bay-berries, cummin seed, hyssop, origanum, and euphorbium, with some honey, and the head bathed therewith, doth wonderfully help distillations and rheums, and settleth the palate of the

mouth into its place. The oil made of the berries is very comfortable in all cold griefs of the joints, nerves, arteries, stomach, belly, or womb, and helpeth palsies, convulsions, cramp, aches, tremblings, and numbness in any part, weariness also, and pains that come by sore travelling. All griefs and pains proceeding from wind, either in the head, stomach, back, belly, or womb, by anointing the parts affected therewith: And pains in the ears are also cured by dropping in some of the oil, or by receiving into the ears the fume of the decoction of the berries through a funnel. The oil takes away the marks of the skin and flesh by bruises, falls, &c. and dissolveth the congealed blood in them. It helpeth also the itch, scabs, and weals in the skin.

BEANS.

BOTH the garden and field beans are so well known, that it saveth me the labour of writing any description of them. Their virtues follow.

Government and Virtues.] They are plants of Venus, and the distilled water of the flower of garden beans is good to clean the face and skin from spots and wrinkles, and the meal or flour of them, or the small beans doth the same. The water distilled from the green husks, is held to be very effectual against the stone, and to provoke urine. Bean flour is used in poultices to assuage inflammations arising from wounds, and the swelling of women's breasts caused by the curdling of their milk, and represseth their milk; flour of beans and fenugreek mixed with honey, and applied to felons, boils, bruises, or blue marks by blows, or the imposthumes in the kernels of the ears, helpeth them all, and with rose leaves, frankincense and the white of an egg, being applied to the eyes, helpeth them that are swollen or do water, or have received any blow upon them, if used with wine. If a bean be parted in two, the skin being taken away, and laid on the place where the leech hath been set that bleedeth too much, stayeth the bleeding. Bean flour boiled to a poultice with wine and vinegar, and some oil put thereto, easeth both pains and swelling of the cods. The husks boiled in water to the consumption of a third part thereof, stayeth a lask; and the ashes of the husks, made up with old hog's grease, helpeth the old pains, contusions, and wounds of the sinews, the sciatica and gout. The field beans have all the aforementioned virtues as the garden beans.

Beans eaten are extreme windy meat; but if after the Dutch fashion, when they are half boiled you husk them and then stew them, (I cannot tell you how, for I never was cook in all my life) they are wholesome food.

FRENCH BEANS.

Descript.] THIS French or kidney bean ariseth at first but with one stalk, which afterwards divides itself into many arms or branches, but all so weak that if they be not sustained with sticks or poles, they will be fruitless on the ground. At several places of these branches grow footstalks, each with three broad, round and pointed green leaves at the end of them; towards the top come forth divers flowers made like unto pease blossoms, of the same colour for the most part that the fruit will be of; that is to say, white, yellow, red, blackish, or of a deeper purple, but white is the most usual; after which come long and slender flat cods, some crooked, some straight, with a string running down the back thereof, wherein is flattish round fruit made like a kidney; the root long, spreadeth with many strings annexed to it, and perisheth every year.

There is another sort of French beans commonly growing with us in this land, which is called the scarlet flowered bean.

This ariseth with sundry branches as the other, but runs higher, to the length of hop-poles, about which they grow twining, but turning contrary to the sun, having foot-stalks with three leaves on each, as on the other; the flowers also are like the other, and of a most orient scarlet colour. The beans are larger than the ordinary kind, of a dead purple colour, turning black when ripe and dry; the root perisheth in winter.

Government and Virtues.] These also belong to dame Venus, and being dried and beat to powder, are as great strengtheners of the kidneys as any are; neither is there a better remedy than it; a dram at a time taken in white wine to prevent the stone, or to cleanse the kidneys of gravel or stoppage. The ordinary French beans are of an easy digestion; they move the belly, provoke urine, enlarge the breast that is straitened with shortness of breath, engender sperm, and incite to venery. And the scarlet-coloured beans, in regard to the glorious beauty of their colour, being set near a quickset hedge, will bravely adorn the same, by climbing up thereon, so that they may be discerned a great way, not without admiration of the beholders at a distance. But they will go near to kill the quicksets by cloathing them in scarlet.

LADIES BED-STRAW.

BESIDES the common name above written, it is called cheese-renner, because it performs the same office, as also gallion, pettimugget, and maid-hair; and by some wild rosemary.

Descript.] This riseth up with divers small, brown and

square upright stalks a yard high or more; sometimes branches forth into divers parts, full of joints, and with divers very fine small leaves at every one of them, little or nothing rough at all; at the tops of the branches grow many long tufts or branches of yellow flowers very thick set together, from the several joints which consist of four leaves a-piece, which smell somewhat strong, but not unpleasant. The seed is small and black like poppy seed, two for the most part joined together. The root is reddish, with many small threads fastened unto it, which take strong hold of the ground, and creepeth a little; and the branches leaning a little down to the ground, take root at the joints thereof, whereby it is easily encreased.

There is another sort of ladies bed-straw, growing frequently in England which beareth white flowers as the other doth yellow; but the branches of this are so weak, that unless it be sustained by the hedges, or other things near which it groweth, it will lie down to the ground; the leaves a little bigger than the former, and the flowers not so plentiful as these; and the root hereof is also thready and abiding.

Place.] They grow in meadows and pastures, both wet and dry, and by the hedges.

Time.] They flower in May for the most part, and the seed is ripe in July and August.

Government and Virtues.] They are both herbs of Venus, and therefore strengthening the parts both internal and external, which she rules. The decoction of the former of those being drank, is good to fret and break the stone, provoke urine, stayeth inward bleeding, and healeth inward wounds. The herb or flower bruised and put up into the nostrils, stayeth their bleeding likewise: The flowers and herbs being made into an oil, by being set into the sun, and changed after it hath stood ten or twelve days; or into an ointment being boiled in *axunga*, or salad oil, with some wax melted therein, after it is strained; either the oil made thereof, or the ointment, do help burnings with fire, or scaldings with water. The same also, or the decoction of the herb and flower, is good to bathe the feet of travellers and lacquies, whose long running causeth weariness and stiffness in their sinews and joints. If the decoction be used warm, and the joints afterwards anointed with ointment, it helpeth the dry scab, and the itch in children; and the herb with the white flower is also very good for the sinews, arteries, and joints, to comfort and strengthen them after travel, cold, and pains.

BEETS.

OF beets there are two sorts, which are best known generally, and whereof I shall principally treat at this time, *viz.* the white and red beets, and their virtues.

Descript.] The common white beet hath many great leaves next the ground, somewhat large and of a whitish green colour. The stalk is great, strong, and ribbed, bearing great store of leaves upon it, almost to the very top of it: The flowers grow in very long tufts, small at the end, and turning down their heads, which are small, pale greenish, yellow buds, giving, cornered prickly seed. The root is great, long, and hard, and when it hath given seed is of no use at all.

The common red beet differeth not from the white, but only it is lesser, and the leaves and the roots are somewhat red; the leaves are differently red, some only with red stalks or veins; some of a fresh red, and others of a dark red. The root thereof is red, spungy, and not used to be eaten.

Government and Virtues.] The government of these two sorts of beets are far different; the red beet being under Saturn, and the white under Jupiter; therefore take the virtues of them apart, each by itself; the white beet doth much loosen the belly, and is of a cleansing, digesting quality, and provoketh urine. The juice of it openeth obstructions both of the liver and spleen, and is good for the head-ach and swimmings therein, and turnings of the brain; and is effectual also against all venomous creatures; and applied unto the temples, stayeth inflammations in the eyes; it helpeth burnings, being used without oil, and with a little allum put to it, is good for St. Anthony's fire. It is good for all wheals, pushes, blisters, and blains in the skin: the herb boiled, and laid upon chilblains or kibes, helpeth them. The decoction thereof in water and some vinegar, healeth the itch, if bathed therewith, and cleanseth the head of dandruff, scurf, and dry scabs, and doth much good for fretting and running sores, ulcers, and cankers in the head, legs, or other parts, and is much commended against baldness and shedding the hair.

The red beet is good to stay the bloody flux, women's courses, and the whites, and to help the yellow jaundice; the juice of the root put into the nostrils, purgeth the head, helpeth the noise in the ears, and the tooth-ach; the juice snuffed up the nose, helps a stinking breath, if the cause lies in the nose, as many times it doth, if any bruise hath been there; as also want of smell coming that way.

WATER BETONY.

CALLED also brown-wort, and in Yorkshire, bishop's-leaves.

Descript.] First, of the water betony, which riseth up, with square, hard, greenish stalks, sometimes brown, set with broad dark green leaves, dented about the edges with notches somewhat resembling the leaves of the wood betony, but much larger too, for the most part set at a joint. The flowers are

many, set at the tops of the stalks and branches, being round bellied and open at the brims, and divided into two parts, the uppermost being like a hood, and the lowermost like a hip hanging down, of a dark red colour, which passing there come in their places small round heads with small points at the ends, wherein lie small and brownish seeds; the root is a thick bush of strings and shreds growing from the head.

Place.] It groweth by the ditch side, brooks, and other water-courses, generally through this land, and is seldom found far from the water-side.

Time.] It flowereth about July, and the seed is ripe in August.

Government and Virtues.] Water betony is an herb of Jupiter in Cancer, and is appropriated more to wounds and hurts in the breasts than wood-betony, which follows: it is an excellent remedy for sick hogs. It is of a cleansing quality; the leaves bruised and applied are effectual for all old and filthy ulcers; and especially if the juice of the leaves be boiled with a little honey, and dipped therein, and the sores dressed therewith; as also for bruises or hurts, whether inward or outward; the distilled water of the leaves is used for the same purpose; as also to bathe the face and hands spotted or blemished, or discoloured by sun burning.

I confess I do not much fancy distilled waters, I mean such waters as are distilled cold; some virtues of the herb they may haply have (it were a strange thing else;) but this I am confident of, that being distilled in a pewter still, as the vulgar and apish fashion is, both chemical oil and salt is left behind, unless you burn them, and then all is spoiled, water and all, which was good for as little as can be by such a distillation in my translation of the London Dispensatory.

WOOD BETONY.

Descript.] COMMON or wood betony hath many leaves rising from the root, which are somewhat broad and round at the end, roundly dented about the edges, standing upon long footstalks, from among which arise up small, square, slender, but upright hairy stalks with some leaves thereon to a piece at the joints, smaller than the lower, whereon are set several spiked heads of flowers like lavender, but thicker and shorter, for the most part, and of a reddish or purple colour, spotted with white spots both in the upper and lower part. The seeds being contained within the husks that hold the flowers, are blackish, somewhat long and uneven. The roots are many white thready strings: the stalk perisheth, but the roots with some leaves thereon, abide all the winter. The whole plant is something small.

Place.] It groweth frequently in woods, and delighteth in shady places.

Time.] And it flowereth in July; after which the seed is quickly ripe, yet in its prime in May.

Government and Virtues.] The herb is appropriated to the planet Jupiter, and the sign Aries. Antonius Musa, physician to the emperor Augustus Cæsar, wrote a peculiar book of the virtues of this herb; and among other virtues saith of it, that it preserveth the liver and bodies of men from the danger of epidemical diseases, and from witchcrafts also; it helpeth those that loath and cannot digest their meat, those that have weak stomachs and sour belchings, or continual rising in their stomach, using it familiarly either green or dry; either the herb, or root, or the flowers, in broth, drink, or meat, or made into conserve, syrup, water, electuary, or powder, as every one may best frame themselves unto, or as the time and season requireth; taken any of the aforesaid ways, it helpeth the jaundice, falling sickness, the palsy, convulsions, or shrinking of the sinews, the gout and those that are inclined to dropsy, those that have continual pains in their heads, although it turn to phrensy. The powder mixed with pure honey, is no less available for all sorts of coughs or colds, wheesing, or shortness of breath, distillations of thin rheum upon the lungs, which causeth consumptions. The decoction made with mead, and a little penny-royal, is good for those that are troubled with putrid agues, whether quotidian, tertian, or quartan, and to draw down and evacuate the blood, and humours, that by falling into the eyes, do hinder the sight; the decoction thereof made in wine and taken, killeth the worms in the belly, openeth obstructions both of the spleen and liver; cureth stitches, and pains in the back and sides, the torments and griping pains in the bowels, and the wind colic; and mixed with honey, purgeth the belly, helpeth to bring down women's courses, and is of special use for those that are troubled with the falling down of the mother, and pains thereof, and causeth an easy and speedy dilivery of women in child-birth. It helpeth also to break and expel the stone, either in the bladder or kidneys. The decoction with wine gargled in the mouth, easeth the tooth-ach. It is commended against the stinging or biting of venomous serpents, or mad dogs, being used inwardly and applied outwardly to the place. A dram of the powder of betony taken with a little honey in some vinegar, doth wonderfully refresh those that are over wearied by travel. It stayeth the bleeding at the mouth or nose, and helpeth those that piss or spit blood, and those that are bursten or have a rupture, and is good for such as are bruised by any fall or otherwise. The green herb bruised, or the juice applied to any inward hurt, or outward green wound in the head or body, will quickly heal and close it up; as also any

veins or sinews that are cut, and will draw forth any broken bone or splinter, thorn or other things got into the flesh. It is no less profitable for old sores or filthy ulcers, yea, though they be fistulous and hollow. But some do advise to put a little salt to this purpose; being applied with a little hog's lard, it helpeth a plague sore, and other boils and pushes. The fumes of the decoction, while it is warm, received by a funnel into the ears, easeth the pains of them, destroyeth the worms and cureth the running sores in them. The juice dropped into them doth the same. The root of betony is displeasing both to the taste and stomach, whereas the leaves and flowers, by their sweet and spicy taste, are comfortable both to meat and medicine.

These are some of the many virtues Antony Muse, an expert physician, (for it was not the practice of Octavius Cæsar to keep fools about him) appropriates to betony; it is a very precious herb, that is certain, and most fitting to be kept in a man's house, both in syrup, conserve, oil, ointment and plaister. The flowers are usually conserved.

THE BEECH TREE.

IN treating of this tree, you must understand, that I mean the green mast beech, which is by way of distinction from that other small rough sort, called in Sussex the smaller beech, but in Essex, horn-bean.

I suppose it is needless to describe it, being already too well known to my countrymen.

Place.] It groweth in woods amongst oaks and other trees, and in parks, forests, and chases, to feed deer; and in other places to fatten swine.

Time.] It bloometh in the end of April, or beginning of May, for the most part, and the fruit is ripe in September.

Government and Virtues.] It is a plant of Saturn, and therefore, performs his qualities and proportion in these operations. The leaves of the beech-tree are cooling and binding, and therefore good to be applied to hot swellings to discuss them; the nuts do much nourish such beasts as feed thereon. The water that is found in the hollow places of decaying beeches will cure both man and beast of any scurf, scab, or running tetters, if they be washed therewith; you may boil the leaves into a poultice, or make an ointment of them when time of year serves.

BILBERRIES, CALLED BY SOME WHORTS, AND WHORTLE BERRIES.

Descript.] OF these I shall only speak of two sorts which are common in England, viz. The black and red berries. And first of the black.

The small bush creepeth along upon the ground, scarce rising half a yard high, with divers small dark green leaves set in the green branches, not always one against the other, and a little dented about the edges: At the foot of the leaves come forth small, hollow, pale, blueish coloured flowers, the brims ending in five points, with a reddish thread in the middle, which pass into small round berries of the bigness and colour of juniper berries, but of a purple, sweetish sharp taste; the juice of them giveth a purplish colour in the hands and lips that eat and handle them, especially if they break them. The root groweth aslope under ground, shooting forth in sundry places as it creepeth. This loseth its leaves in winter.

The red bilberry, or whortle-bush, riseth up like the former, having sundry hard leaves, like the box-tree leaves, green and round pointed, standing on the several branches, at the top whereof only, and not from the sides, as in the former, come forth divers round, reddish, sappy berries, when they are ripe, of a sharp taste. The root runneth in the ground, as in the former, but the leaves of this abide all the winter.

Place.] The first groweth in forests, on the heaths, and such like barren places: the red grows in the north parts of this land, as Lancashire, Yorkshire, &c.

Time.] They flower in March and April, and the fruit of the black is ripe in July and August.

Government and Virtues.] They are under the dominion of Jupiter. It is a pity they are used no more in physic than they are. The black bilberries are good in hot agues and to cool the heat of the liver and stomach; they do somewhat bind the belly, and stay vomitings and loathings; the juice of the berries made in a syrup, or the pulp made into a conserve with sugar, is good for the purposes aforesaid, as also for an old cough, or an ulcer in the lungs, or other diseases therein. The red worts are more binding, and stop women's courses, spitting of blood, or any other flux of blood or humours, being used as well outwardly as inwardly.

BIFOIL, OR TWABLADE.

Descript.] THIS small herb, from a root somewhat sweet shooting downward many long strings, riseth up a round green stalk, bare or naked, next the ground for an inch, two or three to the middle thereof as it is in age or growth; as also from the middle upward to the flowers, having only two broad plaintain-like leaves (but whiter) set at the middle of the stalk one against another, compasseth it round at the bottom of them.

Place.] It is an usual inhabitant in woods, copses, and in many other places in this land.

There is another sort groweth in wet grounds and marshes, which is somewhat different from the former. It is a smaller plant, and greener, having sometimes three leaves; the spike of the flowers is less than the former, and the roots of this do run or creep in the ground.

They are much and often used by many to good purpose for wounds, both green and old, to consolidate or knit ruptures; and well it may, being a plant of Saturn.

THE BIRCH TREE.

Descript.] THIS groweth a goodly tall straight tree, fraught with many boughs, and slender branches bending downward: the old being coloured with discoloured chapped bark, and the younger being browner by much. The leaves at the first breaking out are crumpled, and afterwards like the beech leaves, but smaller and greener, and dented about the edges. It beareth small short cat-skins, somewhat like those of the hazel-nut-tree, which abide on the branches a long time, until growing ripe, they fall on the ground, and their seed with them.

Place.] It usually groweth in woods.

Government and Virtues.] It is a tree of Venus; the juice of the leaves, while they are young, or the distilled water of them, or the water that comes from the tree being bored with an auger, and distilled afterwards; any of these being drank for some days together, is available to break the stone in the kidneys and bladder, and is good also to wash sore mouths.

BIRD'S FOOT.

THIS small herb groweth not above a span high, with many branches spread upon the ground, set with many wings of small leaves. The flowers grow upon the branches, many small ones of a pale yellow colour being set a head together, which afterwards turneth into small jointed cods, well resembling the claws of small birds, whence it took its name.

There is another sort of bird's foot in all things like the former, but a larger; the flower of a pale whitish red colour, and the cods distinct by joints like the other, but a little more crooked; and the roots do carry many small white knots or kernels amongst the strings.

Place.] These grow on heaths, and many open untilled places of this land.

Time.] They flower and seed in the end of summer.

Government and Virtues.] They belong to Saturn, and are of a drying, binding quality, and thereby very good to be used in wound drinks; as also to apply outwardly for the same purpose. But the latter bird's-foot is found by experience to break the stone in the back or kidneys, and drives them forth, if the decoction thereof be taken: and it wonderfully helpeth the rupture, being taken inwardly and outwardly applied to the place.

All salts have best operations upon the stone, as ointments and plaisters have upon wounds: and therefore you may make a salt of this for the stone; the way how to do so may be found in my translation of the London Dispensatory; and it may be I may give you it again in plainer terms at the latter end of this book.

BISHOPS-WEED.

BESIDES the common name bishops-weed, it is usually known by the Greek name *Ammi* and *Ammois;* some call it Æthiopian cummin-seed, and others Cummin-royal, as also herb-william, and bull-wort.

Descript.] Common bishops-weed riseth up with a round straight stalk, sometimes as high as a man, but usually three or four feet high, beset with divers small, long and somewhat broad leaves, cut in some places, and dented about the edges, growing one against another, of a dark green colour, having sundry branches on them, and at the top small umbels of white flowers, which turn into small round seeds, little bigger than parsley seeds, of a quick hot scent and taste; the root is white and stringy; perishing yearly, and usually riseth again on its own sowing.

Place.] It groweth wild in many places of England and Wales, as between Greenhithe and Gravesend.

Government and Virtues.] It is hot and dry in the third degree, of a bitter taste, and somewhat sharp withal; it provokes lust to purpose; I suppose Venus owns it. It digesteth humours, provoketh urine and women's courses, dissolveth wind, and being taken in wine it easeth pain and griping in the bowels, and is good against the biting of serpents; it is used to good effect in those medicines which are given to hinder the poisonous operation of cantharides upon the passage of the urine; being mixed with honey and applied to black and blue marks, coming of blows or bruises, it takes them away; and being drank or outwardly applied, it abateth an high colour, and makes it pale; and the fumes thereof taken with rosin or raisins, cleanseth the mother.

BISTORT, OR SNAKEWEED.

IT is called snakeweed, English serpentary, dragon-wort, osterick, and passions.

Descript.] This hath a thick short knobbed root, blackish without, and somewhat reddish within, a little crooked or turned together, of a hard astringent taste, with divers black threads hanging there, from whence spring up every year divers leaves, standing upon long footstalks, being somewhat broad and long like a dock leaf, and a little pointed at the ends, but that it is of a blueish green colour on the upper side, and of an ash-colour grey, and a little purplish underneath, with divers veins therein, from among which rise up divers small and slender stalks, two feet high, and almost naked and without leaves, or with a very few, and narrow, bearing a spikey bush of pale-coloured flowers; which being past, there abideth small seed, like unto sorrel seed, but greater.

There are other sorts of bistort growing in this land, but smaller, both in height, root, and stalks, and especially in the leaves. The root blackish without, and somewhat whitish within; of an austere binding taste, as the former.

Place.] They grow in shadowy moist woods, and at the foot of hills, but are chiefly nourished up in gardens. The narrow-leaved bistort groweth in the north, in Lancashire, Yorkshire, and Cumberland.

Time.] They flower about the end of May, and the seed is ripe about the beginning of July.

Government and Virtues.] It belongs to Saturn, and is in operation cold and dry; both the leaves and roots have a powerful faculty to resist all poison. The root in powder taken in drink expelleth the venom of the plague, the small-pox, measles, purples, or any other infectious disease, driving it out by sweating. The root in powder, the decoction thereof in wine being drank, stayeth all manner of inward bleeding, or spitting of blood, and any fluxes in the body of either man or woman, or vomiting. It is also very availing against ruptures, or burstings, or all bruises of falls, dissolving the congealed blood, and easing the pains that happen thereupon; it also helpeth the jaundice.

The water distilled from both leaves and roots, is a singular remedy to wash any place bitten or stung by any venomous creature; as also for any of the purposes before spoken of, and is very good to wash any running sores or ulcers. The decoction of the root in wine being drank, hindereth abortion or miscarriage in child-bearing. The leaves also kill the worms in children, and is a great help to them that cannot keep their water; if the juice of plantain be added thereto, and outwardly

applied, much helpeth the gonorrhea, or running of the reins. A dram of the powder of the root taken in water thereof, wherein some red hot iron or steel hath been quenched, is also an admirable help thereto, so as the body be first prepared and purged from the offensive humours. The leaves, seed, or roots are all very good in decoctions, drinks, or lotions, for inward or outward wounds, or other sores. And the powder strewed upon any cut or wound in a vein, stayeth the immoderate bleeding thereof. The decoction of the root in water, whereunto some pomegranate peels and flowers are added, injected into the matrix, stayeth the immoderate flux of the courses. The root thereof with pelitory of Spain, and burnt allum, of each a little quantity, beaten small and made into paste, with some honey, and a little piece thereof put into an hollow tooth, or held between the teeth, if there be no hollowness in them, stayeth the defluction of rheum upon them which causeth pains, and helps to cleanse the head, and void much offensive water. The distilled water is very effectual to wash sores or cancers in the nose, or any other parts; if the powder of the root be applied thereunto afterwards. It is good also to fasten the gums, and to take away the heat and inflammations that happen in the jaws, almonds of the throat, or mouth, if the decoction of the leaves, roots, or seeds bruised, or the juice of them be applied; but the roots are most effectual to be purposes aforesaid.

ONE-BLADE.

Descript.] THIS small plant never beareth any more than one leaf, but only when it riseth up with its stalk, which thereon beareth another, and seldom more, which are of a blueish green colour, broad at the bottom, and pointed with many ribs or veins like plantain; at the top of the stalk grow many small flowers star-fashion, smelling somewhat sweet; after which cometh small reddish berries when they are ripe; the root small, of the bigness of a rush, lying and creeping under the upper crust of the earth, shooting forth in divers places.

Place.] It grows in moist, shadowy, grassy places of woods, in many places of this realm.

Time.] It flowereth about May, and the berries be ripe in June, and then quickly perisheth, until the next year it springeth from the same again.

Government and Virtues.] It is an herb of the Sun, and therefore cordial: half a dram, or a dram at most, of the roots hereof in powder, taken in wine and vinegar, of each a like quantity, and the party presently laid to sweat, is held to be a sovereign remedy for those that are infected with the plague, and

have a sore upon them, by expelling the poison, and defending the heart and spirits from danger. It is also accounted a singular good wound herb, and therefore used with other herbs in making such balms as are necessary for curing of wounds, either green or old, and especially if the nerves be hurt.

THE BRAMBLE, OR BLACK-BERRY BUSH

IT is so well known that it needeth no description. The virtues thereof are as followeth:

Government and Virtues.] It is a plant of Venus in Aries. You shall have some directions at the latter end of the book for the gathering of all herbs and plants, &c. If any ask the reason why Venus is so prickly? Tell them it is because she is in the house of Mars. The buds, leaves, and branches, while they are green, are of a good use in the ulcers and putrid sores of the mouth and throat, and of the quinsey, and likewise to heal other fresh wounds and sores; but the flowers and fruits unripe are very binding, and so profitable for the bloody flux, lasks, and are a fit remedy for spitting of blood. Either the decoction of the powder or of the root taken, is good to break or drive forth gravel and the stone in the reins and kidneys. The leaves and brambles, as well green as dry, are excellent good lotions for sores in the mouth, or secret parts. The decoction of them, and of the dried branches, do much bind the belly, and are good for too much flowing of women's courses; the berries of the flowers are a powerful remedy against the poison of the most venomous serpents; as well drank as outwardly applied, helpeth the sores of the fundament and the piles; the juice of the berries mixed with the juice of mulberries, do bind more effectually, and help all fretting and eating sores and ulcers wheresoever. The distilled water of the branches, leaves, and flowers, or of the fruit, is very pleasant in taste, and very effectual in fevers and hot distempers of the body, head, eyes, and other parts, and for the purposes aforesaid. The leaves boiled in lee, and the head washed therewith, healeth the itch and the running sores thereof, and maketh the hair black. The powder of the leaves strewed on cankers and running ulcers, wonderfully helps to heal them. Some use to condensate the juice of the leaves, and some the juice of the berries, to keep for their use all the year, for the purposes aforesaid.

BLITES.

Descript.] OF these there are two sorts commonly known, viz. white and red. The white hath leaves somewhat like unto beets, but smaller, rounder, and of a

whitish green colour, every one standing upon a small long foot-stalk: the stalk riseth up two or three feet high, with such like leaves thereon; the flowers grow at the top in long round tufts or clusters, wherein are contained small and round seed; the root is very full of threads or strings.

The red blite is in all things like the white, but that its leaves and tufted heads are exceeding red at first, and after turn more purplish.

There are other kinds of blites which grow different from the two former sorts but little, but only the wild are smaller in every part.

Place.] They grow in gardens, and wild in many places in this land.

Time.] They seed in August and September.

Government and Virtues.] They are all of them cooling, drying, and binding, serving to restrain the fluxes of blood in either man or woman, especially the red; which also stayeth the overflowing of women's reds, as the white blites stayeth the whites in women; it is an excellent secret; you cannot well fail in the use; they are all under the dominion of Venus.

There is another sort of wild blites like the other wild kinds, but have long and spikey heads of greenish seeds, seeming by the thick setting together to be all seed.

This sort fishes are delighted with, and it is a good and usual bait; for fishes will bite fast enough at them, if you have wit enough to catch them when they bite.

BORAGE AND BUGLOSS.

THESE are so well known to the inhabitants in every garden, that I hold it needless to describe them.

To these I may add a third sort, which is not so common, nor yet so well known, and therefore I shall give you its name and description.

It is called *langue de beuf;* but why then should they call one herb by the name of bugloss, and another by the name *langue de beuf?* It is some question to me, seeing one signifies ox-tongue in Greek, and the other signifies the same in French.

Descript.] The leaves whereof are smaller than those of bugloss, but much rougher; the stalks arising up about a foot and a half high, and is most commonly of a red colour; the flowers stand in scaly rough heads, being composed of many small yellow flowers, not much unlike to those of dandelions, and the seed flieth away in down as that doth; you may easily know the flowers by their taste, for they are very bitter.

Place.] It groweth wild in many places of this land, and may be plentifully found near London, as between Rotherhithe and Deptford, by the ditch side. Its virtues are held to be the same with borage and bugloss, only this is somewhat hotter.

Time.] They flower in June and July, and the seed is ripe shortly after.

Government and Virtues.] They are all three herbs of Jupiter, and under Leo, all great cordials, and great strengtheners of nature. The leaves and roots are to very good purpose used in putrid and pestilential fevers, to defend the heart, and help to resist and expel the poison, or the venom of other creatures; the seed is of the like effects; and the seed and leaves are good to increase milk in women's breasts; the leaves, flowers, and seed, all or any of them, are good to expel pensiveness and melancholy; it helpeth to clarify the blood, and mitigate heat in fevers. The juice made into a syrup prevaileth much to all the purposes aforesaid, and is put with other cooling, opening and cleansing herbs to open obstructions and help the yellow jaundice, and mixed with fumitory, to cool, cleanse, and temper the blood thereby; it helpeth the itch, ring-worms and tetters, or other spreading scabs or sores. The flowers candied or made into a conserve, are helpful in the former cases, but are chiefly used as a cordial, and are good for those that are weak in long sickness, and to comfort the heart and spirits of those that are in a consumption or troubled with often swoonings, or passions of the heart. The distilled water is no less effectual to all the purposes aforesaid, and helpeth the redness and inflammations of the eyes, being washed therewith; the herb dried is never used, but the green; yet the ashes thereof boiled in mead, or honeyed water, is available against the inflammations and ulcers in the mouth or throat to gargle it therewith; the roots of bugloss are effectual, being made into a licking electuary for the cough, and to condensate thick phlegm, and the rheumatic distillations upon the lungs.

BLUE-BOTTLE.

IT is called Syanus, I suppose from the colour of it: Hurtsickle, because it turns the edge of the sickles that reap the corn: Blue-blow, corn-flower, and blue-bottle.

Descript.] I shall only describe that which is commonest, and in my opinion most useful; its leaves spread upon the ground, being of a whitish green colour, somewhat on the edges like those of corn-scabions, amongst which ariseth up a stalk divided into divers branches, beset with long leaves of a greenish colour, either but very little indented, or not at all; the flowers are of a blue colour, whence it took its name, consisting

of an innumerable company of small flowers set in a scaly head, not much unlike those of knap-weed; the seed is smooth, bright, and shining, wrapped up in a woolly mantle; the root perisheth every year.

Place.] They grow in corn fields, amongst all sorts of corn (pease, beans, and tares excepted.) If you please to take them up from thence, and transplant them in your garden, especially towards the full of the moon, they will grow more double than they are, and many times change colour.

Time.] They flower from the beginning of May to the end of harvest.

Government and Virtues.] As they are naturally cold, dry, and binding, so they are under the dominion of Saturn. The powder or dried leaves of the blue-bottle, or corn flower, is given with good success to those that are bruised by a fall, or have broken a vein inwardly, and void much blood at the mouth; being taken in the water of plantain, horsetail, or the greater comfrey, it is a remedy against the poison of the scorpion, and resisteth all venoms and poison. The seed or leaves taken in wine, is very good against the plague, and all infectious diseases, and is very good in pestilential fevers. The juice put into fresh or green wounds, doth quickly solder up the lips of them together, and is very effectual to heal all ulcers and sores in the mouth. The juice dropped into the eyes takes away the heat and inflammation of them. The distilled water of this herb, hath the same properties, and may be used for the effects aforesaid.

BRANK URSINE.

BESIDE the common name brank-ursine, it is also called bears-breech, and acanthus, though I think our English names to be more proper; for the Greek word *acanthus*, signifies any thistle whatsoever.

Descript.] This thistle shooteth forth very many large, thick, and green smooth leaves upon the ground, with a very thick and juicy middle rib; the leaves are parted with sundry deep gashes on the edges; the leaves remain a long time before any stalk appears, afterwards a reasonable big stalk, three or four feet high, and bravely decked with flowers from the middle of the stalk upwards; for on the lower part of the stalk, there is neither branches nor leaf. The flowers are hooded and gaping, being white in colour, and standing in brownish husks, with a long small undivided leaf under each leaf; they seldom seed in our country. Its roots are many, great and thick, blackish without and whitish within, full of a clammy sap; a piece of them if you see it in the garden, and defend it from the first winter cold, will grow and flourish.

Place.] They are only nursed up in the gardens in England, where they will grow very well.

Time.] It flowereth in June and July.

Government and Virtues.] It is an excellent plant under the dominion of the Moon; I could wish such as are studious would labour to keep it in their gardens. The leaves being boiled and used in glisters, is excellent good to mollify the belly, and make the passage slippery. The decoction drank inwardly, is excellent and good for the bloody flux. The leaves being bruised, or rather boiled and applied like a poultice, are excellent good to unite broken bones and strengthen joints that have been put out. The decoction of either leaves or roots being drank, and the decoction of leaves applied to the place, is excellent good for the king's evil that is broken and runneth; for by the influence of the Moon, it reviveth the ends of the veins which are relaxed; there is scarce a better remedy to be applied to such places as are burnt with fire than this is, for it fetches out the fire and heals it without a scar. This is an excellent remedy for such as are bursten, being either taken inwardly, or applied to the place. In like manner used, it helps the cramp and the gout. It is excellent good in hectic fevers, and restores radical moisture to such as are in consumptions.

BRIONY, OR WILD VINE.

IT is called wild, and wood vine, tamus, or ladies' seal. The white is called white vine by some; and the black, black vine.

Descript.] The common white briony groweth ramping upon the hedges, sending forth many long, rough, very tender branches at the beginning, with many very rough, and broad leaves thereon, cut (for the most part into five partitions, in form like a vine leaf, but smaller, rough, and of a whitish hoary green colour, spreading very far and twining with his small claspers (that come forth at the joints with the leaves) very far on whatsoever standeth next to it. At the several joints also (especially towards the top of the branches) cometh forth a long stalk bearing many whitish flowers together on a long tuft, consisting of five small leaves a-piece, laid open like a star, after which come the berries separated one from another, more than a cluster of grapes, green at the first, and very red when they are thorough ripe, of no good scent, but of a most loathsome taste, provoking vomit. The root groweth to be exceeding great, with many long twines or branches going from it, of a pale whitish colour on the outside, and more white within, and of a sharp, bitter, loathsome taste.

Place.] It groweth on banks, or under hedges, through this land; the roots lie very deep.

Time.] It flowereth in July and August, some earlier and some later than the other.

Government and Virtues.] They are furious martial plants. The root of briony purges the belly with great violence, troubling the stomach and burning the liver, and therefore not rashly to be taken; but being corrected, is very profitable for the diseases of the head, as falling sickness, giddiness and swimmings, by drawing away much phlegm and rheumatic humours that oppress the head, as also the joints and sinews: and is therefore good for palsies, convulsions, cramps, and stitches in the sides, and the dropsy, and in provoking urine; it cleanseth the reins and kidneys from gravel and stone, by opening the obstructions of the spleen, and consumeth the hardness and swelling thereof. The decoction of the root in wine, drank once a week at going to bed, cleanseth the mother, and helpeth the rising thereof, expelleth the dead child; a dram of the root in powder taken in white wine, bringeth down the courses. An electuary made of the roots and honey, doth mightily cleanse the chest of rotten phlegm, and wonderfully help any old strong cough, to those that are troubled with shortness of breath, and is very good for them that are bruised inwardly, to help to expel the clotted or congealed blood. The leaves, fruit and root to cleanse old and filthy sores, are good against all fretting and running cankers, gangrenes, and tetters, and therefore the berries are by some country people called tetter-berries. The root cleanseth the skin wonderfully from all black and blue spots, freckles, morphew, leprosy, foul scars, or other deformity whatsoever; also all running scabs and manginess are healed by the powder of the dried root, or the juice thereof, but especially by the fine white hardened juice. The distilled water of the root worketh the same effects, but more weakly; the root bruised and applied of itself to any place where the bones are broken, helpeth to draw them forth, as also splinters and thorns in the flesh; and being applied with a little wine mixed therewith, it breaketh boils and helpeth whitlows on the joints. For all these latter, beginning at sores, cancers, &c. apply it outwardly, and take my advice in my translation of the London Dispensatory, among the preparations at the latter end, where you have a medicine called *Fecula Brionia*, which take and use, mixing it with a little hog's grease, or other convenient ointment.

As for the former diseases where it must be taken inwardly, it purgeth very violently, and needs an abler hand to correct it than most country people have; therefore it is a better way for them in my opinion to let the simple alone, and take the com-

pound water of it mentioned in my Dispensatory, and that is far more safe, being wisely corrected.

BROOK LIME, OR WATER-PIMPERNEL.

Descript.] THIS sendeth forth from a creeping root that shooteth forth strings at every joint, as it runneth, divers and sundry green stalks, round and sappy, with some branches on them, somewhat broad, round, deep green, and thick leaves set by couples thereon; from the bottom whereof shoot forth long foot-stalks, with sundry small blue flowers on them, that consist of five small round pointed leaves a piece.

There is another sort nothing differing from the former, but that it is greater, and the flowers of a paler green colour.

Place.] They grow in small standing waters, and usually near water cresses.

Time.] And flowers in June and July, giving seed the next month after.

Government and Virtues.] It is a hot and biting martial plant. Brook-lime and water-cresses are generally used together in diet-drink, with other things serving to purge the blood and body from all ill humours that would destroy health, and are helpful to the scurvy. They do all provoke urine, and help to break the stone, and pass it away; they procure women's courses, and expel the dead child. Being fried with butter and vinegar, and applied warm, it helpeth all manner of tumours, swellings, and inflammations.

Such drinks ought to be made of sundry herbs, according to the malady. I shall give a plain and easy rule at the latter end of this book.

BUTCHERS' BROOM.

IT is called ruscus, and bruscus, kneeholm, kneeholy, kneehulver, and pettigree.

Descript.] The first shoots that sprout from the root of butchers broom, are thick, whitish, and short, somewhat like those of asparagus, but greater, they rising up to be a foot and a half high, are spread into divers branches, green, and somewhat cressed with the roundness, tough and flexible, whereon are set somewhat broad and almost round hard leaves, and prickly, pointed at the end, of a dark green colour, two for the most part set at a place, very close and near together: about the middle of the leaf, on the back and lower side from the middle rib, breaketh forth a small whitish green flower, consisting of four small round pointed leaves, standing upon

little or no fook-stalk, and in the place whereof cometh a small berry, green at the first, and red when it is ripe, wherein are two or three white, hard, round seeds contained. The root is thick, white, and great at the head, and from thence sendeth forth divers thick, white, long, tough strings.

Place.] It groweth in copses, and upon heaths and waste grounds, and oftentimes under or near the holly bushes.

Time.] It shooteth forth its young buds in the spring, and the berries are ripe about September, the branches of leaves abiding green all the winter.

Government and Virtues.] It is a planet of Mars, being of a gallant cleansing and opening quality. The decoction of the root made with wine openeth obstruction, provoketh urine, helpeth to expel gravel and the stone, the strangury and women's courses, also the yellow jaundice and the head-ach: And with some honey or sugar put thereunto, cleanseth the breast of phlegm, and the chest of such clammy humours gathered therein. The decoction of the root drank, and a poultice made of the berries and leaves being applied, are effectual in knitting and consolidating broken bones or parts out of joint. The common way of using it, is to boil the root of it, and parsely and fennel and smallage in white wine, and drink the decoction, adding the like quantity of grass-root to them: The more of the root you boil, the stronger will the decoction be; it works no ill effects, yet I hope you have wit enough to give the strongest decoction to the strongest bodies.

BROOM, AND BROOM-RAPE.

TO spend time in writing a description hereof is altogether needless, it being so generally used by all the good housewives almost through this land to sweep their houses with, and therefore very well known to all sorts of people.

The broom-rape springeth up on many places from the roots of the broom (but more often in fields, as by hedge-sides and on heaths.) The stalk whereof is of the bigness of a finger or thumb, above two feet high, having a shew of leaves on them, and many flowers at the top, of a reddish yellow colour, as also the stalks and leaves are.

Place.] They grow in many places of this land commonly, and as commonly spoil all the land they grow in.

Time.] And flower in the summer months, and give their seed before winter.

Government and Virtues.] The juice or decoction of the young branches, or seed, or the powder of the seed taken in drink, purgeth downwards, and draweth phlegmatic and watery humours from the joints, whereby it helpeth the dropsy, gout,

sciatica, and pains of the hips and joints; it also provoketh strong vomits, and helpeth the pains of the sides, and swelling of the spleen, cleanseth also the reins or kidneys and bladder of the stone, provoketh urine abundantly, and hindereth the growing again of the stone in the body. The continual use of the powder of the leaves and seed doth cure the black jaundice. The distilled water of the flowers is profitable for all the same purposes: it also helpeth surfeits, and altereth the fits of agues, if three or four ounces thereof, with as much of the water of the lesser centaury, and a little sugar put therein, be taken a little before the fit cometh, and the party be laid down to sweat in his bed. The oil or water that is drawn from the end of the green sticks heated in the fire, helpeth the tooth-ach. The juice of young branches made into an ointment of old hog's grease, and anointed, or the young branches bruised and heated in oil or hog's grease, and laid to the sides pained by wind, as in stitches, or the spleen, easeth them in once or twice using it. The same boiled in oil is the safest and surest medicine to kill lice in the head or body of any; and is an especial remedy for joint aches, and swollen knees, that come by the falling down of humours.

The BROOM RAPE *also is not without its Virtues.*

The decoction thereof in wine, is thought to be as effectual to void the stone in the kidneys and bladder, and to provoke urine, as the broom itself. The juice thereof is a singular good help to cure as well green wounds, as old and filthy sores and malignant ulcers. The insolate oil, wherein there hath been three or four repetitions of infusion of the top stalks, with flowers strained and declared, cleanseth the skin from all manner of spots, marks, and freckles that rise either by the heat of the sun, or the malignity of humours. As for the broom and broom-rape, Mars owns them, and is exceedingly prejudicial, to the liver; I suppose by reason of the antipathy between Jupiter and Mars, therefore if the liver be disaffected, minister none of it.

BUCK'S-HORN PLANTAIN.

Descript.] THIS being sown of seed, riseth up at first with small, long, narrow, hairy, dark green leaves like grass, without any division or gash in them, but those that follow are gashed in on both sides the leaves into three or four gashes, and pointed at the ends, resembling the knags of a buck's horn, (whereof it took its name) and being well ground round about the root upon the ground, or order one by another, thereby resembling the form of a star, from among which rise

up divers hairy stalks about a hand's breadth high, bearing every one a long small, spikey head, like to those of the common plantain, having such like bloomings and seed after them. The root is single, long, and small, with divers strings at it.

Place.] They grow in sandy grounds, as in Tothillfields by Westminster, and divers other places of this land.

Time.] They flower and seed in May, June, and July, and their green leaves do in a manner abide fresh all the winter.

Government and Virtues.] It is under the dominion of Saturn, and is of a gallant drying and binding quality. This boiled in wine and drank, and some of the leaves put to the hurt place, is an excellent remedy for the biting of the viper or adder, which I take to be one and the same: The same being also drank, helpeth those that are troubled with the stone in the reins or kidneys, by cooling the heat of the parts afflicted, and strengthening them; also weak stomachs that cannot retain, but cast up their meat. It stayeth all bleeding both at mouth and nose; bloody urine, or the bloody-flux, and stoppeth the lask of the belly and bowels. The leaves hereof bruised and laid to their sides that have an ague, suddenly easeth the fit; and the leaves and roots being beaten with some bay-salt and applied to the wrists, worketh the same effects. The herb boiled in ale or wine, and given for some mornings and evenings together, stayeth the distillation of hot and sharp rheums falling into the eyes from the head, and helpeth all sorts of sore eyes.

BUCK'S HORN.

IT is called hart's-horn, herba-stella, and herba-stellaria, sanguinaria, herb-eve, herb-ivy, wort-tresses, and swine-cresses.

Descript.] They have many small and weak straggling branches trailing here and there upon the ground; the leaves are many, small and jagged, not much unlike to those of buck's-thorn plantain, but much smaller, and not so hairy. The flowers grow among the leaves in small, rough, whitish clusters: The seeds are smaller and brownish, of a bitter taste.

Place.] They grow in dry, barren, sandy grounds.

Time.] They flower and seed when the rest of the plantains do.

Government and Virtues.] This is also under the dominion of Saturn; the virtues are held to be the same as buck's-horn plantain, and therefore by all authors it is joined with it: The leaves bruised and applied to the place, stop bleeding; the herbs bruised and applied to warts, will make them consume and waste away in a short time.

BUGLE.

BESIDES the name bugle, it is called middle confound and middle comfrey, brown bugle, and by some sicklewort, and herb-carpenter; though in Essex we call another herb by that name.

Descript.] This hath larger leaves than those of the self-heal, but else of the same fashion, or rather longer in some green on the upper side, and in others more brownish, dented about the edges, somewhat hairy, as the square stalk is also which riseth up to be half a yard high sometimes, with the leaves set by couples, from the middle almost, whereof upwards stand the flowers, together with many smaller and browner leaves than the rest, on the stalk below set at distance, and the stalk bare between them; among which flowers are also small ones of a blueish and sometimes of an ash colour, fashioned like the flowers of ground-ivy, after which come small, round blackish seeds. The root is composed of many strings, and spreadeth upon the ground.

The white flowered bugle differeth not in form or greatness from the former, saving that the leaves and stalks are always green, and never brown, like the other, and the flowers thereof are white.

Place.] They grow in woods, copses, and fields, generally throughout England, but the white flowered bugle is not so plentiful as the former.

Time.] They flower from May until July, and in the mean time perfect their seed. The roots and leaves next thereunto upon the ground abiding all the winter.

Government and Virtues.] This herb belongeth to dame Venus: If the virtues of it make you fall in love with it (as they will if you be wise) keep a syrup of it to take inwardly, and an ointment and plaister of it to use outwardly, always by you.

The decoction of the leaves and flowers made in wine, and taken, dissolves the congealed blood in those that are bruised inwardly by a fall, or otherwise is very effectual for any inward wounds, thrusts or stabs in the body or bowels: and is an especial help in all wound-drinks, and for those that are liver-grown (as they call it.) It is wonderful in curing all manner of ulcers and sores, whether new and fresh, or old and inveterate; yea gangrenes and fistulas also, if the leaves bruised and applied, or their juice be used to wash and bathe the place, and the same made into a lotion, and some honey and allum, cureth all sores in the mouth and gums, be they never so foul, or of

long continuance; and worketh no less powerfully and effectually for such ulcers and sores as happen in the secret parts of men and women. Being also taken inwardly, or outwardly applied, it helpeth those that have broken any bone, or have any member out of joint. An ointment made with the leaves of bugle, scabions and saniele bruised and boiled in hog's grease, until the herbs be dry, and then strained forth into a pot for such occasions as shall require; it is so singularly good for all sorts of hurts in the body, that none that know its usefulness will be without it.

The truth is, I have known this herb cure some diseases of Saturn, of which I thought good to quote one. Many times such as give themselves much to drinking, are troubled with strange fancies, strange sights in the night time, and some with voices, as also with the disease ephialtes, or the mare. I take the reason of this to be (according to Fernelius) a melancholy vapour made thin by excessive drinking strong liquor, and so flies up and disturbs the fancy, and breeds imaginations like itself, viz. fearful and troublesome. These I have known cured by taking only two spoonfuls of the syrup of this herb, after supper two hours, when you go to bed. But whether this does it by sympathy or antipathy, is some doubt in astrology. I know there is a great antipathy between Saturn and Venus in matter of procreation; yea, such a one, that the barrenness of Saturn can be removed by none but Venus; nor the lust of Venus be repelled by none but Saturn; but I am not of opinion this is done this way, and my reason is, because these vapours, though in quality melancholy, yet by their flying upward, seem to be something aerial; therefore I rather think it is done by sympathy; Saturn being exalted in libra, in the house of Venus.

BURNET.

IT is called sanguisorbia, pimpinella, bipulo solbegrella, &c. The common garden burnet is so well known, that it needeth no description.—There is another sort which is wild, the description whereof take as followeth.

Descript.] The great wild burnet hath winged leaves rising from the roots like the garden burnet, but not so many; yet each of these leaves are at the least twice as large as the other, and nicked in the same manner about the edges, of a greyish colour on the under side; the stalks are greater, and rise higher, with many such like leaves set thereon, and greater heads at the top, of a brownish colour, and out of them come small dark purple flowers, like the former, but greater. The root is black and long like the other, but great also: it hath almost neither scent nor taste therein, like the garden kind.

Place.] The first grows frequently in gardens. The wild

kind groweth in divers countries of this island, especially in Huntingdon, in Northamptonshire, in the meadows there: as also near London, by Paneras church, and by a causeway-side in the middle of a field by Paddington.

Time.] They flower about the end of June, and beginning of July, and their seed is ripe in August.

Government and Virtues.] This is an herb the sun challengeth dominion over, and is a most precious herb, little inferior to betony; the continual use of it preserves the body in health, and the spirit in vigour; for if the sun be the preserver of life under God, his herbs are the best in the world to do it by. They are accounted to be both of one property, but the lesser is more effectual because quicker and more aromatical: It is a friend to the heart, liver, and other principal parts of a man's body. Two or three of the stalks, with leaves put into a cup of wine, especially claret, are known to quicken the spirits, refresh and clear the heart, and drive away melancholy: It is a special help to defend the heart from noisome vapours, and from infection of the pestilence, the juice thereof being taken in some drink, and the party laid to sweat thereupon. They have also a drying and an astringent quality, whereby they are available in all manner of fluxes of blood or humours, to staunch bleedings inward or outward, lasks, scourings, the bloody-flux, women's too abundant flux or courses, the whites, and the choleric belchings and castings of the stomach, and is a singular wound herb for all sorts of wounds, both of the head and body, either inward or outward, for all old ulcers, running cankers, and most sores, to be used either by the juice or decoction of the herb, or by the powder of the herb or root, or the water of the distilled herb or ointment by itself, or with other things to be kept. The seed is also no less effectual both to stop fluxes, and dry up moist sores, being taken in powder inwardly in wine, or steeled water, that is, wherein hot gads of steel have been quenched; or the powder, or the seed mixed with the ointments.

THE BUTTER-BUR, OR PETASITIS.

Descript.] THIS riseth up in February, with a thick stalk about a foot high, whereon are set a few small leaves, or rather pieces, and at the tops a long spiked head; flowers of a blush or deep red colour, according to the soil where it groweth, and before the stalk with the flowers have abiden a month above ground, it will be withered and gone, and blown away with the wind, and the leaves will begin to spring, which being full grown, are very large and broad, being somewhat thin and almost round, whose thick red footstalks above a foot long, stand towards the middle of the leaves. The lower part being

divided into two round parts, close almost one to another, and are of a pale green colour; and hairy underneath. The root is long, and spreadeth under ground, being in some places no bigger than one's finger, in others much bigger, blackish on the outside, and whitish within, of a bitter and unpleasant taste.

Place and Time.] They grow in low and wet grounds by rivers and water sides. Their flower (as is said) rising and decaying in February and March, before their leaves, which appear in April.

Government and Virtues.] It is under the dominion of the Sun, and therefore is a great strengthener of the heart, and cheerer of the vital spirits. The roots thereof are by long experience found to be very available against the plague and pestilential fevers by provoking sweat; if the powder thereof be taken in wine, it also resisteth the force of any other poison. The root hereof taken with zodoary and angelica, or without them, helps the rising of the mother. The decoction of the root in wine, is singularly good for those that wheeze much, or are short winded. It provoketh urine also, and women's courses, and killeth the flat and broad worms in the belly. The powder of the root doth wonderfully help to dry up the moisture of the sores that are hard to be cured, and taketh away all spots and blemishes of the skin. It were well if gentlewomen would keep this root preserved, to help their poor neighbours. *It is fit the rich should help the poor, for the poor cannot help themselves.*

THE BURDOCK.

THEY are also called personata, and loppy-major, great burdock and clod-bur; it is so well known, even by the little boys, who pull off the burs to throw and stick upon one another, that I shall spare to write any description of it.

Place.] They grow plentifully by ditches and water-sides, and by the highways almost every where through this land.

Government and Virtues.] Venus challengeth this herb for her own, and by its leaf or seed you may draw the womb which way you please, either upwards by applying it to the crown of the head, in case it falls out; or downwards in fits of the mother, by applying it to the soles of the feet; or if you would stay it in its place, apply it to the navel, and that is one good way to stay the child in it. See more of it in my *Guide for Women.* The burdock leaves are cooling, moderately drying, and discussing withal, whereby it is good for old ulcers and sores. A dram of the roots taken with pine-kernels, helpeth them that spit foul, mattery, and bloody phlegm. The leaves applied to the places troubled with the shrinking of the sinews or arteries, give much

ease. The juice of the leaves, or rather the roots themselves, given to drink with old wine, doth wonderfully help the biting of any serpents: And the root beaten with a little salt, and laid on the place, suddenly easeth the pain thereof, and helpeth those that are bit by a mad dog. The juice of the leaves being drank with honey, provoketh urine, and remedieth the pain of the bladder. The seed being drank in wine forty days together, doth wonderfully help the siatica. The leaves bruised with the white of an egg, and applied to any place burnt with fire, taketh out the fire, gives sudden ease, and heals it up afterwards. The decoction of them fomented on any fretting sore or canker, stayeth the corroding quality, which must be afterwards anointed with an ointment made of the same liquor, hog's-grease, nitre and vinegar boiled together. The roots may be preserved with sugar, and taken fasting, or at other times, for the same purposes, and for consumptions, the stone, and the lask. The seed is much commended to break the stone, and cause it to be expelled by urine, and is often used with other seeds and things to that purpose.

CABBAGES AND COLEWORTS.

I SHALL spare labour in writing a description of these, since almost every one that can but write at all, may describe them from his own knowledge, they being generally so well known, that descriptions are altogether needless.

Place.] They are generally planted in gardens.

Time.] Their flower time is towards the middle or end of July, and the seed is ripe in August.

Government and Virtues.] The cabbages or coleworts boiled gently in broth, and eaten, do open the body, but the second decoction doth bind the body. The juice thereof drank in wine, helpeth those that are bitten by an adder, and the decoction of the flowers bringeth down women's courses: Being taken with honey, it recovereth hoarseness, or loss of the voice. The often eating of them well boiled, helpeth those that are entering into a consumption. The pulp of the middle ribs of coleworts boiled in almond milk, and made up into an electuary with honey, being taken often, is very profitable for those that are puffy and short-winded. Being boiled twice, an old cock boiled in the broth and drank, it helpeth the pains, and the obstructions of the liver and spleen, and the stone in the kidneys. The juice boiled with honey, and dropped into the corner of the eyes, cleareth the sight, by consuming any film or cloud beginning to dim it; it also consumeth the canker growing therein. They are much commended, being eaten before meat to keep one from surfeiting, as also from being drunk with too much wine, or quickly make

a man sober again that is drunk before. For (as they say) there is such an antipathy or enmity between the vine and the coleworts, that the one will die where the other groweth. The decoction of coleworts taketh away the pain and ache, and allayeth the swellings of sores and gouty legs and knees, wherein many gross and watery humours are fallen, the place being bathed therewith warm. It helpeth also old and filthy sores, being bathed therewith, and healeth all small scabs, pushes, and wheals, that break out in the skin. The ashes of colewort stalks mixed with old hogs grease, are very effectual to anoint the sides of those that have had long pains therein, or any other place pained with melancholy and windy humours. This was surely Chrysippus's God, and therefore he wrote a volume of them and their virtues, and that none of the least neither, for he would be no small fool: He appropriates them to every part of the body, and to every disease in every part; and honest old Cato (they say) used no other physic. I know not what metal their bodies were made of; this I am sure, cabbages are extremely windy, whether you take them as meat or as medicine: yea, as windy meat as can be eaten, unless you eat bag-pipes or bellows, and they are but seldom eaten in our days; and colewort flowers are something more tolerable, and the wholesomer food of the two. The Moon challengeth the dominion of the herb.

THE SEA COLEWORTS.

Descript.] THIS hath divers somewhat long and broad large and thick wrinkled leaves, somewhat crumpled about the edges, and growing each upon a thick footstalk, very brittle, of a greyish green colour, from among which riseth up a strong thick stalk, two feet high, and better, with some leaves thereon to the top, where it branches forth much; and on every branch standeth a large bush of pale whitish flowers, consisting of four leaves a-piece: The root is somewhat great, shooteth forth many branches under ground, keeping the leaves green all the winter.

Place.] They grow in many places upon the sea-coasts, as well on the Kentish as Essex shores; as at Lid in Kent, Colchester in Essex, and divers other places, and in other countries of this land.

Time.] They flower and seed about the time that other kinds do.

Government and Virtues.] The Moon claims the dominion of these also. The broth, or first decoction of the sea colewort, doth by the sharp, nitrous, and bitter qualities therein, open the belly, and purge the body; it cleanseth and digests more powerfully than the other kind: The seed hereof bruised and drank

killeth the worms. The leaves or the juice of them applied to sores or ulcers, cleanseth and healeth them, and dissolveth swellings, and taketh away inflammations.

CALAMINT, OR MOUNTAIN-MINT.

Descript.] THIS is a small herb, seldom rising above a foot high, with square hairy, and woody stalks, and two small hoary leaves set at a joint, about the bigness of marjoram, or not much bigger, a little dented about the edges, and of a very fierce or quick scent, as the whole herb is. The flowers stand at several spaces of the stalks, from the middle almost upwards, which are small and gaping like to those of mints, and of a pale blueish colour: After which follow small, round blackish seeds. The root is small and woody, with divers small strings spreading within the ground, and dieth not, but abideth many years.

Place.] It groweth on heaths, and uplands, and dry grounds in many places of this land.

Time.] They flower in July, and their seed is ripe quickly after.

Government and Virtues.] It is an herb of Mercury, and a strong one too, therefore excellent good in all afflictions of the brain; the decoction of the herb being drank, bringeth down women's courses, and provoketh urine. It is profitable for those that are bursten, or troubled with convulsions or cramps, with shortness of breath, or choleric torments and pains in their bellies or stomach; it also helpeth the yellow-jaundice, and stayeth vomiting, being taken in wine. Taken with salt and honey, it killeth all manner of worms in the body. It helpeth such as have the leprosy, either taken inwardly, drinking whey after it, or the green herb outwardly applied. It hindereth conception in women, but either burned or strewed in the chamber, it driveth away venomous serpents. It takes away black and blue marks in the face, and maketh black scars become well coloured, if the green herb (not the dry) be boiled in wine, and laid to the place, or the place washed therewith. Being applied to the huckle-bone, by continuance of time, it spends the humours, which cause the pain of the sciatica. The juice being dropped into the ears, killeth the worms in them. The leaves boiled in wine, and drank, provoke sweat, and open obstructions of the liver and spleen. It helpeth them that have a tertian ague (the body being first purged) by taking away the cold fits. The decoction hereof, with some sugar put thereto afterwards, is very profitable for those that are troubled with the overflowing of the gall, and that have an old cough, and that are scarce able to breathe by shortness of their wind; that have any cold distemper in their bowels, and are troubled with the hardness of the

spleen, for all which purposes, both the powder, called diacalaminthes, and the compound syrup of calamint (which are to be had at the apothecaries) are the most effectual. Let not women be too busy with it, for it works very violent upon the feminine part.

CAMOMILE.

IT is so well known every where, that it is but lost time and labour to describe it. The virtues thereof are as followeth:

A decoction made of camomile, and drank, taketh away all pains and stitches in the side. The flowers of camomile beaten, and made up into balls with gil, drive away all sorts of agues, if the part grieved be anointed with that oil, taken from the flowers, from the crown of the head to the sole of the foot, and afterwards laid to sweat in his bed, and that he sweats well. This is Nechessor, an Egyptian's medicine. It is profitable for all sorts of agues that come either from phlegm, or melancholy, or from an inflammation of the bowels, being applied when the humours causing them shall be concocted; and there is nothing more profitable to the sides and region of the liver and spleen than it. The bathing with a decoction of camomile taketh away weariness, easeth pains, to what part of the body soever they be applied. It comforteth the sinews that are over-strained, molifieth all swellings: It moderately comforteth all parts that have need of warmth, digesteth and dissolveth whatsoever hath need thereof, by a wonderful speedy property. It easeth all the pains of the cholic and stone, and all pains and torments of the belly, and gently provoketh urine. The flowers boiled in posset-drink provoke sweat, and help to expel all colds, aches and pains whatsoever, and is an excellent help to bring down women's courses. Syrup made of the juice of camomile, with the flowers in white wine, is a remedy against the jaundice and dropsy. The flowers boiled in lee, are good to wash the head, and comfort both it and the brain. The oil made of the flowers of camomile, is much used against all hard swellings, pains or aches, shrinking of the sinews, or cramps, or pains in the joints, or any other part of the body. Being used in glysters, it helps to dissolve the wind and pains in the belly; anointed also, it helpeth stitches and pains in the sides.

Nechessor saith, the Egyptians dedicated it to the Sun, because it cured agues, and they were like enough to do it, for they were the arrantest apes in their religion I ever read of. Bachinus, Bena, and Lobel, commend the syrup made of the juice of it and sugar, taken inwardly, to be excellent for the spleen. Also this is certain, that it most wonderfully breaks the stone: Some take it

in syrup or decoction, others inject the juice of it into the bladder with a syringe. ' My opinion is, that the salt of it taken half a dram in the morning in a little white or rhenish wine, is better than either; that it is excellent for the stone, appears in this which I have seen tied, viz. that a stone that hath been taken out of the body of a man being wrapped in camomile, will in time dissolve, and in a little time too.

WATER CALTROPS.

THEY are called also tribulus aquaticus, tribulus lacusoris, tribulus marinus, caltrops, saligos, water nuts, and water chesnuts.

Descript.] As for the greater sort of water caltrop it is not found here, or very rarely. Two other sorts there are which I shall here describe. The first hath a long creeping and jointed root, sending forth tufts at each joint, from which joints arise long, flat, slender knotted stalks, even to the top of the water, divided towards the top into many branches, each carrying two leaves on both sides, being about two inches long, and half an inch broad, thin, and almost transparent, they look as though they were torn; the flowers are long, thick and whitish, set together almost like a bunch of grapes, which being gone there succeeds for the most part sharp-pointed grains altogether, containing a small white kernel in them.

The second differs not much from this, save that it delights in more clear water; its stalks are not flat, but round: its leaves are not so long, but more pointed; as for the place we need not determine, for their name sheweth they grow in the water.

Government and Virtues.] They are under the dominion of the Moon, and being made into a poultice, are excellent good for hot inflammations, swellings, cankers, sore mouths and throats, being washed with the decoction; it cleanseth and strengtheneth the neck and throat, and helps those swellings, which, when people have, they say the almonds of their ears are fallen down; it is excellent good for the rankness of the gums, a safe and present remedy for the king's evil; they are excellent good for the stone and gravel, especially the nuts being dried; they also resist poison, and bitings of venomous beasts.

CAMPION WILD.

Descript.] THE wild white campion hath many long and somewhat broad, dark green leaves, lying upon the ground, and divers ribs therein, somewhat like plantain, but somewhat hairy, broader, but not so long: The hairy stalks rise

up in the middle of them three or four feet high, and sometimes more, with divers great white joints at several places thereon, and two such like leaves thereat up to the top, sending forth branches at several joints also: All which bear on several foot-stalks, white flowers at the tops of them, consisting of five broad pointed leaves, every one cut in on the end unto the middle, making them seem to be two a-piece, smelling somewhat sweet, and each of them standing in a large green striped hairy husk, large and round below next to the stalk. The seed is small and greyish in the hard heads that come up afterwards. The root is white and long, spreading divers fangs in the ground.

The red wild campion groweth in the same manner as the white, but his leaves are not so plainly ribbed, somewhat shorter, rounder, and more woolly in handling. The flowers are of the same form and bigness; but in some of a pale, in others of a bright red colour, cut in at the ends more finely, which makes the leaves look more in number than the other. The seeds and the roots are alike, the roots of both sorts abiding many years.

There are forty-five kinds of campion more, those of them which are of a physical use, having the like virtues with those above described, which I take to be the two chiefest kinds.

Place.] They grow commonly through this land by fields and hedge-sides and ditches.

Time.] They flower in summer, some earlier than others, and some abiding longer than others.

Government and Virtues.] They belong unto Saturn, and it is found by experience, that the decoction of the herb, either in white or red wine being drank, doth stay inward bleedings, and applied outwardly, it doth the like; and being drank, helpeth to expel urine being stopped, and gravel or stone in the reins or kidneys. Two drams of the seed drank in wine, purgeth the body of choleric humours, and helpeth those that are stung by scorpions, or other venomous beasts, and may be as effectual for the plague. It is of very good use in old sores, ulcers, cankers, fistulas, and the like, to cleanse and heal them, by consuming the moist humours falling into them, and correcting the putrefaction of humours offending them.

CARDUUS BENEDICTUS.

IT is called carduus benedictus, or blessed thistle, or holy thistle; I suppose the name was put upon it by some that had little holiness in themselves.

I shall spare labour in writing a description of this, as almost every one that can write at all, may describe them from his own knowledge.

Time.] They flower in August, and seed not long after.

Government and Virtues.] It is an herb of Mars, and under the sign of Aries. Now, in handling this herb, I shall give you a rational pattern of all the rest; and if you please to view them throughout the book, you shall, to your content, find it true. It helps swimming and giddiness of the head, or the disease called vertigon, because Aries is in the house of Mars. It is an excellent remedy against the yellow jaundice and other infirmities of the gall, because Mars governs choler. It strengthens the attractive faculty in man, and clarifies the blood, because the one is ruled by Mars. The continually drinking the decoction of it, helps red faces, tetters, and ring worms, because Mars causeth them. It helps the plague, sores, boils, and itch, the bitings of mad-dogs and venomous beasts, all which infirmities are under Mars; thus you see what it doth by sympathy.

By antipathy to other planets it cures the French pox. By antipathy to Venus, who governs it, it strengthens the memory, and cures deafness by antipathy to Saturn, who hath his fall in Aries, which rules the head. It cures quartan agues, and other diseases of melancholy, and adjusts choler, by sympathy to Saturn, Mars being exalted in Capricorn. Also it provokes urine, the stopping of which is usually caused by Mars or the Moon.

CARROTS.

GARDEN carrots are so well known, that they need no description; but because they are of less physical use than the wild kind (as indeed almost in all herbs the wild are most effectual in physic, as being more powerful in operation than the garden kinds,) I shall therefore briefly describe the wild carrot.

Descript.] It groweth in a manner altogether like the tame, but that the leaves and stalks are somewhat whiter and rougher. The stalks bear large tufts of white flowers, with a deep purple spot in the middle, which are contracted together when the seed begins to ripen, that the middle part being hollow and low, and the outward stalk rising high, maketh the whole umbel to shew like a bird's nest. The roots small, long and hard, and unfit for meat, being somewhat sharp and strong.

Place.] The wild kind groweth in divers parts of this land plentifully by the field-sides, and untilled places.

Time.] They flower and seed in the end of summer.

Government and Virtues.] Wild carrots belong to Mercury, and therefore break wind, and remove stitches in the sides, provoke urine and women's courses, and helpeth to break and expel the stone; the seed also of the same worketh the like effect,

and is good for the dropsy, and those whose bellies are swoln with wind; helpeth the cholic, the stone in the kidneys, and rising of the mother; being taken in wine, or boiled in wine, and taken, it helpeth conception. The leaves being applied with honey to running sores or ulcers, do cleanse them.

I suppose the seeds of them perform this better than the roots; and though Galen commended garden carrots highly to break wind, yet experience teacheth they breed it first, and we may thank nature for expelling it, not they; the seeds of them expel wind indeed, and so mend what the root mareth.

CARRAWAY.

Descript.] IT beareth divers stalks of fine cut leaves, lying upon the ground, somewhat like to the leaves of carrots, but not bushing so thick, of a little quick taste in them, from among which riseth up a square stalk, not so high as the carrot, at whose joints are set the like leaves, but smaller and fitter, and at the top small open tufts, or umbels of white flowers, which turn into small blackish seed, smaller than the aniseed, and of a quicker and better taste. The root is whitish, small and long, somewhat like unto a parsnip, but with more wrinkled bark, and much less, of a little hot and quick taste, and stronger than the parsnip, and abideth after seed-time.

Place.] It is usually sown with us in gardens.

Time.] They flower in June and July, and seed quickly after.

Government and Virtues.] This is also a Mercurial plant. Carraway seed hath a moderate sharp quality, whereby it breaketh wind, and provoketh urine, which also the herb doth. The root is better food than the parsnips; it is pleasant and comfortable to the stomach, and helpeth digestion. The seed is conducing to all cold griefs of the head and stomach, bowels, or mother, as also the wind in them, and helpeth to sharpen the eye-sight. The powder of the seed put into a poultice, taketh away black and blue spots of blows and bruises. The herb itself, or with some of the seed bruised and fried, laid hot in a bag or double cloth, to the lower parts of the belly, easeth the pains of the wind cholic.

The roots of carraway eaten as men eat parsnips, strengthen the stomachs of ancient people exceedingly, and they need not to make a whole meal of them neither, and are fit to be planted in every garden.

Carraway confects, once only dipped in sugar, and a spoonful of them eaten in the morning fasting, and as many after each meal, is a most admirable remedy for those that are troubled with wind.

CELANDINE.

Descript.] THIS hath divers tender, round, whitish green stalks, with greater joints than ordinary in other herbs, as it were knees, very brittle and easy to break, from whence grow branches with large tender broad leaves, divided into many parts, each of them cut in on the edges, set at the joint on both sides of the branches, of a dark blueish green colour, on the upper side like columbines, and of a more pale blueish green underneath, full of yellow sap when any part is broken, of a bitter taste, and strong scent. The root is somewhat great at the head, shooting forth divers long roots and small strings, reddish on the outside, and yellow within, full of yellow sap therein.

Place.] They grow in many places by old walls, hedges, and way-sides, in untilled places; and being once planted in a garden, especially some shady places, it will remain there.

Time.] They flower all the summer long, and the seed ripeneth in the mean time.

Government and Virtues.] This is an herb of the Sun, and under the celestial Lion, and is one of the best cures for the eyes: for, all that know any thing in astrology, know that the eyes are subject to the luminaries: let it then be gathered when the Sun is in Leo, and the Moon in Aries, applying to this time; let Leo arise, then may you make it into an oil or ointment, which you please, to anoint your sore eyes with: I can prove it doth both by my own experience, and the experience of those to whom I have taught it, that most desperate sore ones have been cured by this only medicine; and then I pray, is not this far better than endangering the eyes by the art of the needle? For if this doth not absolutely take away the film, it will so facilitate the work, that it might be done without danger. The herb or root boiled in white wine and drank, a few anniseeds being boiled therewith, openeth obstructions of the liver and gall, helpeth the yellow jaundice; and often using it, helps the dropsy and the itch, and those that have old sores in their legs, or other parts of the body. The juice thereof taken fasting, is held to be of singularly good use against the pestilence. The distilled water, with a little sugar, and a little good treacle mixed therewith (the party upon the taking being laid down to sweat a little) hath the same effect. The juice dropped in the eyes, cleanseth them from films and cloudiness which darken the sight, but it is best to allay the sharpness of the juice with a little breast milk. It is good in all old filthy, corroding, creeping ulcers wheresoever, to stay their malignity of fretting and running, and to cause them to heal more speedily. The juice often applied to tetters, ring-worms, or other such like spreading cankers, will quickly heal them, and

rubbed often upon warts, will take them away. The herb with the roots bruised and bathed with oil of camomile, and applied to the navel, taketh away the griping pains in the belly and bowels, and all the pains of the mother; and applied to women's breasts, stayeth the overmuch flowing of the courses. The juice or decoction of the herb gargled between the teeth that ach, easeth the pain, and the powder of the dried root laid upon any aching, hollow or loose tooth, will cause it to fall out. The juice mixed with some powder of brimstone is not only good against the itch, but taketh away all discolourings of the skin whatsoever; and if it chance that in a tender body it causeth any itchings or inflammations, by bathing the place with a little vinegar it is helped.

Another ill-favoured trick have physicians got to use to the eye, and that is worse than the needle; which is, to take away films by corroding or gnawing medicines. This I absolutely protest against;

1. Because the tunicles of the eyes are very thin, and therefore soon eaten asunder.

2. The callus or film that they would eat away, is seldom of an equal thickness in every place, and then the tunicle may be eaten asunder in one place, before the film be consumed in another, and so be a readier way to extinguish the sight than to restore it.

It is called chelidonium, from the Greek word χελιδων, which signifies a swallow, because they say, that if you put out the eyes of young swallows when they are in the nest, the old ones will recover their eyes again with this herb. This I am confident, for I have tried it, that if we mar the very apple of their eyes with a needle, she will recover them again; but whether with this herb or not, I know not.

Also I have read (and it seems to be somewhat probable) that the herb, being gathered as I shewed before, and the elements drawn apart from it by art of the alchymist, and after they are drawn apart rectified, the earthy quality, still in rectifying them, added to the *terra damnata* (as alchymists call it) or *terra sacratissima* (as some philosophers call it) the elements so rectified are sufficient for the cure of all diseases, the humours offending being known, and the contrary elements given: It is an experiment worth the trying, and can do no harm.

The LESSER CELANDINE, *usually known by the names of* PILEWORT, AND FOGWORT.

I WONDER what ailed the ancients to give this the name of celandine, which resembles it neither in nature nor form; it acquired the name of pilewort from its virtues, and it being no

great matter where I set it down, so I set it down at all, I humoured Dr. Tradition so much, as to set him down here.

Descript.] This celandine or pilewort (which you please) douth spread many round pale green leaves, set on weak and trailing branches, which lie upon the ground and are flat, smooth, and somewhat shining, and in some places (though seldom) marked with black spots, each standing on a long foot-stalk, among which rise small yellow flowers, consisting of nine or ten small narrow leaves, upon slender foot-stalks, very like unto crowsfoot, whereunto the seed also is not unlike, being many small kernels like a grain of corn, sometimes twice as long as others, of a whitish colour, with some fibres at the end of them.

Place.] It groweth for the most part in moist corners of fields and places that are near water sides, yet will abide in drier ground if they be but a little shady.

Time.] It flowereth betimes about March or April, is quite gone by May; so it cannot be found till it spring again.

Government and Virtues.] It is under the dominion of Mars, and behold here another verification of the learning of the ancients, *viz.* that the virtue of an herb may be known by its signature, as plainly appears in this; for if you dig up the root of it, you shall perceive the perfect image of the disease which they commonly call the piles. It is certain by good experience, that the decoction of the leaves and roots doth wonderfully help piles and hæmorrhoides, also kernels by the ears and throat, called the king's evil, or any other hard wens or tumours.

Here is another secret for my countrymen and women, a couple of them together; pilewort made into an oil, ointment, or plaister, readily cures both the piles, or hæmorrhoides, and the king's evil: The very herb borne about one's body next the skin helps in such diseases, though it never touch the place grieved; let poor people make much of it for those uses; with this I cured my own daughter of the king's evil, broke the sore, drew out a quarter of a pint of corruption, cured without any scar at all in one week's time.

THE ORDINARY SMALL CENTAURY.

Descript.] THIS groweth up most usually but with one round and somewhat crusted stalk, about a foot high or better, branching forth at the top into many sprigs, and sometimes from the joints of the stalks below; the flowers thus stand at the tops as it were in one umbel or tuft, are of a pale red, tending to carnation colour, consisting of five, sometimes six small leaves, very like those of St. John's wort, opening themselves in the day time and closing at night, after which

come seeds in little short nusks, in form like unto wheat corn. The leaves are small and somewhat round; the root small and hard, perishing every year. The whole plant is of an exceeding bitter taste.

There is another sort in all things like the former, save only it beareth white flowers.

Place.] They grow ordinarily in fields, pastures and woods, but that with the white flowers not so frequently as the other.

Time.] They flower in July or thereabouts, and seed within a month after.

Government and Virtues.] They are under the dominion of the sun, as appears in that their flowers open and shut as the sun either sheweth or hideth its face. This herb, boiled and drank, purgeth choleric and gross humours, and helpeth the sciatica; it openeth obstructions of the liver, gall, and spleen, helpeth the jaundice, and easeth the pains in the sides and hardness of the spleen, used outwardly, and is given with very good effect in agues. It helpeth those that have the dropsy, or the green-sickness, being much used by the Italians in powder for that purpose. It killeth the worms in the belly, as is found by experience. The decoction thereof, *viz.* the tops of the stalks, with the leaves and flowers, is good against the cholic, and to bring down women's courses, helpeth to avoid the dead birth, and easeth pains of the mother, and is very effectual in all old pains of the joints, as the gout, cramps, or convulsions. A dram of the powder thereof taken in wine, is a wonderful good help against the biting and poison of an adder. The juice of the herb with a little honey put to it, is good to clear the eyes from dimness, mists and clouds that offend or hinder sight. It is singularly good both for green and fresh wounds, as also for old ulcers and sores, to close up the one, and cleanse the other, and perfectly to cure them both, although they are hollow or fistulous; the green herb especially being bruised and laid thereto. The decoction thereof dropped into the ears, cleanseth them from worms, cleanseth the foul ulcers and spreading scabs of the head, and taketh away all freckles, spots, and marks in the skin, being washed with it; the herb is so safe you cannot fail in the using of it, only giving it inwardly for inward diseases. 'Tis very wholesome, but not very toothsome.

There is, besides these, another small centaury, which beareth a yellow flower; in all other respects it is like the former, save that the leaves are bigger, and of a darker green, and the stalk passeth through the midst of them, as it doth the herb thorowan. They are all of them, as I told you, under the government of the Sun; yet this, if you observe it, you shall find an excellent truth; in diseases of the blood, use the red cen-

taury; if of choler, use the yellow; but if phlegm or water, you will find the white best.

THE CHERRY-TREE.

I SUPPOSE there are few but know this tree, for its fruit's sake; and therefore I shall spare writing a description thereof.

Place.] For the place of its growth, it is afforded room in every orchard.

Government and Virtues.] It is a tree of Venus. Cherries, as they are of different tastes, so they are of different qualities. The sweet pass through the stomach and the belly more speedily, but are of little nourishment; the tart or sour are more pleasing to an hot stomach, procure appetite to meat, and help to cut tough phlegm, and gross humours; but when these are dried, they are more binding to the belly than when they are fresh, being cooling in hot diseases, and welcome to the stomach, and provoke urine. The gum of the cherry-tree, dissolved in wine, is good for a cold, cough, and hoarseness of the throat; mendeth the colour in the face, sharpeneth the eye-sight, provoketh appetite, and helpeth to break and expel the stone; the black cherries bruised with the stones, and dissolved, the water thereof is much used to break the stone, and to expel gravel and wind.

WINTER-CHERRIES.

Descript.] THE winter cherry hath a running or creeping root in the ground, of the bigness many times of one's little finger, shooting forth at several joints in several places, whereby it quickly spreads over a great compass of ground. The stalk riseth not above a yard high, whereon are set many broad and long green leaves, somewhat like nightshade, but larger; at the joints whereof come forth whitish flowers made of five leaves a-piece, which afterwards turn into green berries inclosed with thin skins, which change to be reddish when they grow ripe, the berry likewise being reddish, and as large as a cherry; wherein are contained many flat and yellowish seeds lying within the pulp, which being gathered and strung up, are kept all the year to be used upon occasion.

Place.] They grow not naturally in this land, but are cherished in gardens for their virtues.

Time.] They flower not until the middle or latter end of July; and the fruit is ripe about August, or the beginning of September.

Government and Virtues.] This also is a plant of Venus.

They are of great use in physic: The leaves being cooling, may be used in inflammations, but not opening as the berries and fruit are: which by drawing down the urine, provoke it to be avoided plentifully when it is stopped or grown hot, sharp, and painful in the passage; it is good also to expel the stone and gravel out of the reins, kidneys and bladder, helping to dissolve the stone, and voiding it by grit or gravel sent forth in the urine; it also helpeth much to cleanse inward imposthumes or ulcers in the reins or bladder, or in those that void a bloody or foul urine. The distilled water of the fruit, or the leaves together with them, or the berries, green or dry, distilled with a little milk and drank morning and evening with a little sugar, is effectual to all the purposes before specified, and especially against the heat and sharpness of the urine. I shall only mention one way, amongst many others, which might be used for ordering the berries, to be helpful for the urine and the stone; which is this: Take three or four good handfuls of the berries, either green or fresh, or dried, and having bruised them, put them into so many gallons of beer or ale when it is new tunned up: This drink, taken daily, hath been found to do much good to many, both to ease the pains, and expel urine and the stone, and to cause the stone not to engender. The decoction of the berries in wine and water is the most usual way; but the powder of them taken in drink is more effectual.

CHERVIL.

IT is called cerefolium, mirrhis, and mirrha, chervel, sweet chervil, and sweet cicely.

Descript.] The garden chervil doth at first somewhat resemble parsley, but after it is better grown, the leaves are much cut in and jagged, resembling hemlock, being a little hairy and of a whitish green colour, sometimes turning reddish in the summer, with the stalks also; it riseth a little above half a foot high, bearing white flowers in spiked tufts, which turn into long and round seeds pointed at the ends, and blackish when they are ripe; of a sweet taste, but no smell, though the herb itself smelleth reasonably well. The root is small and long, and perisheth every year, and must be sown a-new in spring, for seed after July or autumn fails.

The wild chervil groweth two or three feet high, with yellow stalks and joints, set with broader and more hairy leaves, divided into sundry parts, nicked about the edges, and of a dark green colour, which likewise grow reddish with the stalks; at the tops whereof stand small white tufts of flowers, afterwards smaller and longer seed. The root is white, hard, and enduring long. This hath little or no scent.

Place.] The first is sown in gardens for a sallet herb; the second groweth wild in many of the meadows of this land, and by the hedge sides, and on heaths.

Time.] They flower and seed early, and thereupon are sown again in the end of summer.

Government and Virtues.] The garden chervil being eaten, doth moderately warm the stomach, and is a certain remedy (saith Tragus) to dissolve congealed or clotted blood in the body, or that which is clotted by bruises, falls, &c. The juice or distilled water thereof being drank, and the bruised leaves laid to the place, being taken either in meat or drink, it is good help to provoke urine, or expel the stone in the kidneys, to send down women's courses, and to help the pleurisy and pricking of the sides.

The wild chervil bruised and applied, dissolveth swellings in any part, or the marks of congealed blood by bruises or blows, in a little space.

SWEET CHERVIL, OR SWEET CICELY.

Descript.] THIS groweth very like the great hemlock, having large spread leaves cut into divers parts, but of a fresher green colour than the hemlock, tasting as sweet as the anniseed. The stalks rise up a yard high, or better, being cressed or hollow, having leaves at the joints, but lesser; and at the tops of the branched stalks, umbels or tufts of white flowers; after which comes large and long crested black shining seed, pointed at both ends, tasting quick, yet sweet and pleasant. The root is great and white, growing deep in the ground, and spreading sundry long branches therein, in taste and smell stronger than the leaves or seeds, and continuing many years.

Place.] This groweth in gardens.

Government and Virtues.] These are all three of them of the nature of Jupiter, and under his dominion. This whole plant, besides its pleasantness in sallets, hath its physical virtue. The root boiled, and eaten with oil and vinegar, (or without oil) do much please and warm old and cold stomachs oppressed with wind or phlegm, or those that have the phthisic or consumption of the lungs. The same drank with wine is a preservation from the plague. It provoketh women's courses, and expelleth the after-birth, procureth an appetite to meat, and expelleth wind. The juice is good to heal the ulcers of the head and face; the candied roots hereof are held as effectual as angelica, to preserve from infection in the time of a plague, and to warm and comfort a cold weak stomach. It is so harmless, you cannot use it amiss,

CHESNUT TREE.

IT were as needless to describe a tree so commonly known as to tell a man he had gotten a mouth; therefore take the government and virtues of them thus:

The tree is abundantly under the dominion of Jupiter, and therefore the fruit must needs breed good blood, and yield commendable nourishment to the body; yet, if eaten over-much, they make the blood thick, procure head-ach, and bind the body; the inner skin, that covereth the nut, is of so binding a quality, that a scruple of it being taken by a man, or ten grains by a child, soon stops any flux whatsoever: The whole nut being dried and beaten into powder, and a dram taken at a time, is a good remedy to stop the terms in women. If you dry chesnuts, (only the kernels I mean) both the barks being taken away, beat them into powder, and make the powder up into an electuary with honey, so have you an admirable remedy for the cough and spitting of blood.

EARTH CHESNUTS.

THEY are called earth-nuts, earth chesnuts, ground nuts, ciper-nuts, and in Sussex pig-nuts. A description of them were needless, for every child knows them.

Government and Virtues.] They are something hot and dry in quality, under the dominion of Venus, they provoke lust exceedingly, and stir up to those sports she is mistress of; the seed is excellent good to provoke urine; and so also is the root, but it doth not perform it so forcibly as the seed doth. The root being dried and beaten into powder, and the powder being made into an electuary is as singular a remedy for spitting and pissing of blood, as the former chesnut was for coughs.

CHICKWEED.

IT is so generally known to most people, that I shall not trouble you with the description thereof, nor myself with setting forth the several kinds, since but only two or three are considerable for their usefulness.

Place.] They are usually found in moist and watery places, by wood sides, and elsewhere.

Time.] They flower about June, and their seed is ripe in July.

Government and Virtues.] It is a fine soft pleasing herb under the dominion of the Moon. It is found to be effectual as purslain to all the purposes whereunto it serveth, except for meat

only. The herb bruised, or the juice applied (with cloths or sponges dipped therein) to the region of the liver, and as they dry, to have it fresh applied, doth wonderfully temperate the heat of the liver, and is effectual for all imposthumes and swellings whatsoever, for all redness in the face, wheals, pushes, itch, scabs; the juice either simply used or boiled with hog's grease and applied, helpeth cramps convulsions, and palsy. The juice, or distilled water, is of much good use for all heats and redness in the eyes, to drop some thereof into them; as also into the ears, to ease pains in them; and is of good effect to ease pains from the heat and sharpness of the blood in the piles, and generally all pains in the body, that arise from heat. It is used also in hot and virulent ulcers and sores in the privy parts of men or women, or on the legs, or elsewhere. The leaves boiled with marsh-mallows, and made into a poultice with fenugreek and linseed, applied to swellings or imposthumes, ripen and break them, or assuage the swellings and ease the pains. It helpeth the sinews when they are shrunk by cramps, or otherwise, and to extend and make them pliable again by this medicine. Boil a handful of chickweed, and a handful of red rose leaves dried, in a quart of muscadine, until a fourth part be consumed; then put to them a pint of oil of trotters or sheep's feet; let them boil a good while, still stirring them well; which being strained, anoint the grieved place therewith, warm against the fire, rubbing it well with one hand: and bind also some of the herb (if you will) to the place, and, with God's blessing, it will help it in three times dressing.

CHICK-PEASE, OR CICERS.

Descript.] THE garden sorts, whether red, black, or white, bring forth stalks a yard long, whereon do grow many small and almost round leaves, dented about the edges, set on both sides of a middle rib: At the joints come forth one or two flowers, upon sharp foot-stalks, pease-fashion, either white or whitish, or purplish red, lighter or deeper, according as the pease that follow will be, that are contained in small, thick, and short pods, wherein lie one or two pease, more usually pointed at the lower end, and almost round at the head, yet a little cornered or sharp; the root is small, and perisheth yearly.

Place and Time.] They are sown in gardens or fields, as pease, being sown later than pease, and gathered at the same time with them, or presently after.

Government and Virtues.] They are both under the dominion of Venus. They are less windy than beans, but nourish more; they provoke urine, and are thought to increase sperm; they have a cleansing faculty, whereby they break the stone in

the kidneys. To drink the cream of them, being boiled in water, is the best way. It moves the belly downwards, provokes women's courses and urine, increases both milk and seed. One ounce of cicers, two ounces of French barley, and a small handful of marsh-mallow roots, clean washed and cut, being boiled in the broth of a chicken, and four ounces taken in the morning, and fasting two hours after, is a good medicine for pain in the sides. The white cicers are used more for meat than medicine, yet have the same effect, and are thought more powerful to increase milk and seed. The wild cicers are so much more powerful than the garden kinds, by how much they exceed them in heat and dryness; whereby they do more open obstructions, break the stone, and have all the properties of cutting, opening, digesting, and dissolving; and this more speedily and certainly than the former.

CINQUEFOIL, OR, FIVE-LEAVED GRASS, *called in some Counties*, FIVE-FINGERED GRASS.

Descript.] IT spreads and creeps far upon the ground, with long slender strings like strawberries, which take root again, and shoot forth many leaves, made of five parts, and sometimes of seven, dented about the edges, and somewhat hard. The stalks are slender, leaning downwards, and bear many small yellow flowers thereon, with some yellow threads in the middle, standing about a smooth green head, which, when it is ripe, is a little rough, and containeth small brownish seed. The root is of a blackish brown colour, as big as one's little finger, but growing long, with some threads thereat; and by the small strings it quickly spreadeth over the ground.

Place.] It groweth by wood sides, hedge-sides, the pathway in fields, and in the borders and corners of them almost through all this land.

Time.] It floweredh in summer, some sooner, some later.

Government and Virtues.] This is an herb of Jupiter, and therefore strengthens the part of the body it rules; let Jupiter be angular and strong when it is gathered; and if you give but a scruple (which is but twenty grains,) of it at a time, either in white wine, or in white wine vinegar, you shall very seldom miss the cure of an ague, be it what ague soever, in three fits, as I have often proved to the admiration both of myself and others; let no man despise it because it is plain and easy, the ways of God are all such. It is an especial herb used in all inflammations and fevers, whether infectious or pestilential; or among other herbs to cool and temper the blood and humours in the body. As also for all lotions, gargles, infections, and the like, for sore mouths, ulcers, cancers, fistulas, and other cor-

rupt, foul, or running sores. The juice hereof drank, about four ounces at a time, for certain days together, cureth the quinsey and yellow jaundice; and taken for thirty days together, cureth the falling sickness. The roots boiled in milk, and drank is a most effectual remedy for all fluxes in a man or woman, whether the white or red, as also the bloody flux. The roots boiled in vinegar, and the decoction thereof held in the mouth, easeth the pains of the tooth-ach. The juice or decoction taken with a little honey, helpeth the hoarseness of the throat, and is very good for the cough of the lungs. The distilled water of both roots and leaves is also effectual to all the purposes aforesaid; and if the hands be often washed therein, and suffered at every time to dry in of itself without wiping, it will in a short time help the palsy, or shaking in them. The root boiled in vinegar, helpeth all knots, kernels, hard swellings, and lumps growing in any part of the flesh, being thereto applied; as also inflammations, and St. Anthony's fire, all imposthumes, and painful sores with heat and putrefaction, the shingles also, and all other sorts of running and foul scabs, sores, and itch. The same also boiled in wine, and applied to any joint full of pain, ache, or the gout in the hands or feet, or the hip gout, called the sciatica, and the decoction thereof drank the while, doth cure them, and easeth much pain in the bowels. The roots are likewise effectual to help ruptures or bursting, being used with other things available to that purpose, taken either inwardly or outwardly, or both; as also bruises or hurts by blows, falls, or the like, and to stay the bleeding of wounds in any parts inward or outward.

Some hold that one leaf cures a quotidian, three a tertian, and four a quartan ague, and a hundred to one if it be not Dioscorides; for he is full of whimsies. The truth is, I never stood so much upon the number of the leaves, nor whether I give it in powder or decoction: If Jupiter were strong, and the Moon applying to him, or his good aspect at the gathering, I never knew it miss the desired effects.

CIVES.

CALLED also rush leeks, chives, civet, and sweth.

Temperature and Virtues.] I confess I had not added these, had it not been for a country gentleman, who, by a letter, certified me, that amongst other herbs, I had left these out; they are indeed a kind of leeks, hot and dry in the fourth degree as they are, and so under the dominion of Mars; if they be eaten raw, (I do not mean raw, opposite to roasted or boiled, but raw, opposite to chymical preparation) they send up very hurtful vapours to the brain, causing troublesome sleep, and spoiling the eye-sight, yet of them prepared by he art of the

alchymist, may be made an excellent remedy for the stoppage of urine.

CLARY, *or more properly* CLEAR-EYE.

Descript.] OUR ordinary garden clary hath four square stalks, with broad, rough, wrinkled, whitish, or hoary green leaves, somewhat evenly cut in on the edges, and of a strong sweet scent, growing some near the ground, and some by couples upon stalks. The flowers grow at certain distances, with two small leaves at the joints under them, somewhat like unto the flowers of sage, but smaller, and of a whitish blue colour. The seed is brownish, and somewhat flat, or not so round as the wild. The roots are blackish, and spread not far, and perish after the seed time. It is usually sown, for it seldom rises of its own sowing

Place.] This groweth in gardens.

Time.] It flowereth in June and July, some a little later than others, and their seed is ripe in August, or thereabouts.

Government and Virtues.] It is under the dominion of the Moon. The seed put into the eyes clears them from motes, and such like things gotten within the lids to offend them, as also clears them from white and red spots on them. The mucilage of the seed made with water, and applied to tumours, or swellings, disperseth and taketh them away; as also draweth forth splinters, thorns, and other things gotten into the flesh. The leaves used with vinegar, either by itself, or with a little honey, doth help boils, felons, and the hot inflammations that are gathered by their pains, if applied before it be grown too great. The powder of the dried root put into the nose, provoketh sneezing, and thereby purgeth the head and brain of much rheum and corruption. The seed or leaves taken in wine, provoketh to venery. It is of much use both for men and women that have weak backs, and helpeth to strengthen the reins: used either by itself, or with other herbs conducing to the same effect, and in tansies often. The fresh leaves dipped in a batter of flower, eggs, and a little milk, and fried in butter, and served to the table, is not unpleasant to any, but exceeding profitable for those that are troubled with weak backs, and the effects thereof. The juice of the herb put into ale or beer, and drank, bringeth down women's courses, and expelleth the after-birth.

It is an usual course with many men, when they have gotten the running of the reins, or women the whites, they run to the bush of clary; maid, bring hither the frying-pan, fetch me some butter quickly, then for eating fried clary, just as hogs eat acorns; and this they think will cure their disease (forsooth) whereas when they have devoured as much clary as will grow

upon an acre of ground, their backs are as much the better, as though they had pissed in their shoes; nay, perhaps much worse.

We will grant that clary strengthens the back; but this we deny, that the cause of the running of the reins in men, or the whites in women, lies in the back, (though the back may sometimes be weakened by them) and therefore the medicine is as proper, as for me when my toe is sore, to lay a plaister on my nose.

WILD CLARY.

WILD clary is most blasphemously called Christ's eye, because it cures diseases of the eyes. I could wish from my soul, blasphemy, ignorance, and tyranny, were ceased among physicians, that they may be happy, and I joyful.

Descript.] It is like the other clary, but lesser, with many stalks about a foot and a half high. The stalks are square, and somewhat hairy; the flowers of a blush colour: He that knows the common clary cannot be ignorant of this.

Place.] It grows commonly in this nation in barren places: you may find it plentifully, if you look in the fields near Grey's Inn, and the fields near Chelsea.

Time.] They flower from the beginning of June, till the latter end of August.

Government and Virtues.] It is something hotter and drier than the garden clary is, yet nevertheless under the dominion of the Moon, as well as that; the seeds of it being beaten to powder, and drank with wine, is an admirable help to provoke lust. A decoction of the leaves being drank, warms the stomach, and it is a wonder if it should not, the stomach being under Cancer, the house of the Moon. Also it helps digestion, scatters congealed blood in any part of the body. The distilled water hereof cleanseth the eyes of redness, waterishness, and heat: It is a gallant remedy for dimness of sight, to take one of the seeds of it, and put into the eyes, and there let it remain till it drops out of itself, (the pain will be nothing to speak on), it will cleanse the eyes of all filthy and putrified matter; and in often repeating it, will take off a film which covereth the sight; a handsomer, safer, and easier remedy by a great deal, than to tear it off with a needle.

CLEAVERS.

IT is also called aperine, goose-share, goose-grass, and cleavers.

Descript.] The common cleavers have divers very rough,

square stalks, not so big as the top of a pint, but rising up to be two or three yards high sometimes, if it meet with any tall bushes or trees whereon it may climb, yet without any claspers, or else much lower, and lying on the ground full of joints, and at every one of them shooteth forth a branch, besides the leaves thereat, which are usually six, set in a round compass like a star, or a rowel of a spur: From between the leaves or the joints towards the tops of the branches, come forth very small white flowers, at every end, upon small thready foot-stalks, which after they have fallen, there do shew two small round and rough seeds joined together like two testicles, which, when they are ripe, grow hard and whitish, having a little hole on the side, something like unto a navel. Both stalks, leaves, and seeds are so rough, that they will cleave to any thing that will touch them. The root is small and thready, spreading much to the ground, but dieth every year.

Place.] It groweth by the hedge and ditch side in many places of this land, and is so troublesome an inhabitant in gardens, that it rampeth upon, and is ready to choak whatever grows near it.

Time.] It flowereth in June or July, and the seed is ripe and falleth again in the end of July or August, from whence it springeth up again, and not from the old roots.

Government and Virtues.] It is under the dominion of the Moon. The juice of the herb and the seed together taken in wine, helpeth those bitten with an adder, by preserving the heart from the venom. It is familiarly taken in broth, to keep them lean and lank that are apt to grow fat. The distilled water drank twice a day, helpeth the yellow jaundice, and the decoction of the herb, in experience, is found to do the same, and stayeth lasks and bloody-fluxes. The juice of the leaves, or they a little bruised, and applied to any bleeding wounds, stayeth the bleeding. The juice also is very good to close up the lips of green wounds, and the powder of the dried herb strewed thereupon doth the same, and likewise helpeth old ulcers. Being boiled in hog's grease, it helpeth all sorts of hard swellings or kernels in the throat, being anointed therewith. The juice dropped into the ears, taketh away the pain of them.

It is a good remedy in the spring, eaten (being first chopped small, and boiled well) in water-gruel, to cleanse the blood, and strengthen the liver, thereby to keep the body in health, and fitting it for that change of season that is coming.

CLOWN'S WOODWORT.

Descript.] IT groweth up sometimes to two or three feet high, but usually about two feet, with square, green rough stalks, but slender, joined somewhat far asunder, and two very long, somewhat narrow, dark green leaves, bluntly dented

about the edges thereof, ending in a long point. The flowers stand towards the tops, compassing the stalks at the joints with the leaves, and end likewise in a spiked top, having long and much gaping hoods of a purplish red colour, with whitish spots in them, standing in somewhat round husks, wherein afterwards stand blackish round seeds. The root is composed of many long strings, with some tuberous long knobs growing among them, of a pale yellowish or whitish colour, yet sometimes of the year these knobby roots in many places are not seen in this plant: The plant smelleth somewhat strong.

Place.] It groweth in sundry counties of this land, both north and west, and frequently by path-sides in the fields near about London, and within three or four miles distant about it, yet it usually grows in or near ditches.

Time.] It flowereth in June or July, and the seed is ripe soon after.

Government and Virtues.] It is under the dominion of the planet Saturn. It is singularly effectual in all fresh and green wounds, and therefore beareth not this name for nought. And it is very available in staunching of blood, and to dry up the fluxes of humours in old fretting ulcers, cankers, &c. that hinder the healing of them.

A syrup made of the juice of it, is inferior to none for inward wounds, ruptures of veins, bloody flux, vessels broken, spitting, pissing, or vomiting blood: Ruptures are excellently and speedily, even to admiration, cured by taking now and then a little of the syrup, and applying an ointment or plaister of this herb to the place. Also, if any vein be swelled or muscle, apply a plaister of this herb to it, and if you add a little comfrey to it, it will not do amiss. I assure thee the herb deserves commendations, though it has gotten such a clownish name; and whosoever reads this, (if he try it as I have done) will commend it; only take notice that it is of a dry earthy quality

COCK'S HEAD, RED FITCHING, OR MEDICK FETCH.

Descript.] THIS hath divers weak but rough stalks, half a yard long, leaning downwards, but set with winged leaves, longer and more pointed than those of lintels, and whitish underneath; from the tops of these stalks arise up other slender stalks, naked without leaves unto the tops, where there grow many small flowers in manner of a spike, of a pale reddish colour, with some blueness among them; after which rise up in their places, round, rough, and somewhat flat heads. The root is tough, and somewhat woody, yet liveth and shooteth a-new every year.

Place.] It groweth under hedges, and sometimes in the open fields, in divers places of this land.

Time.] They flower all the months of July and August, and the seed ripeneth in the mean while.

Government and Virtues.] It is under the dominion of Venus. It hath power to rarefy and digest; and therefore the green leaves bruised and laid as a plaister, disperse knots, nodes, or kernels in the flesh; and if when dry it be taken in wine, it helpeth the strangury; and being anointed with oil, it provoketh sweat. It is a singular food for cattle, to cause them to give store of milk; and why then may it not do the like, being boiled in ordinary drink, for nurses?

COLUMBINES.

THESE are so well known, growing almost in every garden, that I think I may save the expence of time in writing a description of them.

Time.] They flower in May, and abide not for the most part when June is past, perfecting their seed in the mean time.

Government and Virtues.] It is also an herb of Venus. The leaves of columbines are commonly used in lotions with good success for sore mouths and throats. Targus saith, that a dram of the seed taken in wine, with a little saffron, openeth obstructions of the liver, and is good for the yellow jaundice, if the party after the taking thereof be laid to sweat well in bed. The seed also taken in wine, causeth a speedy delivery of women in childbirth; if one draught suffice not, let her drink the second, and it is effectual: The Spaniards used to eat a piece of the root thereof in a morning fasting, many days together, to help them when troubled with the stone in the reins or kidneys.

COLTSFOOT.

CALLED also coughwort, foal's-foot, horse-hoof, and bull's-foot.

Descript.] This shooteth up a tender stalk, with small yellowish flowers somewhat earlier, which fall away quickly, and after they are past, come up somewhat round leaves, sometimes dented about the edges, much lesser, thicker, and greener than those of butter-bur, with a little down or frize over the green leaf on the upper side, which may be rubbed away, and whitish or mealily underneath. The root is small and white, spreading much under ground, so that where it taketh it will hardly be

driven away again, if any little piece be abiding therein; and from thence spring fresh leaves.

Place.] It groweth as well in wet grounds as in drier place.

Time.] It flowereth in the end of February, the leaves begin to appear in March.

Government and Virtues.] The plant is under Venus, the fresh leaves or juice, or a syrup thereof is good for a hot, dry cough, or wheezing, and shortness of breath. The dry leaves are best for those that have thin rheums and distillations upon their lungs, causing a cough, for which also the dried leaves taken as tobacco, or the root is very good. The distilled water hereof simply, or with elder flowers and night-shade, is a singularly good remedy against all hot agues, to drink two ounces at a time, and apply cloths wet therein to the head and stomach, which also does much good, being applied to any hot swellings and inflammations: It helpeth St. Anthony's fire, and burnings, and is singularly good to take away wheals and small pushes that arise through heat; as also the burning heat of the piles, or privy parts, cloths wet therein being thereunto applied.

COMFREY.

Descript.] THE common great comfrey hath divers very large hairy green leaves lying on the ground, so hairy or prickly, that if they touch any tender parts of the hands, face, or body, it will cause it to itch; the stalk that riseth from among them, being two or three feet high, hollowed and cornered, is very hairy also, having many such like leaves as grow below, but lesser and lesser up to the top: At the joints of the stalks it is divided into many branches, with some leaves thereon, and at the ends stand many flowers in order one above another, which are somewhat long and hollow like the finger of a glove, of a pale whitish colour, after which come small black seeds. The roots are great and long, spreading great thick branches under ground, black on the outside, and whitish within, short and easy to break, and full of glutinous or clammy juice, of little or no taste at all.

There is another sort in all things like this, only somewhat less, and beareth flowers of a pale purple colour.

Place.] They grow by ditches and water-sides, and in divers fields that are moist, for therein they chiefly delight to grow. The first generally through all the land, and the other but in some places. By the leave of my authors, I know the first grows in dry places.

Time.] They flower in June or July, and give their seed in August.

Government and Virtues.] This is an herb of Saturn, and I suppose under the sign Capricorn, cold, dry, and earthy in quality. What was spoken of clown's woundwort may be said of this. The great comfrey helpeth those that spit blood, or make a bloody urine. The root boiled in water or wine, and the decoction drank, helps all inward hurts, bruises, wounds, and ulcers of the lungs, and causeth the phlegm that oppresseth them to be easily spit forth: It helpeth the defluction of rheum from the head upon the lungs, the fluxes of blood or humours by the belly, women's immoderate courses, as well the reds as the whites, and the running of the reins, happening by what cause soever. A syrup made thereof is very effectual for all those inward griefs and hurts, and the distilled water for the same purposes also, and for outward wounds and sores in the fleshy or sinewy part of the body whatsoever, as also to take away the fits of agues, and to allay the sharpness of humours. A decoction of the leaves hereof is available to all the purposes, though not so effectual as the roots. The roots being outwardly applied, help fresh wounds or cuts immediately, being bruised and laid thereto; and is special good for ruptures and broken bones; yea, it is said to be so powerful to consolidate and knit together, that if they be boiled with dissevered pieces of flesh in a pot, it will join them together again. It is good to he applied to women's breasts that grow sore by the abundance of milk coming into them; also, to repress the overmuch bleeding of the hæmorrhoids, to cool the inflammation of the parts thereabouts, and to give ease of pains. The roots of comfrey taken fresh, beaten small, and spread upon leather, and laid upon any place troubled with the gout, doth presently give ease of the pains; and applied in the same manner, giveth ease to pained joints, and profiteth very much for running and moist ulcers, gangrenes, mortifications, and the like, for which it hath by often experience been found helpful.

CORALWORT.

IT is also called by some toothwort, tooth violet, dog-teeth violet, and dentaria.

Descript.] Of the many sorts of this herb two of them may be found growing in this nation; the first of which shooteth forth one or two winged leaves, upon long brownish foot-stalks, which are doubled down at their first coming out of the ground; when they are fully opened they consist of seven leaves, most commonly of a sad green colour, dented about the edges, set on both sides the middle rib one against another, as the leaves of the ash-tree; the stalk beareth no leaves on the lower half of it; the upper half beareth sometimes three or four,

each consisting of five leaves, sometimes of three; on the top stand four or five flowers upon short footstalks, with long husks; the flowers are very like the flowers of stockgilliflowers, of a pale purplish colour, consisting of four leaves a-piece, after which come small pods, which contain the seed; the root is very smooth, white and shining; it doth not grow downwards, but creeping along under the upper crust of the ground, and consisteth of divers small round knobs set together; towards the top of the stalk there grows some single leaves, by each of which cometh a small cloven bulb, which, when it is ripe, if it be set in the ground, it will grow to be a root.

As for the other coralwort, which groweth in this nation, it is more scarce than this, being a very small plant, much like crowfoot, therefore some think it to be one of the sorts of crowfoot; I know not where to direct you to it, therefore I shall forbear the description.

Place.] The first groweth in Mayfield in Sussex, in a wood called Highread, and in another wood there also, called Foxholes.

Time.] They flower from the latter end of April to the middle of May, and before the middle of July they are gone, and not to be found.

Government and Virtues.] It is under the dominion of the Moon. It cleanseth the bladder, and provoketh urine, expels gravel, and the stone; it easeth pains in the sides and bowels, is excellent good for inward wounds, especially such as are made in the breast or lungs, by taking a dram of the powder of the root every morning in wine; the same is excellent good for ruptures, as also to stop fluxes; an ointment made of it is excellent good for wounds and ulcers, for it soon dries up the watery humours which hinder the cure.

COSTMARY, OR ALCOST, OR BALSAM HERB.

THIS is so frequently known to be an inhabitant in almost every garden, that I suppose it needless to write a description thereof.

Time.] It flowereth in June and July.

Government and Virtues.] It is under the dominion of Jupiter. The ordinary costmary, as well as maudlin, provoketh urine abundantly, and moisteneth the hardness of the mother; it gently purgeth choler and phlegm, extenuating that which is gross, and cutting that which is tough and glutinous, cleanseth that which is foul, and hindereth putrefaction and corruption; it dissolveth without attraction, openeth obstructions, and helpeth their evil effects, and it is a wonderful help to all sorts of dry agues. It is astringent to the stomach, and strengtheneth

the liver, and all the other inward parts; and taken in whey worketh more effectually. Taken fasting in the morning, it is very profitable for pains in the head that are continual, and to stay, dry up, and consume all thin rheums or distillations from the head into the stomach, and helpeth much to digest raw humours that are gathered therein. It is very profitable for those that are fallen into a continual evil disposition of the whole body, called cachexia, but especially in the beginning of the disease. It is an especial friend and help to evil, weak and cold livers. The seed is familiarly given to children for the worms, and so is the infusion of the flowers in white wine given them to the quantity of two ounces at a time; it maketh an excellent salve to cleanse and heal old ulcers, being boiled with oil of olive, and adder's tongue with it, and after it is strained, put a little wax, rosin, and turpetine, to bring it to a convenient body.

CUDWEED, OR COTTONWEED.

BESIDES cudweed and cottonweed, it is also called chaff-weed, dwarf cotton, and petty cotton.

Descript.] The common cudweed riseth up with one stalk sometimes, and sometimes with two or three, thick set on all sides with small, long and narrow whitish or woody leaves, from the middle of the stalk almost up to the top; with every leaf standeth a small flower of a dun or brownish yellow colour, or not so yellow as others; in which herbs, after the flowers are fallen, come small seed wrapped up, with the down therein, and is carried away with the wind; the root is small and thready.

There are other sorts hereof, which are somewhat lesser than the former, not much different, save only that the stalks and leaves are shorter, so the flowers are paler and more open.

Place.] They grow in dry, barren, sandy and gravelly grounds, in most places of this land.

Time.] They flower about July, some earlier, some later, and their seed is ripe in August.

Government and Virtues.] Venus is lady of it. The plants are all astringent, binding, or drying, and therefore profitable for defluctions of rheum from the head, and to stay fluxes of blood wheresoever, the decoction being made into red wine and drank, or the the powder taken therein. It also helpeth the bloody-flux, and easeth the torments that come thereby, stayeth the immoderate courses of women, and is also good for inward or outward wounds, hurts, and bruises, and helpeth children both of burstings and the worms, and being either drank or injected, for the disease called tenismus, which is an often provocation to stool without doing any thing. The green leaves

bruised, and laid to any green wound, stayeth the bleeding, and healeth it up quickly. The juice of the herb taken in wine and milk, is, as Pliny saith, a sovereign remedy against the mumps and quinsey; and further saith, That whosoever shall so take it, shall never be troubled with that disease again.

COWSLIPS, OR PEAGLES.

BOTH the wild and garden cowslips are so well known, that I will neither trouble myself nor the reader with a description of them.

Time.] They flower in April and May.

Government and Virtues.] Venus lays claim to this herb as her own, and it is under the sign Aries, and our city dames know well enough the ointment or distilled water of it adds beauty, or at least restores it when it is lost. The flowers are held to be more effectual than the leaves, and the roots of little use. An ointment being made with them, taketh away spots and wrinkles of the skin, sun-burning, and freckles, and adds beauty exceedingly; they remedy all infirmities of the head coming of heat and wind, as vertigo, ephialtes, false apparitions, phrensies, falling-sickness, palsies, convulsions, cramps, pains in the nerves, the roots ease pains in the back and bladder, and open the passages of urine. The leaves are good in wounds, and the flowers take away trembling. If the flowers be not well dried, and kept in a warm place, they will soon putrefy and look green: Have a special eye over them. If you let them see the sun once a month, it will do neither the sun nor them harm.

Because they strengthen the brain and nerves, and remedy palsies, the Greeks gave them the name paralysis: The flowers preserved or conserved, and the quantity of a nutmeg eaten every morning, is a sufficient dose for inward diseases; but for wounds, spots, wrinkles, and sun-burnings, an ointment is made of the leaves, and hog's grease.

CRABS CLAWS.

CALLED also water sengreen, knight's pond water, water house-leek, pond weed, and fresh-water soldier.

Descript.] It hath sundry long narrow leaves, with sharp prickles on the edges of them, also very sharp pointed; the stalks which bear flowers, seldom grow so high as the leaves, bearing a forked head, like a crab's claw, out of which comes a white flower, consisting of three leaves, with divers yellowish hairy threads in the middle; it taketh root in the mud in the bottom of the water.

Place.] It groweth plentifully in the fens in Lincolnshire.

Time.] It flowers in June, and usually from thence till August.

Government and Virtues.] 'Tis a plant under the dominion of Venus, and therefore a great strengthener of the reigns; it is excellent good in that inflammation which is commonly called St. Anthony's fire; it assuageth all inflammations, and swellings in wounds; and an ointment made of it, is excellent good to heal them; there is scarce a better remedy growing than this is, for such as have bruised their kidneys, and upon that account pissing blood; a dram of the powder of the herb taken every morning, is a very good remedy to stop the terms.

BLACK CRESSES.

Descript.] IT hath long leaves, deeply cut and jagged on both sides, not much unlike wild mustard; the stalk small, very limber, though very tough; you may twist them round as you may a willow before they break. The stones are very small and yellow, after which come small cods, which contain the seed.

Place.] It is a common herb, grows usually by the way-side, and sometimes upon mud walls about London, but it delights to grow most among stones and rubbish.

Time.] It flowers in June and July, and the seed is ripe in August and September.

Government and Virtues.] It is a plant of a hot and biting nature, under the dominion of Mars. The seed of black cresses strengthens the brain exceedingly, being, in performing that office, little inferior to mustard-seed, if at all; they are excellent good to stay those rheums which may fall down from the head upon the lungs; you may beat the seed into powder, if you please, and make it up into an electuary with honey; so you have an excellent remedy by you, not only for the premises, but also for the cough, yellow jaundice, and sciatica. The herb boiled into a poultice, is an excellent remedy for inflammations, both in women's breasts, and men's testicles.

SCIATICA CRESSES.

Descript.] THESE are of two kinds: The first riseth up with a round stalk about two feet high, spread into divers branches, whose lower leaves are somewhat larger than the upper, yet all of them cut or torn on the edges, somewhat like garden cresses, but smaller, the flowers are small and white, growing at the tops of branches, where afterwards grow husks with small brownish seeds therein very strong and sharp in

taste, more than the cresses of the garden; the root is long, white, and woody.

The other hath the lower leaves whole, somewhat long and broad, not torn at all, but only somewhat deeply dented about the edges towards the ends; but those that grow up higher are lesser. The flowers and seeds are like the former, and so is the root likewise, and both root and seeds as sharp as it.

Place.] They grow in the way-sides in untilled places, and by the sides of old walls.

Time.] They flower in the end of June, and their seed is ripe in July.

Government and Virtues.] It is a Saturnine plant. The leaves, but especially the root, taken fresh in summer time, beaten or made into a poultice or salve with old hog's grease, and applied to the places pained with the sciatica, to continue thereon four hours if it be on a man, and two hours on a woman; the place afterwards bathed with wine and oil mixed together, and then wrapped with wool or skins, after they have sweat a little, will assuredly cure not only the same disease in hips, huckle-bone, or other of the joints, as gout in the hands or feet, but all other old griefs of the head, (as inveterate rheums) and other parts of the body that are hard to be cured. And if of the former griefs any parts remain, the same medicine after twenty days, is to be applied again. The same is also effectual in the diseases of the spleen; and applied to the skin, taketh away the blemishes thereof, whether they be scars, leprosy, scabs, or scurf, which although it ulcerate the part, yet that is to be helped afterwards with a salve made of oil and wax. Esteem this as another secret.

WATER CRESSES.

Descript.] OUR ordinary water cresses spread forth with many weak, hollow, sappy stalks, shooting out fibres at the joints, and upwards long winged leaves made of sundry broad sappy almost round leaves, of a brownish colour. The flowers are many and white, standing on long foot-stalks, after which come small yellow seeds, contained in small long pods like horns. The whole plant abideth green in the winter, and tasteth somewhat hot and sharp.

Place.] They grow, for the most part, in small standing waters, yet sometimes in small rivulets of running water.

Time.] They flower and seed in the beginning of summer.

Government and Virtues.] It is an herb under the dominion of the Moon. They are more powerful against the scurvy, and to cleanse the blood and humours, than brooklime is, and serve in all the other uses in which brooklime is available, as to

break the stone, and provoke urine and women's courses. The decoction thereof cleanseth ulcers, by washing them therewith. The leaves bruised, or the juice, is good, to be applied to the face or other parts troubled with freckles, pimples, spots, or the like, at night, and washed away in the morning. The juice mixed with vinegar, and the fore part of the head bathed therewith, is very good for those that are dull and drowsy, or have the lethargy.

Water-cress pottage is a good remedy to cleanse the blood in the spring, and help head-achs, and consume the gross humours winter hath left behind; those that would live in health, may use it if they please; if they will not, I cannot help it. If any fancy not pottage, they may eat the herb as a salad.

CROSSWORT.

Descript.] COMMON crosswort groweth up with square hairy brown stalks a little above a foot high, having four small broad, and pointed, hairy, yet smooth thin leaves, growing at every joint, each against other one way, which has caused the name. Towards the tops of the stalks at the joints, with the leaves in three or four rows downwards, stand small, pale yellow flowers, after which come small blackish round seeds, four for the most part, set in every husk. The root is very small, and full of fibres, or threads, taking good hold of the ground, and spreading with the branches a great deal of ground, which perish not in winter, although the leaves die every year, and spring again anew.

Place.] It groweth in many moist grounds, as well meadows as untilled places, about London, in Hampstead churchyard, at Wye in Kent, and sundry other places.

Time.] It flowers from May all the summer long, in one place or other, as they are more open to the sun: the seed ripeneth soon after.

Government and Virtues.] It is under the dominion of Saturn. This is a singular good wound herb, and is used inwardly, not only to stay bleeding of wounds, but to consolidate them, as it doth outwardly any green wound, which it quickly soldereth up, and healeth. The decoction of the herb in wine, helpeth to expectorate the phlegm out of the chest, and is good for obstructions in the breast, stomach or bowels, and helpeth a decayed appetite. It is also good to wash any wounds or sore with, to cleanse and heal it. The herb bruised, and then boiled, applied outwardly for certain days together, renewing it often; and in the mean time the decoction of the herb in wine, taken inwardly every day, doth certainly cure the rupture in

any, so as it be not too inveterate; but very speedily, if it be fresh and lately taken.

CROWFOOT.

MANY are the names this furious biting herb hath obtained, almost enough to make up a Welshman's pedigree, if he fetch no farther than John of Gaunt, or William the Conqueror; for it is called frogsfoot, from the Greek name Barrakion: crowfoot, gold knobs, gold cups, king's knob, baffiners, troilflowers, polts, locket goulions, and butterflowers.

So abundant are the sorts of this herb, that to describe them all, would tire the patience of Socrates himself, but because I have not yet attained to the spirits of Socrates, I shall but describe the most usual.

Descript.] The most common crowfoot hath many thin green leaves, cut into divers parts, in taste biting and sharp, biting and blistering the tongue: it bears many flowers, and those of a bright, resplendent, yellow colour. I do not remember, that I ever saw any thing yellower. Virgins, in ancient time, used to make powder of them to furrow bride beds; after which flowers come small heads, some spiked and rugged like a pine-apple.

Place.] They grow very common every where; unless you turn your head into a hedge, you cannot but see them as you walk.

Time.] They flower in May and June, even till September.

Government and Virtues.] This fiery and hot-spirited herb of Mars is no way fit to be given inwardly, but an ointment of the leaves or flowers will draw a blister, and may be so fitly applied to the nape of the neck to draw back rheum from the eyes. The herb being bruised and mixed with a little mustard, draws a blister as well, and as perfectly as cantharides, and with far less danger to the vessels of urine, which cantharides naturally delight to wrong: I knew the herb once applied to a pestilential rising that was fallen down, and it saved life even beyond hope; it were good to keep an ointment and plaister of it, if it were but for that.

CUCKOW-POINT.

IT is called alron, janus, barba-aron, calves-foot, ramp, starchwort, cuckow-pintle, priest's-pintle, and wake robin.

Descript.] This shooteth forth three, four, or five leaves at the most, from one root, every one whereof is somewhat large and long, broad at the bottom next the stalk, and forked, but

ending in a point, without a cut on the edge, of a full green colour, each standing upon a thick round stalk, of a hand-breadth long, or more, among which, after two or three months that they begin to wither, riseth up a bare, round, whitish green stalk, spotted and streaked with purple, somewhat higher than the leaves: At the top whereof standeth a long hollow husk, close at the bottom, but open from the middle upwards, ending in a point; in the middle whereof stand the small long pestle or clapper, smaller at the bottom than at the top, of a dark purple colour, as the husk is on the inside, though green without; which, after it hath so abided for some time, the husk with the clapper decayeth, and the foot or bottom thereof groweth to be a small long bunch of berries, green at the first, and of a yellowish red colour when they are ripe, of the bigness of a hazel nut kernel, which abideth thereon almost until winter; the root is round, and somewhat long, for the most part lying along, the leaves shooting forth at the largest end, which, when it beareth his berries, are somewhat wrinkled and loose, another growing under it, which is solid and firm, with many small threads hanging thereat. The whole plant is of a very sharp biting taste, pricking the tongue as nettles do the hands, and so abideth for a great while without alteration. The root thereof was anciently used instead of starch to starch linen with.

There is another sort of cuckow-point, with lesser leaves than the former, and sometimes harder, having blackish spots upon them, which for the most part abide longer green in summer than the former, and both leaves and roots are more sharp and fierce than it: In all things else it is like the former.

Place.] These two sorts grow frequently almost under every hedge-side in many places of this land.

Time.] They shoot forth leaves in the spring, and continue but until the middle of summer, or somewhat later; their husks appearing before they fall away, and their fruit shewing in April.

Government and Virtues.] It is under the dominion of Mars. Tragus reporteth, that a dram weight, or more, if need be, of the spotted wake robin, either fresh and green, or dried, being eaten and taken, is a present and sure remedy for poison and the plague. The juice of the herb taken to the quantity of a spoonful hath the same effect. But if there be a little vinegar added thereto, as well as to the root aforesaid, it somewhat allayeth the sharp biting taste thereof upon the tongue. The green leaves bruised, and laid upon any boil, plague, or sore, doth wonderfully help to draw forth the poison: A dram of the powder of the dried root, taken with twice so much sugar, in

the form of a licking electuary, or the green root, doth wonderfully help those that are purfy and shortwinded, as also those that have a cough; it breaketh, digesteth, and riddeth away phlegm from the stomach, chest, and lungs. The milk wherein the root hath been boiled is effectual also for the same purpose. The said powder taken in wine or other drink, or the juice of the berries, or the powder of them, or the wine wherein they have been boiled, provoketh urine, and bringeth down women's courses, and purgeth them effectually after child-bearing, to bring away the after-birth. Taken with sheep's milk, it healeth the inward ulcers of the bowels. The distilled water thereof is effectual to all the purposes aforesaid. A spoonful taken at a time healeth the itch; and an ounce or more taken at a time for some days together, doth help the rupture: The leaves, either green or dry, or the juice of them, doth cleanse all manner of rotten and filthy ulcers, in what part of the body soever; and healeth the stinking sores in the nose, called polypus. The water wherein the root hath been boiled, dropped into the eyes, cleanseth them from any film or skin, cloud or mists, which begin to hinder the sight, and helpeth the watering and redness of them, or when, by some chance, they become black and blue. The root mixed with bean-flour, and applied to the throat or jaws that are inflamed, helpeth them. The juice of the berries boiled in oil of roses, or beaten into powder mixed with the oil, and dropped into the ears, easeth pains in them. The berries, or the roots beaten with hot ox-dung, and applied, easeth the pains of the gout. The leaves and roots boiled in wine with a little oil, and applied to the piles, or the falling down of the fundament, easeth them, and so doth sitting over the hot fumes thereof. The fresh roots bruised and distilled with a little milk, yieldeth a most sovereign water to cleanse the skin from scurf, freckles, spots, or blemishes whatsoever therein.

Authors have left large commendations of this herb you see, but for my part, I have neither spoken with Dr. Reason nor Dr. Experience about it.

CUCUMBERS.

Government and Virtues.] THERE is no dispute to be made, but that they are under the dominion of the Moon, though they are so much cried out against for their coldness, and if they were but one degree colder they would be poison. The best of Galenists hold them to be cold and moist in the second degree, and then not so hot as either lettuces or purslain: They are excellent good for a hot stomach, and hot liver: the unmeasurable use of them fills the body full of raw humours, and so indeed the unmeasurable use of any thing else doth harm.

The face being washed with their juice, cleanseth the skin, and is excellent good for hot rheums in the eyes; the seed is excellent good to provoke urine, and cleanseth the passages thereof when they are stopped; there is not a better remedy for ulcers in the bladder growing, than cucumbers are. The usual course is, to use the seeds in emulsions, as they make almond milk; but a far better way (in my opinion) is this: When the season of the year is, take the cucumbers and bruise them well, and distil the water from them, and let such as are troubled with ulcers in the bladder drink no other drink. The face being washed with the same water, cureth the reddest face that is; it is also excellent good for sun-burning, freckles and morphew.

DAISIES.

THESE are so well known almost to every child, that I suppose it needless to write any description of them. Take therefore the virtues of them as followeth.

Government and Virtues.] The herb is under the sign Cancer, and under the dominion of Venus, and therefore excellent good for wounds in the breast, and very fitting to be kept both in oils, ointments, and plaisters, as also in syrup. The greater wild daisy is a wound herb of good respect, often used in those drinks or salves that are for wounds, either inward or outward. The juice or distilled water of these, or the small daisy, doth much temper the heat of choler, and refresh the liver, and the other inward parts. A decoction made of them, and drank, helpeth to cure the wounds made in the hollowness of the breast. The same also cureth all ulcers and pustules in the mouth or tongue, or in the secret parts. The leaves bruised and applied to the cods, or to any other parts that are swoln and hot, doth dissolve it, and temper the heat. A decoction made thereof, of wallwort and agrimony, and the places fomented or bathed therewith warm, giveth great ease to them that are troubled with the palsy, sciatica, or the gout. The same also disperseth and dissolveth the knots or kernels that grow in the flesh of any part of the body, and bruises and hurts that come of falls and blows; they are also used for ruptures, and other inward burnings, with very good success. An ointment made thereof doth wonderfully help all wounds that have inflammations about them, or by reason of moist humours having access unto them, are kept long from healing, and such are those, for the most part, that happen to joints of the arms or legs. The juice of them dropped into the running eyes of any, doth much help them.

DANDELION, VULGARLY CALLED PISS-A-BEDS.

Descript.] IT is well known to have many long and deep gashed leaves, lying on the ground round about the head of the roots; the ends of each gash or jag, on both sides looking downwards towards the roots; the middle rib being white, which being broken, yieldeth abundance of bitter milk, but the root much more; from among the leaves, which always abide green, arise many slender, weak, naked foot-stalks, every one of them bearing at the top one large yellow flower, consisting of many rows of yellow leaves, broad at the points, and nicked in with deep spots of yellow in the middle, which growing ripe, the green husk wherein the flowers stood turns itself down to the stalk, and the head of down becomes as round as a ball; with long reddish seed underneath, bearing a part of the down on the head of every one, which together is blown away with the wind, or may be at once blown away with one's mouth. The root growing downwards exceeding deep, which being broken off within the ground, will yet shoot forth again, and will hardly be destroyed where it hath once taken deep root in the ground.

Place.] It groweth frequently in all meadows and pasture-grounds.

Time.] It flowereth in one place or other almost all the year long.

Government and Virtues.] It is under the dominion of Jupiter. It is of an opening and cleansing quality, and therefore very effectual for the obstructions of the liver, gall, and spleen, and the diseases that arise from them, as the jaundice and hypochondriac; it openeth the passages of the urine both in young and old; powerfully cleanseth imposthumes and inward ulcers in the urinary passage, and by its drying and temperate quality doth afterwards heal them; for which purpose the decoction of the roots or leaves in white wine, or the leaves chopped as pot-herbs, with a few alisanders, and boiled in their broth, are very effectual. And whoever is drawing towards a consumption or an evil disposition of the whole body, called cachexia, by the use hereof for some time together, shall find a wonderful help. It helpeth also to procure rest and sleep to bodies distempered by the heat of ague fits, or otherwise: The distilled water is effectual to drink in pestilential fevers, and to wash the sores.

You see here what virtues this common herb hath, and that is the reason the French and Dutch so often eat them in the spring: and now, if you look a little farther, you may see plainly, without a pair of spectacles, that foreign physicians are not so

selfish as ours are, but more communicative of the virtues of plants to people.

DARNEL.

IT is called jum and wray; in Sussex they call it crop, it being a pestilent enemy among corn.

Descript.] This hath, all the winter long, sundry long, flat, and rough leaves, which, when the stalk riseth, which is slender and jointed, are narrower, but rough still; on the top groweth a long spike, composed of many heads set one above another, containing two or three husks, with sharp but short beards or awns at the end; the seed is easily shaked out of the ear, the husk itself being somewhat rough.

Place.] The country husbandmen do know this too well to grow among their corn, or in the borders and pathways of the other fields that are fallow.

Government and Virtues.] It is a malicious part of sullen Saturn. As it is not without some vices, so hath it also many virtues. The meal of darnel is very good to stay gangrenes, and other such like fretting and eating cankers, and putrid sores: It also cleanseth the skin of all leprosies, morphews, ringworms, and the like, if it be used with salt and reddish roots. And being used with quick brimstone and vinegar, it dissolveth knots and kernels, and breaketh those that are hard to be dissolved, being boiled in wine with pigeons dung and linseed: A decoction thereof made with water and honey, and the places bathed therewith, is profitable for the sciatica. Darnel meal applied in a poultice draweth forth splinters and broken bones in the flesh: The red darnel, boiled in red wine and taken, stayeth the lask and all other fluxes, and women's bloody issues; and restraineth urine that passeth away too suddenly.

DILL.

Descript.] THE common dill groweth up with seldom more than one stalk, neither so high, nor so great usually as fennel, being round and fewer joints thereon, whose leaves are sadder, and somewhat long, and so like fennel that it deceiveth many, but harder in handling, and somewhat thicker, and of a stronger unpleasant scent: The tops of the stalks have four branches and smaller umbels of yellow flowers, which turn into small seed, somewhat flatter and thinner than fennel seed. The root is somewhat small and woody, perisheth every year after it hath borne seed; and is also unprofitable, being never put to any use.

Place.] It is most usually sown in gardens and grounds for the purpose, and is also found wild in many places.

Government and Virtues.] Mercury hath the dominion of this plant, and therefore to be sure it strengthens the brain. The dill being boiled and drank, is good to ease swellings and pains; it also stayeth the belly and stomach from casting. The decoction thereof helpeth women that are troubled with the pains and windiness of the mother, if they sit therein. It stayeth the hiccough, being boiled in wine, and but smelled unto, being tied in a cloth. The seed is of more use than the leaves, and more effectual to digest raw and viscous humours, and is used in medicines that serve to expel wind, and the pains proceeding therefrom. The seed, being roasted or fried, and used in oils or plaisters, dissolve the imposthumes in the fundament; and drieth up all moist ulcers, especially in the fundament; an oil made of dill is effectual to warm or dissolve humours and imposthumes, to ease pains, and to procure rest. The decoction of dill, be it herb or seed (only if you boil the seed you must bruise it) in white wine, being drank, it is a gallant expeller of wind, and provoker of the terms.

DEVIL'S-BIT.

Descript.] THIS rises up with a round, green, smooth stalk, about two feet high, set with divers long and somewhat narrow, smooth, dark green leaves, somewhat nipped about the edges, for the most part, being else all whole, and not divided at all, or but very seldom, even to the tops of the branches, which yet are smaller than those below, with one rib only in the middle. At the end of each branch standeth a round head of many flowers set together in the same manner, or more neatly than scabions, and of a more blueish purple colour, which being past, there followeth seed that falleth away. The root is somewhat thick, but short and blackish, with many strings, abiding after seed time many years. This root was longer, until the devil (as the friars say) bit away the rest of it for spite, envying its usefulness to mankind; for sure he was not troubled with any disease for which it is proper.

There are two other sorts hereof, in nothing unlike the former, save that the one beareth white, and the other blush-coloured flowers.

Place.] The first groweth as well in dry meadows and fields as moist, in many places of this land: But the other two are more rare, and hard to be met with, yet they are both found growing wild about Appledore, near Rye in Kent.

Time.] They flower not usually until August,

Government and Virtues.] The plant is venereal, pleasing, and harmless. The herb or the root (all that the devil hath left of it) being boiled in wine, and drank, is very powerful against the plague, and all pestilential diseases or fevers, poisons also, and the bitings of venomous beasts: It helpeth also those that are inwardly bruised by any casualty, or outwardly by falls or blows, dissolving the clotted blood; and the herb or root beaten and outwardly applied, taketh away the black and blue marks that remain in the skin. The decoction of the herb, with honey of roses put therein, is very effectual to help the inveterate tumours and swellings of the almonds and throat, by often gargling the mouth therewith. It helpeth also to procure women's courses, and easeth all pains of the mother, and to break and discuss wind therein, and in the bowels. The powder of the root taken in drink, driveth forth the worms in the body. The juice, or distilled water of the herb, is effectual for green wounds, or old sores, and cleanseth the body inwardly, and the seed outwardly, from sores, scurf, itch, pimples, freckles, morphew, or other deformities thereof, especially if a little vitriol be dissolved therein.

DOCK.

MANY kinds of these are so well known, that I shall not trouble you with a description of them: My book grows big too fast.

Government and Virtues.] All docks are under Jupiter, of which the red dock, which is commonly called blood-wort, cleanseth the blood, and strengthens the liver; but the yellow dock-root is best to be taken when either the blood or liver is affected by choler. All of them have a kind of cooling (but not all alike) drying quality, the sorrel being most cold, and the blood-worts most drying. Of the burdock, I have spoken already by itself. The seed of most of the other kinds, whether the gardens or fields, do stay lasks and fluxes of all sorts, the loathing of the stomach through choler, and is helpful for those that spit blood. The roots boiled in vinegar helpeth the itch, scabs, and breaking out of the skin, if it be bathed therewith. The distilled water of the herb and roots have the same virtue, and cleanseth the skin from freckles, morphews, and all other spots and discolouring therein.

All docks being boiled with meat, make it boil the sooner; besides, blood-wort is exceedingly strengthening to the liver, and procures good blood, being as wholesome a pot-herb as any growing in a garden; yet such is the nicety of our times, forsooth, that women will not put it into a pot, because it makes the pot-

tage black; pride and ignorance (a couple of monsters in the creation) preferring nicety before health.

DODDER OF THYME, EPITHYMUM, AND OTHER DODDERS.

Descript.] THIS first from seed giveth roots in the ground, which shooteth forth threads or strings, grosser or finer, as the property of the plant wherein it groweth, and the climate doth suffer, creeping and spreading on that plant whereon it fasteneth, be it high or low. The strings have no leaves at all upon them, but wind and interlace themselves, so thick upon a small plant, that it taketh away all comfort of the sun from it; and is ready to choak or strangle it. After these strings are risen up to that height, that they may draw nourishment from that plant, they seem to be broken off from the ground, either by the strength of their rising, or withered by the heat of the sun. Upon these strings are found clusters of small heads or husks, out of which shoot forth whitish flowers, which afterwards give small pale white coloured seed, somewhat flat, and twice as big as poppy-seed. It generally participates of the nature of the plant which it climbeth upon; but the dodder of thyme is accounted the best, and is the only true epithymum.

Government and Virtues.] All dodders are under Saturn. Tell not me of physicians crying up epithymum, or that dodder which grows upon thyme, (most of which comes from Hemetius in Greece, or Hybla in Sicily, because those mountains abound with thyme) he is a physician indeed, that hath wit enough to choose his dodder according to the nature of the disease and humour peccant. We confess, thyme is the hottest herb it usually grows upon; and therefore that which grows upon thyme is hotter than that which grows upon colder herbs; for it draws nourishment from what it grows upon, as well as from the earth where its root is, and thus you see old Saturn is wise enough to have two strings to his bow. This is accounted the most effectual for melancholy diseases, and to purge black or burnt choler, which is the cause of many diseases of the head and brain, as also for the trembling of the heart, faintings and swoonings. It is helpful in all diseases and griefs of the spleen, and melancholy that arises from the windiness of the hypochondria. It purgeth also the reins or kidneys by urine; it openeth obstructions of the gall, whereby it profiteth them that have the jaundice; as also the leaves, the spleen: purging the veins of the choleric and phlegmatic humours, and helpeth children in agues, a little worm seed being put thereto.

The other dodders do, as I said before, participate of the nature of those plants whereon they grow: as that which hath been found growing upon nettles in the west-country, hath by experience been found very effectual to procure plenty of urine where it hath been stopped or hindered. And so of the rest.

Sympathy and antipathy are two hinges upon which the whole model of physic turns: and that physician which minds them not, is like a door off from the hooks, more like to do a man mischief, than to secure him. Then all the diseases Saturn causeth, this helps by sympathy, and strengthens all the parts of the body he rules; such as be caused by Sol, it helps by antipathy. What these diseases are, see my judgment of diseases by astrology; and if you be pleased to look the herb wormwood, you shall find a rational way for it.

DOG'S-GRASS, OR COUCH GRASS.

Descript.] IT is well known, that the grass creepeth far about under ground, with long white jointed roots, and small fibres almost at every joint, very sweet in taste, as the rest of the herb is, and interlacing one another, from whence shoot forth many fair grassy leaves, small at the ends, and cutting or sharp on the edges. The stalks are jointed like corn, with the like leaves on them, and a large spiked head, with a long husk in them, and hard rough seed in them. If you know it not by this description, watch the dogs when they are sick, and they will quickly lead you to it.

Place.] It groweth commonly through this land in divers ploughed grounds, to the no small trouble of the husbandmen, as also of the gardeners, in gardens, to weed it out, if they can; for it is a constant customer to the place it gets footing in.

Government and Virtues.] 'Tis under the dominion of Jupiter, and is the most medicinal of all the quick-grasses. Being boiled and drank, it openeth obstructions of the liver and gall, and the stopping of urine, and easeth the griping pains of the belly and inflammations; wasteth the matter of the stone in the bladder, and the ulcers thereof also. The roots bruised and applied, do consolidate wounds. The seed doth more powerfully expel urine, and stayeth the lask and vomiting. The distilled water alone, or with a little worm-seed, killeth the worms in children.

The way of use is to bruise the roots, and having well boiled them in white wine, drink the decoction: 'Tis opening but not purging, very safe: 'Tis a remedy against all diseases coming of stopping, and such are half those that are incident to the body of man; and although a gardener be of another opinion,

yet a physician holds half an acre of them to be worth five acres of carrots twice told over.

DOVE'S-FOOT, OR CRANE'S-BILL.

Descript.] THIS hath divers small, round, pale-green leaves, cut in about the edges, much like mallow, standing upon long, reddish, hairy stalks, lying in a round compass upon the ground; among which rise up two or three, or more, reddish jointed, slender, weak, hairy stalks, with such like leaves thereon, but smaller, and more cut in up to the tops, where grow many very small bright red flowers of five leaves a-piece; after which follow small heads, with small short beaks pointed forth, as all other sorts of those herbs do.

Place.] It groweth in pasture grounds, and by the path-sides in many places, and will also be in gardens.

Time.] It flowereth in June, July, and August, some earlier and some later; and the seed is ripe quickly after.

Government and Virtues.] It is a very gentle, though martial plant. It is found by experience to be singular good for wind cholic, as also to expel the stone and gravel in the kidneys. The decoction thereof in wine, is an excellent good cure for those that have inward wounds, hurts, or bruises, both to stay the bleeding, to dissolve and expel the congealed blood, and to heal the parts, as also to cleanse and heal outward sores, ulcers, and fistulas; and for green wounds, many do only bruise the herb, and apply it to the place, and it healeth them quickly. The same decoction in wine fomented to any place pained with the gout, or to joint-achs, or pains of the sinews, giveth much ease. The powder or decoction of the herb taken for some time together, is found by experience to be singular good for ruptures and burstings in people, either young or old.

DUCKS-MEAT.

THIS is so well known to swim on the tops of standing waters, as ponds, pools, and ditches, that it is needless further to describe it.

Government and Virtues.] Cancer claims the herb, and the Moon will be lady of it; a word is enough to a wise man. It is effectual to help inflammations, and St. Anthony's fire, as also the gout, either applied by itself, or in a poultice with barley meal. The distilled water by some is highly esteemed against all inward inflammations and pestilent fevers; as also to help the redness of the eyes, and swelling of the cods, and of the breasts before they be grown too much. The fresh herb ap-

plied to the forehead, easeth the pains of the head-ach coming of heat.

DOWN, OR COTTON-THISTLE.

Descript.] THIS hath large leaves lying on the ground, somewhat cut in, and as it were crumpled on the edges, of a green colour on the upper side, but covered with long hairy wool, or cotton down, set with most sharp and cruel pricks, from the middle of whose heads of flowers, thrust forth many purplish crimson threads, and sometimes (although very seldom) white ones. The seed that followeth in the heads, lying in a great deal of white down, is somewhat large, long, and round, like the seed of lady's thistle, but somewhat paler. The root is great and thick, spreading much, yet it usually dieth after seed-time.

Place.] It groweth in divers ditches, banks, and in corn-fields and highways, generally every way throughout the land.

Time.] It flowerth and beareth seed about the end of summer, when other thistles do flower and seed.

Government and Virtues.] Mars owns the plant, and manifests to the world, that though it may hurt your finger, it will help your body; for I fancy it much for the ensuing virtues. Pliny and Dioscorides write, That the leaves and roots thereof taken in drink, help those that have a crick in their neck; whereby they cannot turn their neck but their whole body must turn also (sure they do not mean those that have got a crick in their neck by being under the hangman's hand. Galen saith, that the root and leaves hereof are of a heating quality, and good for such persons as have their bodies drawn together by some spasm or convulsions, as it is with children that have the rickets, or rather, as the college of physicians will have it, the rachites, for which name of the disease, they have (in a particular treatise lately set forth by them) learnedly disputed and brought forth to public view, that the world may see that they have taken much pains to little purpose.

DRAGONS.

THEY are so well known to all those who plant them in their gardens, they need no description; if not, let them look down to the lower end of the stalks, and see how like a snake they look.

Government and Virtues.] The plant is under the dominion of Mars, and therefore it would be a wonder if it should want some obnoxious quality or other. In all herbs of that quality, the safest way is either to distil the herb in an alembick, in what

vehicle you please, or else to press out the juice and distil that in a glass still in sand. It scoureth and cleanseth the internal parts of the body mightily, and it elcareth the external parts also, being externally applied, from freekles, morphew, and sunburning: Your best way to use it externally, is to mix it with vinegar; an ointment of it is held to be good in wounds and ulcers; it eonsumes eankers, and that flesh growing in the nostrils, which they call polypus: Also the distilled water being dropped into the eyes, taketh away spots there, or the pin and web, and mends the dimness of sight; it is excellent good against pestilence and poison. Pliny and Dioseorides affirm, that no serpent will meddle with him that carries this herb about him.

THE ELDER TREE.

I HOLD it needless to write any deseription of this, since every boy that plays with a pop-gun will not mistake another tree instead of elder: I shall therefore in this plaee only, describe the dwarf-elder, ealled also dead-wort, and wall-wort.

THE DWARF-ELDER.

Descript.] THIS is but an herb every year, dying with his stalks to the ground, and rising fresh every Spring, and is like unto the elder both in form and quality, rising up with a square rough hairy stalk, four feet high, or more sometimes. The winged leaves are somewhat narrower than the elder, but else like them. The flowers are white with a dash of purple, standing in umbels, very like the elder also, but more sweet in scent; after which come small blaekish berries, full of juiee while they are fresh, wherein is small hard kernels, or seed. the root doth ereep under the upper crust of the ground, springing in divers plaees, being of the bigness of one's finger or thumb sometimes.

Place.] The elder tree groweth in hedges, being planted there to strengthen the fences and partitions of ground, and to hold the banks by ditehes and water eourses.

The dwarf elder, growing wild in many plaees of England, where being once gotten into a ground, it is not easily gotten forth again.

Time.] Most of the elder trees flower in June, and their fruit is ripe for the most part in August. But the dwarf elder, or Wall-wort, flowereth somewhat later, and his fruit is not ripe until September.

Government and Virtues.] Both elder and dwarf tree are under the dominion of Venus. The first shoots of the common elder boiled like asparagus, and the young leaves and stalks boiled

in fat broth, doth mightily carry forth phlegm and choler. The middle or inward bark boiled in water, and given in drink, worketh much more violently; and the berries, either green or dry, expel the same humour, and are often given with good success to help the dropsy; the bark of the root boiled in wine, or the juice thereof drank, worketh the same effects, but more powerfully than either the leaves or fruit. The juice of the root taken, doth mightily procure vomitings, and purgeth the watery humours of the dropsy. The decoction of the root taken, cureth the biting of an adder, and biting of mad dogs. It mollifieth the hardness of the mother, if women sit thereon, and openeth their veins, and bringeth down their courses: The berries boiled in wine performeth the same effect; and the hair of the head washed therewith is made black. The juice of the green leaves applied to the hot inflammations of the eyes, assuageth them; the juice of the leaves snuffed up into the nostrils, purgeth the tunicles of the brain; the juice of the berries boiled with honey, and dropped into the ears, helpeth the pains of them; the decoction of the berries in wine being drank provoketh urine; the distilled water of the flowers is of much use to clean the skin from sun-burning, freckles, morphew, or the like; and taketh away the head-ach, coming of a cold cause, the head being bathed therewith. The leaves or flowers distilled in the month of May, and the legs often washed with the said distilled water, it taketh away the ulcers and sores of them. The eyes washed therewith, it taketh away the redness and bloodshot; and the hands washed morning and evening therewith, helpeth the palsy, and shaking of them.

The dwarf elder is more powerful than the common elder in opening and purging choler, phlegm, and water; in helping the gout, piles, and women's diseases, coloureth the hair black, helpeth the inflammations of the eyes, and pains in the ears, the biting of serpents, or mad dogs, burnings and scaldings, the wind cholic, cholic and stone, the difficulty of urine, the cure of old sores and fistulous ulcers. Either leaves or bark of elder, stripped upwards as you gather it, causeth vomiting. Also Dr. Butler, in a manuscript of his, commends dwarf elder to the sky for dropsies, viz. to drink it, being boiled in white wine; to drink the decoction I mean, not the elder.

THE ELM TREE.

THIS tree is so well known, growing generally in all counties of this land, that it is needless to describe it.

Government and Virtues.] It is a cold and Saturnine plant. The leaves thereof bruised and applied heal green wounds, being bound thereon with its own bark. The leaves or the bark used

with vinegar, cureth scurf and leprosy very effectually: The decoction of the leaves, bark, or root, being bathed, heals broken bones. The water that is found in the bladders on the leaves, while it is fresh, is very effectual to cleanse the skin, and make it fair; and if cloths be often wet therein, and applied to the ruptures of children, it healeth them, if they be well bound up with a truss. The said water put into a glass, and set into the ground, or else in dung for twenty-five days, the mouth thereof being close stopped, and the bottom set upon a lay of ordinary salt, that the fœces may settle and water become clear, is a singular and sovereign balm for green wounds, being used with soft tents: The decoction of the bark of the root fomented, mollifieth hard tumours, and the shrinking of the sinews. The roots of the elm, boiled for a long time in water, and the fat arising on the top thereof, being clean scummed off, and the place anointed therewith that is grown bald, and the hair fallen away, will quickly restore them again. The said bark ground with brine and pickle, until it come to the form of a poultice, and laid on the place pained with the gout, giveth great ease. The decoction of the bark in water, is excellent to bathe such places as have been burnt with fire.

ENDIVE.

Descript.] COMMON garden endive beareth a longer and larger leaf than succory, and abideth but one year, quickly running up to a stalk and seed, and then perisheth; it hath blue flowers, and the seed of the ordinary endive is so like succory seed, that it is hard to distinguish them.

Government and Virtues.] It is a fine cooling, cleansing, jovial plant The decoction of the leaves, or the juice, or the distilled water of endive, serveth well to cool the excessive heat of the liver and stomach, and in the hot fits of agues, and all other inflammations in any part of the body; it cooleth the heat and sharpness of the urine, and excoriations in the urinary parts. The seeds are of the same property, or rather more powerful, and besides are available for fainting, swoonings, and passions of the heart. Outwardly applied, they serve to temper the sharp humours of fretting ulcers, hot tumours, swellings, and pestilential sores; and wonderfully help not only the redness and inflammations of the eyes, but the dimness of the sight also; they are also used to allay the pains of the gout. You cannot use it amiss: a syrup of it is a fine cooling medicine for fevers. See the end of this book, and the English Dispensatory.

ELECAMPANE.

Descript.] IT shooteth forth many large leaves, long and broad, lying near the ground, small at both ends, somewhat soft in handling, of a whitish green on the upper side, and grey underneath, each set upon a short foot-stalk, from among which rise up divers great and strong hairy stalks, three or four feet high, with some leaves thereupon, compassing them about at the lower end, and are branched towards the tops, bearing divers great and large flowers, like those of the corn marigold, both the border of the leaves, and the middle thrum being yellow, which turn into down, with long, small, brownish seeds among it, and is carried away with the wind. The root is great and thick, branching forth divers ways, blackish on the outside, and whitish within, of a very bitter taste, and strong but good scent, especially when they are dried, no part else of the plant having any smell.

Place.] It groweth in moist grounds and shadowy places oftener than in the dry and open borders of fields and lanes, and in other waste places, almost in every county of this land.

Time.] It flowereth in the end of June and July, and the seed is ripe in August. The roots are gathered for use, as well in the Spring before the leaves come forth, as in autumn or winter.

Government and Virtues.] It is a plant under the dominion of Mercury. The fresh roots of elecampane preserved with sugar, or made into a syrup or conserve, are very effectual to warm a cold windy stomach, or the pricking therein, and stitches in the sides caused by the spleen; and to help the cough, shortness of breath, and wheezing in the lungs. The dried root made into powder, and mixed with sugar, and taken, serveth to the same purpose, and is also profitable for those who have their urine stopped, or the stopping of women's courses, the pains of the mother, and of the stone in the reins, kidneys or bladder; it resisteth poison, and stayeth the spreading of the venom of serpents, as also putrid and pestilential fevers, and the plague itself. The roots and herbs beaten and put into new ale or beer, and daily drank, cleareth, strengtheneth, and quickeneth the sight of the eyes wonderfully. The decoction of the roots in wine, or the juice taken therein, killeth and driveth forth all manner of worms in the belly, stomach, and maw; and gargled in the mouth, or the root chewed, fasteneth loose teeth, and helps to keep them from putrefaction; and being drank is good for those that spit blood, helpeth to remove cramps or convulsions, gout, sciatica, pains in the joints, applied outwardly or inwardly, and

is also good for those that are bursten, or have any inward bruise. The root boiled well in vinegar, beaten afterwards, and made into an ointment with hog's suet, or oil of trotters, is an excellent remedy for scabs or itch in young or old; the places also bathed or washed with the decoction doth the same; it also helpeth all sorts of filthy old putrid sores or cankers whatsoever. In the roots of this herb lieth the chief effect for the remedies aforesaid. The distilled water of the leaves and roots together, is very profitable to cleanse the skin of the face, or other parts, from any morphew, spots, or blemishes therein, and make it clear.

ERINGO, OR SEA-HOLLY.

Descript.] THE first leaves of our ordinary sea-holly, are nothing so hard and prickly as when they grow old, being almost round, and deeply dented about the edges, hard and sharp pointed, and a little crumpled, of a blueish green colour, every one upon a long footstalk; but those that grow up higher with the stalk, do as it were compass it about. The stalk itself is round and strong, yet somewhat crested, with joints and leaves set thereat, but more divided, sharp, and prickly; and branches rising from thence, which have likewise other small branches, each of them having several blueish, round, prickly heads, with many small jagged prickly leaves under them, standing like a star, and sometimes found greenish or whitish: The root groweth wonderfully long, even to eight or ten feet in length, set with rings and circles toward the upper part, cut smooth and without joints down lower, brownish on the outside, and very white within, with a pith in the middle; of a pleasant taste, but much more being artificially preserved, and candied with sugar.

Place.] It is found about the sea coast in almost every county of this land which bordereth upon the sea.

Time.] It flowereth in the end of summer, and giveth ripe seed within a month after.

Government and Virtues.] The plant is venereal, and breedeth seed exceedingly, and strengthens the spirits procreative; it is hot and moist, and under the celestial Balance. The decoction of the root hereof in wine, is very effectual to open obstructions of the spleen and liver, and helpeth yellow jaundice, dropsy, pains of the loins, and wind cholic, provoketh urine, and expelleth the stone, procureth women's courses. The continued use of the decoction for fifteen days, taken fasting, and next to bedward, doth help the strangury, the pissing by drops, the stopping of urine, and stone, and all defects of the reins and kidneys; and if the said drink be continued longer, it is said

that it cureth the stone; it is found good against the French pox. The roots bruised and applied outwardly, helpeth the kernels of the throat, commonly called the king's evil; or taken inwardly, and applied to the place stung or bitten by any serpent, healeth it speedily. If the roots be bruised, and boiled in old hog's grease, or salted lard, and applied to broken bones, thorns, &c. remaining in the flesh, they do not only draw them forth, but heal up the place again, gathering new flesh where it was consumed. The juice of the leaves dropped into the ear, helpeth imposthumes therein. The distilled water of the whole herb, when the leaves and stalks are young, is profitably drank for all the purposes aforesaid; and helpeth the melancholy of the heart, and is available in quartan and quotidian agues; as also for them that have their necks drawn a-wry, and cannot turn them without turning their whole body.

EYEBRIGHT.

Descript.] COMMON eyebright is a small low herb, rising up usually but with one blackish green stalk a span high, or not much more, spread from the bottom into sundry branches, whereon are small and almost round, yet pointed, dark green leaves, finely snipped about the edges, two always set together, and very thick. At the joints with the leaves, from the middle upward, come forth small white flowers, steeped with purple and yellow spots, or stripes; after which follow small round heads, with very small seed therein. The root is long, small and thready at the end.

Place.] It groweth in meadows, and grassy places in this land.

Government and Virtues.] It is under the sign of the Lion, and Sol claims dominion over it. If the herb was but as much used as it is neglected, it would half spoil the spectacle maker's trade; and a man would think, that reason should teach people to prefer the preservation of their natural before artificial spectacles; which that they may be instructed how to do, take the virtues of eyebright as followeth:

The juice, or distilled water of eyebright, taken inwardly in white wine or broth, or dropped into the eyes for divers days together, helpeth all infirmities of the eyes that cause dimness of sight. Some make conserve of the flowers to the same effect. Being used any of the ways, it also helpeth a weak brain, or memory. This turned up with strong beer that it may work together, and drank, or the powder of the dried herb mixed with sugar, a little mace, and fennel seed, and drank, or eaten in broth; or the said powder made into an electuary with sugar, and taken, hath the same powerful effect to help and restore the

sight decayed through age; and Arnoldus de Villa Nova saith, it hath restored sight to them that have been blind a long time before.

FERN.

Descript.] OF this there are two kinds principally to be treated of, viz. the male and female. The female groweth higher than the male, but the leaves thereof are lesser, and more divided and dented, and of as strong a smell as the male; the virtue of them are both alike, and therefore I shall not trouble you with any description or distinction of them.

Place.] They grow both in heaths and in shady places, near the hedge-sides in all counties of this land.

Time.] They flower and give their seed at midsummer.

The female fern is that plant which is in Sussex called brakes, the seed of which some authors hold to be so rare. Such a thing there is I know, and may be easily had upon midsummer eve, and for ought I know, two or three days after it, if not more.

Government and Virtues.] It is under the dominion of Mercury, both male and female. The roots of both those sorts of fern being bruised and boiled in mead, or honeyed water, and drank, killeth both the broad and long worms in the body, and abateth the swelling and hardness of the spleen. The green leaves eaten, purge the belly and choleric and waterish humours that trouble the stomach. They are dangerous for women with child to meddle with, by reason they cause abortions. The roots bruised and boiled in oil, or hog's-grease, make a very profitable ointment to heal wounds or pricks gotten in the flesh. The powder of them used in foul ulcers, drieth up their malignant moisture, and causeth their speedier healing. Fern being burned, the smoke thereof driveth away serpents, gnats, and other noisome creatures, which in fenny countries do, in the night time, trouble and molest people lying in their beds with their faces uncovered; it causeth barrenness.

OSMOND ROYAL, OR WATER FERN.

Descript.] THIS shooteth forth in spring time (for in the winter the leaves perish) divers rough, hard stalks, half round, and yellowish, or flat on the other side, two feet high, having divers branches of winged yellowish green leaves on all sides, set one against another, longer, narrower, and not nicked on the edges as the former. From the top of some of these stalks grow forth a long bush of small, and more

yellow, green, scaly aglets, set in the same manner on the stalks as the leaves are, which are accounted the flowers and seeds. The root is rough, thick and scabby, with a white pith in the middle, which is called the heart thereof.

Place.] It groweth on moors, bogs, and watery places in many parts of this land.

Time.] It is green all the summer, and the root only abideth in winter.

Government and Virtues.] Saturn owns the plant. This hath all the virtues mentioned in the former ferns, and is much more effectual than they, both for inward and outward griefs, and is accounted singular good in wounds, bruises, or the like. The decoction to be drank, or boiled into an ointment of oil, as a balsam or balm, and so it is singular good against bruises, and bones broken, or out of joint, and giveth much ease to the cholic and splenetic diseases; as also for ruptures or burstings. The decoction of the root in white wine, provokes urine exceedingly, and cleanseth the bladder and passages of urine.

FEVERFEW, OR FEATHERFEW.

Descript.] COMMON featherfew hath large, fresh, green leaves, much torn or cut on the edges. The stalks are hard and round, set with many such like leaves, but smaller, and at the tops stand many single flowers, upon small footstalks, consisting of many small white leaves standing round about a yellow thrum in the middle. The root is somewhat hard and short; with many strong fibres about it. The scent of the whole plant is very strong and stuffing, and the taste is very bitter.

Place.] This grows wild in many places of the land, but is for the most part nourished in gardens.

Time.] It flowereth in the months of June and July.

Government and Virtues.] Venus commands this herb, and hath commended it to succour her sisters (women) and to be a general strengthener of their wombs, and remedy such infirmities as a careless midwife hath there caused; if they will but be pleased to make use of her herb boiled in white wine, and drink the decoction; it cleanseth the womb, expels the after birth, and doth a woman all the good she can desire of an herb. And if any grumble because they cannot get the herb in winter, tell them, if they please, they may make a syrup of it in summer; it is chiefly used for the disease of the mother, whether it be the strangling or rising of the mother, or hardness, or inflammations of the same, applied outwardly thereunto. Or a decoction of the flowers in wine, with a little nutmeg or mace put therein, and drank often in a day, is an approved remedy to bring down

women's courses speedily, and helpeth to expel the dead birth and after birth. For a woman to sit over the hot fumes of the decoction of the herb made in water or wine, is effectual for the same; and in some cases, to apply the boiled herb warm to the privy parts. The decoction thereof made, with some sugar or honey put thereto, is used by many with good success to help the cough and stuffing of the chest, by colds, as also to cleanse the reins and bladder, and helps to expel the stone in them. The powder of the herb taken in wine, with some oxymel, purgeth both choler and phlegm, and is available for those that are short-winded, and are troubled with melancholy and heaviness, or sadness of spirits. It is very effectual for all pains in the head coming of a cold cause, the herb being bruised and applied to the crown of the head; as also for the vertigo, that is, a running or swimming of the head. The decoction thereof drank warm, and the herb bruised with a few corns of bay-salt, and applied to the wrists before the coming of the ague fits, doth take them away. The distilled water taketh away freckles, and other spots and deformities in the face. The herb bruised and heated on a tile, with some wine to moisten it, or fried with a little wine and oil in a frying-pan, and applied warm outwardly to the places, helpeth the wind and cholic in the lower part of the belly. It is an especial remedy against opium taken too liberally.

FENNEL.

EVERY garden affordeth this so plentifully, that it needs no description.

Government and Virtues.] One good old fashion is not yet left off, viz. to boil fennel with fish; for it consumes that phlegmatic humour, which fish most plentifully afford and annoy the body with, though few that use it know wherefore they do it; I suppose the reason of its benefit this way is, because it is an herb of Mercury, and under Vergo, and therefore bears antipathy to Pisces. Fennel is good to break wind, to provoke urine, and ease the pains of the stone, and helps to break it. The leaves or seed, boiled in barley water and drank are good for nurses, to increase their milk, and make it more wholesome for the child. The leaves, or rather the seeds, boiled in water, stayeth the hiccough, and taketh away the loathings which oftentimes happen to the stomachs of sick and feverish persons, and allayeth the heat thereof. The seed boiled in wine and drank, is good for those that are bitten with serpents, or have eaten poisonous herbs, or mushrooms. The seed and the roots much more help to open obstructions of the liver, spleen, and gall, and thereby help the painful and windy swellings of the spleen,

and the yellow jaundice; and also the gout and cramps. The seed is of good use in medicines to help shortness of breath and wheezing by stopping of the lungs. It helpeth also to bring down the courses, and to cleanse the parts after delivery. The roots are of most use in physic, drinks and broths, that are taken to cleanse the blood, to open obstructions of the liver, to provoke urine, and amend the ill colour of the face after sickness, and to cause a good habit through the body. Both leaves, seeds, and roots thereof are much used in drink or broth, to make people more lean that are too fat. The distilled water of the whole herb, or the condensate juice dissolved, but especially the natural juice, that in some counties issueth out hereof of its own accord, dropped into the eyes, cleanseth them from mists and films that hinder the sight. The sweet fennel is much weaker in physical uses than the common fennel. The wild fennel is stronger and hotter than the tame, and therefore most powerful against the stone, but not so effectual to increase milk, because of its dryness.

SOW-FENNEL, OR HOG'S FENNEL.

BESIDES the common name in English, hog's fennel, and the Latin name peucidanum, it is called hoar-strange, and hoar-strong, sulphur-wort, and brimstone-wort.

Descript.] The common sow fennel hath divers branched stalks, of thick and somewhat long leaves, three for the most part joined together at a place, among which ariseth a crested straight stalk, less than fennel, with some joints thereon, and leaves growing thereat, and towards the tops some branches issuing from thence; likewise on the tops of the stalks and branches stand divers turfs of yellow flowers, whereafter grows somewhat flat, thin, and yellowish seed, bigger than fennel seed. The roots grow great and deep, with many other parts and fibres about them of a strong scent like hot brimstone, and yield forth a yellowish milk, or clammy juice, almost like a gum.

Place.] It groweth plentifully in the salt low marshes near Feversham in Kent.

Time.] It flowereth plentifully in July and August.

Government and Virtues.] This is also an herb of Mercury. The juice of sow-fennel (saith Dioscorides and Galen,) used with vinegar and rose-water, or the juice with a little euphorbium put to the nose, helpeth those that are troubled with the lethargy, frenzy, giddiness of the head, the falling-sickness, long and inveterate head-ach, the palsy, sciatica, and the cramp, and generally all the diseases of the sinews, used with oil and vinegar. The juice dissolved in wine, or put into an egg, is good for a cough, or shortness of breath, and for those that are

troubled with wind in the body. It purgeth the belly gently, expelleth the hardness of the spleen, giveth ease to women that have sore travail in child-birth, and easeth the pains of the reins and bladder, and also the womb. A little of the juice dissolved in wine, and dropped into the ears, easeth much of the pains in them, and put into a hollow tooth, easeth the pains thereof. The root is less effectual to all the aforesaid disorders; yet the powder of the root cleanseth foul ulcers, being put into them, and taketh out splinters of broken bones, or other things in the flesh, and healeth them up perfectly; as also, drieth up old and inveterate running sores, and is of admirable virtue in all green wounds.

FIG-WORT, OR THROAT-WORT.

Descript.] COMMON great fig-wort sendeth divers great, strong, hard, square brown stalks, three or four feet high, whereon grow large, hard, and dark green leaves, two at a joint, harder and larger than nettle leaves, but not stinking; at the tops of the stalks stand many purple flowers set in husks, which are sometimes gaping and open, somewhat like those of water betony; after which come hard, round heads, with a small point in the middle, wherein lie small brownish seed. The root is great, white, and thick, with many branches at it, growing aslope under the upper crust of the ground, which abideth many years, but keepeth not his green leaves in winter.

Place.] It groweth frequently in moist and shadowy woods, and in the lower parts of the fields and meadows.

Time.] It flowereth about July, and the seed will be ripe about a month after the flowers are fallen.

Government and Virtues.] Some Latin authors call it cervicaria, because it is appropriated to the neck; and we throat-wort, because it is appropriated to the throat. Venus owns the herb, and the Celestial Bull will not deny it; therefore a better remedy cannot be for the king's evil, because the Moon that rules the disease is exalted there. The decoction of the herb taken inwardly, and the bruised herb applied outwardly, dissolves clotted and congealed blood within the body, coming by any wounds, bruise, or fall; and is no less effectual for the king's evil, or any other knobs, kernels, bunches, or wens growing in the flesh wheresoever; and for the hæmorrhoids, or piles. An ointment made hereof may be used at all times when the fresh herb is not to be had. The distilled water of the whole plant, roots and all, is used for the same purposes, and drieth up the superfluous, virulent moisture of hollow and corroding ulcers; it taketh away all redness, spots, and freckles in the face, as

also the scurf, and any foul deformity therein, and the leprosy likewise.

FILIPENDULA, OR DROP-WORT.

Descript.] THIS sendeth forth many leaves, some bigger, some lesser, set on each side of a middle rib, and each of them dented about the edges, somewhat resembling wild tansy, or rather agrimony, but harder in handling; among which rise up one or more stalks, two or three feet high, with the leaves growing thereon, and sometimes also divided into other branches spreading at the top into many white, sweet smelling flowers, consisting of five leaves a-piece, with some threads in the middle of them standing together in a pith or umbel, each upon a small foot-stalk, which, after they have been blown upon a good while, do fall away, and in their places appear small, round, chaffy heads like buttons, wherein are the chaffy seeds set and placed. The root consists of many small, black, tuberous pieces, fastened together by many small, long, blackish strings, which run from one to another.

Place.] It groweth in many places of this land, in the corners of dry fields and meadows, and the hedge sides.

Time.] They flower in June and July, and their seed is ripe in August.

Government and Virtues.] It is under the dominion of Venus. It effectually opens the passages of the urine, helpeth the strangury; the stone in the kidneys or bladder, the gravel, and all other pains of the bladder and reins, by taking the roots in powder, or a decoction of them in white wine, with a little honey. The roots made into powder, and mixed with honey in the form of an electuary, doth much help them whose stomachs are swollen, dissolving and breaking the wind which was the cause thereof; and is also very effectual for all the diseases of the lungs, as shortness of breath, wheezing, hoarseness of the throat, and the cough; and to expectorate tough phlegm, or any other parts thereabout. It is called dropwort, because it helps such as piss by drops.

THE FIG-TREE.

FOR to give a description of a tree so well known to every body that keeps it in his garden, were needless. They prosper very well in our English gardens, yet are fitter for medicine than for any other profit which is gotten by the fruit of them.

Government and Virtues.] The tree is under the dominion

of Jupiter. The milk that issueth out from the leaves or branches where they are broken off, being dropped upon warts, taketh them away. The decoction of the leaves is excellent good to wash sore heads with: and there is scarcely a better remedy for the leprosy than it is. It clears the face also of morphew, and the body of white scurf, scabs, and running sores. If it be dropped into old fretting ulcers, it cleanseth out the moisture, and bringeth up the flesh; because you cannot have the leaves green all the year, you may make an ointment of them whilst you may. A decoction of the leaves being drank inwardly, or rather a syrup made of them, dissolves congealed blood caused by bruises or falls, and helps the bloody flux. The ashes of the wood made into an ointment with hog's grease, helps kibes and chilblains. The juice being put into an hollow tooth, easeth pain; as also pain and noise in the ears, being dropped into them; and deafness. An ointment made of the juice and hog's grease, is as excellent a remedy for the biting of mad dogs, or other venomous beasts, as most are. A syrup made of the leaves, or green fruit, is excellent good for coughs, hoarseness, or shortness of breath, and all diseases of the breast and lungs; it is also excellent good for the dropsy and falling sickness. They say that the fig-tree, as well as the bay-tree, is never hurt by lightning; as also if you tie a bull, be he ever so mad, to a fig-tree, he will quickly become tame and gentle. As for such figs as come from beyond sea, I have little to say, because I write not of exotics; yet some authors say, the eating of them makes people lousy.

THE YELLOW WATER FLAG, OR FLOWER-DE-LUCE.

Descript.] THIS groweth like the flower-de-luce, but it hath much longer and narrower sad green leaves jointed together in that fashion; the stalk also growing oftentimes as high, bearing small yellow flowers shaped like the flower-de-luce, with three falling leaves, and other three arched that cover their bottoms; but instead of the three upright leaves, as the flower-de-luce hath, this hath only three short pieces standing in their places, after which succeed thick and long three square heads, containing in each part somewhat big and flat seed, like those of the flower-de-luce. The root is long and slender, of a pale brownish colour on the outside, and of a horseflesh colour on the inside, with many hard fibres thereat, and very harsh in taste.

Place.] It usually grows in watery ditches, ponds, lakes, and moor sides, which are always overflowed with water.

Time.] It flowereth in July, and the seed is ripe in August.

Government and Virtues.] It is under the dominion of the Moon. The root of this water flag is very astringent, cooling, and drying; and thereby helps all lasks and fluxes, whether of blood or humours, as bleeding at the mouth, nose, or other parts, bloody flux, and the immoderate flux of women's courses. The distilled water of the whole herb, flowers and roots, is a sovereign good remedy for watering eyes, both to be dropped into them, and to have cloths or sponges wetted therein, and applied to the forehead: it also helpeth the spots and blemishes that happen in and about the eyes, or in any other parts: The said water fomented on swellings and hot inflammations of women's breasts, upon cankers also, and those spreading ulcers called *Noli me tangere*, will do much good: It helpeth also foul ulcers in the privities of man or woman; but an ointment made of the flowers is better for those external applications.

FLAX-WEED, OR TOAD-FLAX.

Descript.] OUR common flax weed hath divers stalks full fraught with long and narrow ash coloured leaves, and from the middle of them almost upward, stored with a number of pale yellow flowers, of a strong unpleasant scent, with deeper yellow mouths, and blackish flat seed in round heads. The root is somewhat woody and white, especially the main downright one, with many fibres, abiding many years, shooting forth roots every way round about, and new branches every year.

Place.] This groweth throughout this land, both by the way sides, and in meadows, as also by hedge-sides, and upon the sides of banks, and borders of fields.

Time.] It flowereth in Summer, and the seed is ripe usually before the end of August.

Government and Virtues.] Mars owns the herb: In Sussex we call it gallwort, and lay it in our chickens' water to cure them of the gall; it relieves them when they are drooping. This is frequently used to spend the abundance of those watery humours by urine, which cause the dropsy. The decoction of the herb, both leaves and flowers, in wine taken and drank, doth somewhat move the belly downwards, openeth obstructions of the liver, and helpeth the yellow jaundice; expelleth poison, provoketh women's courses, driveth forth the dead child, and after-birth. The distilled water of the herb and flowers is effectual for all the same purposes; being drank with a dram of the powder of the seeds of bark or the roots of wall-wort, and a little cinnamon, for certain days together, it is held a singular remedy for the dropsy. The juice of the

herb, or the distilled water, dropped into the eyes, is a certain remedy for all heat, inflammation, and redness in them. The juice or water put into foul ulcers, whether they be cancerous or fistulous, with tents rolled therein, or parts washed and injected therewith, cleanseth them thoroughly from the bottom, and healeth them up safely. The same juice or water also cleanseth the skin wonderfully of all sorts of deformity, as leprosy, morphew, scurf, wheals, pimples, or spots, applied of itself, or used with some powder of lupines.

FLEA-WORT.

Descript.] ORDINARY flea-wort riseth up with a stalk two feet high or more, full of joints and branches on every side up to the top, and at every joint two small, long, and narrow whitish green leaves somewhat hairy; at the top of every branch stand divers small, short scaly, or chaffy heads, out of which come forth small whitish yellow threads, like to those of the plantain herbs, which are the blooming of flowers. The seed inclosed in these heads is small and shining while it is fresh, very like unto fleas both for colour and bigness, but turning black when it groweth old. The root is not long, but white, hard and woody, perishing every year, and rising again of its own seed for divers years, if it be suffered to shed: The whole plant is somewhat whitish and hairy, smelling somewhat like rosin.

There is another sort hereof, differing not from the former in the manner of growing, but only that this stalk and branches being somewhat greater, do a little more bow down to the ground: The leaves are somewhat greater, the heads somewhat lesser, the seed alike; and the root and leaves abide all winter, and perish not as the former.

Place.] The first groweth only in gardens, the second plentifully in fields that are near the sea.

Time.] They flower in July, or thereabouts.

Government and Virtues.] The herb is cold, dry, and Saturnine. I suppose it obtained the name of flea-wort, because the seeds are so like fleas. The seed fried, and taken, stayeth the flux or lask of the belly, and the corrosions that come by reason of hot choleric, or sharp and malignant humours, or by too much purging of any violent medicine, as scammony, or the like. The mucilage of the seed made with rose-water, and a little sugar-candy put thereto, is very good in all hot agues and burning fevers, and other inflammations, to cool the thirst, and lenify the dryness and roughness of the tongue and throat. It helpeth also hoarseness of the voice, and diseases of the breast and lungs, caused by heat, or sharp salt humours, and

the pleurisy also. The mucilage of the seed made with plantain water, whereunto the yolk of an egg or two, and a little populeon are put, is a most safe and sure remedy to ease the sharpness, pricking, and pains of the hæmorrhoids or piles, if it be laid on a cloth, and bound thereto. It helpeth all inflammations in any part of the body, and the pains that come thereby, as the head-ach and megrims, and all hot imposthumes, swellings, or breaking out of the skin, as blains, wheals, pushes, purples, and the like; as also the joints of those that are out of joint, the pains of the gout and sciatica, the bursting of young children, and the swelling of the navel, applied with oil of roses and vinegar. It is also good to heal the nipples and sore breasts of women, being often applied thereunto. The juice of the herb with a little honey put into the ears helpeth the running of them, and the worms breeding in them: The same also mixed with hog's grease, and applied to corrupt and filthy ulcers, cleanseth them and healeth them.

FLUXWEED.

Descript.] IT riseth up with a round upright hard stalk, four or five feet high, spreading into sundry branches, whereon grow many greyish green leaves, very finely cut and severed into a number of short and almost round parts. The flowers are very small and yellow, growing spike fashion, after which come small long pods, with small yellowish seed in them. The root is long and woody, perishing every year.

There is another sort, differing in nothing, save only it hath somewhat broader leaves; they have a strong evil savour, being smelled unto, and are of a drying taste.

Place.] They flower wild in the fields by hedges-sides and highways, and among rubbish and other places.

Time.] They flower and seed quickly after, namely, in June and July.

Government and Virtues.] This herb is Saturnine also. Both the herb and seed of fluxweed is of excellent use to stay the flux or lask of the belly, being drank in water wherein gads of steel heated have been often quenched; and is no less effectual for the same purpose than plantain or comfrey, and to restrain any other flux of blood in man or woman, as also to consolidate bones broken or out of joint. The juice thereof drank in wine, or the decoction of the herb drank, doth kill the worms in the stomach or belly, or the worms that grow in putrid and filthy ulcers; and made into a salve doth quickly heal all old sores, how foul or malignant soever they be. The distilled water of the herb worketh the same effects, although

somewhat weaker, yet it is a fair medicine, and more acceptable to be taken. It is called fluxweed because it cures the flux, and for its uniting broken bones, &c. Paracelsus extols it to the skies. It is fitting that syrup, ointment, and plaisters of it were kept in your houses.

FLOWER-DE-LUCE.

IT is so well known, being nourished up in most gardens, that I shall not need to spend time in writing a description thereof.

Time.] The flaggy kinds thereof have the most physical uses; the dwarf kinds thereof flower in April, the greater sorts in May.

Government and Virtues.] The herb is Lunar. The juice or decoction of the green root of the flaggy kind of flower-de-luce, with a little honey drank, doth purge and cleanse the stomach of gross and tough phlegm, and choler therein; it helpeth the jaundice and the dropsy, evacuating those humours both upwards and downwards; and because it somewhat hurts the stomach, is not to be taken without honey and spikenard. The same being drank, doth ease the pains and torments of the belly and sides, the shaking of agues, the diseases of the liver and spleen, the worms of the belly, the stone in the reins, convulsions and cramps that come of old humours; it also helps those whose seed passeth from them unawares: It is a remedy against the bitings and stingings of venomous creatures, being boiled in water and vinegar and drank; boiled in water and drank, it provoketh urine, helpeth the cholic, bringeth down women's courses; and made up into a pessary with honey, and put up into the body, draweth forth the dead child. It is much commended against the cough, to expectorate tough phlegm; it much easeth pains in the head, and procureth sleep; being put into the nostrils it procureth sneezing, and thereby purgeth the head of phlegm: The juice of the root applied to the piles or hæmorrhoids, giveth much ease. The decoction of the roots gargled in the mouth, easeth the tooth-ache, and helpeth the stinking breath. Oil called oleum irinum, if it be rightly made of the great broad flag flower-de-luce (and not of the great bulbus blue flower-de-luce, as is used by some apothecaries) and roots of the same of the flaggy kinds, is very effectual to warm and comfort all cold joints and sinews, as also the gout and sciatica, and molifieth, dissolveth and consumeth tumours and swellings in any part of the body, as also of the matrix; it helpeth the cramp, or convulsions of the sinews; the head and temples anointed therewith, helpeth the catarrh or thin rheum distilled from thence; and used upon the breast on

stomach, helpeth to extenuate the cold tough phlegm; it helpeth also the pains and noise in the ears, and the stench of the nostrils. The root itself, either green or in powder, helpeth to cleanse, heal, and incarnate wounds, and to cover the naked bones with flesh again, that ulcers have made bare; and is also very good to cleanse and heal up fistulas and cankers that are hard to be cured.

FLUELLIN, OR LLUELLIN.

Descript.] IT shooteth forth many long branches, partly lying upon the ground, and partly standing upright, set with almost red leaves, yet a little pointed, and sometimes more long than round, without order thereon, somewhat hairy, and of an evil greenish white colour; at the joints all along the stalks, and with the leaves come forth small flowers, one at a place, upon a very small short footstalk, gaping somewhat like snap-dragons, or rather like toad-flax, with the upper jaw of a yellow colour, and the lower of a purplish, with a small heel or spur behind; after which come forth small round heads, containing small black seed. The root is small and thready, dying every year, and raiseth itself again of its own sowing.

There is another sort of lluellin which hath longer branches wholly trailing upon the ground, two or three feet long, and somewhat more thin, set with leaves thereon, upon small footstalks. The leaves are a little larger, and somewhat round, and cornered sometimes in some places on the edges; but the lower part of them being the broadest, hath on each side a small point, making it seem as if they were ears, sometimes hairy, but not hoary, and of a better green colour than the former. The flowers come forth like the former, but the colours therein are more white than yellow, and the purple not so far: It is a large flower, and so are the seed and seed-vessels. The root is like the other, and perisheth every year.

Place.] They grow in divers corn fields, and in borders about them, and in other fertile grounds about Southfleet in Kent, abundant; at Buchrite, Hamerton, and Richmanworth in Huntingdonshire, and in divers other places.

Time.] They are in flower about June and July, and the whole plant is dry and withered before August be done.

Government and Virtues.] It is a Lunar herb. The leaves bruised and applied with barley meal to watering eyes that are hot and inflamed by defluctions from the head, do very much help them, as also the fluxes of blood or humours, as the lask, bloody flux, women's courses, and stayeth all manner of bleeding at the nose, mouth, or any other place, or that cometh by any bruise or hurt, or bursting a vein; it wonderfully helpeth

all those inward parts that need consolidating or strengthening, and is no less effectual both to heal and close green wounds, than to cleanse and heal all foul or old ulcers, fretting or spreading cankers, or the like. Bees are industrious, and go abroad to gather honey from each plant or flower, but drones lie at home, and eat up what the bees have taken pains for: Just so do the college of physicians lie at home and domineer, and suck out the sweetness of other men's labours and studies, themselves being as ignorant in the knowledge of herbs as a child of four years old, as I can make appear to any rational man by their last dispensatory. Now then to hide their ignorance, there is no readier way in the world than to hide knowledge from their countrymen, that so no body might be able so much as to smell out their ignorance. When simples were in use, men's bodies were better in health by far than now they are, or shall be, if the college can help it. The truth is, this herb is of a fine cooling, drying quality, and an ointment or plaister of it might do a man a courtesy that hath any hot virulent sores: It is admirable for the ulcers of the French pox; if taken inwardly, may cure the disease. It was first called female speedwell, but a shentleman of Wales, whose nose was almost eaten off with the pox, and so near the matter, that the doctors commanded it to be cut off, being cured only by the use of this herb; and to honour the herb, for saving hur nose whole, gave it one of hur country names, Fluellin.

FOX-GLOVES.

Descript.] IT hath many long and broad leaves lying upon the ground dented upon the edges, a little soft or woolly, and of a hoary green colour, among which riseth up sometimes sundry stalks, but one very often, bearing such leaves thereon from the bottom to the middle, from whence to the top it is stored with large and long hollow reddish purple flowers, a little more long and eminent at the lower edge, with some white spots within them, one above another, with small green leaves at every one, but all of them turning their heads one way, and hanging downwards, having some threads also in the middle, from whence rise round heads, pointed sharp at the ends, wherein small brown seed lieth. The roots are so many small fibres, and some greater strings among them; the flowers have no scent, but the leaves have a bitter hot taste.

Place.] It groweth on dry sandy ground for the most part, and as well on the higher as the lower places under hedge-sides in almost every county of this land.

Time.] It seldom flowereth before July, and the seed is ripe in August.

Government and Virtues.] The plant is under the dominion of Venus, being of a gentle cleansing nature, and withal very friendly to nature. The herb is familiarly and frequently used by the Italians to heal any fresh or green wound, the leaves being but bruised and bound thereon; and the juice thereof is also used in old sores, to cleanse, dry, and heal them. The decoction hereof made up with some sugar or honey, is available to cleanse and purge the body both upwards and downwards, sometimes of tough phlegm and clammy humours, and to open obstructions of the liver and spleen. It hath been found by experience to be available for the king's evil, the herb bruised and applied, or an ointment made with the juice thereof, and so used; and a decoction of two handfuls thereof, with four ounces of polipody in ale, hath been found by late experience to cure divers of the falling sickness, that have been troubled with it above twenty years. I am confident that an ointment of it is one of the best remedies for a scabby head that is.

FUMITORY.

Descript.] OUR common fumitory is a tender sappy herb, sending from one square, a slender weak stalk, and leaning downwards on all sides, many branches two or three feet long, with finely cut and jagged leaves of whitish, or rather blueish sea green colour: At the tops of the branches stand many small flowers, as it were in a long spike one above another, made like little birds, of a reddish purple colour, with whitish bellies, after which come small round husks, containing small black seeds. The root is yellow, small, and not very long, full of juice while it is green, but quickly perishes with the ripe seed. In the corn-fields in Cornwall, it beareth white flowers.

Place.] It groweth in corn-fields almost every where, as well as in gardens.

Time.] It flowereth in May, for the most part, and the seed ripeneth shortly after.

Government and Virtues.] Saturn owns the herb, and presents it to the world as a cure for his own disease, and strengthener of the parts of the body he rules. If by my astrological judgment of diseases, from the decumbiture, you find Saturn author of the disease, or if by direction from a nativity you fear a Saturnine disease approaching, you may by this herb prevent it in the one, and cure it in the other, and therefore it is fit you keep a syrup of it always by you. The juice or syrup made thereof, or the decoction made in whey by itself, with some other purging or opening herbs and roots to cause it to work the better (itself being but weak) is very effectual for the liver and

spleen, opening the obstructions thereof, and clarifying the blood from saltish, choleric, and adjust humours, which cause leprosy, scabs, tetters, and itches, and such like breakings-out of the skin, and after the purgings doth strengthen all the inward parts. It is also good against the yellow jaundice, and spendeth it by urine, which it procureth in abundance. The powder of the dried herb given for some time together, cureth melancholy, but the seed is strongest in operation for all the former diseases. The distilled water of the herb is also of good effect in the former diseases, and conduceth much against the plague and pestilence, being taken with good treacle. The distilled water also, with a little water and honey of roses, helpeth all the sores of the mouth or throat, being gargled often therewith. The juice dropped into the eyes, cleareth the sight, and taketh away redness and other defects in them, although it procureth some pain for the present, and cause tears. Dioscorides saith it hindereth any fresh springing of hairs on the eye-lids (after they are pulled away) if the eye-lids be anointed with the juice hereof, with gum arabic dissolved therein. The juice of the fumitory and docks mingled with vinegar, and the places gently washed or wet therewith, cureth all sorts of scabs, pimples, blotches, wheals, and pushes which arise on the face or hands, or any other parts of the body.

THE FURZE BUSH.

IT is so well known by this name, as it is in some counties by the name of gorz or whins, that I shall not need to write any description thereof, my intent being to teach my countrymen what they know not, rather than to tell them again of that which is generally known before.

Place.] They are known to grow on dry barren heaths, and other waste, gravelly or sandy grounds, in all counties of this land.

Time.] They also flower in the summer months.

Government and Virtues.] Mars owns the herb. They are hot and dry, and open obstructions of the liver and spleen. A decoction made with the flowers thereof hath been found effectual against the jaundice, as also to provoke urine, and cleanse the kidneys from gravel or stone ingendered in them. Mars doth also this by sympathy.

GARLICK.

THE offensiveness of the breath of him that hath eaten garlick, will lead you by the nose to the knowledge hereof, and (instead of a description) direct you to the place

where it groweth in gardens, which kinds are the best, and most physical.

Government and Virtues.] Mars owns this herb. This was anciently accounted the poor man's treacle, it being a remedy for all diseases and hurts (except those which itself breed.) It provoketh urine and women's courses, helpeth the biting of mad dogs, and other venomous creatures; killeth worms in children, cutteth and avoideth tough phlegm, purgeth the head, helpeth the lethargy, is a good preservative against, and a remedy for any plague, sore, or foul ulcer; taketh away spots and blemishes in the skin, easeth pains in the ears, ripeneth and breaketh imposthumes, or other swellings. And for all those diseases the onions are as effectual. But the garlic hath some more peculiar virtues besides the former, viz. it hath especial quality to discuss inconveniencies coming by corrupt agues or mineral vapours, or by drinking corrupt and stinking waters; as also by taking wolfbane, hen-bane, hemlock, or other poisonous and dangerous herbs. It is also held good in hydropic diseases, the jaundice, falling sickness, cramps, convulsions, the piles or hæmorrhoids, or other cold diseases. Many authors quote many diseases this is good for; but conceal its vices. Its heat is very vehement, and all vehement hot things send up but ill-favoured vapours to the brain. In choleric men it will add fuel to the fire; in men oppressed by melancholy, it will attenuate the humour, and send up strong fancies, and as many strange visions to the head; therefore let it be taken inwardly with great moderation; outwardly you may make more bold with it.

GENTIAN, FELWORT, OR BALDMONY.

IT is confessed that gentian, which is most used amongst us, is brought over beyond sea, yet we have two sorts of it growing frequently in our nation, which, besides the reasons so frequently alledged why English herbs should be fittest for English bodies, hath been proved by the experience of divers physicians, to be not a whit inferior in virtue to that which cometh from beyond sea, therefore be pleased to take the description of them as followeth:

Descript.] The greater of the two hath many small, long roots, thrust down deep into the ground, and abiding all the winter. The stalks are sometimes more, sometimes fewer, of a brownish green colour, which is sometimes two feet high, if the ground be fruitful, having many long, narrow, dark green leaves, set by couples up to the top; the flowers are long and hollow, of a purple colour, ending in fine corners. The smaller sort which is to be found in our land, groweth up with sundry stalks, not a foot high, parted into several small branches, whereon grow

divers small leaves together, very like those of the lesser centaury, of a whitish green colour; on the tops of these stalks grow divers perfect blue flowers, standing in long husks, but not so big as the other; the root is very small, and full of threads.

Place.] The first groweth in divers places of both the east and west countries, and as well in wet as in dry grounds; as near Longfield by Gravesend; near Cobham in Kent; near Lillinstone in Kent; also in a chalk pit hard by a paper-mill, not far from Dartford in Kent. The second groweth also in divers places in Kent, as about Southfleet and Longfield; upon Barton's hills in Bedfordshire; also not far from St. Alban's; upon a piece of waste chalky ground, as you go out of Dunstable way towards Gorhambury.

Time.] They flower in August.

Government and Virtues.] They are under the dominion of Mars, and one of the most principal herbs he is ruler of. They resist putrefactions, poison, and a more sure remedy cannot be found to prevent the pestilence than it is; it strengthens the stomach exceedingly, helps digestion, comforts the heart, and preserves it against faintings and swoonings: The powder of the dry roots help the biting of mad dogs and venomous beasts, opens obstructions of the liver, and restoreth an appetite of their meat to such as have lost it. The herb steeped in wine, and the wine drank, refresheth such as be over-weary with travail, and grow lame in their joints, either by cold or evil lodgings; it helps stitches, and griping pains in the sides; is an excellent remedy for such as are bruised by falls; it provokes urine and the terms exceedingly, therefore let it not be given to women with child: The same is very profitable for such as are troubled with cramps and convulsions, to drink the decoction: Also they say it breaks the stone, and helps ruptures most certainly; it is excellent in all cold diseases, and such as are troubled with tough phlegm, scabs, itch, or any fretting sores and ulcers; it is an admirable remedy to kill the worms, by taking half a dram of the powder in a morning in any convenient liquor; the same is excellent good to be taken inwardly for the king's evil. It helps agues of all sorts, and the yellow jaundice, as also the bots in cattle; when kine are bitten on the udder by any venomous beast, do but stroke the place with the decoction of any of these, and it will instantly heal them.

CLOVE GILLIFLOWERS.

IT is in vain to describe an herb so well known.

Government and Virtues.] They are gallant, fine, temperate flowers, of the nature and under the dominion of Jupiter;

yea, so temperate, that no excess, either in heat, cold, dryness, nor moisture, can be perceived in them; they are great strengtheners both of the brain and heart, and will therefore serve either for cordials or cephalics, as your occasion will serve. There is both a syrup and a conserve made of them alone, commonly to be had at every apothecary's. To take now and then a little of either, strengthens nature much, in such as are in consumptions. They are also excellent good in hot pestilent fevers, and expel poison.

GERMANDER.

Descript.] COMMOM germander shooteth forth sundry stalks, with small and somewhat round leaves, dented about the edges. The flowers stand at the tops, of a deep purple colour. The root is composed of divers sprigs, which shoot forth a great way round about, quickly overspreading a garden.

Place.] It groweth usually with us in gardens.

Time.] And flowereth in June and July.

Government and Virtues.] It is a most prevalent herb of Mercury, and strengthens the brain and apprehension exceedingly; (you may see what human virtues are under Mercury, in the latter end of my Ephemeris for 1652,) strengthens them when weak, and relieves them when drooping. This taken with honey (saith Dioscorides), is a remedy for coughs, hardness of the spleen, and difficulty of urine, and helpeth those that are fallen into a dropsy, especially at the beginning of the disease, a decoction being made thereof when it is green, and drank. It also bringeth down women's courses, and expelleth the dead child. It is most effectual against the poison of all serpents, being drank in wine, and the bruised herb outwardly applied; used with honey, it cleanseth old and foul ulcers; and made into an oil, and the eyes anointed therewith, taketh away the dimness and moistness. It is likewise good for the pains in the sides and cramps. The decoction thereof taken for four days together, driveth away and cureth both tertian and quartan agues. It is also good against all diseases of the brain, as continual head-ache, falling-sickness, melancholy, drowsiness and dulness of the spirits, convulsions and palsies. A dram of the seed taken in powder purgeth by urine, and is good against the yellow jaundice. The juice of the leaves dropped into the ears killeth the worms in them. The tops thereof, when they are in flowers, steeped twenty-four hours in a draught of white wine, and drank, killeth the worms in the belly.

STINKING GLADWIN.

Descript.] THIS is one of the kinds of flower-de-luce, having divers leaves arising from the roots, very like a flower-de-luce, but that they are sharp-edged on both sides, and thicker in the middle, of a deeper green colour, narrower and sharper pointed, and a strong ill-scent, if they be bruised between the fingers. In the middle riseth up a reasonable strong stalk, a yard high at the least, bearing three or four flowers at the top, made somewhat like the flowers of the flower-de-luce, with three upright leaves, of a dead purplish ash-colour, with some veins discoloured in them; the other three do not fall down, nor are the three other small ones so arched, nor cover the lower leaves as the flower-de-luce doth, but stand loose or asunder from them. After they are past, there come up three square hard husks, opening wide into three parts when they are ripe, wherein lie reddish seed, turneth back when it hath abiden long. The root is like that of the flower-de-luce, but reddish on the outside, and whitish within, very sharp and hot in the taste, of as evil scent as the leaves.

Place.] This groweth as well in upland grounds, as in moist places, woods, and shadowy places by the sea-side in many places of this land, and is usually nursed up in gardens.

Time.] It flowereth not until July, and the seed is ripe in August or September, yet the husks after they are ripe, opening themselves, will hold their seed with them for two or three months, and not shed them.

Government and Virtues.] It is supposed to be under the dominion of Saturn. It is used by many country people to purge corrupt phlegm and choler, which they do by drinking the decoction of the roots; and some, to make it more gentle, do but infuse the sliced roots in ale; and some take the leaves, which serve well for the weaker stomachs: The juice hereof put up, or stuffed up the nose, causeth sneezing, and draweth from the head much corruption; and the powder thereof doth the same. The powder thereof drank in wine, helpeth those that are troubled with cramps and convulsions, or with the gout and sciatica, and giveth ease to those that have griping pains in their body and belly, and helpeth those that have the strangury. It is given with much profit to those that have had long fluxes by the sharp and evil quality of humours, which it stayeth, having first cleansed and purged them by the drying and binding property therein. The root boiled in wine and drank, doth effectually procure women's courses, and used as a pessary, worketh the same effect, but causeth abortion in women with child. Half a dram of the seed beaten to powder, and taken in wine, doth

speedily cause one to piss, which otherwise cannot. The same taken with vinegar, dissolveth the hardness and swellings of the spleen. The root is very effectual in all wounds, especially of the head; as also to draw forth any splinters, thorns, or broken bones, or any other thing sticking in the flesh, without causing pains, being used with a little verdigrease and honey, and the great centaury root. The same boiled in vinegar, and laid upon any tumour or swelling, doth very effectually dissolve and consume them; yea, even the swellings of the throat called the king's evil; the juice of the leaves or roots healeth the itch, and all running or spreading scabs, sores, blemishes, or scars in the skin, wheresoever they be.

GOLDEN ROD.

Descript.] THIS ariseth up with brownish small round stalks, two feet high, and sometimes more, having thereon many narrow and long dark green leaves, very seldom with any dents about the edges, or any stalks or white spots therein, yet they are sometimes so found divided at the tops into many small branches, with divers small yellow flowers on every one of them, all which are turned one way, and being ripe, do turn into down, and are carried away by the wind. The root consists of many small fibres, which grows not deep in the ground, but abideth all the winter therein, shooting forth new branches every year, the old one lying down to the ground.

Place.] It groweth in the open places of woods and copses, both moist and dry grounds, in many places of this land.

Time.] It flowereth about the month of July.

Government and Virtues.] Venus claims the herb, and therefore to be sure it respects beauty lost. Arnoldus de Villa Nova commends it much against the stone in the reins and kidneys, and to provoke urine in abundance, whereby also the gravel and stone may be voided. The decoction of the herb, green or dry, or the distilled water thereof, is very effectual for inward bruises, as also to be outwardly applied, it stayeth bleeding in any part of the body, and of wounds; also the fluxes of humours, the bloody-flux, and women's courses; and is no less prevalent in all ruptures or burstings, being drank inwardly, and outwardly applied. It is a sovereign wound herb, inferior to none, both for inward and outward hurts; green wounds, old sores and ulcers, are quickly cured therewith. It also is of especial use in all lotions for sores or ulcers in the mouth, throat, or privy parts of man or woman. The decoction also helpeth to fasten the teeth that are loose in the gums.

GOUT-WORT, OR HERB GERRARD.

Descript.] IT is a low herb, seldom rising half a yard high, having sundry leaves standing on brownish green stalks by threes, snipped about, and of a strong unpleasant savour: The umbels of the flowers are white, and the seed blackish, the root runneth in the ground, quickly taking a great deal of room.

Place.] It groweth by hedge and wall-sides, and often in the borders and corners of fields, and in gardens also.

Time.] It flowereth and seedeth about the end of July.

Government and Virtues.] Saturn rules it. Neither is it to be supposed goutwort hath its name for nothing but upon experiment to heal the gout and sciatica; as also joint-achs, and other cold griefs. The very bearing of it about one easeth the pains of the gout, and defends him that bears it from the disease.

GROMEL.

OF this I shall briefly describe their kinds, which are principally used in physic, the virtues whereof are alike, though somewhat different in their manner and form of growing.

Descript.] The greater gromel groweth up with slender hard and hairy stalks, trailing and taking root in the ground, as it lieth thereon, and parted into many other small branches with hairy dark green leaves thereon. At the joints with the leaves come forth very small blue flowers, and after them hard stony roundish seed. The root is long and woody, abiding the winter, and shooteth forth fresh stalks in the spring.

The smaller wild gromel sendeth forth divers upright hard branched stalks, two or three feet high, full of joints, at every of which groweth small, long, hard, and rough leaves like the former, but lesser; among which leaves come forth small white flowers, and after them greyish round seed like the former; the root is not very big, but with many strings thereat.

The garden gromel hath divers upright, slender, woody, hairy stalks, blown and cressed, very little branched, with leaves like the former, and white flowers; after which, in rough brown husks, is contained a white, hard, round seed, shining like pearls, and greater than either of the former; the root is like the first described, with divers branches and sprigs thereat, which continueth (as the first doth) all the winter.

Place.] The two first grow wild in barren or untilled places,

and by the way sides in many places of this land. The last is a nursling in the gardens of the curious.

Time.] They all flower from Midsummer until September, sometimes, and in the mean time the seed ripeneth.

Government and Virtues.] The herb belongs to Dame Venus; and therefore if Mars cause the cholic or stone, as usually he doth if in Virgo, this is your cure. These are accounted to be of a singular force as any herb or seed whatsoever, to break the stone and to void it, and the gravel either in the reins or bladder, as also to provoke urine being stopped, and to help the strangury. The seed is of greatest use, being bruised and boiled in white wine or in broth, or the like, or the powder of the seed taken therein. Two drams of the seed in powder taken with women's breast milk, is very effectual to procure a very speedy delivery to such women as have sore pains in their travail, and cannot be delivered: The herb itself, (when the seed is not to be had) either boiled, or the juice thereof drank, is effectual to all the purposes aforesaid, but not so powerful or speedy in operation.

GOOSEBERRY BUSH.

CALLED also feapberry, and in Sussex dewberry-bush, and in some countries wineberry.

Government and Virtues.] They are under the dominion of Venus. The berries, while they are unripe, being scalded, or baked, are good to stir up a fainting or decayed appetite, especially such whose stomachs are afflicted by choleric humours: They are excellent good to stay longings of women with child. You may keep them preserved with sugar all the year long. The decoction of the leaves of the tree cools hot swellings and inflammations; as also St. Anthony's fire. The ripe gooseberries being eaten, are an excellent remedy to allay the violent heat both of the stomach and liver. The young and tender leaves break the stone, and expel gravel both from the kidneys and bladder. All the evils they do to the body of man is, they are supposed to breed crudities, and by crudities, worms.

WINTER-GREEN.

Descript.] THIS sends forth seven, eight, or nine leaves from a small brown creeping root, every one standing upon a long foot-stalk, which are almost as broad as long, round pointed, of a sad green colour, and hard in handling, and like the leaf of a pear-tree; from whence ariseth a slender, weak stalk, yet standing upright, bearing at the top many small

white sweet-smelling flowers, laid open like a star, consisting of five round pointed leaves, with many yellowish threads standing in the middle about a green head, and a long stalk with them, which in time groweth to be the seed-vessel, which being ripe is found five square, with a small point at it, wherein is contained seed as small as dust.

Place.] It groweth seldom in fields, but frequent in the woods northwards, *viz.* in Yorkshire, Lancashire, and Scotland.

Time.] It flowereth about June and July.

Government and Virtues.] Winter green is under the dominion of Saturn, and is a singular good wound herb, and an especial remedy for to heal green wounds speedily, the green leaves being bruised and applied, or the juice of them. A salve made of the green herb stamped, or the juice boiled with hog's lard, or with salad oil and wax, and some turpentine added unto it, is a sovereign salve, and highly extolled by the Germans, who use it to heal all manner of wounds and sores. The herb boiled in wine and water, and given to drink to them that have any inward ulcers in their kidneys, or neck of the bladder, doth wonderfully help them. It stayeth all fluxes, as the lask, bloody fluxes, women's courses, and bleeding of wounds, and taketh away any inflammations rising upon pains of the heart; it is no less helpful for foul ulcers, hard to be cured; as also for cankers or fistulas. The distilled water of the herb doth effectually perform the same things.

GROUNDSEL.

Descript.] OUR common groundsel hath a round green and somewhat brownish stalk, spreading toward the top into branches, set with long and somewhat narrow green leaves, cut in on the edges, somewhat like the oak-leaves, but lesser, and round at the end. At the tops of the branches stand many small green heads, out of which grow many small, yellow threads or thumbs, which are the flowers, and continue many days blown in that manner, before it pass away into down, and, with the seed, is carried away in the wind. The root is small and thready, and soon perisheth, and as soon riseth again of its own sowing, so that it may be seen many months in the year, both green and in flower, and seed; for it will spring and seed twice in a year at least, if it be suffered in a garden.

Place.] This groweth almost every where, as well on tops of walls, as at the foot, amongst rubbish and untilled grounds, but especially in gardens.

Time.] It flowereth, as is said before, almost in every month throughout the year.

Government and Virtues.] This herb is Venus's mistress-piece, and is as gallant and universal a medicine for all diseases coming of heat, in what part of the body soever they be, as the sun shines upon; it is very safe and friendly to the body of man; yet causeth vomiting if the stomach be afflicted; if not, purging; and it doth it with more gentleness than can be expected; it is moist, and something cold withal, thereby causing expulsion, and repressing the heat caused by the motion of the internal parts in purges and vomits. Lay by our learned receipts; take so much sena, so much scammony, so much colocynthis, so much infusion of crocus metallorum, &c.; this herb alone preserved in a syrup, in a distilled water, or in an ointment, shall do the deed for you in all hot diseases, and, shall do it, 1. Safely, 2. Speedily.

The decoction of the herb (saith Dioscorides) made with wine, and drank, helpeth the pains of the stomach, proceeding of choler, (which it may well do by a vomit) as daily experience sheweth. The juice thereof taken in drink, or the decoction of it in ale, gently performeth the same. It is good against the jaundice and falling sickness, being taken in wine; as also against difficulty of making water. It provokes urine, expelleth gravel in the reins or kidneys; a dram thereof given in oxymel, after some walking or stirring of the body. It helpeth also the sciatica, griping of the belly, the colic; defects of the liver, and provoketh women's courses. The fresh herb boiled, and made into a poultice, applied to the breasts of women that are swollen with pain and heat, as also the privy parts of man or woman, the seat or fundament, or the arteries, joints, and sinews, when they are inflamed and swollen, doth much ease them; and used with some salt, helpeth to dissolve knots or kernels in any part of the body. The juice of the herb, or (as Dioscorides saith) the leaves and flowers, with some fine frankincense in powder, used in wounds of the body, nerves or sinews, doth singularly help to heal them. The distilled water of the herb performeth well all the aforesaid cures, but especially for inflammations or watering of the eyes, by reason of the defluction of rheum unto them.

HEART'S-EASE.

THIS is that herb, which such physicians as are licensed to blaspheme by authority, without danger of having their tongues burned through with an hot iron, call an herb of the Trinity. It is also called by those that are more moderate, three faces in a hood, live in idleness, cull me to you; and in Sussex we call them pancies.

Place.] Besides those which are brought up in gardens, they

grow commonly wild in the fields, especially in such as are very barren: sometimes you may find it on the tops of the high hills.

Time.] They flower all the Spring and summer long.

Government and Virtues.] The herb is really Saturnine, something cold, viscous, and slimy. A strong decoction of the herbs and flowers (if you will, you may make it into syrup) is an excellent cure for the French pox, the herb being a gallant anti-venerean: and that antivenereans are the best cure for that disease, far better and safer than to torment them with the flux, divers foreign physicians have confessed. The spirit of it is excellent good for the convulsions in children, as also for the falling sickness, and a gallant remedy for the inflammation of the lungs and breasts, pleurisy, scabs, itch, &c. It is under the celestial sign Cancer.

ARTICHOKES.

THE Latins call them cinera, only our college calls them artichocus.

Government and Virtues.] They are under the dominion of Venus, and therefore it is no marvel if they provoke lust, as indeed they do, being something windy meat; and yet they stay the involuntary course of natural seed in man, which is commonly called nocturnal pollutions. And here I care not greatly if I quote a little of Galen's nonsense in his treatise of the faculties of nourishment. He saith, they contain plenty of choleric juice (which notwithstanding I can scarcely believe) of which he saith is engendered melancholy juice, and of that melancholy juice thin choleric blood. But to proceed; this is certain, that the decoction of the root boiled in wine, or the root bruised and distilled in wine in an alembic, and being drank, purgeth by urine exceedingly.

HARTS-TONGUE.

Descript.] THIS hath divers leaves arising from the root, every one severally, which fold themselves in their first springing and spreading; when they are full grown, are about a foot long, smooth and green above, but hard and with little sap in them, and streaked on the back, thwart on both sides of the middle rib, with small and somewhat long and brownish marks; the bottoms of the leaves are a little bowed on each side of the middle rib, somewhat narrow with the length, and somewhat small at the end. The root is of many black threads, folded or interlaced together.

Time.] It is green all the winter; but new leaves spring every year.

Government and Virtues.] Jupiter claims dominion over this herb, therefore it is a singular remedy for the liver, both to strengthen it when weak, and ease it when afflicted, you shall do well to keep it in a syrup all the year: for though authors say it is green all the year, I scarce believe it. Harts tongue is much commended against the hardness and stoppings of the spleen and liver, and against the heat of the liver and stomach, and against lasks, and the bloody-flux. The distilled water thereof is also very good against the passions of the heart, and to stay the hiccough, to help the falling of the pallate, and to stay the bleeding of the gums, being gargled in the mouth. Dioscorides saith, it is good against the stinging or biting of serpents. As for the use of it, my direction at the latter end will be sufficient, and enough for those that are studious in physic, to whet their brains upon for one year or two.

HAZEL-NUT.

HAZEL nuts are so well known to every body, that they need no description.

Government and Virtues.] They are under the dominion of Mercury. The parted kernels made into an electuary, or the milk drawn from the kernels with mead or honeyed water, is very good to help an old cough; and being parched, and a little pepper put to them and drank, divesteth the distillations of rheum from the head. The dried husks and shells, to the weight of two drams, taken in red wine, stayeth lasks and women's courses, and so doth the red skin that covers the kernels, which is more effectual to stay women's courses.

And if this be true, as it is, then why should the vulgar so familiarly affirm, that eating nuts causeth shortness of breath, than which nothing is falser? For, how can that which strengthens the lungs, cause shortness of breath? I confess, the opinion is far older than I am; I knew tradition was a friend to error before, but never that he was the father of slander: Or are men's tongues so given to slandering one another, that they must slander nuts too, to keep their tongues in use? If any thing of the hazel nut be stopping, it is the husks and shells, and nobody is so mad to eat them, unless physically; and the red skin which covers the kernel, you may easily pull off. And so thus have I made an apology for nuts, which cannot speak for themselves.

HAWK-WEED.

Descript.] IT hath many large leaves lying upon the ground, much rent or torn on the sides into gashes like

dandelion, but with greater parts, more like the smooth sow thistle, from among which riseth a hollow, rough stalk, two or three feet high, branched from the middle upward, whereon are set at every joint longer leaves, little or nothing rent or cut, bearing on their top sundry pale, yellow flowers, consisting of many small, narrow leaves, broad pointed, and nicked in at the ends, set in a double row or more, the outermost being larger than the inner, which form most of the hawk-weeds (for there are many kinds of them) which turn into down, and, with the small brownish seed, is blown away with the wind. The root is long, and somewhat greater, with many small fibres thereat. The whole plant is full of bitter milk.

Place.] It groweth in divers places about the field sides, and the path-ways in dry grounds.

Time.] It flowereth and flies away in the summer months.

Government and Virtues.] Saturn owns it. Hawk-weed (saith Dioscorides) is cooling, somewhat drying and binding, and therefore good for the heat of the stomach, and gnawings therein; for inflammations, and the hot fits of agues. The juice thereof in wine, helpeth digestion, discusseth wind, hindereth crudities abiding in the stomach, and helpeth the difficulty of making water, and biting of venomous serpents, and stinging of the scorpion, if the herb be also outwardly applied to the place, and is very good against all other poisons. A scruple of the dried root given in wine and vinegar, is profitable for those that have the dropsy. The decoction of the herb taken with honey, digesteth the phlegm in the chest or lungs, and with hyssop helpeth the cough. The decoction thereof, and of wild succory, made with wine, and taken, helpeth the wind cholic and hardness of the spleen; it procureth rest and sleep, hindereth venery and venerous dreams, cooling heats, purgeth the stomach, increaseth blood, and helpeth the diseases of the reins and bladder. Outwardly applied, it is singularly good for all the defects and diseases of the eyes, used with some women's milk; and is used with good success in fretting or creeping ulcers, especially in the beginning. The green leaves bruised, and with a little salt applied to any place burnt with fire, before blisters do arise, helpeth them; as also inflammations, St. Anthony's fire, and all pushes and eruptions, hot and salt phlegm. The same applied with meal and fair water in manner of a poultice, to any place, affected with convulsions and the cramp, such as are out of joint, doth give help and ease. The distilled water cleanseth the skin, and taketh away freckles, spots, morphew, or wrinkles in the face.

HAWTHORN.

IT is not my intent to trouble you with a description of this tree, which is so well known that it needeth none. It is ordinarily but a hedge bush, although being pruned and dressed, it groweth to a tree of a reasonable height.

As for the hawthorn tree at Glastenbury, which is said to flower yearly on Christmas-day, it rather shews the superstition of those that observe it for the time of its flowering, than any great wonder, since the like may be found in divers other places of this land; as in Whey-street in Romney Marsh, and near unto Nantwich in Cheshire, by a place called White Green, where it flowereth about Christmas and May. If the weather be frosty, it flowereth not until January, or until the hard weather be over.

Government and Virtues.] It is a tree of Mars. The seeds in the berries beaten to powder being drank in wine, are held singular good against the stone, and are good for the dropsy. The distilled water of the flowers stayeth the lask. The seed cleared from the down, bruised and boiled in wine, and drank, is good for inward tormenting pains. If cloths and spunges be wet in the distilled water, and applied to any place wherein thorns and splinters, or the like, do abide in the flesh, it will notably draw them forth.

And thus you see the thorn gives a medicine for his own pricking, and so doth almost every thing else.

HEMLOCK.

Descript.] THE common great hemlock groweth up with a green stalk, four or five feet high, or more, full of red spots sometimes, and at the joints very large winged leaves set at them, which are divided into many other winged leaves one set against the other, dented about the edges, of a sad green colour, branched towards the top, where it is full of umbels of white flowers, and afterwards with whitish flat seed: The root is long, white, and sometimes crooked, and hollow within. The whole plant, and every part, hath a strong, heady, and ill-savoured scent, much offending the senses.

Place.] It groweth in all counties of this land, by walls and hedge-sides, in waste grounds and untilled places.

Time.] It flowereth and seedeth in July, or thereabouts.

Government and Virtues.] Saturn claims dominion over this herb, yet I wonder why it may not be applied to the privities in a priapism, or continual standing of the yard, it being

very beneficial to that disease; I suppose, my author's judgment was first upon the opposite disposition of Saturn to Venus in those faculties, and therefore he forbad the applying of it to those parts, that it might not cause barrenness, or spoil the spirit procreative; which if it do, yet applied to the privities, it stops its lustful thoughts. Hemlock is exceedingly cold, and very dangerous, especially to be taken inwardly. It may safely be applied to inflammations, tumours, and swellings in any part of the body (save the privy parts) as also to St. Anthony's fire, wheals, pushes, and creeping ulcers that arise of hot sharp humours, by cooling and repelling the heat; the leaves bruised and laid to the brow or forehead are good for their eyes that are red and swollen; as also to take away a pin and web growing in the eye; this is a tried medicine: Take a small handful of this herb, and half so much bay salt, beaten together, and applied to the contrary wrist of the hand, for 24 hours, doth remove it in thrice dressing. If the root thereof be roasted under the embers, wrapped in double wet paper, until it be soft and tender, and then applied to the gout in the hands or fingers, it will quickly help this evil. If any through mistake eat the herb hemlock instead of parsley, or the roots instead of a parsnip (both of which it is very like) whereby happeneth a kind of frenzy, or perturbation of the senses, as if they were stupid and drunk, the remedy is (as Pliny saith) to drink of the best and strongest pure wine, before it strikes to the heart, or gentian put in wine, or a draught of vinegar, wherewith Tragus doth affirm, that he cured a woman that had eaten the root.

HEMP.

THIS is so well known to every good housewife in the country, that I shall not need to write any description of it.

Time.] It is sown in the end of March, or beginning of April, and is ripe in August or September.

Government and Virtues.] It is a plant of Saturn, and good for something else, you see, than to make halters only. The seed of hemp consumeth wind, and by too much use thereof disperseth it so much, that it drieth up the natural seed for procreation; yet, being boiled in milk, and taken, helpeth such as have a hot dry cough. The Dutch make an emulsion out of the seed, and give it with good success to those that have the jaundice, especially in the beginning of the disease, if there be no ague accompanying it, for it openeth obstructions of the gall, and causeth digestion of choler. The emulsion or decoction of the seed stayeth lasks and continual fluxes, easeth the

cholic, and allayeth the troublesome humours in the bowels, and stayeth bleeding at the mouth, nose, or other places, some of the leaves being fried with the blood of them that bleed, and so given them to eat. It is held very good to kill the worms in men or beasts; and the juice dropped into the ears killeth worms in them; and draweth forth earwigs, or other living creatures gotten into them. The decoction of the root allayeth inflammations of the head, or any other parts: the herb itself, or the distilled water thereof, doth the like. The decoction of the roots easeth the pains of the gout, the hard humours of knots in the joints, the pains and shrinking of the sinews, and the pains of the hips. The fresh juice mixed with a little oil and butter, is good for any place that hath been burnt with fire, being thereto applied.

HENBANE.

Descript.] OUR common henbane hath very large, thick, soft, woolly leaves, lying on the ground, much cut in, or torn on the edges, of a dark, ill greyish green colour; among which arise up divers thick and short stalks, two or three feet high, spread into divers small branches, with lesser leaves on them, and many hollow flowers, scarcely appearing above the husk, and usually torn on one side, ending in five round points, growing one above another, of a deadish yellow colour, somewhat paler towards the edges, with many purplish veins therein, and of a dark, yellowish purple in the bottom of the flower, with a small point of the same colour in the middle, each of them standing in a hard close husk, which after the flowers are past, groweth very like the husk of asarabacca, and somewhat sharp at the top points, wherein is contained much small seed, very like poppy seed, but of a dusky, greyish colour. The root is great, white, and thick, branching forth divers ways under ground, so like a parsnip root (but that it is not so white) that it hath deceived others. The whole plant more than the root, hath a very heavy, ill, soporiferous smell, somewhat offensive.

Place.] It commonly groweth by the way-sides, and under hedge-sides and walls.

Time.] It flowereth in July, and springeth again yearly of its own seed. I doubt my authors mistook July for June, it not for May.

Government and Virtues.] I wonder how astrologers could take on them to make this an herb of Jupiter; and yet Mizaldus, a man of a penetrating brain, was of that opinion as well as the rest; the herb is indeed under the dominion of Saturn, and I prove it by this argument: All the herbs which delight most to

grow in Saturnine places, are Saturnine herbs. But henbane delights most to grow in Saturnine places, and whole cart loads of it may be found near the places where they empty the common jacques, and scarce a ditch to be found without it growing by it: Ergo, it is an herb of Saturn. The leaves of henbane do cool all hot inflammations in the eyes, or any other part of the body; and are good to assuage all manner of swellings of the cods, or women's breasts, or elsewhere, if they be boiled in wine, and either applied themselves, or the fomentation warm; it also assuageth the pain of the gout, the sciatica, and other pains in the joints which arise from a hot cause. And applied with vinegar to the forehead and temples, helpeth the head-ache and want of sleep in hot fevers. The juice of the herb or seed, or the oil drawn from the seed, does the like. The oil of the seed is helpful for deafness, noise, and worms in the ears, being dropped therein; the juice of the herb or root doth the same. The decoction of the herb or seed, or both, killeth lice in man or beast. The fume of the dried herb, stalks and seed, burned, quickly healeth swellings, chilblains or kibes in the hands or feet, by holding them in the fume thereof. The remedy to help those that have taken henbane is to drink goat's milk, honeyed water, or pine kernels, with sweet wine; or, in the absence of these, fennel seed, the seed of cresses, mustard, or radish; as also onions or garlic taken in wine, do all help to free them from danger, and restore them to their due tempes again.

Take notice, that this herb must never be taken inwardly; outwardly, an oil, ointment, or plaister of it, is most admirable for the gout, to cool the venereal heat of the reins in the French pox; to stop the tooth-ache, being applied to the aching side; to allay all inflammations, and to help the diseases before premised.

HEDGE HYSSOP.

Descript.] DIVERS sorts there are of this plant; the first of which is an Italian by birth, and only nursed up here in the gardens of the curious. Two or three sorts are found commonly growing wild here, the description of two of which I shall give you. The first is a smooth, low plant, not a foot high, very bitter in taste, with many square stalks, diversely branched from the bottom to the top, with divers joints, and two small leaves at each joint, broader at the bottom than they are at the end, a little dented about the edges, of a sad green colour, and full of veins. The flowers stand at the joints, being of a fair purple colour, with some white spots in them, in fashion like those of dead nettles. The seed is small and yellow, and the roots spread much under ground.

The second seldom groweth half a foot high, sending up many small branches, whereon grow many small leaves, set one against the other, somewhat broad, but very short. The flowers are like the flowers of the other fashion, but of a pale reddish colour. The seeds are small and yellowish. The root spreadeth like the other, neither will it yield to its fellow one ace of bitterness.

Place.] They grow in wet low grounds, and by the water-sides; the last may be found among the bogs on Hamstead heath.

Time.] They flower in June and July, and the seed is ripe presently after.

Government and Virtues.] They are herbs of Mars, and as choleric and churlish as he is, being most violent purges, especially of choler and phlegm. It is not safe taking them inwardly, unless they be well rectified by the art of the alchymist, and only the purity of them given; so used they may be very helpful both for the dropsy, gout, and sciatica; outwardly used in ointments they kill worms, the belly anointed with it, and are excellent good to cleanse old and filthy ulcers.

BLACK HELLEBORE.

IT is also called setter-wort, setter-grass, bear's-foot, christmas-herb, and christmas-flower.

Descript.] It hath sundry, fair, green leaves rising from the root, each of them standing about an handful high from the earth; each leaf is divided into seven, eight, or nine parts, dented from the middle of the leaf to the point on both sides, abiding green all the winter; about Christmas-time, if the weather be any thing temperate, the flowers appear upon foot stalks, also consisting of five large, round, white leaves a-piece, which sometimes are purple towards the edges, with many pale yellow thumbs in the middle; the seeds are divided into several cells, like those of columbines, save only that they are greater; the seeds are in colour black, and in form long and round. The root consisteth of numberless blackish strings all united into one head. There is another black hellebore, which grows up and down in the woods very like this, but only that the leaves are smaller and narrower, and perish in the winter, which this doth not.

Place.] The first is maintained in gardens. The second is commonly found in the woods in Northamptonshire.

Time.] The first flowereth in December or January; the second in February or March.

Government and Virtues.] It is an herb of Saturn, and therefore no marvel if it hath some sullen conditions with it, and

would be far safer, being purified by the art of the alchymist than given raw. If any have taken any harm by taking it, the common cure is to take goat's-milk: If you cannot get goat's-milk, you must make shift with such as you can get. The roots are very effectual against all melancholy diseases, especially such as are of long standing, as quartan agues and madness; it helps the falling sickness, the leprosy, both the yellow and black jaundice, the gout, sciatica, and convulsions; and this was found out by experience, that the root of that which groweth wild in our country, works not so churlishly as those do which are brought from beyond sea, as being maintained by a more temperate air. The root, used as a pessary, provokes the terms exceedingly; also being beaten into powder, and strewed upon foul ulcers, it consumes the dead flesh, and instantly heals them; nay, it will help gangrenes in the beginning. Twenty grains taken inwardly is a sufficient dose for one time, and let that be corrected with half so much cinnamon; country people used to rowel their cattle with it. If a beast be troubled with a cough, or have taken any poison, they bore a hole through his ear, and put a piece of the root in it, this will help him in 24 hours time. Many other uses farriers put it to which I shall forbear.

HERB ROBERT.

Descript.] IT riseth up with a reddish stalk, two feet high, having divers leaves thereon upon very long and reddish foot-stalks, divided at the ends into three or five divisions, each of them cut in on the edges, some deeper than others, and all dented likewise about the edges, which sometimes turn reddish. At the tops of the stalks come forth divers flowers made of five leaves, much larger than the dove's foot, and of a more reddish colour; after which come black heads, as in others. The root is small and thready, and smelleth as the whole plant, very strong, almost stinking.

Place.] This groweth frequently every where by the way-sides, upon ditch banks and waste grounds wheresoever one goeth.

Time.] It flowereth in June and July chiefly, and the seed is ripe shortly after.

Government and Virtues.] It is under the dominion of Venus. Herb robert is commended not only against the stone, but to stay blood, where or howsoever flowing; it speedily healeth all green wounds, and is effectual in old ulcers in the privy parts, or elsewhere. You may persuade yourself this is true, and also conceive a good reason for it, if you do but consider it is an herb of Venus, for all it hath a man's name.

HERB TRUE-LOVE, OR ONE-BERRY.

Descript.] ORDINARY herb true-love, hath a small creeping root running under the uppermost crust of the ground, somewhat like couch grass root, but not so white, shooting forth stalks with leaves, some whereof carry no berries, the others do; every stalk smooth without joints, and blackish green, rising about half a foot high, if it bear berries, otherwise seldom so high, bearing at the top four leaves set directly one against another, in manner of a cross or ribband tied (as it is called) in a true-love's knot, which are each of them apart somewhat like unto a nightshade leaf, but somewhat broader, having sometimes three leaves, sometimes five, sometimes six, and those sometimes greater than in others; in the middle of the four leaves riseth up one small slender stalk, about an inch high, bearing at the tops thereof one flower spread open like a star, consisting of four small and long narrow pointed leaves of a yellowish green colour, and four others lying between them lesser than they; in the middle whereof stands a round dark purplish button or head, compassed about with eight small yellow mealy threads with three colours, making it the more conspicuous, and lovely to behold. This button or head in the middle, when the other leaves are withered, becometh a blackish purple berry, full of juice, of the bigness of a reasonable grape, having within it many white seeds. The whole plant is without any manifest taste.

Place.] It groweth in woods and copses, and sometimes in the corners or borders of fields, and waste grounds in very many places of this land, and abundantly in the woods, copses, and other places about Chislehurst and Maidstone in Kent.

Time.] They spring up in the middle of April or May, and are in flower soon after. The berries are ripe in the end of May, and in some places in June.

Government and Virtues.] Venus owns it; the leaves or berries hereof are effectual to expel poison of all sorts, especially that of the aconites; as also the plague, and other pestilential disorders: Matthiolus saith, that some that have lain long in lingering sickness, and others that by witchcraft (as it was thought) were become half foolish, by taking a dram of the seeds or berries hereof in powder every day for 20 days together, were restored to their former health. The roots in powder taken in wine, easeth the pains of the cholic speedily. The leaves are very effectual as well for green wounds, as to cleanse and heal up filthy old sores and ulcers; and is very powerful to discuss all tumours and swellings in the cods, privy parts, the groin, or in any part of the body, and speedily to allay all inflam-

mations. The juice of the leaves applied to felons, or those nails of the hands or toes that have imposthumes or sores gathered together at the roots of them, healeth them in a short space. The herb is not to be described for the premises, but is fit to be nourished in every good woman's garden.

HYSSOP.

HYSSOP is so well known to be an inhabitant in every garden, that it will save me labour in writing a description thereof. The virtues are as follow:

Temperature and Virtues.] The herb is Jupiter's, and the sign Cancer. It strengthens all the parts of the body under Cancer and Jupiter; which what they may be, is found amply discussed in my astrological judgment of diseases. Dioscorides saith, that hyssop boiled with rue and honey, and drank, helpeth those that are troubled with coughs, shortness of breath, wheezing and rheumatic distillations upon the lungs; taken also with oxymel, it purgeth gross humours by stool; and with honey killeth worms in the belly; and with fresh and new figs bruised, helpeth to loosen the belly, and more forcibly if the root of flower-de-luce and cresses be added thereto. It amendeth and cherisheth the native colour of the body, spoiled by the yellow jaundice; and being taken with figs and nitre, helpeth the dropsy and spleen; being boiled with wine, it is good to wash inflammations, and taketh away the black and blue spots, and marks that come by strokes, bruises, or falls, being applied with warm water. It is an excellent medicine for the quinsy, or swelling in the throat, to wash and gargle it, being boiled in figs; it helpeth the tooth-ache, being boiled in vinegar and gargled therewith. The hot vapours of the decoction taken by a funnel in at the ears, easeth the inflammations and singing noise of them. Being bruised, and salt, honey, and cummin seed put to it, helpeth those that are stung by serpents. The oil thereof (the head being anointed) killeth lice, and taketh away itching of the head. It helpeth those that have the falling sickness, which way soever it be applied. It helpeth to expectorate tough phlegm, and is effectual in all cold griefs or diseases of the chest or lungs, being taken either in syrup or licking medicine. The green herb bruised and a little sugar put thereto, doth quickly heal any cut or green wound, being thereunto applied.

HOPS.

THESE are so well known that there need no description; I mean the manured kind, which every good husband or housewife is acquainted with.

Descript.] The wild hop groweth up as the other doth, ramping upon trees or hedges, that stand next to them, with rough branches and leaves like the former, but it giveth smaller heads, and in far less plenty than it, so that there is scarce a head or two seen in a year on divers of this wild kind, wherein consisteth the chief difference.

Place.] They delight to grow in low moist grounds, and are found in all parts of this land.

Time.] They spring not up until April, and flower not until the latter end of June; the heads are not gathered until the middle or latter end of September.

Government and Virtues.] It is under the dominion of Mars. This, in physical operations, is to open obstructions of the liver and spleen, to cleanse the blood, to loosen the belly, to cleanse the reins from gravel, and provoke urine. The decoction of the tops of hops, as well of the tame as the wild, worketh the same effects. In cleansing the blood they help to cure the French disease, and all manner of scabs, itch, and other breakings-out of the body; as also all tetters; ringworms, and spreading sores, the morphew and all discolouring of the skin. The decoction of the flowers and tops, do help to expel poison that any one hath drank. Half a dram of the seed in powder taken in drink, killeth worms in the body, bringeth down women's courses, and expelleth urine. A syrup made of the juice and sugar, cureth the yellow jaundice, easeth the head-ache that comes of heat, and tempereth the heat of the liver and stomach, and is profitably given in long and hot agues that rise in choler and blood. Both the wild and the manured are of one property, and alike effectual in all the aforesaid diseases. By all these testimonies beer appears to be better than ale.

Mars owns the plant, and then Dr. Reason will tell you how it performs these actions.

HOREHOUND.

Descript.] COMMON horehound groweth up with square hairy stalks, half a yard or two feet high, set at the joints with two round crumbled rough leaves of a sullen hoary green colour, of a reasonable good scent, but a very bitter taste. The flowers are small, white, and gaping, set in a rough, hard prickly husk round about the joints, with the leaves from the middle of the stalk upward, wherein afterward is found small round blackish seed. The root is blackish, hard and woody, with many strings, and abideth many years.

Place.] It is found in many parts of this land, in dry grounds, and waste green places.

Time.] It flowereth in July, and the seed is ripe in August.

Government and Virtues.] It is an herb of Mercury. A decoction of the dried herb, with the seed, or the juice of the green herb taken with honey, is a remedy for those that are short-winded, have a cough, or are fallen into a consumption, either through long sickness, or thin distillations of rheum upon the lungs. It helpeth to expectorate tough phlegm from the chest, being taken from the roots of Iris or Orris. It is given to women to bring down their courses, to expel their after-birth, and to them that have sore and long travails; as also to those that have taken poison, or are stung or bitten by venomous serpents. The leaves used with honey, purge foul ulcers, stay running or creeping sores, and the growing of the flesh over the nails. It also helpeth pains of the sides. The juice thereof with wine and honey, helpeth to clear the eye-sight, and snuffed up into the nostrils, purgeth away the yellow jaundice, and with a little oil of roses dropped into the ears, easeth the pains of them. Galen saith, it openeth obstructions both of the liver and spleen, and purgeth the breast and lungs of phlegm; and used outwardly it both cleanseth and digesteth. A decoction of horehound (saith Matthiolus) is available for those that have hard livers, and for such as have itches and running tetters. The powder hereof taken, or the decoction, killeth worms. The green leaves bruised, and boiled in old hog's grease unto an ointment, healeth the biting of dogs, abateth the swellings and pains that come by any pricking of thorns, or such like means; and used with vinegar, cleanseth and healeth tetters. There is a syrup made of horehound to be had at the apothecaries, very good for old coughs, to rid the tough phlegm; as also to void cold rheums from the lungs of old folks, and for these that are asthmatic or short-winded.

HORSETAIL.

OF that there are many kinds, but I shall not trouble you nor myself with any large description of them, which to do, were but as the proverb is, To find a knot in a rush, all the kinds thereof being nothing else but knotted rushes, some with leaves, and some without. Take the description of the most eminent sort as followeth:

Descript.] The great horsetail at the first springing hath heads somewhat like those of asparagus, and after grow to be hard, rough, hollow stalks, jointed at sundry places up to the top, a foot high, so made as if the lower parts were put into the upper, where grow on each side a bush of small long rush-like hard leaves, each part resembling a horsetail, from whence

it is called so. At the tops of the stalks come forth small catkins, like those of trees. The root creepeth under ground, having joints at sundry places.

Place.] This (as most of the other sorts hereof) groweth in wet grounds.

Time.] They spring up in April, and their blooming catkins in July, seeding for the most part in August, and then perish down to the ground, rising afresh in the spring.

Government and Virtues.] The herb belongs to Saturn, yet is very harmless, and excellent good for the things following: Horsetail, the smoother rather than the rough, and the leaved rather than the bare, is most physical. It is very powerful to stanch bleeding either inward or outward, the juice of the decoction thereof being drank, or the juice, decoction, or distilled water applied outwardly. It also stayeth all sorts of lasks and fluxes in man or woman, and the pissing of blood; and healeth also not only the inward ulcers, and the excoriation of the entrails, bladder, &c. but all other sorts of foul, moist, and running ulcers, and soon soldereth together the tops of green wounds. It cureth all ruptures in children. The decoction thereof in wine being drank, provoketh urine, and helpeth the stone and strangury; and the distilled water thereof drank two or three times in a day, and a small quantity at a time, also easeth the entrails or guts, and is effectual against a cough that comes by distillation from the head. The juice or distilled water being warmed, and hot inflammations, pustules or red wheals, and other breakings-out in the skin, being bathed therewith, doth help them, and doth no less ease the swelling heat and inflammation of the fundament, or privy parts in men and women.

HOUSELEEK, OR SENGREEN.

BOTH these are so well known to my countrymen, that I shall not need to write any description of them.

Place.] It groweth commonly upon walls and house-sides, and flowereth in July.

Government and Virtues.] It is an herb of Jupiter, and it is reported by Mezaldus, to preserve what it grows upon from fire and lightning. Our ordinary houseleek is good for all inward heats as well as outward, and in the eyes or other parts of the body; a posset made with the juice of houseleek, is singular good in all hot agues, for it cooleth and tempereth the blood and spirits, and quencheth the thirst; and also good to stay all hot defluctions or sharp and salt rheums in the eyes, the juice being dropped into them, or into the ears, helpeth them. It helpeth also other fluxes of humours in the bowels, and the immoderate

courses in women. It cooleth and restraineth all other hot inflammations. St. Anthony's fire, scaldings and burnings, the shingles, fretting ulcers, cankers, tetters, ringworms, and the like; and much easeth the pain of the gout proceeding from a hot cause. The juice also taketh away warts and corns in the hands or feet, being often bathed therewith, and the skin and leaves being laid on them afterwards. It easeth also the headache, and distempered heat of the brain in frenzies, or through want of sleep, being applied to the temples and forehead. The leaves bruised and laid upon the crown or seam of the head, stayeth bleeding at the nose very quickly. The distilled water of the herb is profitable for all the purposes aforesaid. The leaves being gently rubbed on any place stung with nettles or bees, doth quickly take away the pain.

HOUND'S TONGUE.

Descript.] THE great ordinary hound's tongue hath many long and somewhat narrow, soft, hairy, darkish green leaves, lying on the ground, somewhat like unto bugles leaves, from amongst which riseth up a rough hairy stalk about two feet high, with some smaller leaves thereon, and branched at the tops into divers parts, with a small leaf at the foot of every branch, which is somewhat long, with many flowers set along the same, which branch is crooked or turneth inwards before it flowereth, and openeth by degrees as the flowers doth blow, which consist of small purplish red leaves of a dead colour, rising out of the husks wherein they stand with some threads in the middle. It hath sometimes a white flower. After the flowers are past, there cometh rough flat seed, with a small pointle in the middle, easily cleaving to any garment that it toucheth, and not so easily pulled off again. The root is black, thick, and long, hard to break, and full of clammy juice, smelling somewhat strong, of an evil scent, as the leaves also do.

Place.] It groweth in most places of this land, in waste grounds, and untilled places, by highway-sides, lanes, and hedge-sides.

Time.] It flowereth about May or June, and the seed is ripe shortly after.

Government and Virtues.] It is a plant under the dominion of Mercury. The root is very effectually used in pills, as well as the decoction, or otherwise, to stay all sharp and thin defluctions of rheum from the head into the eyes or nose, or upon the stomach or lungs, as also for coughs and shortness of breath. The leaves boiled in wine (saith Discorides, but others do rather appoint it to be made with water, and do add thereto oil and salt) molifieth or openeth the belly downwards. It also helpeth to

cure the biting of a mad dog, some of the leaves being also applied to the wound: The leaves bruised, or the juice of them boiled in hog's lard, and applied, helpeth falling away of the hair, which cometh of hot and sharp humours; as also for any place that is scalded or burnt; the leaves bruised and laid to any green wound doth heal it up quickly: the root baked under the embers, wrapped in paste or wet paper, or in a wet double cloth, and thereof a suppository made, and put up into or applied to the fundament, doth very effectually help the painful piles or hæmorrhoides. The distilled water of the herbs and roots is very good to all the purposes aforesaid, to be used as well inwardly to drink, as outwardly to wash any sore place, for it healeth all manner of wounds and punctures, and those foul ulcers that arise by the French pox. Mizaldus adds that the leaves laid under the feet, will keep the dogs from barking at you. It is called hound's-tongue, because it ties the tongues of hounds; whether true, or not, I never tried, yet I cured the biting of a mad dog with this only medicine.

HOLLY, HOLM, OR HULVER BUSH.

FOR to describe a tree so well known is needless.

Government and Virtues.] The tree is Saturnine. The berries expel wind, and therefore are held to be profitable in the cholic. The berries have a strong faculty with them; for if you eat a dozen of them in the morning fasting when they are ripe and not dried, they purge the body of gross and clammy phlegm; but if you dry the berries, and beat them into powder, they bind the body, and stop fluxes, bloody-fluxes, and the terms in women. The bark of the tree, and also the leaves, are excellent good, being used in fomentations for broken bones, and such members as are out of joint. Pliny saith, the branches of the tree defend houses from lightning, and men from witchcraft.

ST. JOHN'S WORT.

Descript.] COMMON St. John's wort shooteth forth brownish, upright, hard, round stalks, two feet high, spreading many branches from the sides up to the tops of them, with two small leaves set one against another at every place, which are of a deep green colour, somewhat like the leaves of the lesser centaury, but narrow, and full of small holes in every leaf, which cannot be so well perceived, as when they are held up to the light; at the tops of the stalks and branches stand yellow flowers of five leaves a-piece, with many yellow threads in the middle, which being bruised, do yield

a reddish juice like blood: after which comes small round heads, wherein is contained small blackish seed, smelling like rosin. The root is hard and woody, with divers strings and fibres at it, of a brownish colour, which abideth in the ground many years, shooting anew every spring.

Place.] This groweth in woods and copses, as well those that are shady, as open to the sun.

Time.] They flower about midsummer and July, and their seed is ripe in the latter end of July or August.

Government and Virtues.] It is under the celestial sign Leo, and the dominion of the Sun. It may be, if you meet a Papist, he will tell you, especially if he be a lawyer, that St. John made it over to him by a letter of attorney. It is a singular wound herb; boiled in wine and drank, it healeth inward hurts or bruises; made into an ointment, it opens obstructions, dissolves swellings, and closes up the lips of wounds. The decoction of the herb and flowers, especially of the seed, being drank in wine, with the juice of knot-grass, helpeth all manner of vomiting and spitting of blood, is good for those that are bitten or stung by any venomous creature, and for those that cannot make water. Two drams of the seed of St. John's wort made into powder, and drank in a little broth, doth gently expel choler or congealed blood in the stomach. The decoction of the leaves and seeds drank somewhat warm before the fits of agues, whether they be tertians or quartans, alters the fits, and, by often using, doth take them quite away. The seed is much commended, being drank for forty days together, to help the sciatica, the falling-sickness, and the palsy.

IVY.

IT is so well known, to every child almost, to grow in woods upon the trees, and upon the stone walls of churches, houses, &c. and sometimes to grow alone of itself, though but seldom.

Time.] It flowereth not until July, and the berries are not ripe till Christmas, when they have felt winter frosts.

Government and Virtues.] It is under the dominion of Saturn. A pugil of the flowers, which may be about a dram, (saith Dioscorides) drank twice a day in red wine, helpeth the lask, and bloody-flux. It is an enemy to the nerves and sinews, being much taken inwardly, but very helpful unto them, being outwardly applied. Pliny saith, the yellow berries are good against the jaundice; and taken before one be set to drink hard, preserveth from drunkenness, and helpeth those that spit blood; and that the white berries being taken inwardly, or applied outwardly, killeth the worms in the belly. The berries are a sin-

gular remedy to prevent the plague, as also to free them from it that have got it, by drinking the berries thereof made into a powder, for two or three days together. They being taken in wine, do certainly help to break the stone, provoke urine, and women's courses. The fresh leaves of ivy, boiled in vinegar, and applied warm to the sides of those that are troubled with the spleen, ach, or stitch in the sides, do give much ease: The same applied with some rose-water, and oil of roses, to the temples and forehead, easeth the head-ach, though it be of long continuance. The fresh leaves boiled in wine, and old filthy ulcers hard to be cured washed therewith, do wonderfully help to cleanse them. It also quickly healeth green wounds, and is effectual to heal all burnings and scaldings, and all kinds of exulcerations coming thereby, or by salt phlegm or humours in other parts of the body. The juice of the berries or leaves snuffed up into the nose, purgeth the head and brain of thin rheum that maketh defluctions into the eyes and nose, and curing the ulcers and stench therein; the same dropped into the ears, helpeth the old and running sores of them; those that are troubled with the spleen, shall find much ease by continual drinking out of a cup made of ivy, so as the drink may stand some small time therein before it be drank. Cato saith, That wine put into such a cup, will soak through it, by reason of the antipathy that is between them.

There seems to be a very great antipathy between wine and ivy; for if one hath got a surfeit by drinking of wine, his speediest cure is to drink a draught of the same wine wherein a handful of ivy leaves, being first bruised, have been boiled.

JUNIPER BUSH.

FOR to give a description of a bush so commonly known is needless.

Place.] They grow plentifully in divers woods in Kent, Warney Common near Brentwood in Essex, upon Finchley Common without Highgate; hard by the New-found Wells near Dulwich, upon a Common between Mitcham and Croydon, in the Highgate near Amersham in Buckinghamshire, and many other places.

Time.] The berries are not ripe the first year, but continue green two summers and one winter before they are ripe; at which time they are all of a black colour, and therefore you shall always find upon the bush green berries; the berries are ripe about the fall of the leaf.

Government and Virtues.] This admirable Solar shrub is scarce to be paralleled for its virtues. The berries are hot in

the third degree, and dry but in the first, being a most admirable counter-poison, and as great a resister of the pestilence, as any that grows; they are excellent good against the bitings of venomous beasts, they provoke urine exceedingly, and therefore are very available to dysuries and stranguries. It is so powerful a remedy against the dropsy, that the very lee made of the ashes of the herb being drank, cures the disease. It provokes the terms, helps the fits of the mother, strengthens the stomach exceedingly, and expels the wind. Indeed there is scarce a better remedy for wind in any part of the body, or the cholic, than the chymical oil drawn from the berries; such country people as know not how to draw the chymical oil, may content themselves by eating ten or a dozen of the ripe berries every morning fasting. They are admirable good for a cough, shortness of breath, and consumption, pains in the belly, ruptures, cramps, and convulsions. They give safe and speedy delivery to women with child, they strengthen the brain exceedingly, help the memory, and fortify the sight by strengthening the optic nerves; are excellent good in all sorts of agues; help the gout and sciatica, and strengthen all the limbs of the body. The ashes of the wood is a speedy remedy to such as have the scurvy, to rub their gums with. The berries stay all fluxes, help the hæmorrhoids or piles, and kill worms in children. A lee made of the ashes of the wood, and the body bathed with it, cures the itch, scabs and leprosy. The berries break the stone, procure appetite when it is lost, and are excellent good for all palsies, and falling sickness.

KIDNEYWORT, OR WALL PENNYROYAL, OR WALL PENNYWORT.

Descript.] IT hath many thick, flat, and round leaves growing from the root, every one having a long foot-stalk, fastened underneath, about the middle of it, and a little unevenly weaved sometimes about the edges, of a pale green colour, and somewhat yellow on the upper side like a saucer; from among which rise one or more tender, smooth, hollow stalks half a foot high, with two or three small leaves thereon, usually not round as those below, but somewhat long, and divided at the edges; the tops are somewhat divided into long branches, bearing a number of flowers, set round about a long spike one above another, which are hollow and like a little bell of a whitish green colour, after which come small heads, containing very small brownish seed, which falling on the ground, will plentifully spring up before winter, if it have moisture. The root is round and most usually smooth, greyish without, and

white within, having small fibres at the head of the root, and bottom of the stalk.

Place.] It groweth very plentifully in many places of this land, but especially in all the west parts thereof, upon stone and mud walls, upon rocks also, and in stony places, upon the ground, at the bottom of old trees, and sometimes on the bodies of them that are decayed and rotten.

Time.] It usually flowereth in the beginning of May, and the seed ripeneth quickly after, shedding itself; so that about the end of May, usually the leaves and stalks are withered, dry, and gone until September, that the leaves spring up again, and so abide all winter.

Government and Virtues.] Venus challengeth the herb under Libra. The juice or the distilled water being drank, is very effectual for all inflammations and unnatural heats, to cool a fainting hot stomach, a hot liver, or the bowels; the herb, juice, or distilled water whereof, outwardly applied, healeth pimples, St. Anthony's fire, and other outward heats. The said juice or water helpeth to heal sore kidneys, torn or fretted by the stone, or exulcerated within; it also provoketh urine, is available for the dropsy, and helpeth to break the stone. Being used as a bath, or made into an ointment, it cooleth the painful piles or hæmorrhoidal veins. It is no less effectual to give ease in pains of the hot gout, the sciatica and the inflammations and swellings in the cods; it helpeth the kernels or knots in the neck or throat, called the king's evil; healing kibes and chilblains if they be bathed with the juice, or anointed with ointment made thereof, and some of the skin of the leaf upon them; it is also used in green wounds to stay the blood, and to heal them quickly.

KNAPWEED.

Descript.] THE common sort hereof hath many long and somewhat broad dark green leaves, rising from the root, dented about the edges, and sometimes a little rent or torn on both sides in two or three places, and somewhat hairy withal; amongst which ariseth a long round stalk, four or five feet high, divided into many branches, at the tops whereof stand great scaly green heads, and from the middle of them thrust forth a number of dark purplish red thrumbs or threads, which after they are withered and past, there are found divers black seeds, lying in a great deal of down, somewhat like unto thistle seed, but smaller; the root is white, hard and woody, and divers fibres annexed thereunto, which perisheth not, but abideth with leaves thereon all the winter, shooting out fresh every spring.

Place.] It groweth in most fields and meadows, and about their borders and hedges, and in many waste grounds also every where.

Time.] It usually flowereth in June and July, and the seed is ripe shortly after.

Government and Virtues.] Saturn challengeth the herb for his own. This knapweed helpeth to stay fluxes, both of blood at the mouth or nose, or other outward parts, and those veins that are inwardly broken, or inward wounds, as also the fluxes of the belly; it stayeth distillations of thin and sharp humours from the head upon the stomach and lungs; it is good for those that are bruised by any falls, blows, or otherwise, and is profitable for those that are bursten, and have ruptures, by drinking the decoction of the herb and roots in wine, and applying the same outwardly to the place. It is singularly good of all running sores, cancerous and fistulous, drying up the moisture, and healing them up gently, without sharpness; it doth the like to running sores or scabs of the head or other parts. It is of special use for the soreness of the throat, swelling of the uvula and jaws, and excellent good to stay bleeding, and heal up all green wounds.

KNOTGRASS.

IT is generally known so well that it needeth no description.

Place.] It groweth in every country of this land, by the highway sides, and by foot-paths in fields; as also by the sides of old walls.

Time.] It springeth up late in the spring, and abideth until the winter, when all the branches perish.

Government and Virtues.] Saturn seems to me to own the herb, and yet some hold the Sun; out of doubt 'tis Saturn. The juice of the common kind of knotgrass is most effectual to stay bleeding of the mouth, being drank in steeled or red wine; and the bleeding at the nose, to be applied to the forehead or temples, or to be squirted up into the nostrils. It is no less effectual to cool and temper the heat of the blood and stomach, and to stay any flux of the blood and humours, as lasks, bloody-flux, women's coures and running of the reins. It is singular good to provoke urine, help the strangury, and allay the heat that cometh thereby; and is powerful by urine to expel the gravel or stone in the kidneys and bladder, a dram of the powder of the herb being taken in wine for many days together: Being boiled in wine and drank, it is profitable to those that are stung or bitten by venomous creatures, and very effectual to stay all defluxions of rheumatic humours upon the stomach, and killeth

worms in the belly or stomach, quieteth inward pains that arise from the heat, sharpness and corruption of blood and choler. The distilled water hereof taken by itself or with the powder of the herb or seed, is very effectual to all the purposes aforesaid, and is accounted one of the most sovereign remedies to cool all manner of inflammations, breaking out through heat, hot swellings and imposthumes, gangrene and fistulous cankers, or foul filthy ulcers, being applied or put into them; but especially for all sorts of ulcers and sores happening in the privy parts of men and women. It helpeth all fresh and green wounds, and speedily healeth them. The juice dropped in the ears, cleanseth them being foul, and having running matter in them.

It is very prevalent for the premises; as also for broken joints and ruptures.

LADY'S MANTLE.

Descript.] IT hath many leaves rising from the root standing upon long hairy foot-stalks, being almost round, and a little cut on the edges, into eight or ten parts, making it seem like a star, with so many corners and points, and dented round about, of a light green colour, somewhat hard in handling, and as it were folded or plaited at first, and then crumpled in divers places, and a little hairy, as the stalk is also, which riseth up among them to the height of two or three feet; and being weak, is not able to stand upright, but bendeth to the ground, divided at the top into two, or three small branches, with small yellowish green heads, and flowers of a whitish colour breaking out of them; which being past, there cometh a small yellowish seed like a poppy seed: The root is somewhat long and black, with many strings and fibres thereat.

Place.] It groweth naturally in many pastures and wood sides in Hertfordshire, Wiltshire, and Kent, and other places of this land.

Time.] It flowereth in May and June, and abideth after seed-time green all the winter.

Government and Virtues.] Venus claims the herb as her own. Lady's mantle is very proper for those wounds that have inflammations, and is very effectual to stay bleeding, vomitings, fluxes of all sorts, bruises by falls or otherwise, and helpeth ruptures; and such women or maids as have over great flagging breasts, causing them to grow less and hard, being both drank and outwardly applied; the distilled water drank for 20 days together helpeth conception, and to retain the birth; if the women do sometimes also sit in a bath made of the decoction of the herb. It is one of the most singular wound herbs, and therefore highly prized and praised by the Germans, who

use it in all wounds inward and outward, to drink a decoction thereof, and wash the wounds therewith, or dip tents therein, and put them into the wounds, which wonderfully drieth up all humidity of the sores, and abateth inflammations therein. It quickly healeth all green wounds, not suffering any corruption to remain behind, and cureth all old sores, though fistulous and hollow.

LAVENDER.

BEING an inhabitant almost in every garden, it is so well known, that it needeth no description.

Time.] It flowereth about the end of June, and beginning of July.

Government and Virtues.] Mercury owns the herb, and it carries his effects very potently. Lavender is of a special good use for all the griefs and pains of the head and brain that proceed of a cold cause, as the apoplexy, falling-sickness, the dropsy, or sluggish malady, cramps, convulsions, palsies, and often faintings. It strengthens the stomach, and freeth the liver and spleen from obstructions, provoketh women's courses, and expelleth the dead child and after-birth. The flowers of lavender steeped in wine, helpeth them to make water that are stopped, or are troubled with the wind or cholic, if the place be bathed therewith. A decoction made with the flowers of lavender, horehound, fennel asparagus root, and a little cinnamon, is very profitably used to help the falling-sickness, and the giddiness or turning of the brain; to gargle the mouth with the decoction thereof, is good against the tooth-ache. Two spoonfuls of the distilled water of the flowers taken, helpeth them that have lost their voice, as also the tremblings and passions of the heart, and faintings and swooning, not only being drank, but applied to the temples, or nostrils to be smelt unto; but it is not safe to use it where the body is replete with blood and humours, because of the hot and subtile spirits wherewith it is possessed. The chymical oil drawn from lavender, usually called oil of spike, is of so fierce and piercing a quality, that it is cautiously to be used, some few drops being sufficient, to be given with other things, either for inward or outward griefs.

LAVENDER-COTTON.

IT being a common garden herb, I shall forbear the description, only take notice, that it flowereth in June and July.

Government and Virtues.] It is under the dominion of Mercury. It resisteth poison, putrefaction, and heals the bitings

of venomous beasts: A dram of the powder of the dried leaves taken every morning fasting, stops the running of the reins in men, and whites in women. The seed beaten into powder, and taken as worm-seed, kills the worms, not only in children, but also in people of riper years; the like doth the herb itself, being steeped in milk, and the milk drank; the body bathed with the decoction of it, helps scabs and itch.

LADY'S-SMOCK, OR CUCKOW-FLOWERS.

Descript.] THE root is composed of many small white threads, from whence spring up divers long stalks of winged leaves, consisting of round, tender, dark green leaves, set one against another upon a middle rib, the greatest being at the end, amongst which arise up divers tender, weak, round, green stalks, somewhat streaked, with longer and smaller leaves upon them; on the tops of which stand flowers, almost like the stock gilliflowers, but rounder, and not so long, of a blushing, white colour; the seed is reddish, and groweth to small bunches, being of a sharp biting taste, and so hath the herb.

Place.] They grow in moist places, and near to brook-sides.

Time.] They flower in April and May, and the lower leaves continue green all the winter.

Government and Virtues.] They are under the dominion of the Moon, and very little inferior to water cresses in all their operations; they are excellent good for the scurvy; they provoke urine, and break the stone, and excellently warm a cold and weak stomach, restoring lost appetite, and help digestion.

LETTUCE.

IT is so well known, being generally used as a sallad-herb, that it is altogether needless to write any description thereof.

Government and Virtues.] The Moon owns them, and that is the reason they cool and moisten what heat and dryness Mars causeth, because Mars hath his fall in Cancer; and they cool the heat because the Sun rules it, between whom and the Moon is a reception in the generation of men, as you may see in my guide for women. The juice of lettuce mixed or boiled with oil of roses, applied to the forehead and temples procureth sleep, and easeth the head-ache proceeding of an hot cause: Being eaten boiled, it helpeth to loosen the belly. It helpeth digestion, quencheth thirst, increaseth milk in nurses, easeth griping pains in the stomach or bowels,

that come of choler. It abateth bodily lust, represseth venerous dreams, being outwardly applied to the cods with a little camphire. Applied in the same manner to the region of the heart, liver or reins, or by bathing the said place with the juice of distilled water, wherein some white sanders, or red roses are put; also it not only represseth the heat and inflammations therein, but comforts and strengthens those parts, and also tempereth the heat of urine. Galen adviseth old men to use it with spice; and where spices are wanting, to add mints, rochet, and such like hot herbs, or else citron, lemon, or orange seeds, to abate the cold of one and heat of the other. The seed and distilled water of the lettuce work the same effects in all things; but the use of lettuce is chiefly forbidden to those that are shortwinded, or have any imperfection in the lungs, or spit blood

WATER LILY.

OF these there are two principally noted kinds, viz. the white and the yellow.

Descript.] The white lily hath very large and thick, dark green leaves lying on the water, sustained by long and thick foot-stalks, that arise from a great, thick, round, and long ruberous black root, spongy or loose, with many knobs thereon, like eyes, and whitish within; from amidst which rise other the like thick, green stalks, sustaining one large great flower thereon, green on the outside, but as white as snow within, consisting of divers rows of long and somewhat thick and narrow leaves, smaller and thinner the more inward they be, encompassing a head with many yellow threads or thrums in the middle; where, after they are past, stand round poppy like heads, full of broad oily and bitter seed.

The yellow kind is little different from the former, save only that it hath fewer leaves on the flowers, greater and more shining seed, and a whitish root, both within and without. The root of both is somewhat sweet in taste.

Place.] They are found growing in great pools, and standing waters, and sometimes in slow running rivers, and lesser ditches of water, in sundry places of this land.

Time.] They flower more commonly about the end of May, and their seed is ripe in August.

Government and Virtues.] The herb is under the dominion of the moon, and therefore cools and moistens like the former. The leaves and flowers of the water lily are cold and moist, but the roots and seeds are cold and dry; the leaves do cool all inflammations; both outward and inward heat of agues; and so doth the flowers also, either by the syrup or conserve; the syrup helpeth much to procure rest, and to settle the brain of frantic

persons, by cooling the hot distemperature of the head. The seed as well as the root is effectual to stay fluxes of blood or humours, either of wounds or of the belly; but the roots are most used, and more effectual to cool, bind, and restrain all fluxes in man or woman; also running of the reins, and passing away of the seed when one is asleep; but the frequent use hereof extinguisheth venereous actions. The root is likewise very good for those whose urine is hot and sharp, to be boiled in wine and water, and the decoction drank. The distilled water of the flowers is very effectual for all the diseases aforesaid, both inwardly taken, and outwardly applied; and is much commended to take away freckles, spots, sunburn, and morphew from the face, or other parts of the body. The oil made of the flowers, as oil of roses is made, is profitably used to cool hot tumours, and to ease the pains, and help the sores.

LILY OF THE VALLEY,

CALLED also conval lily, male lily, and lily constancy.

Descript.] The root is small, and creepeth far in the ground, as grass roots do. The leaves are many, against which riseth up a stalk half a foot high, with many white flowers, like little bells with turned edges, of a strong, though pleasing smell; the berries are red, not much unlike those of asparagus.

Place.] They grow plentifully upon Hampstead-heath, and many other places in this nation.

Time.] They flower in May, and the seed is ripe in September.

Temperature and Virtues.] It is under the dominion of Mercury, and therefore it strengthens the brain, recruits a weak memory, and makes it strong again: The distilled water dropped into the eyes, helps inflammations there; as also that infirmity which they call a pin and web. The spirit of the flowers distilled in wine, restoreth lost speech, helps the palsy, and is exceedingly good in the apoplexy, comforteth the heart and vital spirits. Gerrard saith, that the flowers being close stopped up in a glass, put into an ant-hill, and taken away again a month after, ye shall find a liquor in the glass, which, being outwardly applied, helps the gout.

WHITE LILIES.

IT were in vain to describe a plant so commonly known in every one's garden; therefore I shall not tell you what they are, but what they are good for.

Government and Virtues.] They are under the dominion of the Moon, and by antipathy to Mars expel poison; they are ex-

cellently good in pestilential fevers, the roots being bruised and boiled in wine, and the decoction drank; for it expels the venom to the exterior parts of the body: The juice of it being tempered with barley meal, baked, and so eaten for ordinary bread, is an excellent cure for the dropsy. An ointment made of the root, and hog's grease, is excellent good for scald heads, unites the sinews when they are cut, and cleanses ulcers. The root boiled in any convenient decoction, gives speedy delivery to women in travail, and expels the after-birth. The root roasted, and mixed with a little hog's grease, makes a gallant poultice to ripen and break plague-sores. The ointment is excellent good for swellings in the privities, and will cure burnings and scaldings without a scar, and trimly deck a blank place with hair.

LIQUORICE.

Descript.] OUR English liquorice riseth up with divers woody stalks, whereon are set at several distances many narrow, long, green leaves, set together on both sides of the stalk, and an odd one at the end, very well resembling a young ash tree sprung up from the seed. This by many years continuance in a place without removing, and not else, will bring forth flowers, many standing together spike fashion, one above another upon the stalk, of the form of pease blossoms, but of a very pale blue colour, which turn into long, somewhat flat and smooth cods, wherein is contained a small, round hard seed: The roots run down exceedingly deep into the ground, with divers other small roots and fibres growing with them, and shoot out suckers from the main roots all about, whereby it is much increased, of a brownish colour on the outside, and yellow within.

Place.] It is planted in fields and gardens, in divers places of this land, and thereof good profit is made.

Government and Virtues.] It is under the dominion of Mercury. Liquorice boiled in fair water, with some maiden-hair and figs, maketh a good drink for those that have a dry cough or hoarseness, wheezing or shortness of breath, and for all the griefs of the breasts and lungs, phthisic or consumptions caused by the distillation of salt humours on them. It is also good in all pains of the reins, the strangury, and heat of urine: The fine powder of liquorice blown through a quill into the eyes that have a pin and web (as they call it) or rheumatic distillations in them, doth cleanse and help them: The juice of liquorice is as effectual in all the diseases of the breast and lungs, the reins and the bladder, as the decoction. The juice distilled in rose-water, with some gum dragacanth, is a fine licking medicine for hoarseness, wheezing, &c.

LIVERWORT.

Descript.] COMMON liverwort groweth close, and spreadeth much upon the ground in moist and sandy places with many small green leaves, or rather (as it were) sticking flat to one another, very unevenly cut in on the edges, and crumpled; from among which arise small slender stalks an inch or two high at most, bearing small star-like flowers at the top; the roots are very fine and small.

Government and Virtues.] It is under the dominion of Jupiter, and under the sign Cancer. It is a singularly good herb for all the diseases of the liver, both to cool and cleanse it, and helpeth the inflammations in any part, and the yellow jaundice likewise: Being bruised and boiled in small beer, and drank, it cooleth the heat of the liver and kidneys, and helpeth the running of the reins in men, and the whites in women; it is a singular remedy to stay the spreading of tetters, ringworms, and other fretting and running sores and scabs, and is an excellent remedy for such whose livers are corrupted by surfeits, which cause their bodies to break out, for it fortifieth the liver exceedingly, and makes it impregnable.

LOOSESTRIFE, OR WILLOWHERB.

Descript.] COMMON yellow loosestrife groweth to be four or five feet high, or more, with great round stalks a little crested, diversely branched from the middle of them to the tops into great and long branches, on all which at the joints there grow long and narrow leaves, but broader below, and usually two at a joint, yet sometimes three or four, somewhat like willow leaves, smooth on the edges, and of a fair green colour from the upper joints of the branches, and at the tops of them also stand many yellow flowers of five leaves a-piece, with divers yellow threads in the middle, which turn into small round heads, containing small cornered seeds; the root creepeth under ground, almost like couchgrass, but greater, and shooteth up every spring brownish heads, which afterwards grow up into stalks. It hath no scent or taste, but only astringent.

Place.] It groweth in many places of this land in moist meadows, and by water sides.

Time.] It flowereth from June to August.

Government and Virtues.] This herb is good for all manner of bleeding at the mouth, nose, or wounds, and all fluxes of the belly, and the bloody-flux, given either to drink or taken by clyster; it stayeth also the abundance of women's courses;

it is a singularly good wound herb for green wounds, to stay the bleeding, and quickly close together the lips of the wound, if the herb be bruised, and the juice only applied. It is often used in gargles for sore mouths, as also for the secret parts. The smoke hereof being burned, driveth away flies and gnats, which in the night time molest people inhabiting near marshes, and in the fenny countries.

LOOSESTRIFE, *with spiked Heads of Flowers.*

Descript.] THIS groweth with many woody square stalks, full of joints, about three feet high at least; at every one whereof stand two long leaves, shorter, narrower, and a larger green colour than the former, and some brownish. The stalks are branched into many long stems of spiked flowers half a foot long, growing in bundles one above another, cut of small husks, very like the spiked heads of lavender, each of which flowers have five round pointed leaves of a purple violet colour, or somewhat inclining to redness; in which husks stand small round heads after the flowers are fallen, wherein is contained small seed. The root creepeth under ground like unto the yellow, but is greater than it, and so are the heads of the leaves when they first appear out of the ground, and more brown than the other.

Place.] It groweth usually by rivers, and ditch-sides in wet ground, as about the ditches at and near Lambeth, and in many other places of this land.

Time.] It flowereth in the months of June and July.

Government and Virtues.] It is an herb of the Moon, and under the sign Cancer; neither do I know a better preserver of the sight when it is well, nor a better cure for sore eyes than eyebright, taken inwardly, and this used outwardly; it is cold in quality. This herb is not a whit inferior to the former, it having not only all the virtues which the former hath, but some peculiar virtues of its own, found out by experience; as namely, the distilled water is a present remedy for hurts and blows on the eyes, and for blindness, so as the christaline humour be not perished or hurt; and this hath been sufficiently proved true by the experience of a man of judgment, who kept it long to himself as a great secret. It cleareth the eyes of dust, or any thing gotten into them, and preserveth the sight. It is also very available against wounds and thrusts, being made into an ointment in this manner: To every ounce of the water, add two drams of May butter without salt, and of sugar and wax, of each as much also; let them boil gently together. Let tents dipped into the liquor that remaineth after it is cold, be put into the wounds, and the place covered with a linen cloth doubled

and anointed with the ointment; and this is also an approved medicine. It likewise cleanseth and healeth all foul ulcers, and sores whatsoever, and stayeth their inflammations by washing them with the water, and laying on them a green leaf or two in the summer, or dry leaves in the winter. This water gargled warm in the mouth, and sometimes drank also, doth cure the quinsy, or king's evil, in the throat. The said water applied warm, taketh away all spots, marks, and scabs in the skin; and a little of it drank, quencheth thirst when it is extraordinary.

LOVAGE.

Descript.] IT hath many long and green stalks of large winged leaves, divided into many parts, like smallage, but much larger and greater, every leaf being cut about the edges, broadest forward, and smallest at the stalk, of a sad green colour, smooth and shining; from among which rise up sundry strong, hollow green stalks, five or six, sometimes seven or eight feet high, full of joints, but lesser leaves set on them than grow below; and with them towards the tops come forth large branches, bearing at their tops large umbels of yellow flowers, and after them flat brownish seed. The root groweth thick, great and deep, spreading much, and enduring long, of a brownish colour on the outside, and whitish within. The whole plant and every part of it smelling strong, and aromatically, and is of a hot, sharp, biting taste.

Place.] It is usually planted in gardens, where, if it be suffered, it groweth huge and great.

Time.] It flowereth in the end of July, and seedeth in August.

Government and Virtues.] It is an herb of the Sun, under the sign Taurus. If Saturn offend the throat (as he always doth if he be the occasion of the malady, and in Taurus is the Genesis) this is your cure. It openeth, cureth, and digesteth humours, and mightily provoketh women's courses and urine. Half a dram at a time of the dried root in powder, taken in wine, doth wonderfully warm a cold stomach, helpeth digestion, and consumeth all raw and superfluous moisture therein; easeth all inward gripings and pains, dissolveth wind and resisteth poison and infection. It is a known and much praised remedy to drink the decoction of the herb for any sort of ague, and to help the pains and torments of the body and bowels coming of cold. The seed is effectual to all the purposes aforesaid (except the last) and worketh more powerfully. The distilled water of the herb helpeth the quinsy in the throat, if the mouth and throat be gargled and washed therewith, and helpeth the

pleurisy, being drank three or four times. Being dropped into the eyes, it taketh away the redness or dimness of them; it likewise taketh away spots or freckles in the face. The leaves bruised, and fried with a little hog's lard, and laid hot to any blotch or boil, will quickly break it.

LUNGWORT.

Descript.] THIS is a kind of moss that groweth on sundry sorts of trees, especially oaks and beeches, with broad, greyish, tough leaves diversely folded, crumpled, and gashed in on the edges, and some spotted also with many small spots on the upper side. It was never seen to bear any stalk or flower at any time.

Government and Virtues.] Jupiter seems to own this herb. It is of great use to physicians to help the diseases of the lungs, and for coughs, wheezings, and shortness of breath, which it cureth both in man and beast. It is very profitable to put into lotions that are taken to stay the moist humours that flow to ulcers, and hinder their healing, as also to wash all other ulcers in the privy parts of a man or woman. It is an excellent remedy boiled in beer for broken-winded horses.

MADDER.

Descript.] GARDEN madder shooteth forth many very long, weak, four-square, reddish stalks, trailing on the ground a great way, very rough or hairy, and full of joints: At every one of these joints come forth divers long and narrow leaves, standing like a star about the stalks, rough also and hairy, towards the tops whereof come forth many small pale yellow flowers, after which come small round heads, green at first, and reddish afterwards, but black when they are ripe, wherein is contained the seed. The root is not very great, but exceeding long, running down half a man's length into the ground, red and very clear, while it is fresh, spreading divers ways.

Place.] It is only manured in gardens, or larger fields, for the profit that is made thereof.

Time.] It flowereth towards the end of summer, and the seed is ripe quickly after.

Government and Virtues.] It is an herb of Mars. It hath an opening quality, and afterward to bind and strengthen. It is a sure remedy for the yellow jaundice, by opening the obstructions of the liver and gall, and cleansing those parts; it openeth also the obstructions of the spleen, and diminisheth the melancholy humour: It is available for the palsy and sciatica,

and effectual for bruises inward and outward, and is therefore much used in vulnerary drinks. The root for all those aforesaid purposes, is to be boiled in wine or water, as the cause requireth, and some honey and sugar put thereunto afterwards. The seed hereof taken in vinegar and honey, helpeth the swelling and hardness of the spleen. The decoction of the leaves and branches is a good fomentation for women to sit over that have not their courses. The leaves and roots beaten and applied to any part that is discoloured with freckles, morphew, the white scurf, or any such deformity of the skin, cleanseth thoroughly, and taketh them away.

MAIDEN-HAIR.

Descript.] OUR common maiden-hair doth, from a number of hard black fibres, send forth a great many blackish shining brittle stalks, hardly a span long, in many not half so long, on each side set very thick with small, round, dark green leaves, and spitted on the back of them like a fern.

Place.] It groweth upon old stone walls in the west parts in Kent, and divers other places of this land; it delighteth likewise to grow by springs, wells, and rocky moist and shady places, and is always green.

WALL RUE, OR, WHITE MAIDEN-HAIR.

Descript.] THIS hath very fine pale green stalks, almost as fine as hairs, set confusedly with divers pale green leaves on every short footstalk, somewhat near unto the colour of garden rue, and not much differing in form, but more diversely cut in on the edges, and thicker, smooth on the upper part, and spotted finely underneath.

Place.] It groweth in many places of this land, at Dartford, and the bridge at Ashford in Kent; at Beaconsfield in Buckinghamshire; at Wolly in Huntingtonshire, on Framingham castle in Suffolk; on the church walls at Mayfield in Sussex, in Somersetshire; and divers other places of this land; and is green in winter as well as summer.

Government and Virtues.] Both this and the former are under the dominion of Mercury, and so is that also which followeth after, and the virtues of both these are so near alike, that though I have described them and their places of growing severally, yet I shall, in writing the virtues of them, join them both together as followeth:

The decoction of the herb maiden-hair being drank, helpeth those that are troubled with the cough, shortness of breath, the

yellow jaundice, diseases of the spleen, stopping of urine, and helpeth exceedingly to break the stone in the kidneys (in all which diseases the wall rue is also very effectual.) It provoketh women's courses, and stays both bleedings and fluxes of the stomach and belly, especially when the herb is dry; for being green, it looseneth the belly, and voideth choler and phlegm from the stomach and liver; it cleanseth the lungs, and by rectifying the blood, causeth a good colour to the whole body. The herb boiled in oil of camomile, dissolveth knots, allayeth swellings, and drieth up moist ulcers. The lee made thereof is singularly good to cleanse the head from scurf, and from dry and running sores, stayeth the falling or shedding of the hair, and causeth it to grow thick, fair, and well coloured; for which purpose some boil it in wine, putting some smallage seed thereto, and afterwards some oil. The wall rue is as effectual as maiden-hair, in all diseases of the head, or falling and recovering of the hair again, and generally for all the aforementioned diseases: And besides, the powder of it taken in drink for forty days together, helpeth the burstings in children.

GOLDEN MAIDEN-HAIR.

TO the former give me leave to add this, and I shall no more but only describe it unto you, and for the virtues refer you to the former, since whatsoever is said of them, may be also said of this.

Descript.] It hath many small, brownish, red hairs to make up the form of leaves growing about the ground from the root; and in the middle of them, in summer, rise small stalks of the same colour, set with very fine yellowish green hairs on them, and bearing a small gold, yellow head, lesser than a wheat corn, standing in a great husk. The root is very small and thready.

Time.] It groweth in bogs and moorish places, and also on dry shady places, as Hampstead heath, and elsewhere.

MALLOWS AND MARSHMALLOWS.

COMMON mallows are generally so well known that they need no description.

Our common marshmallow have divers soft hairy white stalks, rising to be three or four feet high, spreading forth many branches, the leaves whereof are soft and hairy, somewhat lesser than the other mallow leaves, but longer pointed, cut (for the most part) into some few divisions, but deep. The flowers are many, but smaller also than the other mallows, and white, or tending to a blueish colour. After which come such

long, round cases and seeds, as in the other mallows. The roots are many and long, shooting from one head, of the bigness of a thumb or finger, very pliant, tough, and being like liquorice, of a whitish yellow colour on the outside, and more white within, full of a slimy juice, which being laid in water, will thicken, as if it were a jelly.

Place.] The common mallows grow in every county of this land. The common marshmallows in most of the salt marshes, from Woolwich down to the sea, both on the Kentish and Essex shores, and in divers other places of this land.

Time.] They flower all the summer months, even until the winter do pull them down.

Government and Virtues.] Venus owns them both. The leaves of either of the sorts before specified, and the roots also boiled in wine or water, or in broth with parsley or fennel roots, do help to open the body, and are very convenient in hot agues, or other distempers of the body, to apply the leaves so boiled warm to the belly. It not only voideth hot, choleric, and other offensive humours, but easeth the pains and torments of the belly coming thereby; and are therefore used in all clysters conducing to those purposes. The same used by nurses procureth them store of milk. The decoction of the seed of any of the common mallows made in milk or wine, doth marvellously help excoriations, the phthisic, pleurisy, and other diseases of the chest and lungs, that proceed of hot causes, if it be continued taking for some time together. The leaves and roots work with the same effects. They help much also in the excoriations of the guts and bowels, and hardness of the mother, and in all hot and sharp diseases thereof. The juice drank in wine, or the decoction of them therein, do help women to a speedy and easy delivery. Pliny saith, that whosoever shall take a spoonful of any of the mallows, shall that day be free from all diseases that may come unto him; and that it is special good for the falling sickness. The syrup also and conserve made of the flowers, are very effectual for the same diseases, and to open the body, being costive. The leaves bruised, and laid to the eyes with a little honey, take away the imposthumations of them. The leaves bruised or rubbed upon any place stung with bees, wasps, or the like, presently take away the pains, redness, and swelling that rise thereupon. And Dioscorides saith, the decoction of the roots and leaves helpeth all sorts of poison, so as the poison may be presently voided by vomit. A poultice made of the leaves boiled and bruised, with some bean or barley flour, and oil of roses added, is an especial remedy against all hard tumours and inflammations, or impostumes, or swellings of the cods, and other parts, and easeth the pains of them; as also against the hardness of the liver or spleen, being applied to the

places. The juice of mallows boiled in old oil and applied, taketh away all roughnes of the skin, as also the scurf, dandriff, or dry scabs in the head, or other parts, if they be anointed therewith, or washed with the decoction, and preserveth the hair from falling off. It is also effectual against scaldings and burnings, St. Anthony's fire, and all other hot, red and painful swellings in any part of the body. The flowers boiled in oil or water (as every one is disposed) whereunto a little honey and allum is put, is an excellent gargle to wash, cleanse or heal any sore mouth or throat in a short time. If the feet be bathed or washed with the decoction of the leaves, roots and flowers, it helpeth much the defluctions of rheum from the head; if the head be washed therewith, it stayeth the falling and shedding of the hair. The green leaves (saith Pliny) beaten with nitre, and applied, draw out thorns or prickles in the flesh.

The marshmallows are more effectual in all the diseases before mentioned: The leaves are likewise used to loosen the belly gently, and in decoctions for clysters to ease all pains of the body, opening the strait passages, and making them slippery, whereby the stone may descend the more easily, and without pain, out of the reins, kidneys, and bladder, and to ease the torturing pains thereof. But the roots are of more special use for those purposes, as well for coughs, hoarseness, shortness of breath and wheezings, being boiled in wine, or honeyed water, and drank. The roots and seeds hereof boiled in wine or water, are with good success used by them that have excoriations in the guts, or the bloody flux, by qualifying the violence of sharp, fretting humours, easing the pains, and healing the soreness. It is profitably taken of them that are troubled with ruptures, cramps, or convulsions of the sinews; and boiled in white wine, for the imposthumes of the throat, commonly called the king's evil, and of those kernels that rise behind the ears, and inflammations or swellings in women's breasts. The dried roots boiled in milk and drank, is special good for the chin-cough. Hippocrates used to give the decoction of the roots, or the juice thereof, to drink, to those that are wounded, and ready to faint through loss of blood, and applied the same mixed with honey and rosin to the wounds. As also, the roots boiled in wine to those that have received any hurt by bruises, falls, or blows, or had any bone or member out of joint, or any swelling-pain, or ache in the muscles, sinews or arteries. The mucilage of the roots, and of linseed and fenugreek put together, is much used in poultices, ointments, and plaisters, to mollify and digest all hard swellings, and the inflammation of them, and to ease pains in any part of the body. The seed, either green or dry, mixed with

vinegar, cleanseth the skin of morphew, and all other discolourings, being boiled therewith in the Sun.

You may remember, that not long since, there was a raging disease called the bloody-flux; the college of physicians not knowing what to make of it, called it the plague of the guts, for their wits were at *Ne plus ultra* about it: My son was taken with the same disease, and the excoriation of his bowels was exceeding great; myself being in the country, was sent for up; the only thing I gave him, was mallows bruised and boiled both in milk and drink, in two days (the blessing of God being upon it) it cured him. And I here, to show my thankfulness to God, in communicating it to his creatures, leave it to posterity.

MAPLE TREE.

Government and Virtues.] IT is under the dominion of Jupiter. The decoction either of the leaves or bark, must needs strengthen the liver much, and so you shall find it to do, if you use it. It is excellent good to open obstructions both of the liver and spleen, and easeth pains of the sides thence proceeding.

WIND MARJORAM.

CALLED also origane, origanum, eastward marjoram, wild marjoram, and grove marjoram.

Descript.] Wild or field marjoram hath a root which creepeth much under ground, which continueth a long time, sending up sundry brownish, hard, square stalks, with small dark green leaves, very like those of sweet marjoram, but harder, and somewhat broader; at the top of the stalks stand tufts of flowers, of a deep purplish red colour. The seed is small and something blacker than that of sweet marjoram.

Place.] It groweth plentifully in the borders of corn fields, and in some copses.

Time.] It flowereth towards the latter end of summer.

Government and Virtues.] This is also under the dominion of Mercury. It strengthens the stomach and head much, there being scarce a better remedy growing for such as are troubled with a sour humour in the stomach; it restores the appetite being lost; helps the cough, and consumption of the lungs; it cleanseth the body of choler, expelleth poison, and remedieth the infirmities of the spleen; helps the bitings of venomous beasts, and helps such as have poisoned themselves by eating hemlock, henbane, or opium. It provoketh urine and the terms in women, helps the dropsy, and the scurvy, scabs, itch, and

yellow jaundice. The juice being dropped into the ears, helps deafness, pain and noise in the ears. And thus much for this herb, between which and adders, there is a deadly antipathy.

SWEET MARJORAM.

SWEET marjoram is so well known, being an inhabitant in every garden, that it is needless to write any description thereof, neither of the winter sweet marjoram, or pot marjoram.

Place.] They grow commonly in gardens; some sort there are that grow wild in the borders of the corn fields and pastures, in sundry places of this land; but it is not my purpose to insist upon them. The garden kinds being most used and useful.

Time.] They flower in the end of summer.

Government and Virtues.] It is an herb of Mercury, and under Aries, and therefore is an excellent remedy for the brain and other parts of the body and mind, under the dominion of the same planet. Our common sweet marjoram is warming and comfortable in cold diseases of the head, stomach, sinews, and other parts, taken inwardly or outwardly applied. The decoction thereof being drank, helpeth all diseases of the chest, which hinder the freeness of breathing, and is also profitable for the obstructions of the liver and spleen. It helpeth the cold griefs of the womb, and the windiness thereof, and the loss of speech, by resolution of the tongue. The decoction thereof made with some pelitory of Spain, and long pepper, or with a little acorns or origanum, being drank, is good for those that are beginning to fall into a dropsy; for those that cannot make water; and against pains and torments in the belly; it provoketh women's courses, if it be put up as a pessary. Being made into powder, and mixed with honey, it taketh away the black marks of blows, and bruises, being thereunto applied; it is good for the inflammations and watering of the eyes, being mixed with fine flour, and laid unto them. The juice dropped into the ears, easeth the pains and singing noise in them. It is profitably put into those ointments and salves that are warm, and comfort the outward parts, as the joints and sinews; for swellings also, and places out of joint. The powder thereof snuffed up into the nose provoketh sneezing, and thereby purgeth the brain; and chewed in the mouth, draweth forth much phlegm. The oil made thereof, is very warm and comfortable to the joints that are stiff, and the sinews that are hard, to mollify and supple them. Marjoram is much used in all odoriferous waters, powders, &c. that are for ornament or delight.

MARIGOLDS.

THESE being so plentiful in every garden, are so well known, that they need no description.

Time.] They flower all the summer long, and sometimes in winter, if it be mild.

Government and Virtues.] It is an herb of the Sun, and under Leo. They strengthen the heart exceedingly, and are very expulsive, and little less effectual in the small-pox and measles than saffron. The juice of marigold leaves mixed with vinegar, and any hot swellings bathed with it, instantly giveth ease, and aswageth it. The flowers, either green or dried, are much used in possets, broths, and drink, as a comforter of the heart and spirits, and to expel any malignant or pestilential quality which might annoy them. A plaister made with the dry flowers in powder, hog's-grease, turpentine, and rosin, applied to the breast, strengthens and succours the heart infinitely in fevers, whether pestilential or not pestilential.

MASTERWORT.

Descript.] COMMON masterwort hath divers stalks of winged leaves, divided into sundry parts, three for the most part standing together a small footstalk on both sides of the greater, and three likewise at the end of the stalk, somewhat broad, and cut in on the edges into three or more dsvisions, all of them dented about the brims, of a dark green colour, somewhat resembling the leaves of angelica, but that these grow lower to the ground, and on lesser stalks; among which rise up two or three short stalks about two feet high, and slender, with such like leaves at the joints which grow below, but with lesser and fewer divisions, bearing umbels of white flowers, and after them, thin, flat blackish seeds, bigger than dill seeds. The root is somewhat greater and growing rather sideways than down deep in the ground, shooting forth sundry heads, which taste sharp, biting on the tongue, and is the hottest and sharpest part of the plant, and the seed next unto it being somewhat blackish on the outside, and smelling well.

Place.] It is usually kept in gardens with us in England.

Time.] It flowereth and seedeth about the end of August.

Government and Virtues.] It is an herb of Mars. The root of masterwort is hotter than pepper, and very available in cold griefs and diseases both of the stomach and body, dissolving very powerfully upwards and downwards. It is also used in a

decoction with wine against all cold rheums, distillation upon the lungs, or shortness of breath, to be taken morning and evening. It also provoketh urine, and helpeth to break the stone, and expel the gravel from the kidneys; provoketh women's courses, and expelleth the dead birth. Is singularly good for strangling of the mother, and other such like feminine diseases. It is effectual also against the dropsy, cramps, and falling sickness; for the decoction in wine being gargled in the mouth, draweth down much water and phlegm, from the brain, purging and easing it of what oppresseth it. It is of a rare quality against all sorts of cold poison, to be taken as there is cause: it provoketh sweat. But lest the taste hereof, or of the seed (which worketh to the like effect, though not so powerfully) should be too offensive, the best way is to take the water distilled both from the herb and root. The juice hereof dropped, or tents dipped therein, and applied either to green wounds or filthy rotten ulcers, and those that come by envenomed weapons, doth soon cleanse and heal them. The same is also very good to help the gout coming of a cold cause.

SWEET MAUDLIN.

Descript.] COMMON maudlin hath somewhat long and narrow leaves, snipped about the edges. The stalks are two feet high, bearing at the tops many yellow flowers set round together, and all of an equal height, in umbels or tufts like unto tansy; after which followeth small whitish seed, almost as big as wormseed.

Place and Time.] It groweth in gardens, and flowereth in June and July.

Government and Virtues.] The virtues hereof being the same with costmary or alecost, I shall not make any repetition thereof, lest my book grow too big, but rather refer you unto costmary for satisfaction.

THE MEDLAR.

Descript.] THE tree groweth near the bigness of the quince tree, spreading branches reasonably large, with longer and narrower leaves than either the apple or quince, and not dented about the edges. At the end of the springs stand the flowers, made of five white, great broad pointed leaves, nicked in the middle with some white threads also; after which cometh the fruit, of a brownish green colour being ripe, bearing a crown as it were on the top, which were the five green leaves; and being rubbed off, or fallen away, the head of the fruit is seen to be somewhat hollow. The fruit is very harsh before it is

mellowed, and hath usually five hard kernels within it.—There is another kind hereof nothing differing from the former, but that it hath some thorns on it in several places, which the other hath not; and usually the fruit is small, and not so pleasant.

Time and Place.] They grow in this land, and flower in May for the most part, and bear fruit in September and October.

Government and Virtues.] The fruit is old Saturn's, and sure a better medicine he hardly hath to strengthen the retentive faculty; therefore it stays women's longings: The good old man cannot endure women's minds should run a gadding. Also a plaister made of the fruit dried before they are rotten, and other convenient things, and applied to the reins of the back, stops miscarriage in women with child. They are very powerful to stay any fluxes of blood, or humours in men or women; the leaves also have this quality. The fruit eaten by women with child, stayeth their longing after unusual meats, and is very effectual for them that are apt to miscarry, and be delivered before their time, to help that malady, and make them joyful mothers. The decoction of them is good to gargle and wash the mouth, throat and teeth, when there is any defluctions of blood to stay it, or of humours, which causeth the pains and swellings. It is a good bath for women to sit over, that have their courses flowing too abundant; or for the piles when they bleed too much. If a poultice or plaister be made with dried medlars, beaten and mixed with the juice of red roses, whereunto a few cloves and nutmegs may be added, and a little red coral also, and applied to the stomach that is given to casting or loathing of meat, it effectually helpeth. The dried leaves in powder, strewed on fresh bleeding wounds, restraineth the blood, and healeth up the wound quickly. The medlar-stones made into powder, and drank in wine, wherein some parsley-roots have lain infused all night, or a little boiled, do break the stone in the kidneys, helping to expel it.

MELLILOT, OR KING'S CLAVER.

Descript.] THIS hath many green stalks, two or three feet high, rising from a tough, long, white root, which dieth not every year, set round about at the joints with small and somewhat long, well smelling leaves, set three together unevenly dented about the edge. The flowers are yellow, and well smelling also, made like other trefoil, but small, standing in long spikes one above another, for an hand breadth long or better, which afterwards turn into long crooked cods, wherein is contained flat seed, somewhat brown.

Place.] It groweth plentifully in many places of this land, as in the edge of Suffolk, and in Essex, as also in Huntingdonshire, and in other places, but most usually in corn-fields, in corners of meadows.

Time.] It flowereth in June and July, and is ripe quickly after.

Government and Virtues.] Mellilot, boiled in wine, and applied, mollifieth all hard tumours and inflammations that happen in the eyes, or other parts of the body, as the fundament, or privy parts of men and women; and sometimes the yolk of a roasted egg, or fine flour, or poppy seed, or endive, is added unto it. It helpeth the spreading ulcers in the head, it being washed with a lee made thereof. It helpeth the pains of the stomach, being applied fresh; or boiled with any of the aforenamed things: also, the pains of the ears, being dropped into them; and steeped in vinegar, or rose water, it mitigateth the head-ache. The flowers of mellilot or camomile are much used to be put together in clysters to expel wind, and ease pains; and also in poultices for the same purpose, and to assuage swelling tumours in the spleen or other parts, and helpeth inflammations in any part of the body. The juice dropped into the eyes, is a singular good medicine to take away the film or skin that cloudeth or dimmeth the eye-sight. The head often washed with the distilled water of the herb and flower, or a lee made therewith, is effectual for those that suddenly lose their senses; as also to strengthen the memory, to comfort the head and brain, and to preserve them from pain, and the apoplexy.

FRENCH AND DOG'S MERCURY.

Descript.] THIS riseth up with a square green stalk full of joints, two feet high, or thereabouts, with two leaves at every joint, and the branches likewise from both sides of the stalk, set with fresh green leaves, somewhat broad and long, about the bigness of the leaves of basil, finely dented about the edges; towards the tops of the stalks and branches, come forth at every joint in the male Mercury two small, round green heads, standing together upon a short footstalk, which growing ripe, are seeds, not having flowers. The female stalk is longer, spike-fashion, set round about with small green husks, which are the flowers, made like small bunches of grapes, which give no seed, but abide long upon the stalks without shedding. The root is composed of many small fibres, which perisheth every year at the first approach of winter, and riseth again of its own sowing; and if once it is suffered to sow

itself, the ground will never want afterwards, even both sorts of it.

DOG MERCURY.

HAVING described unto you that which is called French mercury, I come now to shew you a description of this kind also.

Descript.] This is likewise of two kinds, male and female, having many stalks slender and lower than Mercury, without any branches at all upon them; the root is set with two leaves at every joint, somewhat greater than the female, but more pointed and full of veins, and somewhat harder in handling; of a dark green colour, and less dented or snipped about the edges. At the joints with the leaves come forth longer stalks than the former, with two hairy round seeds upon them, twice as big as those of the former mercury. The taste hereof is herby, and the smell somewhat strong and virulent. The female has much harder leaves standing upon longer footstalks, and the stalks are also longer: from the joints come forth spikes of flowers like the French female mercury. The roots of them both are many, and full of small fibres which run under ground, and mat themselves very much, not perishing as the former mercuries do, but abiding the winter, and shoot forth new branches every year, for the old lie down to the ground.

Place.] The male and female French mercury are found wild in divers places of this land, as by a village called Brookland, in Romney Marsh in Kent.

The dog mercury in sundry places of Kent also, and elsewhere; but the female more seldom than the male.

Time.] They flower in the summer months, and therein give their seed.

Government and Virtues.] Mercury, they say, owns the herb, but I rather think it is Venus's, and I am partly confident of it too, for I never heard that Mercury ever minded women's business so much: I believe he minds his study more. The decoction of the leaves of Mercury, or the juice thereof in broth, or drank with a little sugar put to it, purgeth choleric and watterish humours. Hippocrates commended it wonderfully for women's diseases, and applied to the secret parts, to ease the pains of the mother; and used the decoction of it, both to procure women's courses, and to expel the after-birth; and gave the decoction thereof with myrrh or pepper, or used to apply the leaves outwardly against the strangury, and diseases of the reins and bladder. He used it also for sore and watering eyes, and for the deafness and pains in the ears, by dropping the juice thereof into them, and bathing them afterwards in white wine.

The decoction thereof made with water and a cock chicken, is a most safe medicine against the hot fits of agues. It also cleanseth the breast and lungs of phlegm, but a little offendeth the stomach. The juice or distilled water snuffed up into the nostrils, purgeth the head and eyes of catarrhs and rheums. Some use to drink two or three ounces of the distilled water, with a little sugar put to it, in the morning, fasting, to open and purge the body of gross, viscous, and melancholy humours. It is wonderful (if it be not fabulous) what Dioscorides and Theophrastus do relate of it, viz. That if women use these herbs either inwardly or outwardly, for three days together after conception, and their courses be past, they shall bring forth male or female children, according to that kind of herb they use. Matthiolus saith, that both the seed of the male and female mercury boiled with wormwood and drank, cureth the yellow jaundice in a speedy manner. The leaves or the juice rubbed upon warts, taketh them away. The juice mingled with some vinegar, helpeth all running scabs, tetters, ringworms, and the itch. Galen saith, that being applied in manner of a poultice to any swelling or inflammation, it digesteth the swelling, and allayeth the inflammation, and is therefore given in clysters to evacuate from the belly offensive humours. The dog mercury, although it be less used, yet may serve in the same manner, to the same purpose, to purge waterish and melancholy humours.

MINT.

OF all the kinds of mint, the spear mint, or heart mint, being most usual, I shall only describe as follows:

Descript.] Spear mint hath divers round stalks, and long but narrowish leaves set thereon, of a dark green colour. The flowers stand in spiked heads at the tops of the branches, being of a pale blue colour. The smell or scent thereof is somewhat near unto basil; it increaseth by the root under ground as all the others do.

Place.] It is an usual inhabitant in gardens; and because it seldom giveth any good seed, the effects is recompensed by the plentiful increase of the root, which being once planted in a garden, will hardly be rid out again.

Time.] It flowereth not until the beginning of August, for the most part.

Government and Virtues.] It is an herb of Venus. Dioscorides saith it hath a heating, binding and drying quality, and therefore the juice taken in vinegar, stayeth bleeding: It stirreth up venery, or bodily lust; two or three branches thereof taken in the juice of four pomegranates, stayeth the hiccough, vomiting, and allayeth the choler. It dissolveth imposthumes, being

laid to with barley-meal. It is good to repress the milk in women's breasts, and for such as have swollen, flagging, or great breasts. Applied with salt, it helpeth the biting of a mad dog; with mead and honied water, it easeth the pains of the ears, and taketh away the roughness of the tongue, being rubbed thereupon It suffereth not milk to curdle in the stomach, if the leaves thereof be steeped or boiled in it before you drink it: Briefly, it is very profitable to the stomach. The often use hereof is a very powerful medicine to stay women's courses and the whites. Applied to the forehead and temples, it easeth the pains in the head, and is good to wash the heads of young children therewith, against all manner of breakings-out, sores or scabs therein, and healeth the chops of the fundament. It is also profitable against the poison of venomous creatures. The distilled water or mint is available to all the purposes aforesaid, yet more weakly. But if a spirit thereof be rightly and chymically drawn, it is much more powerful than the herb itself. Simeon Sethi saith, it helpeth a cold liver, strengtheneth the belly, causeth digestion, staveth vomits and the hiccough; it is good against the gnawing of the heart, provoketh appetite, taketh away obstructions of the liver, and stirreth up bodily lust; but therefore too much must not be taken, because it maketh the blood thin and wheyish, and turneth in into choler, and therefore choleric persons must abstain from it. It is a safe medicine for the biting of a mad dog, being bruised with salt and laid thereon. The powder of it being dried and taken after meat, helpeth digestion, and those that are splenetic. Taken with wine, it helpeth women in their sore travail in child-bearing. It is good against the gravel and stone in the kidneys, and the strangury. Being smelled unto, it is comfortable for the head and memory. The decoction hereof gargled in the mouth, cureth the gums and mouth that is sore, and mendeth an ill-savoured breath; as also the rue and coriander, causeth the palate of the mouth to turn to its place, the decoction being gargled and held in the mouth.

The virtues of the wind or horse mint, such as grow in ditches (whose description I purposely omitted, in regard they are well enough known) are especially to dissolve wind in the stomach, to help the cholic, and those that are short-winded, and are an especial remedy for those that have venereal dreams and pollutions in the night, being outwardly applied to the testicles or cods. The juice dropped into the ears easeth the pains of them, and destroyeth the worms that breed therein. They are good against the venomous biting of serpents. The juice laid on warm, helpeth the king's evil, or kernels in the throat. The decoction or distilled water helpeth a stinking breath, proceeding from corruption of the teeth, and snuffed up the nose,

purgeth the head. Pliny saith, that eating of the leaves hath been found by experience to cure the leprosy, applying some of them to the face, and to help the scurf or dandriff of the head used with vinegar. They are extremely bad for wounded people; and they say a wounded man that eats mint, his wound will never be cured, and that is a long day.

MISSLETO.

Descript.] THIS riseth up from the branch or arm of the tree whereon it groweth, with a woody stem, putting itself into sundry branches, and they again divided into many other smaller twigs, interlacing themselves one within another, very much covered with a greyish green bark, having two leaves set at every joint, and at the end likewise, which are somewhat long and narrow, small at the bottom, but broader towards the end. At the knots or joints of the boughs and branches grow small yellow flowers, which run into small, round, white, transparent berries, three or four together, full of a glutinous moisture, with a blackish seed in each of them, which was never yet known to spring, being put into the ground, or any where else to grow.

Place.] It groweth very rarely on oaks with us; but upon sundry other, as well timber as fruit-trees, plentifully in woody groves, and the like, through all this land.

Time.] It flowereth in the spring-time, but the berries are not ripe until October, and abideth on the branches all the winter, unless the blackbirds, and other birds, do devour them.

Government and Virtues.] This is under the dominion of the Sun, I do not question; and can also take for granted, that that which grows upon oaks, participates something of the nature of Jupiter, because an oak is one of his trees; as also that which grows upon pear trees, and apple trees, participates something of his nature, because he rules the tree it grows upon, having no root of its own. But why that should have most virtues, that grows upon oaks I know not, unless because it is rarest and hardest to come by; and our college's opinion is in this contrary to scripture, which saith, *God's tender mercies are over all his works;* and so it is, let the college of physicians walk as contrary to him as they please, and that is as contrary as the east to the west. Clusius affirms that which grows upon pear trees to be as prevalent, and gives order, that it should not touch the ground after it is gathered; and also saith, that, being hung about the neck, it remedies witchcraft. Both the leaves and berries of misselto do heat and dry, and are of subtile parts; the birdlime doth mollify hard knots, tumours,

and imposthumes: ripeneth and discusseth them, and draweth forth thick as well as thin humours from the remote parts of the body, digesting and separating them. And being mixed with equal parts of rosin and wax, doth mollify the hardness of the spleen, and helpeth old ulcers and sores. Being mixed with sandaric and orpiment, it helpeth to draw off foul nails; and if quick-lime and wine lees be added thereto, it worketh the stronger. The messelto itself of the oak (as the best) made into powder, and given in drink to those that have the falling sickness, doth assuredly heal them, as Matthiolus saith; but it is fit to use it for forty days together. Some have so highly esteemed it for the virtues thereof, that they have called it *Lignum Sanctæ Crucis*, wood of the holy cross, believing it helps the falling sickness, apoplexy and palsy very speedily, not only to be inwardly taken, but to be hung at their neck. Tragus saith, that the fresh wood of any misselto bruised, and the juice drawn forth and dropped in the ears that have imposthumes in them, doth help and ease them within a few days.

MONEYWORT, OR HERB TWOPENCE.

Descript.] THE common moneywort sendeth forth from a small thready root divers long, weak, and slender branches, lying and running upon the ground two or three feet long or more, set with leaves two at a joint, one against another at equal distances, which are almost round, but pointed at the ends, smooth, and of a good green colour. At the joints, with the leaves, from the middle forward, come forth at every point sometimes one yellow flower, and sometimes two, standing each on a small footstalk, and made of five leaves, narrow-pointed at the end, with some yellow threads in the middle, which being past, there stand in their places small round heads of seed.

Place.] It groweth plentifully in almost all places of this land, commonly in moist grounds by hedge-sides, and in the middle of grassy fields.

Time.] They flower in June and July, and their seed is ripe quickly after.

Government and Virtues.] Venus owns it. Moneywort is singularly good to stay all fluxes in man or woman, whether they be lasks, bloody-fluxes, the flowering of women's courses, bleeding inwardly or outwardly, and the weakness of the stomach that is given to casting. It is very good also for the ulcers or excoriations of the lungs, or other inward parts. It is exceeding good for all wounds, either fresh or green, to heal them speedily, and for all old ulcers that are of spreading natures. For all which purposes the juice of the herb, or the powder drank in water wherein hot steel hath been often quenched; or

the decoction of the green herb in wine or water drank, or used to the outward place, to wash or bathe them, or to have tents dipped therein and put into them, are effectual.

MOONWORT.

Descript.] IT riseth up usually but with one dark, green, thick and flat leaf, standing upon a short foot-stalk not above two fingers breadth; but when it flowers it may be said to bear a small slender stalk about four or five inches high, having but one leaf in the middle thereof, which is much divided on both sides into sometimes five or seven parts on a side, sometimes more; each of which parts is small like the middle rib, but broad forwards, pointed and round, resembling therein a half-moon, from whence it took the name; the uppermost parts or divisions being bigger than the lowest. The stalks rise above this leaf two or three inches, bearing many branches of small long tongues, every one like the spiky head of the adder's tongue, of a brownish colour, (which whether I shall call them flowers, or the seed, I well know not) which, after they have continued a while, resolve into a mealy dust. The root is small and fibrous. This hath sometimes divers such like leaves as are before described, with so many branches or tops rising from one stalk, each divided from the other.

Place.] It groweth on hills and heaths, yet where there is much grass, for therein it delighteth to grow.

Time.] It is to be found only in April and May; for in June, when any hot weather cometh, for the most part it is withered and gone.

Government and Virtues.] The Moon owns the herb. Moonwort is cold and drying more than adder's tongue, and is therefore held to be more available for all wounds, both inward and outward. The leaves boiled in red wine, and drank, stay the immoderate flux of women's courses and the whites. It also stayeth bleeding, vomiting, and other fluxes. It helpeth all blows and bruises, and to consolidate all fractures and dislocations. It is good for ruptures, but is chiefly used by most with other herbs to make oils or balsams to heal fresh or green wounds (as I said before) either inward or outward, for which it is excellent good.

Moonwort is an herb which (they say) will open locks, and unshoe such horses as tread upon it: This some laugh to scorn, and those no small fools neither; but country people that I know, call it unshoe the horse. Besides I have heard commanders say, that on White Down in Devonshire, near Tiverton, there were found thirty horse shoes, pulled off from the feet of the earl of Essex's horses, being there drawn up in a

body, many of them being but newly shod, and no reason known, which caused much admiration, and the herb described usually grows upon heaths.

MOSSES.

I SHALL not trouble the reader with a description of these, since my intent is to speak only of two kinds, as the most principal, viz. ground moss and tree moss, both which are very well known.

Place.] The ground moss groweth in our moist woods, and in the bottom of hills, in boggy grounds, and in shadowy ditches, and many other such like places. The tree moss groweth only on trees.

Government and Virtues.] All sorts of mosses are under the dominion of Saturn. The ground moss is held to be singularly good to break the stone, and to expel and drive it forth by urine, being boiled in wine and drank. The herb, being bruised and boiled in water, and applied, easeth all inflammations and pains coming from an hot cause; and is therefore used to ease the pains of the gout.

The tree mosses are cooling and binding, and partake of a digesting and mollifying quality withal, as Galen saith. But each moss doth partake of the nature of the tree from whence it is taken; therefore that of the oak is more binding, and is of good effect to stay fluxes in man or woman; as also vomiting or bleeding, the powder thereof being taken in wine. The decoction thereof in wine is very good for women to be bathed, or to sit in, that are troubled with the overflowing of their courses. The same being drank, stayeth the stomach that is troubled with casting, or the hiccough; and, as Avicena saith, it comforteth the heart. The powder thereof taken in drink for some time together, is thought available for the dropsy. The oil that has had fresh moss steeped therein for a time, and afterwards boiled and applied to the temples and forehead, doth marvellously ease the headache coming of a hot cause; as also the distillations of hot rheums or humours in the eyes, or other parts. The ancients much used it in their ointments and other medicines against the lassitude, and to strengthen and comfort the sinews: for which, if it was good then, I know no reason but it may be found so still.

MOTHERWORT.

Descript.] THIS hath a hard, square, brownish, rough, strong stalk, rising three or four feet high at least, spreading into many branches, whereon grow leaves on

each side, with long footstalks, two at every joint, which are somewhat broad and long, as if it were rough or coupled, with many great veins therein of a sad green colour, and deeply dented about the edges, and almost divided. From the middle of the branches up to the tops of them (which are long and small) grow the flowers round them at distances, in sharp-pointed, rough, hard husks, of a more red or purple colour than balm or horehound, but in the same manner or form as the horehound, after which come small, round, blackish seeds in great plenty. The root sendeth forth a number of long strings and small fibres, taking strong hold in the ground, of a dark yellowish or brownish colour, and abideth as the horehound doth: the smell of this not much differeth from this.

Place.] It groweth only in gardens with us in England.

Government and Virtues.] Venus owns the herb, and it is under Leo. There is no better herb to take melancholy vapours from the heart, to strengthen it, and make a merry, chearful, blithe soul than this herb. It may be kept in a syrup or conserve; therefore the Latins called it cardiaca. Besides, it makes women joyful mothers of children, and settles their wombs as they should be, therefore we call it motherwort. It is held to be of much use for the trembling of the heart, and faintings and swoonings; from whence it took the name cardiaca. The powder thereof, to the quantity of a spoonful, drank in wine, is a wonderful help to women in their sore travail, as also for the suffocating or risings of the mother, and for these effects, it is likely it took the name of motherwort with us. It also provoketh urine and women's courses, cleanseth the chest of cold phlegm, oppressing it, killeth worms in the belly. It is of good use to warm and dry up the cold humours, to digest and disperse them that are settled in the veins, joints, and sinews of the body, and to help cramps and convulsions.

MOUSE-EAR.

Descript.] MOUSE-EAR is a low herb, creeping upon the ground by small strings, like the strawberry plant, whereby it shooteth forth small roots, whereat grow upon the ground many small and somewhat short leaves, set in a round form together, and very hairy, which being broken do give a whitish milk: From among these leaves spring up two or three small hoary stalks about a span high, with a few smaller leaves thereon; at the tops whereof standeth usually but one flower, consisting of many pale yellow leaves, broad at the point, and a little dented in, set in three or four rows (the greater uppermost) very like a dandelion flower, and a little reddish underneath about the edges, especially if it grow in a dry ground; which, after they have stood long in flower do turn

into down, which, with the seed, is carried away with the wind.

Place.] It groweth on ditch banks, and sometimes in ditches, if they be dry, and in sandy grounds.

Time.] It flowereth about June or July, and abideth green all the winter.

Government and Virtues.] The Moon owns this herb also; and though authors cry out upon alchymists, for attempting to fix quicksilver by this herb and moonwort, a Roman would not have judged a thing by the success; if it be to be fixed at all, it is by lunar influence. The juice thereof taken in wine, or the decoction thereof drank, doth help the jaundice, although of long continuance, to drink thereof morning and evening, and abstain from other drink two or three hours after. It is a special remedy against the stone, and the tormenting pains thereof; as also other tortures and griping pains of the bowels. The decoction thereof with succory and centaury is held very effectual to help the dropsy, and them that are inclining thereunto, and the diseases of the spleen. It stayeth the fluxes of blood, either at the mouth or nose, and inward bleeding also, for it is a singular wound herb for wounds both inward and outward: It helpeth the bloody flux, and helpeth the abundance of women's courses. There is a syrup made of the juice hereof, and sugar, by the apothecaries of Italy, and other places, which is of much account with them, to be given to those that are troubled with the cough or phthisic. The same also is singularly good for ruptures or burstings. The green herb bruised and presently bound to any cut or wound, doth quickly solder the lips thereof. And the juice, decoction, or powder of the dried herb is most singular to stay the malignity of spreading and fretting cankers and ulcers whatsoever, yea in the mouth and secret parts. The distilled water of the plant is available in all the diseases aforesaid, and to wash outward wounds and sores, and apply tents of cloths wet therein.

MUGWORT.

Descript.] COMMON mugwort hath divers leaves lying upon the ground, very much divided, or cut deeply in about the brims, somewhat like wormwood, but much larger, of a dark green colour on the upper side, and very hoary white underneath. The stalks rise to be four or five feet high, having on it such like leaves as those below, but somewhat smaller, branching forth very much towards the top, whereon are set very small, pale, yellowish flowers like buttons, which fall away, and after them come small seeds inclosed in round heads. The root is long and hard, with many small fibres grow-

ing from it, whereby it taketh strong hold on the ground; but both stalks and leafs do lie down every year, and the root shooteth anew in the spring. The whole plant is of a reasonable scent, and is more easily propagated by the slips than the seed.

Place.] It groweth plentifully in many places of this land, by the water-sides; as also by small water courses, and in divers other places.

Time.] It flowereth and seedeth in the end of summer.

Government and Virtues.] This is an herb of Venus, therefore maintaineth the parts of the body she rules, remedies the diseases of the parts that are under her signs Taurus and Libra. Mugwort is with good success, put among other herbs that are boiled for women to sit over the hot decoction to draw down their courses, to help the delivery of their birth, and expel the after-birth. As also for the obstructions and inflammations of the mother. It breaketh the stone, and causeth one to make water where it is stopped. The juice thereof made up with myrrh, and put under as a pessary, worketh the same effects, and so doth the root also. Being made up with hog's grease into an ointment, it taketh away wens and hard knots and kernels that grow about the neck and throat, and easeth the pains about the neck more effectually, if some field daisies be put with it. The herb itself being fresh, or the juice thereof taken, is a special remedy upon the over-much taking of opium. Three drams of the powder of the dried leaves taken in wine, is a speedy and the best certain help for the sciatica. A decoction thereof made with camomile and agrimony, and the place bathed therewith while it is warm, taketh away the pains of the sinews and the cramp.

THE MULBERRY-TREE.

THIS is so well known where it groweth, that it needeth no description.

Time.] It beareth fruit in the months of July and August.

Government and Virtues.] Mercury rules the tree, therefore are its effects variable as his are. The mulberry is of different parts; the ripe berries, by reason of their sweetness and slippery moisture, opening the body, and the unripe binding it, especially when they are dried, and then they are good to stay fluxes, lasks, and the abundance of women's courses. The bark of the root killeth the broad worms in the body. The juice or the syrup made of the juice of the berries, helpeth all inflammations or sores in the mouth, or throat, and palate of the mouth when it is fallen down. The juice of the leaves is a remedy against the biting of serpents, and for those that have taken

aconite. The leaves beaten with vinegar, are good to lay on any place that is burnt with fire. A decoction made of the bark and leaves is good to wash the mouth and teeth when they ache. If the root be a little slit or cut, and a small hole made in the ground next thereunto, in the harvest-time, it will give out a certain juice, which being hardened the next day, is of good use to help the tooth-ach, to disolve knots, and purge the belly. The leaves of mulberries are said to stay bleeding at the mouth or nose, or the bleeding of the piles, or of a wound, being bound unto the places. A branch of the tree taken when the Moon is at the full, and bound to the wrists of a woman's arm, whose courses come down too much, doth stay them in a short space.

MULLEIN.

Descript.] COMMON white mullein hath many fair, large, woolly white leaves, lying next the ground, somewhat larger than broad, pointed at the end, and as it were dented about the edges. The stalk riseth up to be four or five feet high, covered over with such like leaves, but lesser, so that no stalk can be seen for the multitude of leaves thereon up to the flowers, which come forth on all sides of the stalk, without any branches for the most part, and are many set together in a long spike, in some of a yellow colour, in others more pale, consisting of five round pointed leaves, which afterwards have small round heads, wherein is small brownish seed contained. The root is long, white, and woody, perishing after it hath borne seed.

Place.] It groweth by way-sides and lanes, in many places of this land.

Time.] It flowereth in July, or thereabouts.

Government and Virtues.] It is under the dominion of Saturn. A small quantity of the root given in wine, is commended by Dioscorides, against lasks and fluxes of the belly. The decoction hereof drank, is profitable for those that are bursten, and for cramps and convulsions, and for those that are troubled with an old cough. The decoction thereof gargled, easeth the pains of the tooth-ach. And the oil made by the often infusion of the flowers, is of very good effect for the piles. The decoction of the root in red wine or in water, (if there be an ague) wherein red hot steel hath been often quenched, doth stay the bloody flux. The same also openeth obstructions of the bladder and veins when one cannot make water. A decoction of the leaves hereof, and of sage, marjoram, and camomile flowers, and the places bathed therewith, that have sinews stiff with cold or cramps, doth bring them much ease and

comfort. Three ounces of the distilled water of the flowers, drank morning and evening for some days together, is said to be the most excellent remedy for the gout. The juice of the leaves and flowers being laid upon rough warts, as also the powder of the dried roots rubbed on, doth easily take them away, but doth no good to smooth warts. The powder of the dried flowers is an especial remedy for those that are troubled with the belly-ach, or the pains of the cholic. The decoction of the root, and so likewise of the leaves, is of great effect to dissolve the tumours, swellings, or inflammations of the throat. The seed and leaves boiled in wine, and applied, draw forth speedily thorns or splinters gotten into the flesh, ease the pains, and heal them also. The leaves bruised and wrapped in double papers, and covered with hot ashes and embers to bake a while, and then taken forth and laid warm on any blotch or boil happening in the groin or share, doth dissolve and heal them. The seed bruised and boiled in wine, and laid on any member that hath been out of joint, and newly set again, taketh away all swelling and pain thereof.

MUSTARD.

Descript.] OUR common mustard hath large and broad rough leaves, very much jagged with uneven and unorderly gashes, somewhat like turnip leaves, but lesser and rougher. The stalk riseth to be more than a foot high, and sometimes two feet high, being round, rough, and branched at the top, bearing such like leaves thereon as grow below, but lesser, and less divided, and divers yellow flowers one above another at the tops, after which come small rough pods, with small, lank, flat ends, wherein is contained round yellowish seed, sharp, hot, and biting upon the tongue. The root is small, long, and woody when it beareth stalks, and perisheth every year.

Place.] This groweth with us in gardens only, and other manured places.

Time.] It is an annual plant, flowering in July, and the seed is ripe in August.

Government and Virtues.] It is an excellent sauce for such whose blood wants clarifying, and for weak stomachs, being an herb of Mars, but naught for choleric people, though as good for such as are aged, or troubled with cold diseases. Aries claims something to do with it, therefore it strengthens the heart, and resisteth poison. Let such whose stomachs are so weak they cannot digest their meat, or appetite it, take of mustard-seed a dram, cinnamon as much, and having beaten them to powder, and half as much mastic in powder, and with gum arabic dissolved in rose-water, make it up into troches, of which they

may take one of about half a dram weight an hour or two before meals; let old men and women make much of this medicine, and they will either give me thanks, or shew manifest ingratitude. Mustard seed hath the virtue of heat, discussing, ratifying, and drawing out splinters of bones, and other things of the flesh. It is of good effect to bring down women's courses, for the falling-sickness or lethargy, drowsy forgetful evil, to use it both inwardly and outwardly, to rub the nostrils, forehead and temples, to warm and quicken the spirits; for by the fierce sharpness it purgeth the brain by sneezing, and drawing down rheum and other viscous humours, which by their distillations upon the lungs and chest, procure coughing, and therefore, with some honey added thereto, doth much good therein. The decoction of the seed made in wine, and drank, provoketh urine, resisteth the force of poison, the malignity of mushrooms, and venom of scorpions, or other venomous creatures, if it be taken in time; and taken before the cold fits of agues, altereth, lesseneth, and cureth them. The seed taken either by itself, or with other things, either in an electuary or drink, doth mightily stir up bodily lust, and helpeth the spleen and pains in the sides, and gnawings in the bowels; and used as a gargle, draweth up the palate of the mouth, being fallen down; and also it dissolveth the swellings about the throat, if it be outwardly applied. Being chewed in the mouth, it oftentimes helpeth the tooth-ach. The outward application hereof upon the pained place of the sciatica, discusseth the humours, and easeth the pains, as also the gout, and other joint-achs; and is much and often used to ease pains in the sides or loins, the shoulders, or other parts of the body, upon the plying thereof to raise blisters, and cureth the disease by drawing it to the outward parts of the body. It is also used to help the falling off the hair. The seed bruised, mixed with honey, and applied, or made up with wax, taketh away the marks and black and blue spots of bruises, or the like, the roughness or scabbiness of the skin, as also the leprosy, and lousy evil. It helpeth also the crick in the neck. The distilled water of the herb, when it is in the flower, is much used to drink inwardly to help in any of the diseases aforesaid, or to wash the mouth when the palate is down, and for the diseases of the throat to gargle, but outwardly also for scabs, itch, or other the like infirmities, and cleanseth the face from morphew, spots, freckles, and other deformities.

THE HEDGE-MUSTARD.

Descript.] THIS groweth up usually but with one blackish green stalk, tough, easy to bend, but not to break, branched into divers parts, and sometimes with divers

stalks, set full of branches, whereon grow long, rough, or hard rugged leaves, very much tore or cut on the edges in many parts, some bigger, and some lesser, of a dirty green colour. The flowers are small and yellow, that grow on the tops of the branches in long spikes, flowering by degrees; so that continuing long in flower, the stalk will have small round cods at the bottom, growing upright and close to the stalk, while the top flowers yet shew themselves, in which are contained small yellow seed, sharp and strong, as the herb is also. The root groweth down slender and woody, yet abiding and springing again every year.

Place.] This groweth frequently in this land, by the ways and hedge-sides, and sometimes in the open fields.

Time.] It flowereth most usually about July.

Government and Virtues.] Mars owns this herb also. It is singularly good in all the diseases of the chest and lungs, hoarseness of voice; and by the use of the decoction thereof for a little space, these have been recovered who had utterly lost their voice, and almost their spirits also. The juice thereof made into a syrup, or licking medicine, with honey or sugar, is no less effectual for the same purpose, and for all other coughs, wheezing, and shortness of breath. The same is also profitable for those that have the jaundice, pleurisy, pains in the back and loins, and for torments in the belly, or cholic, being also used in clysters. The seed is held to be a special remedy against poison and venom. It is singularly good for the sciatica, and in joint-achs, ulcers, and cankers in the mouth, throat, or behind the ears, and no less for the hardness and swelling of the testicles, or of women's breasts.

NAILWORT, OR WHITLOWGRASS.

Descript.] THIS very small and common herb hath no roots, save only a few strings; neither doth it ever grow to be above a hand's breadth high, the leaves are very small, and something long, not much unlike those of chickweed, among which rise up divers slender stalks, bearing many white flowers one above another, which are exceeding small; after which come small flat pouches containing the seed, which is very small, but of a sharp taste.

Place.] It grows commonly upon old stone and brick walls, and sometimes in dry gravelly grounds, especially if there be grass or moss near to shadow it.

Time.] They flower very early in the year, sometimes in January, and in February; for before the end of April they are not to be found.

Government and Virtues.] It is held to be exceeding good

for those imposthumes in the joints, and under the nails, which they call whitlows, felons, andicons and nailwheals. Such as would be knowing physicians, let them read those books of mine of the last edition, viz. Reverius, Riolanus, Johnson, Vestingus, Sennertus.

NEP, OR CATMINT.

Descript.] COMMON garden nep shooteth forth hard four-square stalks, with a hoariness on them, a yard high or more, full of branches, bearing at every joint two broad leaves like balm, but longer pointed, softer, white, and more hoary, nicked about the edges, and of a strong sweet scent. The flowers grow in large tufts at the tops of the branches, and underneath them likewise on the stalks many together, of a whitish purple colour. The roots are composed of many long strings or fibres, fastening themselves stronger in the ground, and abide with green leaves thereon all the winter.

Place.] It is only nursed up in our gardens.

Time.] And it flowereth in July, or thereabouts.

Government and Virtues.] It is an herb of Venus. Nep is generally used for women to procure their courses, being taken inwardly or outwardly, either alone, or with other convenient herbs in a decoction to bathe them, or sit over the hot fumes thereof; and by the frequent use thereof, it takes away barrenness, and the wind, and pains of the mother. It is also used in pains of the head coming of any cold cause, catarrhs, rheums, and for swimming and giddiness thereof, and is of special use for the windiness of the stomach and belly. It is effectual for any cramp, or cold aches, to dissolve cold and wind that afflicteth the place, and is used for colds, coughs, and shortness of breath. The juice thereof drank in wine, is profitable for those that are bruised by an accident. The green herb bruised and applied to the fundament, and lying there two or three hours, easeth the pains of the piles; the juice also being made up into an ointment, is effectual for the same purpose. The head washed with a decoction thereof, it taketh away scabs, and may be effectual for other parts of the body also.

NETTLES.

NETTLES are so well known, that they need no description; they may be found by feeling, in the darkest night.

Government and Virtues.] This is also an herb Marselaim dominion over. You know Mars is hot and dry, and you know as well that winter is cold and moist; then you may know as

well the reason why nettle tops eaten in the spring consumeth the phlegmatic superfluities in the body of man, that the coldness and moistness of winter hath left behind. The roots or leaves boiled, or the juice of either of them, or both, made into an electuary with honey and sugar, is a safe and sure medicine to open the pipes and passages of the lungs, which is the cause of wheezing and shortness of breath, and helpeth to expectorate tough phlegm, as also to raise the imposthumed pleurisy; and spend it by spitting; the same helpeth the swelling of the almonds of the throat, the mouth and throat being gargled therewith. The juice is also effectual to settle the palate of the mouth in its place, and to heal and temper the inflammations and soreness of the mouth and throat. The decoction of the leaves in wine, being drank, is singularly good to provoke women's courses, and settle the suffocation, strangling of the mother, and all other diseases thereof; as also applied outwardly with a little myrrh. The same also, or the seed, provoketh urine, and expelleth the gravel and stone in the reins or bladder, often proved to be effectual in many that have taken it. The same killeth the worms in children, easeth pains in the sides, and dissolveth the windiness in the spleen, as also in the body, although others think it only powerful to provoke venery. The juice of the leaves taken two or three days together, stayeth bleeding at the mouth. The seed being drank, is a remedy against the stinging of venomous creatures, the biting of mad dogs, the poisonful qualities of hemlock, henbane, nightshade, mandrake, or other such like herbs that stupify or dull the senses; as also the lethargy, especially to use it outwardly, to rub the forehead or temples in the lethargy, and the places stung or bitten with beasts, with a little salt. The distilled water of the herb is also effectual (though not so powerful) for the diseases aforesaid; as for outward wounds and sores to wash them, and to cleanse the skin from morphew, leprosy, and other discolourings thereof. The seed or leaves bruised, and put into the nostrils, stayeth the bleeding of them, and taketh away the flesh growing in them called polypus. The juice of the leaves, or the decoction of them, or of the root, is singularly good to wash either old, rotten, or stinking sores or fistulas, and gangrenes, and such as fretting, eating, or corroding scabs, manginess, and itch, in any part of the body, as also green wounds, by washing them therewith, or applying the green herb bruised thereunto, yea, although the flesh were separated from the bones; the same applied to our wearied members, refresh them, or replace those that have been out of joint, being first set up again, strengthen, drieth, and comforteth them, as also those places troubled with aches and gouts, and the defluetion of humours upon the joints or sinews: it easeth the pains, and drieth

or dissolveth the defluctions. An ointment made of the juice, oil, and a little wax, is singularly good to rub cold and benumbed members. An handful of the leaves of green nettles, and another of wallwort, or deanwort, bruised and applied simply themselves to the gout, sciatica, or joint aches in any part, hath been found to be an admirable help thereunto.

NIGHTSHADE.

Descript.] COMMON nightshade hath an upright, round, green, hollow stalk, about a foot or half a yard high, bushing forth in many branches whereon grow many green leaves, somewhat broad, and pointed at the ends, soft and full of juice, somewhat like unto bazil, but longer and a little unevenly dented about the edges: At the tops of the stalks and branches come forth three or four more white flowers made of five small pointed leaves a-piece, standing on a stalk together, one above another, with yellow pointels in the middle, composed of four or five yellow threads set together, which afterwards run into so many pendulous green berries, of the bigness of small pease, full of green juice, and small whitish round flat seed lying within it. The root is white, and a little woody when it hath given flower and fruit, with many small fibres at it: The whole plant is of a waterish insipid taste, but the juice within the berries is somewhat viscous, and of a cooling and binding quality.

Place.] It groweth wild with us under our walls, and in rubbish, the common paths, and sides of hedges and fields, as also in our gardens here in England, without any planting.

Time.] It lieth down every year and riseth again of its own sowing, but springeth not until the latter end of April at the soonest.

Government and Virtues.] It is a cold Saturnine plant. The common nightshade is wholly used to cool hot inflammations either inwardly or outwardly, being no ways dangerous to any that use it, as most of the rest of the nightshades are; yet it must be used moderately. The distilled water only of the whole herb is fittest and safest to be taken inwardly. The juice also clarified and taken, being mingled with a little vinegar, is good to wash the mouth and throat that is inflamed; but outwardly the juice of the herbs or berries, with oil of roses and a little vinegar and ceruse laboured together in a leaden mortar, is very good to anoint all hot inflammations in the eyes. It also doth much good for the shingles, ringworms, and in all running, fretting and corroding ulcers applied thereunto. A pessary dipped in the juice, and dropped into the matrix, stayeth the immoderate flux of women's courses; a cloth wet therein, and applied to

the testicles or cods, upon any swelling therein, giveth much ease, also to the gout that cometh of hot and sharp humours. The juice dropped into the ears, easeth pains thereof that arise of heat or inflammations. And Pliny saith, it is good for hot swellings under the throat. Have a care you mistake not the deadly nightshade for this; if you know it not, you may let them both alone, and take no harm, having other medicines sufficient in the book.

THE OAK.

IT is so well known (the timber thereof being the glory and safety of this nation by sea) that it needeth no description.

Government and Virtues.] Jupiter owns the tree. The leaves and bark of the oak, and the acorn cups, do bind and dry very much. The inner bark of the tree, and the thin skin that covereth the acorn, are most used to stay the spitting of blood, and the bloody flux. The decoction of that bark, and the powder of the cups, do stay vomitings, spitting of blood, bleeding at the mouth, or other flux of blood in men or women; lasks also, and the involuntary flux of natural seed. The acorn in powder, taken in wine, provoketh urine, and resisteth the poison of venomous creatures. The decoction of acorns and the bark made in milk and taken, resisteth the force of poisonous herbs and medicines, as also the virulency of cantharides, when one by eating them hath his bladder exulcerated, and pisseth blood. Hippocrates saith, he used the fumes of oak leaves to women that were troubled with the strangling of the mother; and Galen applied them, being bruised, to cure green wounds. The distilled water of the oaken bud, before they break out into leaves, is good to be used either inwardly or outwardly, to assuage inflammations, and to stop all manner of fluxes in man or woman. The same is singularly good in pestilential and hot burning fevers: for it resisteth the force of the infection, and allayeth the heat: It cooleth the heat of the liver, breaketh the stone in the kidneys, and stayeth women's courses. The decoction of the leaves worketh the same effects. The water that is found in the hollow places of old oaks, is very effectual against any foul or spreading scabs. The distilled water (or concoction, which is better) of the leaves, is one of the best remedies that I know of for the whites in women.

OATS

ARE so well known that they need no description.

Government and Virtues.] Oats fried with bay salt, and applied to the sides, take away the pains of stitches and wind

in the sides of the belly. A poultice made of meal of oats, and some oil of bays put thereunto, helpeth the itch and the leprosy, as also the fistulas of the fundament, and dissolveth hard imposthumes. The meal of oats boiled with vinegar, and applied, taketh away freckles and spots in the face, and other parts of the body.

ONE-BLADE.

Descript.] THIS small plant never beareth more than one leaf, but only when it riseth up with his stalk, which thereon beareth another, and seldom more, which are of a blueish green colour, pointed, with many ribs or veins therein, like plantain. At the top of the stalk grow many small white flowers, star fashion, smelling somewhat sweet; after which come small red berries, when they are ripe. The root is small, of the bigness of a rush, lying and creeping under the upper crust of the earth, shooting forth in divers places.

Place.] It groweth in moist, shadowy, and grassy places of woods, in many places of this land.

Time.] It flowereth about May, and the berries are ripe in June, and then quickly perisheth, until the next year it springeth from the same root again.

Government and Virtues.] It is a precious herb of the Sun. Half a dram, or a dram at most, in powder of the roots hereof taken in wine and vinegar, of each equal parts, and the party laid presently to sweat thereupon, is held to be a sovereign remedy for those that are infected with the plague, and have a sore upon them, by expelling the poison and infection, and defending the heart and spirits from danger. It is a singularly good wound herb, and is thereupon used with other the like effects in many compound balms for curing of wounds, be they fresh and green, or old and malignant, and especially if the sinews be burnt.

ORCHIS.

IT hath gotten almost as many several names attributed to the several sorts of it, as would almost fill a sheet of paper; as dog-stones, goat-stones, fool-stones, fox-stones, satirion, cullians, together with many others too tedious to rehearse.

Descript.] To describe all the several sorts of it were an endless piece of work; therefore I shall only describe the roots, because they are to be used with some discretion. They have each of them a double root within, some of them are round, in others like a hand; these roots alter every year by course, when the one riseth and waxeth full, the other waxeth lank, and pe-

risheth: Now, it is that which is full which is to be used in medicines, the other being either of no use at all, or else, according to the humour of some, it destroys and disannuls the virtues of the other, quite undoing what that doth.

Time.] One or other of them may be found in flower from the beginning of April to the latter end of August.

Temperature and Virtues.] They are hot and moist in operation, under the dominion of dame Venus, and provoke lust exceedingly, which, they say, the dried and withered roots do restrain. They are held to kill worms in children; as also, being bruised and applied to the place, to heal the king's evil.

ONIONS.

THEY are so well known, that I need not spend time about writing a description of them.

Government and Virtues.] Mars owns them, and they have gotten this quality, to draw any corruption to them, for if you peel one, and lay it upon the dunghill, you shall find him rotten in half a day, by drawing putrefaction to it; then being bruised and applied to a plague sore, it is very probable it will do the like. Onions are flatulent, or windy; yet they do somewhat provoke appetite, increase thirst, ease the belly and bowels, provoke women's courses, help the biting of a mad dog, and of other venomous creatures, to be used with honey and rue, increase sperm, especially the seed of them. They also kill worms in children, if they drink the water fasting wherein they have been steeped all night. Being roasted under the embers, and eaten with honey or sugar and oil, they much conduce to help an inveterate cough, and expectorate the tough phlegm. The juice being snuffed up in the nostrils, purgeth the head, and helpeth the lethargy, (yet the often eating them, is said to procure pains in the head.) It hath been held by divers country people a great preservative against infection, to eat onions fasting with bread and salt: As also to make a great onion hollow, filling the place with good treacle, and after to roast it well under the embers, which, after taking away the outermost skin thereof, being beaten together, is a sovereign salve for either plague or sores, or any other putrefied ulcer. The juice of onions is good for either scalding or burning by fire, water, or gunpowder, and used with vinegar, taketh away all blemishes, spots and marks in the skin: and dropped into the ears, easeth the pains and noise of them. Applied also with figs beaten together, helpeth to ripen and break imposthumes, and other sores.

Leeks are as like them in quality, as the pome-water is like an

apple: They are a remedy against a surfeit of mushrooms, being baked under the embers and taken; and being boiled and applied very warm, help the piles. In other things they have the same property as the onions, although not so effectual.

ORPINE.

Descript.] COMMON orpine riseth up with divers round brittle stalks, thick set with fat and fleshy leaves, without any order, and little or nothing dented about the edges, of a green colour: The flowers are white, or whitish, growing in tufts, after which come small chaffy husks, with seeds like dust in them. The roots are divers thick, round, white tuberous clogs; and the plant groweth not so big in some places as in others where it is found.

Place.] It is frequent in almost every county of this land, and is cherished in gardens with us, where it groweth greater than that which is wild, and groweth in shadowy sides of fields and woods.

Time.] It flowereth about July, and the seed is ripe in August.

Government and Virtues.] The Moon owns the herb, and he that knows but her exaltation, knows what I say is true. Orpine is seldom used in inward medicines with us, although Tragus saith from experience in Germany, that the distilled water thereof is profitable for gnawings or excoriations in the stomach or bowels, or for ulcers in the lungs, liver, or other inward parts, as also in the matrix, and helpeth all those diseases, being drank for certain days together. It stayeth the sharpness of humours in the bloody-flux, and other fluxes in the body or in wounds. The root thereof also performeth the like effect. It is used outwardly to cool any heat or inflammation upon any hurt or wound, and easeth the pains of them; as also to heal scaldings or burnings, the juice thereof being beaten with some green salad oil, and anointed. The leaf bruised, and laid to any green wound in the hands or legs, doth heal them quickly; and being bound to the throat, much helpeth the quinsy; it helpeth also ruptures and burstenness. If you please to make the juice thereof into a syrup with honey or sugar, you may safely take a spoonful or two at a time, (let my author say what he will) for a quinsy, and you shall find the medicine more pleasant, and the cure more speedy, than if you had taken a dog's turd, which is the vulgar cure.

PARSLEY.

THIS is so well known, that it needs no description.

Government and Virtues.] It is under the dominion of Mercury; is very comfortable to the stomach; helpeth to pro-

voke urine and women's courses; to break wind both in the stomach and bowels; and doth a little open the body, but the root much more. It openeth obstructions both of liver and spleen, and is therefore accounted one of the five opening roots. Galen commended it against the falling sickness, and to provoke urine mightily, especially if the roots be boiled, and eaten like parsnips. The seed is effectual to provoke urine and women's courses, to expel wind, to break the stone, and easeth the pains and torments thereof; it is also effectual against the venom of any poisonous creature, and the danger that cometh to them that have the lethargy; and is as good against the cough. The distilled water of parsley is a familiar medicine with nurses to give their children, when they are troubled with wind in the stomach or belly, which they call the frets; and is also much available to them that are of great years. The leaves of parsley laid to the eyes that are inflamed with heat, or swollen, doth much help them, if it be used with bread or meal; and being fried with butter, and applied to women's breasts that are hard through the curdling of their milk, it abateth the hardness quickly, and also it taketh away black and blue marks coming of bruises or falls. The juice thereof dropped into the ears, with a little wine, easeth the pains. Tragus setteth down an excellent medicine to help the jaundice and falling sickness, the dropsy, and stone in the kidneys, in this manner: Take of the seed of parsley, fennel, annise and carraways, of each an ounce; of the roots of parsley, burnet, saxifrage, and carraways, of each an ounce and a half; let the seeds be bruised, and the roots washed and cut small; let them lie all night in steep in a bottle of white wine, and in the morning be boiled in a close earthen vessel until a third part or more be wasted; which being strained and cleared, take four ounces thereof morning and evening first and last, abstaining from drink after it for three hours. This openeth obstructions of the liver and spleen, and expelleth the dropsy and jaundice by urine.

PARSLEY PIERT, OR PARSLEY BREAKSTONE.

Descript.] THE root, although it be very small and thready, yet it continues many years, from whence arise many leaves lying along on the ground, each standing upon a long small foot-stalk, the leaves as broad as a man's nail, very deeply dented on the edges, somewhat like a parsley-leaf, but of a very dusky green colour. The stalks are very weak and slender, about three or four figures in length, set so full of leaves that they can hardly be seen, either having no foot-stalk at all, or but very short; the flowers are so small they can hardly be seen, and the seed as small as may be.

Place.] It is a common herb throughout the nation, and rejoiceth in barren, sandy, moist places. It may be found plentifully about Hampstead Heath, Hyde Park, and in Tothill-fields.

Time.] It may be found all the summer-time, even from the beginning of April to the end of October.

Government and Virtues.] Its operation is very prevalent to provoke urine, and to break the stone. It is a very good salad herb. It were good the gentry would pickle it up as they pickle up samphire for their use all the winter. I cannot teach them how to do it; yet this I can tell them, it is a very wholesome herb. They may also keep the herb dry, or in a syrup, if they please. You may take a dram of the powder of it in white wine; it would bring away gravel from the kidneys insensibly, and without pain. It also helps the strangury.

PARSNIP.

THE garden kind thereof is so well known (the root being commonly eaten) that I shall not trouble you with any description of it. But the wild kind being of more physical use, I shall in this place describe it unto you.

Descript.] The wild parsnip differeth little from the garden, but groweth not so fair and large, nor hath so many leaves, and the root is shorter, more woody, and not so fit to be eaten, and therefore more medicinal.

Place.] The name of the first sheweth the place of its growth. The other groweth wild in divers places, as in the marshes by Rochester, and elsewhere, and flowereth in July; the seed being ripe about the beginning of August, the second year after the sowing; for if they do flower the first year, the country people call them madneps.

Government and Virtues.] The garden parsnips are under Venus. The garden parsnip nourisheth much, and is good and wholesome nourishment, but a little windy, whereby it is thought to procure bodily lust; but it fatteneth the body much, if much used. It is conducible to the stomach and reins, and provoketh urine. But the wild parsnip hath a cutting, attenuating, cleansing, and opening quality therein. It resisteth and helpeth the bitings of serpents, easeth the pains and stitches in the sides, and dissolveth wind both in the stomach and bowels, which is the cholic, and provoketh urine. The root is often used, but the seed much more: the wild being better than the tame, shews dame Nature to be the best physician.

COW PARSNIP.

Descript.] THIS groweth with three or four large, spread winged, rough leaves, lying often on the ground, or else raised a little from it, with long, round, hairy footstalks under them, parted usually into five divisions, the two couples standing each against the other; and one at the end, and each leaf being almost round, yet somewhat deeply cut in on the edges in some leaves, and not so deep in others, of a whitish green colour, smelling somewhat strongly; among which riseth up a round, crusted, hairy stalk, two or three feet high, with a few joints and leaves thereon, and branched at the top, where stand large umbels of white, and sometimes reddish flowers, and after them flat, whitish, thin, winged seed, two always joined together. The root is long and white, with two or three long strings growing down into the ground, smelling likewise strongly and unpleasant.

Place.] It groweth in moist meadows, and the borders and corners of fields, and near ditches, through this land.

Time.] It flowereth in July, and seedeth in August.

Government and Virtues.] Mercury hath the dominion over them. The seed thereof, as Galen saith, is of a sharp and cutting quality, and therefore is a fit medicine for a cough and shortness of breath, the falling sickness and jaundice. The root is available to all the purposes aforesaid, and is also of great use to take away the hard skin that groweth on a fistula, if it be but scraped upon it. The seed hereof being drank, cleanseth the belly from tough phlegmatic matter therein, easeth them that are liver-grown, women's passions of the mother, as well being drank as the smoke thereof received underneath, and likewise raiseth such as are fallen into a deep sleep, or have the lethargy, by burning it under their nose. The seed and root boiled in oil, and the head rubbed therewith, helpeth not only those that are fallen into a frenzy, but also the lethargy or drowsy evil, and those that have been long troubled with the head-ache, if it be likewise used with rue. It helpeth also the running scab and the shingles. The juice of the flowers dropped into the ears that run and are full of matter, cleanseth and healeth them.

THE PEACH TREE.

Descript.] A PEACH tree groweth not so great as the apricot tree, yet spreadeth branches reasonable well, from whence spring smaller reddish twigs, whereon are set long and narrow green leaves dented about the edges. The blossoms are greater than the plumb, and of a light purple colour;

the fruit round, and sometimes as big as a reasonable pippin, others smaller, as also differing in colour and taste, as russet, red, or yellow, waterish or firm, with a frize or cotton all over, with a cleft therein like an apricot, and a rugged, furrowed, great stone within it, and a bitter kernel within the stone. It sooner waxeth old, and decayeth, than the apricot, by much.

Place.] They are nursed in gardens and orchards through this land.

Time.] They flower in the spring, and fructify in autumn.

Government and Virtues.] Lady Venus owns this tree, and by it opposeth the ill effects of Mars, and indeed for children and young people, nothing is better to purge choler and the jaundice, than the leaves or flowers of this tree being made into a syrup or conserve; let such as delight to please their lust regard the fruit; but such as have lost their health, and their children's, let them regard what I say, they may safely give two spoonfuls of the syrup at a time; it is as gentle as Venus herself. The leaves of peaches bruised and laid on the belly, kill worms; and so they do also being boiled in ale and drank, and open the belly likewise; and being dried is a safer medicine to discuss humours. The powder of them strewed upon fresh bleeding wounds stayeth their bleeding, and closeth them up. The flowers steeped all night in a little wine standing warm, strained forth in the morning, and drank fasting, doth gently open the belly, and move it downward. A syrup made of them, as the syrup of roses is made, worketh more forcibly than that of roses, for it provoketh vomiting, and spendeth waterish and hydropic humours by the continuance thereof. The flowers made into a conserve, worketh the same effect. The liquor that droppeth from the tree, being wounded, is given in the decoction of coltsfoot, to those that are troubled with the cough or shortness of breath, by adding thereunto some sweet wine, and putting some saffron also therein. It is good for those that are hoarse, or have lost their voice; helpeth all defects of the lungs, and those that vomit and spit blood. Two drams hereof given in the juice of lemons, or of radish, is good for them that are troubled with the stone. The kernels of the stones do wonderfully ease the pains and wringings of the belly, through wind or sharp humours, and help to make an excellent medicine for the stone upon all occasions, in this manner: *I take fifty kernels of peach-stones, and one hundred of the kernels of cherry-stones, a handful of elder flowers fresh or dried, and three pints of mus-cadel, set them in a close pot into a bed of horse dung for ten days, after which distil in a glass with a gentle fire,* and keep it for your use: You may drink upon occasion three or four

ounces at a time. The milk or cream of these kernels being drawn forth with some vervain water, and applied to the forehead and temples, doth much help to procure rest and sleep to sick persons wanting it. The oil drawn from the kernels, the temples being therewith anointed, doth the like. The said oil put into clysters, easeth the pains of the wind cholic: and anointed on the lower part of the body, doth the like, and dropped into the ears, easeth pains in them; the juice of the leaves doth the like. Being also anointed on the forehead and temples, it helpeth the megrim, and all other parts in the head. If the kernels be buried and boiled in vinegar, until they become thick, and applied to the head, it marvellously procures the hair to grow again upon bald places, or where it is too thin.

THE PEAR TREE.

PEAR trees are so well known, that they need no description.

Government and Virtues.] The tree belongs to Venus, and so doth the apple tree. For their physical use they are best discerned by their taste. All the sweet and luscious sorts, whether manured or wild, do help to move the belly downwards, more or less. Those that are hard and sour, do, on the contrary, bind the belly as much, and the leaves do so also: Those that are moist do in some sort cool, but harsh or wild sorts much more, and are very good in repelling medicines; and if the wild sort be boiled with mushrooms, it makes them less dangerous. The said pears boiled with a little honey, helps much the oppressed stomach, as all sorts of them do, some more, some less: but the harsher sorts do more cool and bind, serving well to be bound to green wounds, to cool and stay the blood, and to heal up the wound without farther trouble, or inflammation, as Galen saith he hath found by experience. The wild pears do sooner close up the lips of green wounds than others.

Schola Salerni adviseth to drink much wine after pears, or else (say they) they are as bad as poison: nay, and they curse the tree for it too; but if a poor man find his stomach oppressed by eating pears, it is but working hard, and it will do as well as drinking wine.

PELLITORY OF SPAIN.

COMMON pellitory of Spain, if it be planted in our gardens, it will prosper very well; yet there is one sort growing ordinarily here wild, which I esteem to be little infe-

rior to the other, if at all. I shall not deny you the description of them both.

Descript.] Common pellitory is a very common plant, and will not be kept in our gardens without diligent looking to. The root goes downright into the ground bearing leaves, being long and finely cut upon the stalk, lying on the ground, much larger than the leaves of the camomile are. At the top it bears one single large flower at a place, having a boarder of many leaves, white on the upper side, and reddish underneath, with a yellow thrum in the middle, not standing so close as that of camomile doth.

The other common pellitory which groweth here, hath a root of a sharp biting taste, scarce discernible by the taste from that before described, from whence arise divers brittle stalks, a yard high and more, with narrow long leaves finely dented about the edges, standing one above another up to the tops. The flowers are many and white, standing in tufts like those of yarrow, with a small yellowish thrum in the middle. The seed is very small.

Place.] The last groweth in fields by the hedge sides and paths, almost every where.

Time.] It flowereth at the latter end of June and in July.

Government and Virtues.] It is under the government of Mercury, and I am persuaded it is one of the best purgers of the brain that grows. An ounce of the juice taken in a draught of muscadel, an hour before the fit of the ague comes, will assuredly drive away the ague at the second or third time taking at the farthest. Either the herb or root dried and chewed in the mouth, purgeth the brain of phlegmatic humours; thereby not only easing pains in the head and teeth, but also hindereth the distilling of the brain upon the lungs and eyes, thereby preventing coughs, phthisics and consumption, the apoplexy and falling sickness. It is an excellent approved remedy in the lethargy. The powder of the herb or root being snuffed up the nostrils, procureth sneezing, and easeth the head-ach; being made into an ointment with hog's grease, it takes away black and blue spots occasioned by blows or falls, and helps both the gout and sciatica.

PELLITORY OF THE WALL.

Descript.] IT riseth with brownish, red, tender, weak, clear, and almost transparent stalks, about two feet high, upon which grow at the joints two leaves somewhat broad and long, of a dark green colour, which afterwards turn brownish, smooth on the edges, but rough and hairy, as the stalks are also. At the joints with the leaves from the middle of the stalk up-

wards, where it spreadeth in branches, stand many small, pale, purplish flowers in hairy rough heads, or husks, after which come small, black, rough seed, which will stick to any cloth or garment that shall touch it. The root is somewhat long, with small fibres thereat, of a dark reddish colour, which abideth the winter, although the stalks and leaves perish and spring every year.

Place.] It groweth wild generally through the land, about the borders of fields, and by the sides of walls, and among rubbish. It will endure well being brought up in gardens, and planted on the shady side, where it will spring of its own sowing.

Time.] It flowereth in June and July, and the seed is ripe soon after.

Government and Virtues.] It is under the dominion of Mercury. The dried herb pellitory made up into an electuary with honey, or the juice of the herb, or the decoction thereof made up with sugar or honey, is a singular remedy for an old or dry cough, the shortness of breath, and wheezing in the throat. Three ounces of the juice thereof taken at a time, doth wonderfully help stopping of the urine, and to expel the stone or gravel in the kidneys or bladder, and is therefore usually put among other herbs used in clysters to mitigate pains in the back, sides, or bowels, proceeding of wind, stopping of urine, the gravel or stone as aforesaid. If the bruised herb, sprinkled with muscadel, be warmed upon a tile, or in a dish upon a few quick coals in a chafing-dish, and applied to the belly, it worketh the same effect. The decoction of the herb being drank, easeth pains of the mother, and bringeth down women's courses: It also easeth those griefs that arise from obstructions of the liver, spleen, and reins. The same decoction, with a little honey added thereto, is good to gargle a sore throat. The juice held a while in the mouth, easeth pains in the teeth. The distilled water of the herb, drank with some sugar, worketh the same effects, and cleanseth the skin from spots, freckles, purples, wheals, sun-burn, morphew, &c. The juice dropped into the ears, easeth the noise in them, and taketh away pricking and shooting pains therein: The same, or the distilled water, assuageth hot and swelling imposthumes, burnings and scaldings by fire or water; as also all other hot tumours and inflammations, or breakings-out of heat, being bathed often with wet cloths dipped therein: The said juice made into a liniment with ceruse, and oil of roses, and anointed therewith, cleanseth foul rotten ulcers, and stayeth spreading or creeping ulcers, and running scabs or sores in children's heads; and helpeth to stay the hair from falling off the head. The said ointment, or the herb applied to the fundament, openeth the piles, and easeth their pains; and

being mixed with goat's tallow, helpeth the gout: The juice is very effectual to cleanse fistulas, and to heal them up safely; or the herb itself bruised and applied with a little salt. It is likewise also effectual to heal any green wound; if it be bruised and bound thereto for three days, you shall need no other medicine to heal it further. A poultice made hereof with mallows, and boiled in wine and wheat bran and bean flower, and some oil put thereto, and applied warm to any bruised sinews, tendon, or muscle, doth, in a very short time, restore them to their strength, taking away the pains of the bruises, and dissolveth the congealed blood coming of blows, or falls from high places.

The juice of pellitory of the wall clarified and boiled in a syrup with honey, and a spoonful of it drank every morning by such as are subject to the dropsy; if continuing that course, though but once a week, if ever they have the dropsy, let them come but to me, and I will cure them *gratis*.

PENNYROYAL.

PENNYROYAL is so well known unto all, I mean the common kind, that it needeth no description.

There is a greater kind than the ordinary sort found wild with us, which so abideth being brought into gardens, and differeth not from it, but only in the largeness of the leaves and stalks, in rising higher, and not creeping upon the ground so much. The flowers whereof are purple, growing in rundles about the stalks like the other.

Place.] The first, which is common in gardens, groweth also in many moist and watery places of this land.

The second is found wild in effect in divers places by the highways from London to Colchester, and thereabouts, more abundantly than in any other countries, and is also planted in their gardens in Essex.

Time.] They flower in the latter end of summer, about August.

Government and Virtues.] The herb is under Venus. Dioscorides saith, that pennyroyal maketh thin tough phlegm, warmeth the coldness of any part whereto it is applied, and digesteth raw or corrupt matter: Being boiled and drank, it provoketh women's courses, and expelleth the dead child and afterbirth, and stayeth the disposition to vomit, being taken in water and vinegar mingled together. And being mingled with honey and salt, it voideth phlegm out of the lungs, and purgeth melancholy by stool. Drank with wine, it helpeth such as are bitten and stung with venomous beasts, and applied to the nostrils with vinegar, reviveth those that are fainting and swooning.

Being dried and burnt, it strengtheneth the gums. It is helpful to those that are troubled with the gout, being applied of itself to the place until it was red, and applied in a plaister, it takes away spots or marks in the face, applied with salt, it profiteth those that are splenetic, or liver-grown. The decoction doth help the itch, if washed therewith; being put into baths for women to sit therein, it helpeth the swellings and hardness of the mother. The green herb bruised and put into vinegar, cleanseth foul ulcers, and taketh away the marks of bruises and blows about the eyes, and all discolourings of the face by fire, yea, and the leprosy, being drank and outwardly applied: Boiled in wine with honey and salt, it helpeth the tooth-ache. It helpeth the cold griefs of the joints, taking away the pains, and warmeth the cold part, being fast bound to the place, after a bathing or sweating in an hot house. Pliny addeth, that pennyroyal and mints together, help faintings, being put into vinegar, and smelled unto, or put into the nostrils or mouth. It easeth head-aches, pains of the breast and belly, and gnawing of the stomach; applied with honey, salt, and vinegar, it helpeth cramps or convulsions of the sinews: Boiled in milk, and drank, it is effectual for the cough, and for ulcers and sores in the mouth; drank in wine it provoketh women's courses, and expelleth the dead child, and after-birth. Matthiolus saith, The decoction thereof being drank, helpeth the jaundice and dropsy, all pains of the head and sinews that come of a cold cause, and cleareth the eye-sight. It helpeth the lethargy, and applied with barley-meal, helpeth burnings; and put into the ears easeth the pains of them.

MALE AND FEMALE PEONY.

Descript.] MALE peony riseth up with brownish stalks, whereon grow green and reddish leaves, upon a stalk without any particular division in the leaf at all. The flowers stand at the top of the stalks, consisting of five or six broad leaves, of a fair purplish red colour, with many yellow threads in the middle, standing about the head, which after riseth up to be the seed vessels, divided into two, three, or four crooked pods like horns, which being full ripe, open and turn themselves down backward, shewing within them divers round, black, shining seeds, having also many crimson grains, intermixed with black, whereby it maketh a very pretty shew. The roots are great, thick, and long, spreading and running down deep in the ground.

The ordinary female peony hath as many stalks, and more leaves on them than the male; the leaves not so large, but nicked on the edges, some with great and deep, others with

smaller cuts and divisions, of a dead green colour. The flowers are of a strong heady scent, usually smaller, and of a more purple colour than the male, with yellow thrums about the head, as the male hath. The seed vessels are like horns, as in the male, but smaller; the seed is black, but less shining. The roots consist of many short tuberous clogs, fastened at the end of long strings, and all from the heads of the roots, which is thick and short, and of the like scent with the male.

Place and Time.] They grow in gardens, and flower usually about May.

Government and Virtues.] It is an herb of the Sun, and under the Lion. Physicians say, male peony roots are best; but Dr. Reason told me male peony was best for men, and female peony for women, and he desires to be judged by his brother Dr. Experience. The roots are held to be of more virtue than the seed; next the flowers, and last of all, the leaves. The root of the male peony, fresh gathered, having been found by experience to cure the falling sickness; but the surest way is, besides hanging it about the neck, by which children have been cured, to take the root of the male peony washed clean, and stamped somewhat small, and laid to infuse in sack for 24 hours at the least, afterwards strain it, and take it first and last morning and evening, a good draught for sundry days together, before and after full moon, and this will also cure older persons, if the disease be not grown too old, and past cure, especially if there be a due and orderly preparation of the body with posset-drink made of betony, &c. The root is also effectual for women that are not sufficiently cleansed after child-birth, and such as are troubled with the mother; for which likewise the black seed beaten to powder, and given in wine, is also available. The black seed also taken before bed-time, and in the morning, is very effectual for such as in their sleep are troubled with the disease called ephialtes, or incubus, but we do commonly call it the night-mare; a disease which melancholy persons are subject unto: It is also good against melancholy dreams. The distilled water or syrup made of the flowers, worketh the same effects that the root and seed do, although more weakly. The female is often used for the purposes aforesaid, by reason the male is so scarce a plant, that it is possessed by few, and those great lovers of rarities in this kind.

PEPPERWORT, OR DITTANDER.

Descript.] OUR common pepperwort sendeth forth somewhat long and broad leaves, of a light bluish greenish colour, finely dented about the edges, and pointed at the ends, standing upon round hard stalks, three or four feet

high, spreading many branches on all sides, and having many small white flowers at the tops of them, after which follow small seeds in small heads. The root is slender, running much under ground, and shooting up again in many places, and both leaves and roots are very hot and sharp of taste, like pepper, for which cause it took the name.

Place.] It groweth naturally in many places of this land, as at Clare in Essex; also near unto Exeter in Devonshire; upon Rochester Common in Kent; in Lancashire, and divers other places; but usually kept in gardens.

Time.] It flowereth in the end of June, and in July.

Government and Virtues.] Here is another martial herb for you, make much of it. Pliny and Paulus Ægineta say, that pepperwort is very successful for the sciatica, or any other gout or pain in the joints, or any other invcterate grief: The leaves hereof to be bruised, and mixed with old hog's grease, and applied to the place, and to continue thereon four hours in men, and two hours in women, the place being afterwards bathed with wine and oil mixed together, and then wrapt up with wool or skins, after they have sweat a little. It also amendeth the deformities or discolourings of the skin, and helpeth to take away marks, scars, and scabs, or the foul marks of burning with fire or iron. The juice hereof is by some used to be given in ale to drink, to women with child, to procure them a speedy delivery in travail.

PERIWINKLE.

Descript.] THE common sort hereof hath many branches trailing or running upon the ground, shooting out small fibres at the joints as it runneth, taking thereby hold in the ground, and rooteth in divers places. At the joints of these branches stand two small, dark, green, shining leaves, somewhat like bay leaves, but smaller, and with them come forth also the flowers (one at a joint) standing upon a tender footstalk, being somewhat long and hollow, parted at the brims, sometimes into four, sometimes into five leaves: The most ordinary sorts are of a pale blue colour; some are pure white, and some of a dark reddish purple colour. The root is little bigger than a rush, bushing in the ground and creeping with his branches far about, whereby it quickly possesseth a great compass, and is therefore most usually planted under hedges where it may have room to run.

Place.] Those with the pale blue, and those with the white flowers, grow in woods and orchards, by the hedge-sides, in divers places of this land; but those with the purple flowers in gardens only.

. *Time.*] They flower in March and April.

Temperature and Virtues.] Venus owns this herb, and saith, That the leaves eaten by man and wife together, cause love between them. The Periwinkle is a great binder, stayeth bleeding both at mouth and nose, if some of the leaves be chewed. The French used it to stay women's courses. Dioscorides, Galen, and Ægineta, commend it against the lasks and fluxes of the belly to be drank in wine.

ST. PETER'S WORT.

IF superstition had not been the father of tradition, as well as ignorance the mother of devotion, this herb, (as well as St. John's Wort) had found some other name to be known by; but we may say of our forefathers, as St. Paul of the Athenians, *I perceive in many things you are too superstitious.* Yet seeing it is come to pass, That custom having got in possession, pleads prescription for the name, I shall let it pass, and come to the description of the herb, which take as followeth.

Descript.] It riseth up with square upright stalks for the most part, some greater and higher than St. John's Wort (and good reason too, St. Peter being the greater apostle (ask the pope else;) for though God would have the saints equal, the pope is of another opinion) but brown in the same manner, having two leaves at every joint, somewhat like, but larger than St. John's Wort, and a little rounder pointed, with few or no holes to be seen thereon, and having sometimes some smaller leaves rising from the bosom of the greater, and sometimes a little hairy also. At the tops of two stalks stand many star-like flowers, with yellow threads in the middle, very like those of St. John's Wort, insomuch that this is hardly discerned from it, but only by the largeness and height, the seed being alike also in both. The root abideth long, sending forth new shoots every year.

Place.] It groweth in many groves, and small low woods, in divers places of this land, as in Kent, Huntingdon, Cambridge and Northamptonshire; as also near water-courses in other places.

Time.] It flowereth in June and July, and the seed is ripe in August.

Government and Virtues.] There is not a straw to choose between this and St. John's Wort, only St. Peter must have it, lest he should want pot herbs: It is of the same property of St. John's Wort, but somewhat weak, and therefore more seldom used. Two drams of the seed taken at a time in honied water, purgeth choleric humours (as saith Dioscorides, Pliny, and Galen) and thereby helpeth those that are troubled with

the sciatica. The leaves are used as St. John's Wort, to heal those places of the body that have been burnt with fire.

PIMPERNEL.

Descript.] COMMON pimpernel hath divers weak square stalks lying on the ground, beset all with two small and almost round leaves at every joint, one against another, very like chickweed, but hath no footstalks; for the leaves as it were, compass the stalk. The flowers stand singly each by themselves at them and the stalk, consisting of five small round-pointed leaves, of a pale red colour, tending to an orange, with so many threads in the middle, in whose places succeed smooth round heads, wherein is contained small seed. The root is small and fibrous, perishing every year.

Place.] It groweth almost every where, as well in the meadows and corn-fields, as by the way-sides, and in gardens, arising of itself.

Time.] It flowereth from May until April, and the seed ripeneth in the mean time, and falleth.

Government and Virtues.] It is a gallant Solar herb, of a cleasing attractive quality, whereby it draweth forth thorns or splinters, or other such like things gotten into the flesh; and put up into the nostrils, purgeth the head: and Galen saith also, they have a drying faculty, whereby they are good to solder the lips of wounds, and to cleanse foul ulcers. The distilled water or juice is much esteemed by French dames to cleanse the skin from any roughness, deformity, or discolouring thereof; being boiled in wine and given to drink, it is a good remedy against the plague, and other pestilential fevers, if the party after taking it be warm in his bed, and sweat for two hours after, and use the same for twice at least. It helpeth also all stingings and bitings of venomous beasts, or mad dogs, being used inwardly, and applied outwardly. The same also openeth obstructions of the liver, and is very available against the infirmities of the reins: It provoketh urine, and helpeth to expel the stone and gravel out of the kidneys and bladder, and helpeth much in all inward pains and ulcers. The decoction, or distilled water, is no less effectual to be applied to all wounds that are fresh and green, or old, filthy, fretting, and running ulcers, which it effectually cureth in a short space. A little mixed with the juice, and dropped into the eyes, cleanseth them from cloudy mists, or thick films which grow over them, and hinder the sight. It helpeth the tooth-ache, being dropped into the ear on a contrary side of the pain.

It is also effectual to ease the pains of the hæmorrhoids or piles.

GROUND PINE, OR CHAMEPITYS.

Descript.] OUR common ground pine groweth low, seldom rising above an hand's breadth high, shooting forth divers small branches, set with slender, small, long, narrow, greyish, or whitish leaves, somewhat hairy, and divided into three parts, many bushing together at a joint, some growing scatteringly upon the stalks, smelling somewhat strong, like unto rosin: The flowers are small, and of a pale yellow colour, growing from the joint of the stalk all along among the leaves; after which come small and round husks. The root is small and woody, perishing every year.

Place.] It groweth more plentifully in Kent than any other county of this land; as, namely, in many places on this side Dartford, along to Southfleet, Chatham, and Rochester, and upon Chatham Down, hard by the Beacon, and half a mile from Rochester, in a field nigh a house called Selesys.

Time.] It flowereth and giveth seed in the summer months.

Government and Virtues.] Mars owns the herb. The decoction of ground pine drank, doth wonderfully prevail against the strangury, or any inward pains arising from the diseases of the reins and urine, and is special good for all obstructions of the liver and spleen, and gently openeth the body; for which purpose they were wont in former times to make pills with the powder thereof, and the pulp of figs. It marvellously helpeth all the diseases of the mother, inwardly or outwardly applied, procuring women's courses, and expelling the dead child and after-birth; yea, it is so powerful upon those feminine parts, that it is utterly forbidden for women with child, for it will cause abortion or delivery before the time. The decoction of the herb in wine taken inwardly, or applied outwardly, or both, for some time together, is also effectual in all pains and diseases of the joints, as gouts, cramps, palsies, sciatica, and aches; for which purpose the pills made with powder of ground pine, and of hermodactyls with Venice turpentine are very effectual. The pills also, continued for some time, are special good for those that have the dropsy, jaundice, and for griping pains of the joints, belly, or inward parts. It helpeth also all diseases of the brain, proceeding of cold and phlegmatic humours and distillations, as also for the falling sickness. It is a special remedy for the poison of the aconites, and other poisonful herbs, as also against the stinging of any venomous creature.

It is a good remedy for a cold cough, especially in the beginning. For all the purposes aforesaid, the herb being tunned up in new drink and drank, is almost as effectual, but far more acceptable to weak and dainty stomachs. The distilled water of the herb hath the same effects, but more weakly. The conserve of the flowers doth the like, which Matthiolus much commendeth against the palsy. The green herb, or the decoction thereof, being applied, dissolveth the hardness of women's breasts, and all other hard swellings in any other part of the body. The green herb also applied, or the juice thereof with some honey, not only cleanseth putrid, stinking, foul, and malignant ulcers and sores of all sorts, but healeth and soldereth up the lips of green wounds in any part also. Let women forbear, if they be with child, for it works violently upon the feminine part.

PLANTAIN.

THIS groweth usually in meadows and fields, and by path sides, and is so well known, that it needeth no description.

Time.] It is in its beauty about June, and the seed ripeneth shortly after.

Government and Virtues.] It is true, Mizaldus and others, yea, almost all astrology-physicians hold this to be an herb of Mars, because it cures the disease of the head and privities, which are under the houses of Mars, Aries, and Scorpio: The truth is, it is under the command of Venus, and cures the head by antipathy to Mars, and the privities by sympathy to Venus; neither is there hardly a martial disease but it cures.

The juice of plantain clarified and drank for divers days together either of itself, or in other drink, prevaileth wonderfully against all torments or excoriations in the guts or bowels, helpeth the distillations of rheum from the head, and stayeth all manner of fluxes, even women's courses, when they flow too abundantly. It is good to stay spitting of blood and other bleedings at the mouth, or the making of foul and bloody water, by reason of any ulcer in the reins or bladder, and also stayeth the too free bleeding of wounds. It is held an especial remedy for those that are troubled with the phthisic, or consumption of the lungs, or ulcers of the lungs, or coughs that come of heat. The decoction or powder of the roots or seeds, is much more binding for all the purposes aforesaid than the leaves. Dioscorides saith, that three roots boiled in wine and taken, helpeth the tertian ague, and for the quartan ague, (but letting the number pass as fabulous) I conceive the decoction of divers roots may be effectual. The herb (but especially the seed) is held to be

profitable against the dropsy, the falling-sickness, the yellow jaundice, and stoppings of the liver and reins. The roots of plantain, and pellitory of Spain, beaten into powder, and put into the hollow teeth, taketh away the pains of them. The clarified juice, or distilled water, dropped into the eyes, cooleth the inflammations in them, and taketh away the pin and web; and dropped into the ears, easeth the pains in them, and helpeth and removeth the heat. The same also, with the juice of house-leek, is profitable against all inflammations and breakings-out of the skin, and against burnings and scaldings by fire and water. The juice or decoction made either of itself, or other things of the like nature, is of much use and good effect for old and hollow ulcers that are hard to be cured, and for cankers and sores in the mouth, or privy parts of man or woman; and helpeth also the pains of the piles in the fundament. The juice mixed with oil of roses, and the temples and forehead anointed therewith, easeth the pains of the head proceeding from heat, and helpeth lunatic and frantic persons very much; as also the biting of serpents, or a mad dog. The same also is profitably applied to all hot gouts in the feet or hands, especially in the beginning. It is also good to be applied where any bone is out of joint, to hinder inflammations, swellings, and pains that presently rise thereupon. The powder of the dried leaves taken in drink, killeth worms of the belly; and boiled in wine, killeth worms that breed in old and foul ulcers. One part of plantain water, and two parts of the brine of powdered beef, boiled together and clarified, is a most sure remedy to heal all spreading scabs or itch in the head and body, all manner of tetters, ringworms, the shingles, and all other running and fretting sores. Briefly, the plantains are singularly good wound herbs to heal fresh or old wounds or sores, either inward or outward.

PLUMS

ARE so well known, that they need no description.

Government and Virtues.] All plums are under Venus, and are like women, some better, some worse. As there is great diversity of kinds, so there is in the operation of plums, for some that are sweet moisten the stomach, and make the belly soluble; those that are sour quench thirst more, and bind the belly; the moist and waterish do sooner corrupt in the stomach, but the firm do nourish more, and offend less. The dried fruit sold by the grocers under the name of damask prunes, do somewhat loosen the belly, and being stewed, are often used, both in health and sickness, to relish the mouth and stomach, to procure appetite, and a little to open the body, allay choler, and cool the stomach. Plum-tree leaves boiled in wine, are good

to wash and gargle the mouth and throat, to dry the flux of rheum coming to the palate, gums, or almonds of the ears. The gum of the tree is good to break the stone. The gum or leaves boiled in vinegar, and applied, kills tetters and ringworms. Matthiolus saith, the oil pressed out of the kernels of the stones, as oil of almonds is made, is good against the inflamed piles, the tumours or swellings of ulcers, hoarseness of the voice, roughness of the tongue and throat, and likewise the pains in the ears; and that five ounces of the said oil, taken with one ounce of muskadel, driveth forth the stone, and helpeth the cholic.

POLYPODY OF THE OAK.

Descript.] THIS is a small herb, consisting of nothing but roots and leaves, bearing neither stalk, flower, nor seed, as it is thought. It hath three or four leaves rising from the root, every one single by itself, of about a hand length, are winged, consisting of many small narrow leaves, cut into the middle rib, standing on each side of the stalk, large below, and smaller up to the top, not dented nor notched at the edges at all, as the male fern hath, of a sad green colour, and smooth on the upper side, but on the other side somewhat rough by reason of some yellowish spots set thereon. The root is smaller than one's little finger, lying aslope, or creeping along under the upper crust of the earth, brownish on the outside, and greenish within, of a sweetish harshness in taste, set with certain rough knags on each side thereof, having also much mossiness or yellow hairiness upon it, and some fibres underneath it, whereby it is nourished.

Place.] It groweth as well upon old rotten stumps, or trunks of trees, as oak, beech, hazel, willow, or any other, as in the woods under them, and upon old mud walls, as also in mossy, stony, and gravelly places near unto wood. That which groweth upon oak is accounted the best; but the quantity thereof is scarce sufficient for the common use.

Time.] It being always green, may be gathered for use at any time.

Government and Virtues.] And why, I pray, must polypodium of the oak only be used, gentle college of physicians? Can you give me but a glimpse of reason for it? It is only because it is dearest. Will you never leave off your coveteousness till your lives leave you? The truth is, that which grows upon the earth is best (it is an herb of Saturn, and he seldom climbs trees) to purge melancholy; if the humour be otherwise, choose you polypodium accordingly. Meuse (who is called the physician's Evangelist for the certainty of his medicines, and the truth of

his opinion) saith, that it drieth up thin humours, digesteth thick and tough, and purgeth burnt choler, and especially tough and thick phlegm, and thin phlegm also, even from the joints, and therefore good for those that are troubled with melancholy, or quartan agues, especially if it be taken in whey or honied water, or in barley-water, or the broth of a chicken with epithymum, or with beets and mallows. It is good for the hardness of the spleen, and for pricking or stitches in the sides, as also for the colic: Some use to put to it some fennel seeds, or annise seeds, or ginger, to correct that loathing it bringeth to the stomach, which is more than needeth, it being a safe and gentle medicine, fit for all persons, which daily experience confirmeth; and an ounce of it may be given at a time in a decoction, if there be not sena, or some other strong purger put with it A dram or two of the powder of the dried roots taken fasting in a cup of honied water, worketh gently, and for the purposes aforesaid. The distilled water, both of roots and leaves, is much commended for the quartan ague, to be taken for many days together, as also against melancholy, or fearful and troublesome sleeps or dreams; and with some sugar-candy dissolved therein, is good against the cough, shortness of breath, and wheezings, and those distillations of thin rheum upon the lungs, which cause pthisics, and oftentimes consumptions. The fresh roots beaten small, or the powder of the dried roots mixed with honey, and applied to the member that is out of joint, doth much help it; and applied also to the nose, cureth the disease called polypus, which is a piece of flesh growing therein, which in time stoppeth the passage of breath through that nostil; and it helpeth those clefts or chops that come between the fingers or toes.

THE POPLAR TREE.

THERE are two sorts of poplars, which are most familiar with us, viz. the black and white, both which I shall here describe unto you.

Descript.] The white polar groweth great, and reasonably high, covered with thick, smooth, white bark, especially the branches, having long leaves cut into several divisions almost like a vine leaf, but not of so deep a green on the upper side, and hoary white underneath, of a reasonable good scent, the whole form representing the form of coltsfoot. The catkins which it bringeth forth before the leaves, are long, and of a faint reddish colour, which fall away, bearing seldom good seed with them. The wood hereof is smooth, soft, and white, very finely waved, whereby it is much esteemed.

The black poplar groweth higher and straighter than the white,

with a greyish bark, bearing broad green leaves, somewhat like ivy leaves, not cut in on the edges like the white, but whole and dented, ending in a point, and not white underneath, hanging by slender long footstalks, which, with the air, are continually shaken like as the aspen leaves are. The catkins hereof are greater than those of the white, composed of many round green berries, as if they were set together in a long cluster, containing much downy matter, which being ripe, is blown away with the wind. The clammy buds hereof, before they spread into leaves, are gathered to make unguentum populneum, and are of a yellowish green colour, and somewhat small, sweet, but strong. The wood is smooth, tough, and white, and easy to be cloven: On both these trees groweth a sweet kind of musk, which in former times was used to put into sweet ointments.

Place.] They grow in moist woods, and by water-sides in sundry places of this land; yet the white is not so frequent as the other.

Time.] Their time is likewise expressed before: The catkins coming forth before the leaves in the end of summer.

Government and Virtues.] Saturn hath dominion over both. White poplar, saith Galen, is of a cleansing property: The weight of one ounce in powder of the bark thereof being drank, saith Dioscorides, is a remedy for those who are troubled with the sciatica, or the strangury. The juice of the leaves dropped warm into the ears, easeth the pains in them. The young clammy buds or eyes, before they break out into leaves, bruised, and a little honey put to them, is a good medicine for a dull sight. The black poplar is held to be more cooling than the white, and therefore the leaves bruised with vinegar and applied, help the gout. The seed drank in vinegar, is held good against the falling-sickness. The water that droppeth from the hollow places of this tree, taketh away warts, pushes, wheals, and other the like breakings-out of the body. The young black poplar buds, saith Matthiolus, are much used by women to beautify their hair, bruising them with fresh butter, straining them after they have been kept for some time in the Sun. The ointment called populneun, which is made of this poplar, is singularly good for all heat and inflammations in any part of the body, and tempereth the heat of wounds. It is much used to dry up the milk of women's breasts, when they have weaned their children.

POPPY.

OF this I shall describe three kinds, viz. the white and black of the garden, and the erratic wild poppy, or corn rose.

Descript.] The white poppy hath at first four or five whitish green leaves lying upon the ground, which rise with the stalk, compassing it at the bottom of them, and are very large, much cut or torn on the edges, and dented also besides: The stalk, which is usually four or five feet high, hath sometimes no branches at the top, and usually but two or three at most, bearing every one but one head wrapped up in a thin skin, which boweth down before it is ready to blow, and then rising, and being broken, the flower within it spreading itself open, and consisting of four very large, white round leaves, with many whitish round threads in the middle, set about a small, round, green head, having a crown, or star-like cover at the head thereof, which growing ripe, becomes as large as a great apple, wherein are contained a great number of small round seeds in several partitions or divisions next unto the shell, the middle thereof remaining hollow, and empty. The whole plant, both leaves, stalks and heads, while they are fresh, young, and green, yield a milk when they are broken, of an unpleasant bitter taste, almost ready to provoke casting, and of a strong heady smell, which being condensate, is called opium. The root is white and woody, perishing as soon as it hath given ripe seed.

The black poppy little differeth from the former, until it beareth its flower, which is somewhat less, and of a black purplish colour, but without any purple spots in the bottom of the leaf. The head of the seed is much less than the former, and openeth itself a little round about the top, under the crown, so that the seed, which is very black, will fall out, if one turn the head thereof downward.

The wild poppy, or corn rose, hath long and narrow leaves, very much cut in on the edges into many divisions, of a light green colour, sometimes hairy withal. The stalk is blackish and hairy also, but not so tall as the garden-kind, having some such like leaves thereon as grow below, parted into three or four branches sometimes, whereon grow small hairy heads bowing down before the skin break, wherein the flower is inclosed, which when it is full blown open, is of a fair yellowish red or crimson colour, and in some much paler, without any spot in the bottom of the leaves, having many black soft threads in the middle, compassing a small green head, which when it is ripe, is not bigger than one's little finger's end, wherein is contained much black seed, smaller by half than that of the garden. The root perisheth every year, and springeth again of its own sowing. Of this kind there is one lesser in all the parts thereof, and differeth in nothing else.

Place.] The garden kinds do not naturally grow wild in any place, but are all sown in gardens where they grow.

The wild poppy or corn rose, is plentiful enough, and many times too much in the corn fields of all counties through this land, and also upon ditch banks, and by hedge-sides. The smaller wild kind is also found in corn-fields, and also in some other places, but not so plentifully as the former.

Time.] The garden kinds are usually sown in the spring, which then flower about the end of May, and somewhat earlier, if they spring of their own sowing.

The wild kind flower usually from May until July, and the seed of them is ripe soon after the flowering.

Government and Virtues.] The herb is Lunar, and of the juice of it is made opium; only for lucre of money they cheat you, and tell you it is a kind of tear, or some such like thing, that drops from poppies when they weep, and that is somewhere beyond the seas, I know not where beyond the Moon. The garden poppy heads, with seeds, made into a syrup, is frequently, and to good effect used to procure rest, and sleep, in the sick and weak, and to stay catarrhs and defluctions of thin rheums from the head into the stomach and lungs, causing a continual cough, the fore-runner of a consumption; it helpeth also hoarseness of the throat, and when one hath lost his voice, which the oil of the seed doth likewise. The black seed boiled in wine, and drank, is said also to stay the flux of the belly, and women's courses. The empty shells, or poppy heads, are usually boiled in water, and given to procure rest and sleep: So doth the leaves in the same manner; as also if the head and temples be bathed with the decoction warm, or with the oil of poppies, the green leaves or heads bruised, and applied with a little vinegar, or made into a poultice with barley-meal or hog's grease, cooleth and tempereth all inflammations, as also the disease called St. Anthony's fire. It is generally used in treacle and mithridate, and in all other medicines that are made to procure rest and sleep, and to ease pains in the head as well as in other parts. It is also used to cool inflammations, agues, or frenzies, or to stay defluctions which cause a cough, or consumption, and also other fluxes of the belly, or women's courses; it is also put into hollow teeth, to ease the pain, and hath been found, by experience, to ease the pains of the gout.

The wild poppy, or corn rose (as Matthiolus saith) is good to prevent the falling-sickness. The syrup made with the flower, is with good effect given to those that have the pleurisy; and the dried flowers also, either boiled in water, or made into powder and drank, either in the distilled water of them, or some other drink, worketh the like effect. The distilled water of the flowers is held to be of much use against surfeits, being drank evening and morning: It is also more cooling than any of the

other poppies, and therefore cannot but be as effectual in hot agues, frenzies, and other inflammations either inward or outward. Galen saith, the seed is dangerous to be used inwardly.

PURSLANE.

GARDEN Purslane (being used as a salad herb) is so well known that it needeth no description; I shall therefore only speak of its virtues as followeth.

Government and Virtues.] 'Tis an herb of the Moon. It is good to cool any heat in the liver, blood, reins, and stomach, and in hot agues nothing better: It stayeth hot and choleric fluxes of the belly, women's courses, the whites, and gonorrhæa, or running of the reins, the distillation from the head, and pains therein proceeding from heat, want of sleep, or the frenzy. The seed is more effectual than the herb, and is of singular good use to cool the heat and sharpness of urine, and the outrageous lust of the body, venereous dreams, and the like: Insomuch that the over frequent use hereof extinguisheth the heat and virtue of natural procreation. The seed bruised and boiled in wine, and given to children, expelleth the worms. The juice of the herb is held as effectual to all the purposes aforesaid; as also to stay vomitings, and taken with some sugar or honey, helpeth an old and dry cough, shortness of breath, and the phthisic, and stayeth immoderate thirst. The distilled water of the herb is used by many (as the more pleasing) with a little sugar to work the same effects. The juice also is singular good in the inflammations and ulcers in the secret parts of man or woman, as also the bowels and hæmorrhoids, when they are ulcerous, or excoriations in them: The herb bruised and applied to the forehead and temples, allays excessive heat therein, that hinders rest and sleep; and applied to the eyes, taketh away the redness and inflammation in them, and those other parts where pushes, wheals, pimples, St. Anthony's fire and the like, break froth; if a little vinegar be put to it, and laid to the neck, with as much of galls and linseed together, it taketh away the pains therein, and the crick in the neck. The juice is used with oil of roses for the same causes, or for blasting by lightning, and burnings by gunpowder, or for women's sore breasts, and to allay the heat in all other sores or hurts; applied also to the navels of children that stick forth, it helpeth them; it is also good for sore mouths and gums that are swollen, and to fasten loose teeth. Camararius saith, that the distilled water used by some, took away the pain of their teeth, when all other remedies failed, and the thickened juice made into pills with the powder of gum tragacanth and arabic, being taken, prevaileth much to help those that make bloody water. Applied to the gout it easeth pains thereof, and

helpeth the hardness of the sinews, if it come not of the cramp, or a cold cause.

PRIMROSES.

THEY are so well known, that they need no description. Of the leaves of primroses is made as fine a salve to heal wounds as any that I know; you shall be taught to make salves of any herb at the latter end of the book: make this as you are taught there, and do not (you that have any ingenuity in you) see your poor neighbours go with wounded limbs when an halfpenny cost will heal them.

PRIVET.

Descript.] OUR common privet is carried up with many slender branches to a reasonable height and breadth, to cover arbours, bowers and banqueting houses, and brought, wrought, and cut into so many forms, of men, horses, birds, &c. which though at first supported, groweth afterwards strong of itself. It beareth long and narrow green leaves by the couples, and sweet smelling white flowers in tufts at the end of the branches, which turn into small black berries that have a purplish juice with them, and some seeds that are flat on the one side, with a hole or dent therein.

Place.] It groweth in this land, in divers woods.

Time.] Our privet flowereth in June and July, the berries are ripe in August and September.

Government and Virtues.] The Moon is lady of this. It is little used in physic with us in these times, more than in lotions, to wash sores and sore mouths, and to cool up inflammations, and dry up fluxes. Yet Matthiolus saith, it serveth to all the uses for the which cypress, or the east privet, is appointed by Dioscorides and Galen. He further saith, that the oil that is made of the flowers of privet infused therein, and set in the sun, is singular good for the inflammations of wounds and for the head-ach, coming of an hot cause. There is a sweet water also distilled from the flowers, that is good for all those diseases that need cooling and drying, and therefore helpeth all fluxes of the belly or stomach, bloody-fluxes, and women's courses, being either drank or applied; as all those that void blood at the mouth, or any other place, and for distillations of rheum in the eyes, especially if it be used with tutia.

QUEEN OF THE MEADOWS, MEADOW SWEET, OR MEAD SWEET.

Descript.] THE stalks of this are reddish, rising to be three feet high, sometimes four or five feet, having at the joints thereof large winged leaves, standing one above

another at distances, consisting of many and somewhat broad leaves, set on each side of a middle rib, being hard, rough, or rugged, crumpled much like unto elm leaves, having also some smaller leaves with them (as agrimony hath) somewhat deeply dented about the edges, of a sad green colour on the upper side, and greyish underneath, of a pretty sharp scent and taste, somewhat like unto the burnet, and a leaf hereof put into a cup of claret wine, giveth also a fine relish to it. At the tops of the stalks and branches stand many tufts of small white flowers thrust thick together, which smell much sweeter than the leaves; and in their places, being fallen, some crooked and cornered seed. The root is somewhat woody, and blackish on the outside, and brownish within, with divers great strings, and lesser fibres set thereat, of a strong scent, but nothing so pleasant as the flowers and leaves, and perisheth not, but abideth many years, shooting forth anew every spring.

Place.] It groweth in moist meadows that lie much wet, or near the courses of water.

Time.] It flowereth in some places or other all the three Summer months, that is, June, July, and August, and the seed is ripe soon after.

Government and Virtues.] Venus claims dominion over the herb. It is used to stay all manner of bleedings, fluxes, vomitings, and women's courses, as also their whites; It is said to alter and take away the fits of the quartan agues, and to make a merry heart, for which purpose some use the flowers, and some the leaves. It helpeth speedily those that are troubled with the cholic; being boiled in wine, and with a little honey taken warm, it openeth the belly, but boiled in red wine, and drank, it stayeth the flux of the belly. Outwardly applied, it helpeth old ulcers that are cancerous, or hollow and fistulous, for which it is by many much commended, as also for the sores in the mouth or secret parts. The leaves, when they are full grown, being laid on the skin, will in a short time, raise blisters thereon, as Tragus saith. The water thereof helpeth the heat and inflammation in the eyes.

THE QUINCE TREE.

Descript.] THE ordinary quince tree groweth often to the height and bigness of a reasonable apple tree, but more usually lower, and crooked, with a rough bark, spreading arms and branches far abroad. The leaves are somewhat like those of the apple tree, but thicker, broader, and full of veins, and whiter on the under side, not dented at all about the edges. The flowers are large and white, sometimes dashed over with a blush. The fruit that followeth is yellow, being near

ripe, and covered with a white freeze, or cotton; thick set on the younger, and growing less as they grow to be thorough ripe, bunched out oftentimes in some places, some being like an apple, and some a pear, of a strong heady scent, and not durable to keep, and is sour, harsh, and of an unpleasant taste to eat fresh; but being scalded, roasted, baked, or preserved, becometh more pleasant.

Place and Time.] It best likes to grow near ponds and water sides, and is frequent through this land: and flowereth not until the leaves be come forth. The fruit is ripe in September or October.

Government and Virtues.] Old Saturn owns the tree. Quinces when they are green, help all sorts of fluxes in men or women, and choleric lasks, casting, and whatever needeth astriction, more than any way prepared by fire; yet the syrup of the juice, or the conserve, are much conducible, much of the binding quality being consumed by the fire; if a little vinegar be added, it stirreth up the languishing appetite, and the stomach given to casting; some spices being added, comforteth and strengtheneth the decaying and fainting spirits, and helpeth the liver oppressed, that it cannot perfect the digestion, or correcteth choler and phlegm. If you would have them purging, put honey to them instead of sugar; and if more laxative, for choler, rhubarb; for phlegm, turbith; for watery humours, scammony; but if more forcibly to bind, use the unripe quinces, with roses and acacia, hypocistis, and some torrified rhubarb. To take the crude juice of quinces, is held a preservative against the force of deadly poison: for it hath been found most certainly true, that the very smell of a quince hath taken away all the strength of the poison of white hellebore. If there be need of any outwardly binding and cooling of hot fluxes, the oil of quinces, or other medicines that may be made thereof, are very available to anoint the belly or other parts therewith; it likewise strengtheneth the stomach and belly, and the sinews that are loosened by sharp humours falling on them, and restraineth immoderate sweatings. The mucilage taken from the seeds of quinces, and boiled in a little water, is very good to cool the heat and heal the sore breasts of women. The same with a little sugar, is good to lenify the harshness and hoarseness of the throat, and roughness of the tongue. The cotton or down of quinces boiled and applied to plague sores, healeth them up: and laid as a plaister, made up with wax, it bringeth hair to them that are bald, and keepeth it from falling, if it be ready to shed.

RADISH, OR HORSE-RADISH.

THE garden-radish is so well known, that it needeth no description.

Descript.] The horse-radish hath its first leaves that rise before winter about a foot and a half long, very much cut in or torn on the edges into many parts, of a dark green colour, with a great rib in the middle; after these have been up a while, others follow, which are greater, rougher, broader and longer, whole and not divided at first, but only somewhat rougher dented about the edges; the stalks when it beareth flowers (which is seldom) is great, rising up with some few lesser leaves thereon, to three or four feet high, spreading at the top many small branches of whitish flowers, made of four leaves a-piece; after which come small pods, like those of shepherd's purse, but seldom with any seed in them. The root is great, long, white and rugged, shooting up divers heads of leaves, which may be parted for increase, but it doth not creep in the ground, nor run above ground, and is of a strong, sharp and bitter taste almost like mustard.

Place.] It is found wild in some places, but is chiefly planted in gardens, and joyeth in moist and shadowy places.

Time.] It seldom flowereth, but when it doth, it is in July.

Government and Virtues.] They are both under Mars. The juice of horse-radish given to drink, is held to be very effectual for the scurvy. It killeth the worms in children, being drank, and also laid upon the belly. The root bruised and laid to the place grieved with the sciatica, joint-ach, or the hard swellings of the liver and spleen, doth wonderfully help them all. The distilled water of the herb and root is more familiar to be taken with a little sugar for all the purposes aforesaid.

Garden radishes are in wantonness by the gentry eaten as a salad, but they breed but scurvy humours in the stomach, and corrupt the blood, and then send for a physician as fast as you can; this is one cause which makes the owners of such nice palates so unhealthful; yet for such as are troubled with the gravel, stone, or stoppage of urine, they are good physic, if the body be strong that takes them; you may make the juice of the roots into a syrup if you please, for that use: They purge by urine exceedingly.

RAGWORT.

IT is also St. James's-wort, and stagger-wort, and stammer-wort, and segrum.

Descript.] The greater common ragwort hath many large

and long, dark green leaves lying on the ground, very much rent and torn on the sides in many places; from among which rise up sometimes but one, and sometimes two or three square or crested blackish or brownish stalks, three or four feet high, sometimes branched, bearing divers such-like leaves upon them, at several distances unto the top, where it branches forth into many stalks bearing yellow flowers, consisting of divers leaves, set as a pale or border, with a dark yellow thrum in the middle, which do abide a great while, but at last are turned into down, and with the small blackish grey seed, are carried away with the wind. The root is made of many fibres, whereby it is firmly fastened into the ground, and abideth many years.

There is another sort thereof different from the former only in this, that it riseth not so high; the leaves are not so finely jagged, nor of so dark a green colour, but rather somewhat whitish, soft and woolly, and the flowers usually paler.

Place.] They grow both of them wild in pastures, and untilled grounds in many places, and oftentimes both in one field.

Time.] They flower in June and July, and the seed is ripe in August.

Government and Virtues.] Ragwort is under the command of dame Venus, and cleanseth, digesteth, and discusseth. The decoction of the herb is good to wash the mouth or throat that hath ulcers or sores therein; and for swellings, hardness, or imposthumations, for it thoroughly cleanseth and healeth them; as also the quinsy, and the king's evil. It helpeth to stay catarrhs, thin rheums, and defluctions from the head into the eyes, nose, or lungs. The juice is found, by experience, to be singularly good to heal green wounds, and to cleanse and heal all old and filthy ulcers in the privities, and in other parts of the body, as also inward wounds and ulcers; stayeth the malignity of fretting and running cankers, and hollow fistulas, not suffering them to spread farther. It is also much commended to help aches and pains either in the fleshy part, or in the nerves and sinews, as also the sciatica, or pain of the hips or huckle-bone, to bathe the places with the decoction of the herb, or to anoint them with an ointment made of the herb, bruised and boiled in old hog's suet, with some mastick and olibanum in powder added unto it after it is strained forth. In Sussex we call it ragweed.

RATTLE GRASS.

OF this there are two kinds which I shall speak of, viz. the red and yellow.

Descript.] The common red rattle hath sundry reddish, hol-

low stalks, and sometimes green, rising from the root, lying for the most part on the ground, some growing more upright, with many small reddish or green leaves set on both sides of a middle rib, finely dented about the edges: The flowers stand at the tops of the stalks and branches, of a fine purplish red colour, like small gaping hooks; after which come blackish seed in small husks, which lying loose therein, will rattle with shaking. The root consists of two or three small whitish strings, with some fibres thereat.

The common yellow rattle hath seldom above one round great stalk, rising from the foot, about half a yard, or two feet high, and but few branches thereon, having two long and somewhat broad leaves set at a joint, deeply cut in on the edges, resembling the comb of a cock, broadest next to the stalk, and smaller to the end. The flowers grow at the tops of the stalks, with some shorter leaves with them, hooded after the same manner that the others are, but of a fair yellow colour, or in some paler, and in some more white. The seed is contained in large husks, and being ripe, will rattle or make a noise with lying loose in them. The root is small and slender, perishing every year.

Place.] They grow in meadows and woods generally through this land.

Time.] They are in flower from Midsummer until August be past, sometimes.

Government and Virtues.] They are both of them under the dominion of the Moon. The red rattle is accounted profitable to heal up fistulas and hollow ulcers, and to stay the flux of humours in them, as also the abundance of women's courses, or any other flux of blood, being boiled in red wine, and drank.

The yellow rattle, or cock's comb, is held to be good for those that are troubled with a cough, or dimness of sight, if the herb, being boiled with beans, and some honey put thereto, be drank or dropped into the eyes. The whole seed being put into the eyes, draweth forth any skin, dimness or film, from the sight, without trouble or pain.

REST HARROW, OR CAMMOCK.

Descript.] COMMON rest harrow riseth up with divers rough woody twigs, half a yard or a yard high, set at the joints without order, with little roundish leaves, sometimes more than two or three at a place, of a dark green colour, without thorns while they are young; but afterwards armed in sundry places, with short and sharp thorns. The flowers come forth at the tops of the twigs and branches,

whereof it is full fashioned like pease or broom blossoms, but lesser, flatter, and somewhat closer, of a faint purplish colour; after which come small pods containing small, flat, round seed: The root is blackish on the outside, and whitish within, very rough, and hard to break when it is fresh and green, and as hard as an horn when it is dried, thrusting down deep into the ground, and spreading likewise, every piece being apt to grow again if it be left in the ground.

Place.] It groweth in many places of this land, as well in the arable as waste ground.

Time.] It flowereth about the beginning or middle of July, and the seed is ripe in August.

Government and Virtues.] It is under the dominion of Mars. It is singularly good to provoke urine when it is stopped, and to break and drive forth the stone, which the powder of the bark of the root taken in wine performeth effectually. Matthiolus saith, the same helpeth the disease called *hernia carnosa*, the fleshy rupture, by taking the said powder for some months together constantly, and that it hath cured some, which seemed incurable by any other means than by cutting or burning. The decoction thereof made with some vinegar, gargled in the mouth, easeth the tooth-ach, especially when it comes of rheum; and the said decoction is very powerful to open obstructions of the liver and spleen, and other parts. A distilled water in *Balneo Mariæ*, with four pounds of the root hereof first sliced small, and afterwards steeped in a gallon of Canary wine, is singularly good for all the purposes aforesaid, and to cleanse the passages of the urine. The powder of the said root made into an electuary, or lozenges, with sugar, as also the bark of the fresh roots boiled tender, and afterwards beaten to a conserve with sugar, worketh the like effect. The powder of the roots strewed upon the brims of ulcers, or mixed with any other convenient thing, and applied, consumeth the hardness, and causeth them to heal the better.

ROCKET.

IN regard the garden rocket is rather used as a salad herb, than for any physical purposes, I shall omit it, and only speak of the common wild rocket. The description whereof take as followeth:

Descript.] The common wild rocket hath longer and narrower leaves, much more divided into slender cuts, and jags on both sides the middle rib than the garden kinds have, of a sad green colour, from among which rise up divers stalks two or three feet high, sometimes set with the like leaves, but smaller and smaller upwards, branched from the middle into divers stiff

stalks, bearing sundry yellow flowers on them, made of four leaves a-piece, as the others are, which afterwards yield them small reddish seed, in small long pods, of a more bitter and hot biting taste than the garden kinds, as the leaves are also.

Place.] It is found wild in divers places of this land.

Time.] It flowereth about June or July, and the seed is ripe in August.

Government and Virtues.] The wild rockets are forbidden to be used alone, in regard their sharpness fumeth into the head, causing aches and pains therein, and are less hurtful to hot and choleric persons, for fear of inflaming their blood, and therefore for such we may say a little doth but a little harm, for angry Mars rules them, and he sometimes will be rusty when he meets with fools. The wild rocket is more strong and effectual to increase sperm and venomous qualities, whereunto all the seed is more effectual than the garden kind. It serveth also to help digestion, and provoketh urine exceedingly. The seed is used to cure the biting of serpents, the scorpion, and the shrew mouse, and other poisons, and expelleth worms, and other noisome creatures that breed in the belly. The herb boiled or strewed, and some sugar put thereto, helpeth the cough in children, being taken often. The seed also taken in drink, taketh away the ill scent of the arm-pits, increaseth milk in nurses, and wasteth the spleen. The seed mixed with honey, and used on the face, cleanseth the skin from morphew, and used with vinegar, taketh away freckles and redness in the face, or other parts; and with the gall of an ox, it mendeth foul scars, black and blue spots, and the marks of the small-pox.

WINTER-ROCKET, OR CRESSES.

Descript.] WINTER-rocket, or winter-cresses, hath divers somewhat large sad green leaves lying upon the ground, torn or cut in divers parts, somewhat like unto rocket or turnip-leaves, with smaller pieces next the bottom, and broad at the ends, which so abide all the winter (if it spring up in autumn, when it is used to be eaten) from among which rise up divers small round stalks, full of branches, bearing many small yellow flowers of four leaves a-piece, after which come small pods, with reddish seed in them. The root is stringy, and perish every year after the seed is ripe.

Place.] It groweth of its own accord in gardens and fields, by the way-sides, in divers places, and particularly in the next pasture to the conduit-head behind Gray's Inn, that brings water to Mr. Lamb's conduit in Holborn.

Time.] It flowereth in May, seedeth in June, and then perisheth.

Government and Virtues.] This is profitable to provoke urine, to help strangury, and expel gravel and the stone: It is good for the scurvy, and found, by experience, to be a singularly good wound herb to cleanse inward wounds; the juice or decoction being drank, or outwardly applied to wash foul ulcers and sores, cleansing them by sharpness, and hindering or abating the dead flesh from growing therein, and healing them by the dying quality.

ROSES.

I HOLD it altogether needless to trouble the reader with a description of any of these, since both the garden roses, and the roses of the briars are well enough known: take therefore the virtue of them as followeth; and first I shall begin with the garden kinds.

Government and Virtues.] What a pother have authors made with roses! What a racket have they kept! I shall add, red roses are under Jupiter, damask under Venus, white under the Moon, and Provence under the king of France. The white and red roses are cooling and drying, and yet the white is taken to exceed the red in both the properties, but is seldom used inwardly in any medicine: The bitterness in the roses when they are fresh, especially the juice, purgeth choler, and watery humours; but being dried, and that heat which caused the bitterness being consumed, they have then a binding and astringent quality: Those also that are not full blown, do both cool and bind more than those that are full blown, and the white rose more than red. The decoction of red roses made with wine and used, is very good for the head-ach, and pains in the eyes, ears, throat and gums; as also for the fundament, the lower parts of the belly and the matrix, being bathed or put into them. The same decoction with the roses remaining in it, is profitably applied to the region of the heart to ease the inflammation therein; as also St. Anthony's fire, and other diseases of the stomach. Being dried and beaten to powder, and taken in steeled wine or water, it helpeth to stay women's courses. The yellow threads in the middle of the roses (which are erroneously called the rose seed) being powdered and drank in the distilled water of quinces, stayeth the overflowing of women's courses, and doth wonderfully stay the defluxions of rheum upon the gums and teeth, preserving them from corruption, and fastening them if they be loose, being washed and gargled therewith, and some vinegar of squills added thereto. The heads with the seeds being used in powder, or in a decoction, stayeth the lask and spitting of blood. Red roses do strengthen the heart, the stomach and the liver, and the retentive faculty: They mitigate the pains that

arise from heat, assuage inflammations, procure rest and sleep, stay both whites and reds in women; the gonorrhea, or running of the reins, and fluxes of the belly; the juice of them doth purge and cleanse the body from choler and phlegm. The husks of the roses, with the beards and nails of the roses, are binding and cooling and the distilled water of either of them is good for the heat and redness in the eyes, and to stay and dry up the rheums and watering of them. Of the red roses are usually made many compositions, all serving to sundry good uses, viz. Electuary of roses, conserve, both moist and dry, which is more usually called sugar of roses, syrup of dry roses, and honey of roses; the cordial powder called *diarrhoden abbatis* and *aromatica rosarum*. The distilled water of roses, vinegar of roses, ointment, and oil of roses, and the rose leaves dried, are of very great use and effect. To write at large of every one of these, would make my book swell too big, it being sufficient for a volume of itself, to speak fully of them. But briefly, the electuary is purging, whereof two or three drams taken by itself in some convenient liquor, is a purge sufficient for a weak constitution, but may be increased to six drams, according to the strength of the patient. It purgeth choler without trouble, and it is good in hot fevers, and pains of the head arising from hot choleric humours, and heat in the eyes, the jaundice also, and joint-achs proceeding of hot humours. The moist conserve is of much use, both binding and cordial; for until it be about two years old, it is more binding than cordial, and after that, more cordial than binding. Some of the younger conserve taken with mithridate mixed together, is good for those that are troubled with distillations of rheum from the brain to the nose, and defluction of rheum into the eyes; as also for fluxes and lasks of the belly; and being mixed with the powder of mastic, is very good for the running of the reins, and for the looseness of humours in the belly. The old conserve mixed with arimaticum rosarum, is a very good cordial against faintings, swoonings, weakness and tremblings of the heart, strengthens both it and a weak stomach, helpeth digestion, stayeth casting, and is a very good preservative in the time of infection. The dry conserve, which is called the sugar of roses, is a very good cordial to strengthen the heart and spirits; as also to stay defluctions. The syrup of dried red roses strengthens a stomach given to casting, cooleth an over-heated liver, and the blood in agues, comforteth the heart, and resisteth putrefaction and infection, and helpeth to stay lasks and fluxes. Honey of roses is much used in gargles and lotions to wash sores, either in the mouth, throat, or other parts, both to cleanse and heal them, and to stay the fluxes of humours falling upon them. It is also used in clysters both to cool and cleanse. The cordial powders, called diarrhoden abbatis and aromatic rosarum, do comfort and

strengthen the heart and stomach, procure an appetite, help digestion, stay vomiting, and are very good for those that have slippery bowels, to strengthen them, and to dry up their moistures; red rose-water is very well known, and of a familiar use on all occasions, and better than damask rose-water, being cooling and cordial, refreshing, quickening the weak and faint spirits, used either in meats or broths, to wash the temples, to smell at the nose, or to smell the sweet vapours thereof out of a perfuming pot, or cast into a hot fire shovel. It is also of much good use against the redness and inflammations of the eyes to bathe them therewith, and the temples or the head; as also against pain and ache, for which purpose also vinegar of roses is of much good use, and to procure rest and sleep, if some thereof, and rose water together, be used to smell unto, or the nose and temples moistened therewith, but more usually to moisten a piece of a red rose-cake, cut for the purpose, and heated between a double folded cloth, with a little beaten nutmeg, and poppy-seed strewed on the side that must lie next to the forehead and temples, and bound to thereto all night. The ointment of roses is much used against heat and inflammations in the head, to anoint the forehead and temples, and being mixt with *unguentum popul-neum*, to procure rest; it is also used for the heat of the liver, the back and reins, and to cool and heal pushes, wheals, and other red pimples rising in the face or other parts. Oil of roses is not only used by itself to cool any hot swellings or inflammations, and to bind and stay fluxes of humours unto sores, but is also put into ointments and plaisters that are cooling and binding, and restraining the flux of humours. The dried leaves of the red roses are used both inwardly and outwardly, both cooling, binding, and cordial, for with them are made both *aromaticum rosarum*, *diarrhoden abbatis*, and *saccharum rosarum*, each of whose properties are before declared. Rose leaves and mint, heated and applied outwardly to the stomach, stay castings, and very much strengthen a weak stomach: and applied as a fomentation to the region of the liver and heart, do much cool and temper them, and also serve instead of a rose cake (as is said before) to quiet the over-hot spirits, and cause rest and sleep. The syrup of damask roses is both simple and compound, and made with agaric. The simple solutive syrup is a familiar, safe, gentle and easy medicine, purging choler, taken from one ounce to three or four, yet this is remarkable herein, that the distilled water of this syrup should notably bind the belly. The syrup, with agaric, is more strong and effectual, for one ounce thereof by itself will open the body more than the other, and worketh as much on phlegm as choler. The compound syrup is more forcible in working on melancholic humours; and available against the leprosy, itch, tetters, &c. and

the French disease: Also honey of roses solutive is made of the same infusions that the syrup is made of, and therefore worketh the same effect, both opening and purging, but is oftener given to phlegmatic than choleric persons, and is more used in clysters than in potions, as the syrup made with sugar is. The conserve and preserved leaves of those roses are also operative in gently opening the belly.

The simple water of the damask roses is chiefly used for fumes to sweeten things, as the dried leaves thereof to make sweet powders, and fill sweet bags; and little use they are put to in physic, although they have some purging quality; the wild roses also are few or none of them used in physic, but are generally held to come near the nature of the manured roses. The fruit of the wild briar, which are called heps, being thoroughly ripe, and made into a conserve with sugar, besides the pleasantness of the taste, doth gently bind the belly, and stay defluxions from the head upon the stomach, drying up the moisture thereof and helping digestion. The pulp of the heps dried into a hard consistence, like to the juice of liquorice, or so dried that it may be made into powder and taken in drink, stayeth speedily the whites in women. The briar ball is often used, being made into powder and drank, to break the stone, to provoke urine when it is stopped, and to ease and help the cholic; some appoint it to be burnt, and then taken for the same purpose. In the middle of the balls are often found certain white worms, which being dried and made into powder, and some of it drank, is found by experience of many to kill and drive forth the worms of the belly.

ROSA SOLIS, OR SUN DEW.

Descript.] IT hath divers small, round, hollow leaves somewhat greenish, but full of certain red hairs, which make them seem red, every one standing upon his own foot-stalk, reddish, hairy likewise. The leaves are continually moist in the hottest day, yea, the hotter the sun shines on them, the moister they are, with a sliminess that will rope (as we say) the small hairs always holding this moisture. Among these leaves rise up slender stalks, reddish also, three or four fingers high, bearing divers small white knobs one above another, which are flowers; after which in the heads are contained small seeds. The root is a few small hairs.

Place.] It groweth usually in bogs and wet places, and sometimes in moist woods.

Time.] It flowereth in June, and then the leaves are fittest to be gathered.

Government and Virtues.] The Sun rules it, and it is under

the sign Cancer. Roso Solis is accounted good to help those that have a salt rheum distilling on the lungs, which breedeth a consumption, and therefore the distilled water thereof in wine is held fit and profitable for such to drink, which water will be of a good yellow colour. The same water is held to be good for all other diseases of the lungs, as phthisics, wheezings, shortness of breath, or the cough; as also to heal the ulcers that happen in the lungs; and it comforteth the heart and fainting spirits. The leaves outwardly applied to the skin, will raise blisters, which has caused some to think it dangerous to be taken inwardly; but there are other things which will also draw blisters, yet nothing dangerous to be taken inwardly. There is an usual drink made thereof with aqua vitæ and spices frequently, and without any offence or danger, but to good purpose used in qualms and passions of the heart.

ROSEMARY.

OUR garden rosemary is so well known, that I need not describe it.

Time.] It flowereth in April and May with us, sometimes again in August.

Government and Virtues.] The sun claims privilege in it, and it is under the celestial Ram. It is an herb of as great use with us in these days as any whatsoever, not only for physical but civil purposes. The physical use of it (being my present task) is very much both for inward and outward diseases, for by the warming and comforting heat thereof it helpeth all cold diseases, both of the head, stomach, liver, and belly. The decoction thereof in wine, helpeth the cold distillations of rheums into the eyes, and all other cold diseases of the head and brain, as the giddiness or swimmings therein, drowsiness or dulness of the mind and senses like a stupidness, the dumb palsy, or loss of speech, the lethargy, and falling-sickness, to be both drank, and the temples bathed therewith. It helpeth the pains in the gums and teeth, by rheum falling into them, not by putrefaction, causing an evil smell from them, or a stinking breath. It helpeth a weak memory, and quickeneth the senses. It is very comfortable to the stomach in all the cold griefs thereof, helpeth both retention of meat, and digestion, the decoction or powder being taken in wine. It is a remedy for the windiness in the stomach, bowels, and spleen, and expels it powerfully. It helpeth those that are liver-grown, by opening the obstructions thereof. It helpeth dim eyes, and procureth a clear sight, the flowers thereof being taken all the while it is flowering, every morning fasting, with bread and salt. Both Dioscorides and Galen say, That if a decoction be made thereof with water, and

they that have the yellow jaundice exercise their bodies presently after the taking thereof, it will certainly cure them. The flowers, and conserve made of them, are singularly good to comfort the heart, and to expel the contagion of the pestilence; to burn the herb in houses and chambers, correcteth the air in them. Both the flower and leaves are very profitable for women that are troubled with the whites, if they be daily taken. The dried leaves shred small, and taken in a pipe, as tobacco is taken, helpeth those that have any cough, phthisic, or consumption, by warming and drying the thin distillations which cause those diseases. The leaves are very much used in bathings; and made into ointments or oil, are singularly good to help cold benumbed joints, sinews, or members. The chymical oil drawn from the leaves and flowers, is a sovereign help for all the diseases aforesaid, to touch the temples and nostrils with two or three drops for all the diseases of the head and brain spoken of before; as also to take one drop, two, or three, as the case requireth, for the inward griefs: Yet must it be done with discretion, for it is very quick and piercing, and therefore but a very little must be taken at a time. There is also another oil made by insolation in this manner: Take what quantity you will of the flowers, and put them into a strong glass close stopped, tie a fine linen cloth over the mouth, and turn the mouth down into another strong glass, which being set in the sun, an oil will distil down into the lower glass, to be preserved as precious for divers uses, both inward and outward, as a sovereign balm to heal the diseases before-mentioned, to clear dim sights, and take away spots, marks, and scars in the skin.

RHUBARB, OR RAPHONTIC.

DO not start, and say, this grows you know not how far off; and then ask me, how it comes to pass that I bring it among our English simples? For though the name may speak it foreign, yet it grows with us in England, and that frequent enough in our gardens; and when you have thoroughly pursued its virtues, you will conclude it nothing inferior to that which is brought out of China, and by that time this hath been as much used as that hath been, the name which the other hath gotten will be eclipsed by the fame of this; take therefore a description at large of it as followeth:

Descript.] At the first appearing out of the ground, when the winter is past, it hath a great round brownish head, rising from the middle or sides of the root, which openeth itself into sundry leaves one after another, very much crumpled or folded together at the first, and brownish; but afterwards it spreadeth itself, and becometh smooth, very large and almost round, every

one standing on a brownish stalk of the thickness of a man's thumb, when they are grown to their fullness, and most of them two feet and more in length, especially when they grow in any moist or good ground; and the stalk of the leaf, from the bottom thereof to the leaf itself, being also two feet, the breadth thereof from edge to edge, in the broadest place, being also two feet, of a sad or dark green colour, of a fine tart or sourish taste, much more pleasant than the garden or wood sorrel. From among these riseth up some, but not every year, strong thick stalks, not growing so high as the patience, or garden dock, with such round leaves as grow below, but smaller at every joint up to the top, and among the flowers, which are white, spreading forth into many branches, consisting of five or six small leaves a-piece, hardly to be discerned from the white threads in the middle, and seeming to be all threads, after which come brownish three square seeds, like unto other docks, but larger, whereby it may be plainly known to be a dock. The root grows in time to be very great, with divers and sundry great spreading branches from it, of a dark brownish or reddish colour on the outside, with a pale yellow skin under it, which covereth the inner substance or root, which rind and skin being pared away, the root appears of so fresh and lively a colour, with fresh coloured veins running through it, that the choicest of that rhubarb that is brought us from beyond the seas cannot excel it, which root, if it be dried carefully, and as it ought (which must be in our country by the gentle heat of a fire, in regard the sun is not hot enough here to do it, and every piece kept from touching one another) will hold its colour almost as well as when it is fresh, and hath been approved of, and commended by those who have oftentimes used them.

Place.] It groweth in gardens, and flowereth about the beginning or middle of June, and the seed is ripe in July.

Time.] The roots that are to be dried and kept all the year following, are not to be taken up before the stalk, and leaves be quite withered and gone, and that is not until the middle or end of October, and if they be taken a little before the leaves do spring, or when they are sprung up, the roots will not have half so good a colour in them.

I have given the precedence unto this, because in virtues also it hath the pre-eminence, I come now to describe unto you that which is called patience, or monk's rhubarb; and next unto that, the great round leaved dock, or bastard rhubarb, for the one of these may haply supply in the absence of the other, being not much unlike in their virtues, only one more powerful and efficacious than the other. And lastly, shall shew you the virtues of all the three sorts.

GARDEN-PATIENCE, OR MONK'S RHUBARB.

Descript.] THIS is a dock bearing the name of rhubarb for some purging quality therein, and groweth up with large tall stalks, set with somewhat broad and long fair green leaves, not dented at all. The tops of the stalks being divided into many small branches, bear reddish or purplish flowers, and three-square seed, like unto other docks. The root is long, great and yellow, like unto the wild docks, but a little redder; and if it be a little dried, sheweth less store of discoloured veins than the next doth when it is dry.

GREAT ROUND-LEAVED DOCK, OR BASTARD RHUBARB.

Descript.] THIS hath divers large, round, thin, yellowish green leaves rising from the root, a little waved about the edges, every one standing upon a reasonable thick and long brownish foot stalk, from among which riseth up a pretty big stalk, about two feet high, with some such like leaves growing thereon, but smaller: at the top whereof stand in a long spike many small brownish flowers, which turn into a hard three-square shining brown seed, like the garden patience before described. The root groweth greater than that, with many branches of great fibres thereat, yellow on the outside, and somewhat pale; yellow within, with some discoloured veins like to the rhubarb which is first described, but much less than it, especially when it is dry.

Place and Time.] These also grow in gardens, and flower and seed at or near the same time that our true rhubarb doth, viz. they flower in June, and the seed is ripe in July.

Temperature and Virtues.] Mars claims predominancy over all these wholesome herbs: You cry out upon him for an unfortunate, when God created him for your good (only he is angry with fools.) What dishonour is this, not to Mars, but to God himself? A dram of the dried root of monk's rhubarb, with a scruple of ginger made into powder, and taken fasting in a draught or mess of warm broth, purgeth choler and phlegm downwards very gently and safely, without danger. The seed thereof contray doth bind the belly, and helpeth to stay any sort of lasks or bloody-flux. The distilled water thereof is very profitably used to heal scabs; also foul ulcerous sores, and to lay the inflammation of them; the juice of the leaves or roots or the decoction of them in vinegar, is used as a most effectual remedy to heal scabs and running sores.

The bastard rhubarb hath all the properties of the monk's rhubarb, but more effectual for both inward and outward diseases. The decoction thereof without vinegar dropped into the ears, taketh away the pains; gargled in the mouth, taketh away the tooth-ach: and being drank, healeth the jaundice. The seed thereof taken, easeth the gnawing and griping pains of the stomach, and taketh away the loathing thereof unto meat. The root thereof helpeth the ruggedness of the nails, and being boiled in wine helpeth the swelling of the throat, commonly called the king's evil, as also the swellings of the kernels of the ears. It helpeth them that are troubled with the stone, provoketh urine, and helpeth the dimness of the sight. The roots of this bastard rhubarb are used in opening and purging diet-drinks, with other things, to open the liver, and to cleanse and cool the blood.

The properties of that which is called the English rhubarb, are the same with the former, but much more effectual, and hath all the properties of the true Italian rhubarbs except the force in purging, wherein it is but of half the strength thereof, and therefore a double quantity must be used; it likewise hath not that bitterness and astriction; in other things it worketh almost in an equal quantity which are these: It purgeth the body of choler and phlegm, being either taken of itself, made into powder, and drank in a draught of white wine, or steeped therein all night, and taken fasting, or put among other purges, as shall be thought convenient, cleansing the stomach, liver, and blood, opening obstructions, and helping those griefs that come thereof, as the jaundice, dropsy, swelling of the spleen, tertian and daily agues, and pricking pains of the sides; and also it stayeth spitting of blood. The powder taken with cassia dissolved, and washed Venice turpentine, cleanseth the reins, and strengthens them afterwards, and is very effectual to stay the running of the reins, or gonorrhea. It is also given for the pains and swellings in the head, for those that are troubled with melancholy, and helpeth the sciatia, gout, and the cramp. The powder of the rhubarb taken with a little mummia and madder roots in some red wine, dissolveth clotted blood in the body, happening by any fall or bruise, and helpeth burstings and broken parts, as well inward as outward. The oil likewise wherein it hath been boiled, worketh the like effects, being anointed. It is used to heal those ulcers that happen in the eyes or eyelids, being steeped and strained; as also to assuage the swellings and inflammations; and applied with honey, boiled in wine, it taketh away all blue spots or marks that happen therein. Whey or white wine are the best liquors to steep it in, and thereby it worketh more effectually in opening obstructions, and purging

the stomach and liver. Many do use a little Indian spikenard as the best corrector thereof.

MEADOW-RUE.

Descript.] MEADOW-Rue riseth up with a yellow stringy root, much spreading in the ground, shooting forth new sprouts round about, with many herby green stalks, two feet high, crested all the length of them, set with joints here and there, and many large leaves on them, above as well as below, being divided into smaller leaves, nicked or dented in the fore-part of them, of a red green colour on the upper side, and pale green underneath: Toward the top of the stalk there shooteth forth divers short branches, on every one whereof stand two, three or four small heads, or buttons, which breaking the skin that incloseth them, shooteth forth a tuft of pale greenish yellow threads, which falling away, there come in their places small three cornered cods, wherein is contained small, long and round seed. The whole plant hath a strong unpleasant scent.

Place.] It groweth in many places of this land, in the borders of moist meadows, and ditch-sides.

Time.] It flowereth about July, or the beginning of August,

Government and Virtues.] Dioscorides saith, that this herb bruised and applied, perfectly healeth old sores, and the distilled water of the herb and flowers doth the like. It is used by some among other pot-herbs to open the body, and make it soluble; but the roots washed clean, and boiled in ale and drank, provoke to stool more than the leaves, but yet very gently. The root boiled in water, and the places of the body most troubled with vermin and lice washed therewith while it is warm, destroyeth them utterly. In Italy it is used against the plague, and in Saxony against the jaundice, as Camerarius saith.

GARDEN-RUE.

GARDEN-Rue is so well known by this name, and the name herb of grace, that I shall not need to write any further description of it, but shall only shew you the virtue of it, as followeth.

Government and Virtues.] It is an herb of the Sun, and under Leo. It provoketh urine and women's courses, being taken either in meat or drink. The seed thereof taken in wine, is an antidote against all dangerous medicines or deadly poisons. The leaves taken either by themselves, or with figs and walnuts, is called Mithridate's counter-poison against the plague, and causeth all venomous things to become harmless; being often taken

in meat and drink, it abateth venery, and destroyeth the ability to get children. A decoction made thereof with some dried dill leaves and flowers, easeth all pains and torments, inwardly to be drank and outwardly to be applied warm to the place grieved. The same being drank, helpeth the pains both of the chest and sides, as also coughs and hardness of breathing, the inflammations of the lungs, and the tormenting pains of the sciatica and the joints, being anointed, or laid to the places; as also the shaking fits of agues, to take a draught before the fit comes; being boiled or infused in oil, it is good to help the wind cholic, the hardness and windiness of the mother, and freeth women from the strangling or suffocation thereof, if the share and the parts thereabouts be anointed therewith: It killeth and driveth forth the worms of the belly, if it be drank after it is boiled in wine to the half, with a little honey; it helpeth the gout or pains in the joints, hands, feet or knees, applied thereunto; and with figs it helpeth the dropsy, being bathed therewith: Being bruised and put into the nostrils, it stayeth the bleeding thereof; it helpeth the swelling of the cods, if they be bathed with a decoction of rue and bay leaves. It taketh away wheals and pimples, if being bruised with a few myrtle leaves, it be made up with wax, and applied. It cureth the morphew, and taketh away all sorts of warts, if boiled in wine with some pepper and nitre, and the place rubbed therewith, and with almond and honey, helpeth the dry scabs, or any tetter or ring-worm. The juice thereof warmed in a pomegranate shell or rind, and dropped into the ears, helpeth the pains of them. The juice of it and fennel, with a little honey, and the gall of a cock put thereunto, helpeth the dimness of the eye-sight. An ointment made of the juice thereof with oil of roses, ceruse, and a little vinegar, and anointed, cureth St. Anthony's fire, and all running sores in the head; and the stinking ulcers of the nose, or other parts. The antidote used by Mithridates, every morning fasting, to secure himself from any poison or infection, was this: Take twenty leaves of rue, a little salt, a couple of walnuts, and a couple of figs, beaten together into a mess, with twenty juniper berries, which is the quantity appointed for every day. Another electuary is made thus: Take of nitre, pepper, and cummin seed, of each equal parts; of the leaves of rue clean picked, as much in weight as all the other three weighed; beat them well together, and put as much honey as will make it up into an electuary (but you must first steep your cummin seed in vinegar twenty four hours, and then dry it, or rather roast it in a hot fire-shovel, or in an oven) and is a remedy for the pains or griefs in the chest or stomach, of the spleen, belly, or sides, by wind or stitches; of the liver by obstructions; of

the reins and bladder by the stopping of urine; and helpeth also to extenuate fat corpulent bodies.

What an infamy is cast upon the ashes of Mithridates, or Methridates (as the Augustines read his name) by unworthy people. They that deserve no good report themselves, love to give none to others, viz. That renowned king of Pontius fortified his body by poison against poison. *(He cast out devils by* Beelzebub, *prince of the devils.)* What a sot is he that knows not if he had accustomed his body to cold poisons, hot poisons would have dispatched him? on the contrary, if not, corrosions would have done it. The whole world is, at this present time, beholden to him for his studies in physic, and he that useth the quantity but of an hazel-nut of that receipt every morning, to which his name is adjoined, shall, to admiration, preserve his body in health, if he do but consider that rue is an herb of the Sun, and under Leo, and gather it and the rest accordingly.

RUPTURE-WORT.

Descript.] THIS spreads very many thready branches round about upon the ground, about a span long, divided into many other smaller parts full of small joints set very thick together, whereat come forth two very small leaves of a French yellow, green coloured branches and all, where groweth forth also a number of exceeding small yellowish flowers, scarce to be discerned from the stalks and leaves, which turn into seeds as small as the very dust. The root is very long and small, thrusting down deep into the ground. This hath neither smell nor taste at first, but afterwards hath a little astringent taste, without any manifest heat; yet a little bitter and sharp withal.

Place.] It groweth in dry, sandy, and rocky places.

Time.] It is fresh and green all the summer.

Government and Virtues.] They say Saturn causeth ruptures; if he do, he doth no more than he can cure; if you want wit, he will teach you, though to your cost. This herb is Saturn's own, and is a noble antivenerean. Rupture-wort hath not its name in vain; for it is found, by experience, to cure the rupture, not only in children, but also in elder persons, if the disease be not too inveterate, by taking a dram of the powder of the dried herb every day in wine, or a decoction made and drank for certain days together. The juice or distilled water of the green herb, taken in the same manner, helpeth all other fluxes either of man or woman; vomitings also, and the gonorrhea, or running of the reins, being taken any of the ways aforesaid. It doth also most assuredly help those that have the

strangury, or are troubled with the stone or gravel in the reins or bladder. The same also helpeth stitches in the sides, griping pains of the stomach or belly, the obstructions of the liver, and cureth the yellow jaundice; likewise it kills also the worms in children. Being outwardly applied, it conglutinateth wounds notably, and helpeth much to stay defluxions of rheum from the head to the eyes, nose and teeth, being bruised green, and bound thereto; or the forehead, temples, or the nape of the neck behind, bathed with the decoction of the dried herb. It also drieth up the moisture of fistulous ulcers, or any other that are foul and spreading.

RUSHES.

ALTHOUGH there are many kinds of rushes, yet I shall only here insist upon these which are best known, and most medicinal; as the bulrushes, and other of the soft and smooth kinds, which grow so commonly in almost every part of this land, and are so generally noted, that I suppose it needless to trouble you with any description of them: Briefly then take the virtues of them as followeth:

Government and Virtues.] The seed of the soft rushes, (saith Dioscorides and Galen, toasted, saith Pliny) being drank in wine and water, stayeth the lask and women's courses, when they come down too abundantly; but it causeth head-ach: It provoketh sleep likewise, but must be given with caution. The root boiled in water, to the consumption of one third, helpeth the cough.

Thus you see that conveniencies have their inconveniences, and virtue is seldom unaccompanied with some vices. What I have written concerning rushes, is to satisfy my countrymen's question: *Are our rushes good for nothing?* Yes, and as good let them alone as taken, there are remedies enough without them for any disease; and therefore as the proverb is, I care not a rush for them; or rather they will do you as much good as if one had given you a rush.

RYE.

THIS is so well known in all the counties of this land, and especially to the country people, who feed much thereon, that if I did describe it, they would presently say, I might as well have spared my labour. Its virtues follow:

Government and Virtues.] Rye is more digesting than wheat; the bread and the leaven thereof ripeneth and breaketh imposthumes, boils, and other swellings: The meal of rye put between a double cloth, and moistened with a little vinegar, and

heated in a pewter dish, set over a chafingdish of coals, and bound fast to the head while it is hot, doth much ease the continual pains of the head. Matthiolus saith, that the ashes of rye straw put into water, and steeped therein a day and a night, and the chops of the hands or feet washed therewith, doth heal them.

SAFFRON.

THE herb needs no description, it being known generally where it grows.

Place.] It grows frequently at Walden in Essex, and in Cambridgeshire.

Government and Virtues.] It is an herb of the Sun, and under the Lion, and therefore you need not demand a reason why it strengthens the heart so exceedingly. Let not above ten grains be given at one time, for the Sun, which is the fountain of light, may dazzle the eyes, and make them blind; a cordial being taken in an immoderate quantity, hurts the heart instead of helping it. It quickeneth the brain, for the Sun is exalted in Aries, as he hath his house in Leo: It helps consumptions of the lungs, and difficulty of breathing: It is excellent in epidemical diseases, as pestilence, small-pox, and measles. It is a notable expulsive medicine, and a notable remedy for the yellow jaundice. My opinion is (but I have no author for it) that hermodactyls are nothing else but the roots of saffron dried; and my reason is, that the roots of all crocus, both white and yellow, purge phlegm as hermodactyls do; and if you please to dry the roots of any crocus, neither your eyes nor your taste shall distinguish them from hermodactyls.

SAGE.

OUR ordinary garden sage needeth no description.

Time.] It flowereth in or about July.

Government and Virtues.] Jupiter claims this, and bids me tell you, it is good for the liver, and to breed blood. A decoction of the leaves and branches of sage made and drank, saith Dioscorides, provoketh urine, bringeth down women's courses, helps to expel the dead child, and causeth the hair to become black. It stayeth the bleeding of wounds, and cleanseth foul ulcers or sores. The said decoction made in wine, taketh away the itching of the cods, if they be bathed therewith. Agrippa saith, that if women that cannot conceive by reason of the moist slipperiness of their wombs, shall take a quantity of the juice of sage, with a little salt, for four days before they company with their husbands, it will help them not only to conceive, but also

to retain the birth without miscarrying. Orpheus saith, three spoonfuls of the juice of sage taken fasting, with a little honey, doth presently stay the spitting or casting of blood of them that are in a consumption. These pills are much commended: Take of spikenard, ginger, of each two drams; of the seed of sage toasted at the fire, eight drams; of long pepper 12 drams; all these being brought into powder, put thereto so much juice of sage as may make them into a mass of pills, taking a dram of them every morning fasting, and so likewise at night, drinking a little pure water after them. Matthiolus saith, it is very profitable for all manner of pains in the head, coming of cold and rheumatic humours; as also for all pains of the joints, whether inwardly or outwardly, and therefore helpeth the falling sickness, the lethargy, such as are dull and heavy of spirit, the palsy; and is of much use in all defluxions of rheum from the head, and for the diseases of the chest or breast. The leaves of sage and nettles bruised together, and laid upon the imposthume that riseth behind the ears, doth assuage it much. The juice of sage taken in warm water, helpeth a hoarseness and a cough. The leaves soddened in wine, and laid upon the place affected with the palsy, helpeth much, if the decoction be drank: Also, sage taken with wormwood is good for the bloody-flux. Pliny saith, it procures women's courses, and stayeth them coming down too fast; helpeth the stinging and biting of serpents, and killeth the worms that breed in the ear, and in sores. Sage is of excellent use to help the memory, warming and quickening the senses; and the conserve made of the flowers is used to the same purpose, and also for all the former recited diseases. The juice of sage drank with vinegar, hath been of good use in time of the plague at all times. Gargles likewise are made of sage, rosemary, honey-suckles, and plantain, boiled in wine or water, with some honey or allum put thereto, to wash sore mouths and throats, cankers, or the secret parts of man or woman, as need requireth. And with other hot and comfortable herbs, sage is boiled to bathe the body and the legs in the summer time, especially to warm cold joints, or sinews, troubled with the palsy and cramp, and to comfort and strengthen the parts. It is much commended against the stitch, or pains in the side coming of wind, if the place be fomented warm with the decoction thereof in wine, and the herb also after boiling be laid warm thereunto.

WOOD-SAGE.

Descript.] WOOD-SAGE riseth up with square hoary stalks, two feet high at the least, with two leaves set at every joint, somewhat like other sage leaves, but

smaller, softer, whiter, and rounder, and a little dented about the edges, and smelling somewhat stronger. At the tops of the stalks and branches stand the flowers, on a slender-like spike, turning themselves all one way when they blow, and are of a pale and whitish colour, smaller than sage, but hooded and gaping like unto them. The seed is blackish and round; four usually seem in a husk together; the root is long and stringy, with divers fibres thereat, and abideth many years.

Place.] It groweth in woods, and by wood-sides; as also in divers fields and bye-lanes in the land.

Time.] It flowereth in June, July, and August.

Government and Virtues.] The herb is under Venus. The decoction of the wood-sage provoketh urine and women's courses: It also provoketh sweat, digesteth humours, and discusseth swellings and nodes in the flesh, and is therefore thought to be good against the French pox. The decoction of the green herb, made with wine, is a safe and sure remedy for those who by falls, bruises, or blows, suspect some vein to be inwardly broken, to disperse and void the congealed blood, and to consolidate the veins. The drink used inwardly, and the herb used outwardly, is good for such as are inwardly or outwardly bursten, and is found to be a sure remedy for the palsy. The juice of the herb, or the powder thereof dried, is good for moist ulcers and sores in the legs, and other parts, to dry them, and cause them to heal more speedily. It is no less effectual also in green wounds, to be used upon any occasion.

SOLOMON'S SEAL.

Descript.] THE common solomon's seal riseth up with a round stalk, half a yard high, bowing or bending down to the ground, set with single leaves one above another, somewhat large, and like the leaves of the lily-convally, or May-lily, with an eye of blueish upon the green, with some ribs therein, and more yellowish underneath. At the foot of every leaf, almost from the bottom up to the top of the stalk, come forth small, long, white and hollow pendulous flowers, somewhat like the flowers of May-lily, but ending in five long points, for the most part two together, at the end of a long footstalk, and sometimes but one, and sometimes also two stalks, with flowers at the foot of a leaf, which are without any scent at all, and stand on one side of the stalk. After they are past, come in their places small round berries, great at the first, and blackish green, tending to blueness when they are ripe, wherein lie small, white, hard, and stony seeds. The root is of the thickness of one's finger or thumb, white and knotted in some places, a flat round circle representing a seal, whereof it took the name, lying along under the upper crust of

the earth, and not growing downward, but with many fibres underneath.

Place.] It is frequent in divers places of this land; as, namely, in a wood two miles from Canterbury, by Fish-pool Hill, as also in Bushy Close belonging to the parsonage of Alderbury, near Clarendon, two miles from Salisbury; in Cheffon wood, on Chesson Hill, between Newington and Sittingbourn in Kent, and divers other places in Essex, and other counties.

Time.] It flowereth about May: The root abideth and shooteth anew every year.

Government and Virtues.] Saturn owns the plant, for he loves his bones well. The root of solomon's seal is found, by experience, to be available in wounds, hurts, and outward sores, to heal and close up the lips of those that are green, and to dry up and restrain the flux of humours to those that are old. It is singularly good to stay vomiting and bleeding wheresoever, as also all fluxes in man or woman, whether whites or reds in women, or the running of the reins in men; also, to knit any joint, which, by weakness, useth to be often out of place, or will not stay in long when it is set; also to knit and join broken bones in any part of the body, the roots being bruised and applied to the places; yea, it hath been found, by late experience, that the decoction of the root in wine, or the bruised root put into wine or other drink, and after a night's infusion, strained forth hard and drank, hath helped both man and beast, whose bones hath been broken by any occasion, which is the most assured refuge of help to people of divers counties of the land that they can have: It is no less effectual to help ruptures and burstings, the decoction in wine, or the powder in broth or drink, being inwardly taken, and outwardly applied to the place. The same is also available for inward or outward bruises, falls or blows, both to dispel the congealed blood, and to take away both the pains, and the black and blue marks that abide after the hurt. The same also, or the distilled water of the whole plant, used to the face, or other parts of the skin, cleanseth it from morphew, freckles, spots, or marks whatsoever, leaving the place fresh, fair, and lovely; for which purpose it is much used by the Italian dames.

SAMPHIRE.

Descript.] ROCK samphire groweth up with a tender green stalk, about half a yard, or two feet high at the most, branching forth almost from the very bottom, and stored with sundry thick, and almost round (somewhat long) leaves of a deep green colour, sometimes two together, and sometimes more on a stalk, and sappy, and of a pleasant, hot, and spicy taste. At the top of the stalks and branches stand umbels of white flowers, and after them come large seed bigger than fen-

nel seed, yet somewhat like it. The root is great, white, and long, continuing many years, and is of an hot and spicy taste likewise.

Place.] It groweth on the rocks that are often moistened at the least, if not overflowed with the sea-water.

Time.] And it flowereth and seedeth in the end of July and August.

Government and Virtues.] It is an herb of Jupiter, and was in former times wont to be used more than now it is; the more is the pity. It is well known almost to every body, that ill digestions and obstructions are the cause of most of the diseases which the frail nature of man is subject to; both which might be remedied by a more frequent use of this herb. If people would have sauce to their meat, they may take some for profit as well as for pleasure. It is a safe herb, very pleasant both to taste and stomach, helpeth digestion, and in some sort opening obstructions of the liver and spleen; provoketh urine, and helpeth thereby to wash away the gravel and stone engendered in the kidneys or bladder.

SANICLE.

Descript.] ORDINARY sanicle sendeth forth many great round leaves, standing upon long brownish stalks, every one somewhat deeply cut or divided into five or six parts, and some of these also cut in somewhat like the leaf of crow-stfoot, or dove's-foot, and finely dented about the edges, smooth, and of a dark shining colour, and sometimes reddish about the brims; from among which arise up small, round green stalks, without any joint or leaf thereon, saving at the top, where it branches forth into flowers, having a leaf divided into three or four parts at that joint with the flowers, which are small and white, starting out of small round greenish yellow heads, many standing together in a tuft, in which afterwards are the seeds contained, which are small round burs, somewhat like the leaves of cleavers, and stick in the same manner upon any thing that they touch. The root is composed of many blackish strings or fibres, set together at a little long head, which abideth with green leaves all the winter, and perisheth not.

Place.] It is found in many shadowy woods, and other places of this land.

Time.] It flowereth in June, and the seed is ripe shortly after.

Government and Virtues.] This is one of Venus' herbs, to cure the wounds or mischiefs Mars inflicteth upon the body of man. It heals green wounds speedily, or any ulcers, impos-

thumes, or bleedings inward, also tumours in any part of the body; for the decoction or powder in drink taken, and the juice used outwardly, dissipateth the humours; and there is not found any herb that can give such present help either to man or beast, when the disease falleth upon the lungs or throat, and to heal up putrid malignant ulcers in the mouth, throat and privities, by gargling or washing with the decoction of the leaves and roots made in water, and a little honey put thereto. It helpeth to stay women's courses, and all other fluxes of blood, either by the mouth, urine or stool, and lasks of the belly; the ulcerations of the kidneys also, and the pains in the bowels, and gonorrhea, or running of the reins, being boiled in wine or water, and drank. The same also is no less powerful to help any ruptures or burstings, used both inwardly and outwardly: And briefly, it is as effectual in binding, restraining, consolidating, heating, drying and healing, as comfrey, bugle, self-heal, or any other of the vulnerary herbs whatsoever.

SARACENS CONFOUND, OR SARACENS WOUNDWORT.

Descript.] THIS groweth high sometimes, with brownish stalks, and other whiles with green, to a man's height, having narrow green leaves snipped about the edges, somewhat like those of the peach-tree, or willow leaves, but not of such a white green colour. The tops of the stalks are furnished with many yellow star-like flowers, standing in green heads, which, when they are fallen, and the seed ripe, which is somewhat long, small, and of a brown colour, wrapped in down, is therewith carried away with the wind. The root is composed of fibres set together at a head, which perisheth not in winter, although the stalks dry away, and no leaf appeareth in the winter. The taste hereof is strong and unpleasant; and so is the smell also.

Place.] It groweth in moist and wet grounds, by wood-sides, and sometimes in the moist places of shady groves, as also by the water-side.

Time.] It flowereth in July, and the seed is soon ripe, and carried away with the wind.

Government and Virtues.] Saturn owns the herb, and it is of a sober condition, like him. Among the Germans, this wound herb is preferred before all others of the same quality. Being boiled in wine, and drank, it helpeth the indisposition of the liver, and freeth the gall from obstructions; whereby it is good for the yellow jaundice, and for the dropsy in the beginning of it; for all inward ulcers of the reins, mouth or throat, and inward wounds and bruises, likewise for such sores as happen

in the privy parts of men or women; being steeped in wine, and then distilled, the water thereof drank, is singularly good to ease all gnawings in the stomach, or other pains of the body, as also the pains of the mother; and being boiled in water, it helpeth continual agues; and the said water, or the simple water of the herb distilled, or the juice or decoction, are very effectual to heal any green wound, or old sore or ulcer whatsoever, cleansing them from corruption, and quickly healing them up: Briefly, whatsoever hath been said of bugle or sanicle, may be found herein.

SAUCE-ALONE, OR JACK BY THE HEDGE-SIDE.

Descript.] THE lower leaves of this are sounder than those that grow towards the top of the stalks, and are set singly on a joint, being somewhat round and broad, pointed at the ends, dented also about the edges, somewhat resembling nettle leaves for the form, but of a fresher green colour, not rough or pricking: The flowers are white, growing at the top of the stalks one above another, which being past, follow small round pods, wherein are contained round seed somewhat blackish. The root stringy and thready, perisheth every year after it hath given seed, and raiseth itself again of its own sowing. The plant, or any part thereof, being bruised, smelleth of garlic, but more pleasantly, and tasteth somewhat hot and sharp, almost like unto rocket.

Place.] It groweth under walls, and by hedge-sides, and path-ways in fields in many places.

Time.] It flowereth in June, July, and August.

Government and Virtues.] It is an herb of Mercury. This is eaten by many country people as sauce to their salt fish, and helpeth well to digest the crudities, and other corrupt humours engendered thereby: It warmeth also the stomach, and causeth digestion: The juice thereof boiled with honey is accounted to be as good as hedge mustard for the cough, to cut and expectorate the tough phlegm. The seed bruised and boiled in wine, is a singularly good remedy for the wind colic, or the stone, being drank warm: It is also given to women troubled with the mother, both to drink, and the seed put into a cloth, and applied while it is warm, is of singularly good use. The leaves also, or the seed boiled, is good to be used in clysters to ease the pains of the stone. The green leaves are held to be good to heal the ulcers in the legs.

WINTER AND SUMMER SAVORY.

BOTH these are so well known (being entertained as constant inhabitants in our gardens) that they need no description.

Government and Virtues.] Mercury claims the dominion over this herb, neither is there a better remedy against the colic and iliac passion, than this herb; keep it dry by you all the year, if you love yourself and your ease, and it is a hundred pounds to a penny if you do not; keep it dry, make conserves and syrups of it for your use, and withal, take notice that the summer kind is the best. They are both of them hot and dry, especially the summer kind, which is both sharp and quick in taste, expelling wind in the stomach and bowels, and is a present help for the rising of the mother procured by wind; provoketh urine and women's courses, and is much commended for women with child to take inwardly, and to smell often unto. It cureth tough phlegm in the chest and lungs, and helpeth to expectorate it the more easily; quickens the dull spirits in the lethargy, the juice thereof being snuffed up into the nostrils. The juice dropped into the eyes, cleareth a dull sight, if it proceed of thin cold humours distilled from the brain. The juice heated with oil of roses, and dropped into the ears, easeth them of the noise and singing in them, and of deafness also: Outwardly applied with wheat flour, in manner of a poultice, it giveth ease to the sciatica and palsied members, heating and warming them, and taketh away their pains. It also taketh away the pain that comes by stinging of bees, wasps, &c.

SAVINE.

TO describe a plant so well known is needless, it being nursed up almost in every garden, and abiding green all the winter.

Government and Virtues.] It is under the dominion of Mars, being hot and dry in the third degree, and being of exceeding clean parts, is of a very digesting quality. If you dry the herb into powder, and mix it with honey, it is an excellent remedy to cleanse old filthy ulcers and fistulas; but it hinders them from healing. The same is excellent good to break carbuncles and plague-sores; also helpeth the king's evil, being applied to the place. Being spread over a piece of leather, and applied to the navel, kills the worms in the belly, helps scabs and itch, running sores, cankers, tetters, and ringworms; and being applied to the place, may haply cure venereal sores. This I

thought good to speak of, as it may be safely used outwardly, for inwardly it cannot be taken without manifest danger.

THE COMMON WHITE SAXIFRAGE.

Descript.] THIS hath a few small reddish kernels of roots covered with some skins, lying among divers small blackish fibres, which send forth divers round, faint or yellow green leaves, and greyish underneath, lying above the ground, unevenly dented about the edges, and somewhat hairy, every one upon a little footstalk, from whence riseth up round, brownish, hairy, green stalks, two or three feet high, with a few such like round leaves as grow below, but smaller, and somewhat branched at the top, whereon stand pretty large white flowers of five leaves a-piece, with some yellow threads in the middle, standing in a long crested, brownish, green bush. After the flowers are past, there ariseth sometimes a round hard head, forked at the top, wherein is contained small black seed, but usually they fall away without any seed, and it is the kernels or grains of the root which are usually called the white saxifrage-seed, and so used.

Place.] It groweth in many places of our land, as well in the lowermost, as in the upper dry corners of meadows, and grassy sandy places. It used to grow near Lamb's-conduit, on the backside of Gray's Inn.

Time.] It flowereth in May, and then gathered, as well for that which is called the seed, as to distil, for it quickly perisheth down to the ground when any hot weather comes.

Government and Virtues.] It is very effectual to cleanse the reins and bladder, and to dissolve the stone engendered in them, and to expel it and the gravel by urine; to help the strangury; for which purpose the decoction of the herb or roots in white wine, is most usual, or the powder of the small kernelly root, which is called the seed, taken in white wine, or in the same decoction made with white wine, is most usual. The distilled water of the whole herb, root and flowers, is most familiar to be taken. It provoketh also women's courses, and freeth and cleanseth the stomach and lungs from thick and tough phlegm that troubleth them. There are not many better medicines to break the stone than this.

BURNET SAXIFRAGE.

Descript.] THE greater sort of our English Burnet saxifrage groweth up with divers long stalks of winged leaves, set directly opposite one to another on both sides, each being somewhat broad, and a little pointed and dented about the

edges, of a sad green colour. At the top of the stalks stand umbels of white flowers, after which come small and blackish seed. The root is long and whitish, abiding long. Our lesser burnet saxifrage hath much finer leaves than the former, and very small, and set one against another, deeply jagged about the edges, and of the same colour as the former. The umbels of the flowers are white, and the seed very small, and so is the root, being also somewhat hot and quick in taste.

Place.] These grow in moist meadows of this land, and are easy to be found being well sought for among the grass, wherein many times they lay hid scarcely to be discerned.

Time.] They flower about July, and their seed is ripe in August.

Government and Virtues.] They are both of them herbs of the Moon. The saxifrages are hot as pepper; and Tragus saith, by his experience, that they are wholesome. They have the same properties the parsleys have, but in provoking urine, and easing the pains thereof, and of the wind and colic, are much more effectual, the roots or seed being used either in powder, or in decoctions, or any other way; and likewise helpeth the windy pains of the mother, and to procure their courses, and to break and void the stone in the kidneys, to digest cold, viscous, and tough phlegm in the stomach, and is an especial remedy against all kind of venom. Castoreum being boiled in the distilled water thereof, is singular good to be given to those that are troubled with cramps and convulsions. Some do use to make the seeds into comfits (as they do carraway seeds) which is effectual to all the purposes aforesaid. The juice of the herb dropped into the most grievous wounds of the head drieth up their moisture, and healeth them quickly. Some women use the distilled water to take away freckles or spots in the skin or face; and to drink the same sweetened with sugar for all the purposes aforesaid.

SCABIOUS, THREE SORTS.

Descript.] COMMON field scabious groweth up with many hairy, soft, whitish green leaves, some whereof are very little, if at all jagged on the edges, others very much rent and torn on the sides, and have threads in them, which upon breaking may be plainly seen; from among which rise up divers hairy green stalks, three or four feet high, with such like hairy green leaves on them, but more deeply and finely divided, branched forth a little: At the tops thereof, which are naked and bare of leaves for a good space, stand round heads of flowers, of a pale blueish colour, set together in a head, the outermost whereof are larger than the inward, with many threads also in the middle, somewhat flat at the top, as the head with the seed

is likewise; the root is great, white and thick, growing down deep into the ground, and abideth many years.

There is another sort of field scabious different in nothing from the former, but only it is smaller in all respects.

The corn scabious differeth little from the first, but that it is greater in all respects, and the flowers more inclining to purple, and the root creepeth under the upper crust of the earth, and runneth not deep into the ground as the first doth.

Place.] The first groweth more usually in meadows, especially about London every where.

The second in some of the dry fields about this city, but not so plentifully as the former.

The third in standing corn, or fallow fields, and the borders of such like fields.

Time.] They flower in June and July, and some abide flowering until it be late in August, and the seed is ripe in the mean time.

There are many other sorts of scabious, but I take these which I have here described to be most familiar with us; the virtues of both these and the rest, being much alike, take them as followeth.

Government and Virtues.] Mercury owns the plant. Scabious is very effectual for all sorts of coughs, shortness of breath, and all other diseases of the breast and lungs, ripening and digesting cold phlegm, and other tough humours, voideth them forth by coughing and spitting: It ripeneth also all sorts of inward ulcers and imposthumes; pleurisy also, if the decoction of the herb dry or green be made in wine, and drank for some time together. Four ounces of the clarified juice of scabious taken in the morning fasting, with a dram of mithridate, or Venice treacle, freeth the heart from any infection of pestilence, if after the taking of it the party sweat two hours in bed, and this medicine be again and again repeated, if need require. The green herb bruised and applied to any carbuncle or plague sore, is found by certain experience to dissolve and break it in three hours space. The same decoction also drank, helpeth the pains and stitches in the side. The decoction of the roots taken for forty days together, or a dram of the powder of them taken at a time in whey, doth (as Matthiolus saith) wonderfully help those that are troubled with running or spreading scabs, tetters, ring-worms, yea, although they proceed from the French pox, which, he saith, he hath tried by experience. The juice or decoction drank, helpeth also scabs and breakings-out of the itch, and the like. The juice also made up into an ointment and used, is effectual for the same purpose. The same also healeth all inward wounds by the drying, cleansing, and healing quality therein: And a syrup made of the juice and sugar, is very effectual to all the

purposes aforesaid, and so is the distilled water of the herb and flowers made in due season, especially to be used when the green herb is not in force to be taken. The decoction of the herb and roots outwardly applied, doth wonderfully help all sorts of hard or cold swellings in any part of the body, is effectual for shrunk sinews or veins, and healeth green wounds, old sores and ulcers. The juice of scabious, made up with the powder of borax and samphire, cleanseth the skin of the face, or other parts of the body, not only from freckles and pimples, but also from morphew and leprosy; the head washed with the decoction, cleanseth it from dandriff, scurf, sores, itch, and the like, used warm. The herb bruised and applied, doth in a short time loosen, and draw forth any splinter broken bone, arrow head, or other such like thing lying in the flesh.

SCURVY-GRASS.

Descript.] OUR ordinary English scurvy-grass hath many thick flat leaves more long than broad, and sometimes longer and narrower; sometimes also smooth on the edges, and sometimes a little waved; sometimes plain, smooth and pointed, of a sad green, and sometimes a blueish colour, every one standing by itself upon a long foot-stalk, which is brownish or greenish also, from among which arise many slender stalks, bearing few leaves thereon like the other, but longer and lesser for the most part: At the tops whereof grow many whitish flowers, with yellow threads in the middle, standing about a green head, which becometh the seed vessel, which will be somewhat flat when it is ripe, wherein is contained reddish seed, tasting somewhat hot. The root is made of many white strings, which stick deeply into the mud, wherein it chiefly delights, yet it will well abide in the more upland and drier ground, and tasteth a little brackish and salt even there, but not so much as where it hath the salt water to feed upon.

Place.] It groweth all along the Thames sides, both on the Essex and Kentish shores, from Woolwich round about the sea coasts to Dover, Portsmouth, and even to Bristol, where it is had in plenty; the other with round leaves groweth in the marshes in Holland, in Lincolnshire, and other places of Lincolnshire by the sea side.

Descript.] There is also another sort called Dutch scurvy-grass, which is most known, and frequent in gardens, which hath fresh green, and almost round leaves rising from the root, not so thick as the former, yet in some rich ground, very large, even twice as big as in others, not dented about the edges, or hollow in the middle, standing on a long foot-stalk; from among these rise long, slender stalks, higher than the former, with

more white flowers at the tops of them, which turn into small pods, and smaller brownish seed than the former. The root is white, small and thready. The taste is nothing salt at all; it hath a hot, aromatical, spicy taste.

Time.] It flowereth in April and May, and giveth seed ripe quickly after.

Government and Virtues.] It is an herb of Jupiter. The English scurvy-grass is more used for the salt taste it beareth, which doth somewhat open and cleanse; but the Dutch scurvy-grass is of better effect, and chiefly used (if it may be had) by those that have the scurvy, and is of singularly good effect to cleanse the blood, liver, and spleen, taking the juice in the spring every morning fasting in a cup of drink. The decoction is good for the same purpose, and openeth obstructions, evacuating cold, clammy and phlegmatic humours both from the liver and the spleen, and bringing the body to a more lively colour. The juice also helpeth all foul ulcers and sores in the mouth, gargled therewith; and used outwardly, cleanseth the skin from spots, marks, or scars that happen therein.

SELF-HEAL,

Called also Prunel, Carpenter's Herb, Hook-heal, and Sickle-wort.

Descript.] THE common self-heal is a small, low, creeping herb, having many small, roundish pointed leaves, like leaves of wild mints, of a dark green colour, without dents on the edges; from among which rise square hairy stalks, scarce a foot high, which spread sometimes into branches with small leaves set thereon, up to the tops, where stand brown spike heads of small brownish leaves like scales and flowers set together, almost like the head of cassidony, which flowers are gaping, and of a blueish purple, or more pale blue, in some places sweet, but not so in others. The root consists of many fibres downward, and spreadeth strings also whereby it increaseth. The small stalks, with the leaves creeping on the ground, shoot forth fibres taking hold on the ground, whereby it is made a great tuft in a short time.

Place.] It is found in woods and fields every where.

Time.] It flowereth in May, and sometimes in April.

Government and Virtues.] Here is another herb of Venus, self-heal, whereby when you are hurt you may heal yourself: It is a special herb for inward and outward wounds, Take it inwardly in syrups for inward wounds: outwardly in unguents and plaisters for outward. As self-heal is like bugle in form, so also in the qualities and virtues, serving for all the purposes

whereto bugle is applied with good success, either inwardly or outwardly, for inward wounds or ulcers whatsoever within the body, for bruises or falls, and such like hurts. If to be accompanied with bugle, sanicle, and other the like wound herbs, it will be more effectual to wash or inject into ulcers in the parts outwardly. Where there is cause to repress the heat and sharpness of humours flowing to any sore, ulcers, inflammations, swellings, or the like, or to stay the fluxes of blood in any wound or part, this is used with some good success; as also to cleanse the foulness of sores, and cause them more speedily to be healed. It is an especial remedy for all green wounds, to solder the lips of them, and to keep the place from any further inconveniences. The juice hereof used with oil of roses to anoint the temples and forehead, is very effectual to remove the headach, and the same mixed with honey of roses, cleanseth and healeth all ulcers in the mouth, and throat, and those also in the secret parts. And the proverb of the Germans, French and others, is verified in this, *That he needeth neither physician nor surgeon that hath* self-heal *and* sanical *to help himself.*

THE SERVICE-TREE.

IT is so well known in the place where it grows, that it needeth no description.

Time.] It flowereth before the end of May, and the fruit is ripe in October.

Government and Virtues.] Services when they are mellow, are fit to be taken to stay fluxes, scouring, and casting, yet less than medlars. If they be dried before they be mellow, and kept all the year, they may be used in decoctions for the said purpose, either to drink, or to bathe the parts requiring it; and are profitably used in that manner to stay the bleeding of wounds, and of the mouth or nose, to be applied to the forehead and nape of the neck; and are under the dominion of Saturn.

SHEPHERD'S PURSE.

IT is called whoreman's permacety, shepherd's scrip, shepherd's pounce, toywort, pickpurse, and casewort.

Descript.] The root is small, white, and perisheth every year. The leaves are small and long, of a pale green colour, and deeply cut in on both sides, among which spring up a stalk which is small and round, containing small leaves upon it even to the top. The flowers are white and very small; after which come the little cases which hold the seed, which are flat, almost in the form of a heart.

Place.] They are frequent in this nation, almost by every path-side.

Time.] They flower all the summer long: nay some of them are so fruitful, that they flower twice a year.

Government and Virtues.] It is under the dominion of Saturn, and of a cold, dry, and binding nature, like to him. It helps all fluxes of blood, either caused by inward or outward wounds; as also flux of the belly, and bloody flux, spitting and pissing of blood, stops the terms in women; being bound to the wrists of the hands, and the soles of the feet, it helps the yellow jaundice. The herb being made into a poultice, helps inflammations and St. Anthony's fire. The juice being dropped into the ears, heals the pains, noise, and matterings thereof. A good ointment may be made of it for all wounds, especially wounds in the head.

SMALLAGE.

THIS is also very well known, and therefore I shall not trouble the reader with any description thereof.

Place.] It groweth naturally in dry and marshy ground; but if it be sown in gardens, it there prospereth very well.

Time.] It abideth green all the winter, and seedeth in August.

Government and Virtues.] It is an herb of Mercury. Smallage is hotter, drier, and much more medicinal than parsley, for it much more openeth obstructions of the liver and spleen, rarefieth thick phlegm, and cleanseth it and the blood withal. It provoketh urine and women's courses, and is singular good against the yellow jaundice, tertian and quartan agues, if the juice thereof be taken, but especially made up into a syrup. The juice also put to honey of roses, and barley-water, is very good to gargle the mouth and throat of those that have sores and ulcers in them, and will quickly heal them. The same lotion also cleanseth and healeth all other foul ulcers and cankers elsewhere, if they be washed therewith. The seed is especially used to break and expel wind, to kill worms and help a stinking breath. The root is effectual to all the purposes aforesaid, and is held to be stronger in operation than the herb, but especially to open obstructions, and to rid away any ague, if the juice thereof be taken in wine, or the decoction thereof in wine be used.

SOPEWORT, OR BRUISEWORT.

Descript.] THE root creepeth under ground far and near, with many joints therein, of a brown colour on the outside and yellowish within, shooting forth in divers

places weak round stalks, full of joints, set with two leaves a-piece at every one of them on the contrary side, which are ribbed somewhat like unto plantain, and fashioned like the common field white campion leaves, seldom having any branches from the sides of the stalks, but set with flowers at the top, standing in long husks like the wild campions, made of five leaves a piece, round at the ends, and dented in the middle, of a rose colour, almost white, sometimes deeper, sometimes paler; of a reasonable scent.

Place.] It groweth wild in many low and wet grounds of this land, by brooks and the sides of running waters.

Time.] It flowereth usually in July, and so continueth all August, and part of September, before they be quite spent.

Temperature and Virtues.] Venus owns it. The country people in divers places do use to bruise the leaves of sopewort, and lay it to their fingers, hands or legs, when they are cut, to heal them up again. Some make great boast thereof, that it is diuretical to provoke urine, and thereby to expel gravel and the stone in the reins or kidneys, and do also account it singular good to void hydropical waters; and they no less extol it to perform an absolute cure in the French pox, more than either sarsaparilla, guiacum, or china can do; which, how true it is, I leave others to judge.

SORREL.

OUR ordinary sorrel, which grows in gardens, and also wild in the fields, is so well known, that it needeth no description.

Government and Virtues.] It is under the dominion of Venus. Sorrel is prevalent in all hot diseases, to cool any inflammation and heat of blood in agues, pestilential or choleric, or sickness and fainting, arising from heat, and to refresh the overspent spirits with the violence of furious or fiery fits of agues; to quench thirst, and procure an appetite in fainting or decaying stomachs: For it resisteth the putrefaction of the blood, killeth worms, and is a cordial to the heart, which the seed doth more effectually, being more drying and binding, and thereby stayeth the hot fluxes of women's courses, or of humours in the bloody flux, or flux of the stomach. The root also in a decoction, or in powder, is effectual for all the said purposes. Both roots and seeds, as well as the herb, are held powerful to resist the poison of the scorpion. The decoction of the roots is taken to help the jaundice, and to expel the gravel and the stone in the reins or kidneys. The decoction of the flowers made with wine and drank, helpeth the black jaundice, as also the inward ulcers of the body and bowels. A syrup

made with the juice of sorrel and fumitory, is a sovereign help to kill those sharp humours that cause the itch. The juice thereof, with a little vinegar, serveth well to be used outwardly for the same cause, and is also profitable for tetters, ringworms, &c. It helpeth also to discuss the kernels in the throat; and the juice gargled in the mouth, helpeth the sores therein. The leaves wrapt in a colewort leaf and roasted in the embers, and applied to a hard imposthume, botch, boil, or plague sore, doth both ripen and break it. The distilled water of the herb is of much good use for all the purposes aforesaid.

WOOD SORREL.

Descript.] THIS groweth upon the ground, having a number of leaves coming from the root made of three leaves, like a trefoil, but broad at the ends, and cut in the middle, of a yellowish green colour, every one standing on a long foot-stalk, which at their first coming up are close folded together to the stalk, but opening themselves afterwards, and are of a fine sour relish, and yielding a juice which will turn red when it is clarified, and maketh a most dainty clear syrup. Among these leaves rise up divers slender, weak foot-stalks, with every one of them a flower at the top, consisting of five small pointed leaves, star-fashion, of a white colour, in most places, and in some dashed over with a small show of blueish, on the back side only. After the flowers are past, follow small round heads, with small yellowish seed in them. The roots are nothing but small strings fastened to the end of a small long piece; all of them being of a yellowish colour.

Place.] It groweth in many places of our land, in woods and wood-sides, where they be moist and shadowed, and in other places not too much open to the sun.

Time.] It flowereth in April and May.

Government and Virtues.] Venus owns it. Wood sorrel serveth to all the purposes that the other sorrels do, and is more effectual in hindering putrefaction of blood, and ulcers in the mouth and body, and to quench thirst, to strengthen a weak stomach, to procure an appetite, to stay vomiting, and very excellent in any contagious sickness or pestilential fevers. The syrup made of the juice, is effectual in all the cases aforesaid, and so is the distilled water of the herb. Spunges or linen cloths wet in the juice, and applied outwardly to any hot swelling or inflammations, doth much cool and help them. The same juice taken and gargled in the mouth, and after it is spit forth, taken afresh, doth wonderfully help a foul stinking canker or ulcers therein. It is singularly good to heal wounds, or to stay the bleeding of thrusts or stabs in the body.

SOW THISTLE.

SOW thistles are generally so well known, that they need no description.

Place.] They grow in gardens and manured grounds, sometimes by old walls, path-sides of fields and highways.

Government and Virtues.] This and the former are under the influence of Venus. Sow Thistles are cooling, and somewhat binding, and are very fit to cool a hot stomach, and ease the pains thereof. The herb boiled in wine, is very helpful to stay the dissolution of the stomach, and the milk that is taken from the stalks when they are broken, given in drink, is beneficial to those that are short winded, and have a wheezing. Pliny saith, That it hath caused the gravel and stone to be voided by urine, and that the eating thereof helpeth a stinking breath. The decoction of the leaves and stalks causeth abundance of milk in nurses, and their children to be well coloured. The juice or distilled water is good for all hot inflammations, wheals, and eruptions or heat in the skin, itching of the hæmorrhoids. The juice boiled or thoroughly heated in a little oil of bitter almonds in the peel of a pomegranate, and dropped into the ears, is a sure remedy for deafness, singings, &c. Three spoonfuls of the juice taken warmed in white wine, and some wine put thereto, causeth women in travail to have so easy and speedy delivery, that they may be able to walk presently after. It is wonderfully good for women to wash their faces with, to clear the skin, and give it a lustre.

SOUTHERN-WOOD.

SOUTHERN-wood is so well known to be an ordinary inhabitant in our gardens, that I shall not need to trouble you with any description thereof.

Time.] It flowereth for the most part in July and August.

Government and Virtues.] It is a gallant Mercurial plant, worthy of more esteem than it hath. Dioscorides saith, that the seed bruised, heated in warm water, and drank, helpeth those that are bursten, or troubled with cramps or convulsions of the sinews, the sciatica, or difficulty in making water, and bringing down women's courses. The same taken in wine is an antidote, or counter poison against all deadly poison, and driveth away serpents and other venomous creatures: as also the smell of the herb, being burnt, doth the same. The oil thereof anointed on the back-bone before the fits of agues come, taketh them away: It taketh away inflammations in the eyes, if it be put with some part of a roasted quince, and boiled with a few

crumbs of bread, and applied. Boiled with barley-meal, it taketh away pimples, pushes or wheals that arise in the face, or other parts of the body. The seed as well as the dried herb, is often given to kill the worms in children: The herb bruised and laid to, helpeth to draw forth splinters and thorns out of the flesh. The ashes thereof drieth up and healeth old ulcers, that are without inflammation, although by the sharpness thereof it biteth sore, and putteth them to sore pains; as also the sores in the privy parts of man or woman. The ashes mingled with old salad oil, helpeth those that have hair fallen, and are bald, causing the hair to grow again either on the head or beard. Daranters saith, that the oil made of southern-wood, and put among the ointments that are used against the French disease, is very effectual, and likewise killeth lice in the head. The distilled water of the herb is said to help them much that are troubled with the stone, as also for the diseases of the spleen and mother. The Germans commend it for a singular wound herb, and therefore, call it stabwort. It is held by all writers, ancient and modern, to be more offensive to the stomach than wormwood.

SPIGNEL.

Descript.] THE roots of common spignel do spread much and deep in the ground, many strings or branches growing from one head, which is hairy at the top, of a blackish brown colour on the outside, and white within, smelling well, and of an aromatical taste, from whence rise sundry long stalks of most fine cut leaves like hair, smaller than dill, set thick on both sides of the stalks, and of a good scent. Among these leaves rise up round stiff stalks, with a few joints and leaves on them, and at the tops an umbel of fine pure white flowers; at the edges whereof sometimes will be seen a shew of the reddish blueish colour, especially before they be full blown, and are succeeded by small, somewhat round seeds, bigger than the ordinary fennel, and of a brown colour, divided into two parts, and crusted on the back, as most of the umbelliferous seeds are.

Place.] It groweth wild in Lancashire, Yorkshire, and other northern counties, and is also planted in gardens.

Government and Virtues.] It is an herb of Venus. Galen saith, the roots of spignel are available to provoke urine, and women's courses; but if too much thereof be taken, it causeth head-ach. The roots boiled in wine or water, and drank, helpeth the strangury and stoppings of the urine, the wind, swellings and pains in the stomach, pains of the mother, and all joint-aches. If the powder of the root be mixed with honey, and the same taken as a licking medicine, it breaketh tough phlegm, and

drieth up the rheum that falleth on the lungs. The roots are accounted very effectual against the stinging or biting of any venomous creature, and is one of the ingredients in Mithridate and other antidotes of the same.

SPLEENWORT, OR CETERACH.

Descript.] THE smooth spleenwort, from a black, thready and bushy root, sendeth forth many long single leaves, cut in on both sides into round dents almost to the middle, which is not so hard as that of polypody, each division being not always set opposte unto the other, cut between each, smooth, and of a light green on the upper side, and a dark yellowish roughness on the back, folding or rolling itself inward at the first springing up.

Place.] It groweth as well upon stone walls, as moist and shadowy places, about Bristol, and other the west parts plentifully; as also on Framlingham Castle, on Beaconsfield church in Berkshire, at Stroude in Kent, and elsewhere, and abideth green all the winter.

Government and Virtues.] Saturn owns it. It is generally used against infirmities of the spleen: it helpeth the strangury, and wasteth the stone in the bladder, and is good against the yellow jaundice, and the hiccough; but the juice of it in women hindereth conception. Matthiolus saith, that if a dram of the dust that is on the backside of the leaves be mixed with half a dram of amber in powder, and taken with the juice of purslain or plantain, it helps the running of the reins speedily, and that the herb and root being boiled and taken, helpeth all melancholy diseases, and those especially that arise from the French disease. Camerarius saith. That the distilled water thereof being drank, is very effectual against the stone in the reins and bladder; and that the lee that is made of the ashes thereof being drank for some time together, helpeth splenetic persons. It is used in outward remedies for the same purpose.

STAR THISTLE.

Descript.] A Common star thistle hath divers narrow leaves lying next the ground, cut on the edges somewhat deeply into many parts, soft or alittle woolly, all over green, among which rise up divers weak stalks parted into many branches, all lying down to the ground, that it seemeth a pretty bush, set with divers the like divided leaves up the tops, where severally do stand small whitish green heads, set with sharp white pricks (no part of the plant else being prickly) which are somewhat yellowish; out of the middle whereof riseth the flowers, composed of many small reddish purple threads; and

in the heads, after the flowers are past, come small whitish round seed, lying down as others do. The root is small, long and woody, perishing every year, and rising again of their own sowing.

Place.] It groweth wild in the fields about London in many places, as at Mile-End green, in Finsbury fields, beyond the windmills, and many other places.

Time.] It flowereth early, and seedeth in July, and sometimes in August.

Government and Virtues.] This, as almost all thistles are, is under Mars. The seed of this star thistle made into powder, and drank in wine, provoketh urine, and helpeth to break the stone, and driveth it forth. The root in powder, and given in wine and drank, is good against the plague and pestilence; and drank in the morning fasting for some time together, it is very profitable for a fistula, in any part of the body. Baptista Sardas doth much commend the distilled water hereof, being drank, to help the French disease, to open the obstructions of the liver, and cleanse the blood from corrupted humours, and is profitable against the quotidian or tertian ague.

STRAWBERRIES.

THESE are so well known through this land, that they need no description.

Time.] They flower in May ordinarily, and the fruit is ripe shortly after.

Government and Virtues.] Venus owns the herb. Strawberries, when they are green, are cool and dry; but when they are ripe they are cool and moist: The berries are exeellent good to cool the liver, the blood, and the spleen, or an hot choleric stomach; to refresh and comfort the fainting spirits, and quench thirst: They are good also for other inflammations; yet it is not amiss to refrain from them in a fever, lest by their putrifying in the stomach they increase the fits. The leaves and roots boiled in wine and water, and drank, do likewise cool the liver and blood, and assuage all inflammations in the reins and bladder, provoke urine, and allay the heat and sharpness thereof. The same also being drank stayeth the bloody flux and women's courses, and help the swelling of the spleen. The water of the berries carefully distilled, is a sovereign remedy and cordial in the panting and beating of the heart, and is good for the yellow jaundice. The juice dropped into foul ulcers, or they washed therewith, or the decoction of the herb and root, doth wonderfully cleanse and help to cure them. Lotions and gargles for sore mouths, or ulcers therein, or in the privy parts or elsewhere, are made with the leaves and roots thereof; which is

also good to fasten loose teeth, and to heal spungy foul gums. It helpeth also to stay catarrhs, or defluxions of rheum in the mouth, throat, teeth, or eyes. The juice or water is singular good for hot and red inflamed eyes, if dropped into them, or they bathed therewith. It is also of excellent property for all pushes, wheals, and other breakings forth of hot and sharp humours in the face and hands, and other parts of the body, to bathe them therewith, and to take away any redness in the face, or spots, or other deformities in the skin, and to make it clear and smooth. Some use this medicine: Take so many strawberries as you shall think fitting, and put them into a distillatory, or body of glass fit for them, which being well closed, set it in a bed of horse dung for your use. It is an excellent water for hot inflamed eyes, and to take away a film or skin that beginneth to grow over them, and for such other defects in them as may be helped by any outward medicine.

SUCCORY.

Descript.] THE garden succory hath longer and narrower leaves than the endive, and more cut in or torn on the edges, and the root abideth many years. It beareth also blue flowers like endive, and the seed is hardly distinguished from the seed of the smooth or ordinary endive.

The wild succory hath divers long leaves lying on the ground, very much cut in or torn on the edges, on both sides, even to the middle rib, ending in a point; sometimes it hath a rib down to the middle of the leaves, from among which riseth up a hard round, woody stalk, spreading into many branches, set with smaller and lesser divided leaves on them up to the tops, where stand the flowers, which are like the garden kind, and the seed is also (only take notice that the flowers of the garden kind are gone in on a sunny day, they being so cold, that they are not able to endure the beams of the sun, and therefore more delight in the shade) the root is white, but more hard and woody than the garden kind. The whole plant is exceeding bitter.

Place.] This groweth in many places of our land in waste untilled and barren fields. The other only in gardens.

Government and Virtues.] It is an herb of Jupiter. Garden succory, as it is more dry and less cold than endive, so it openeth more. An handful of the leaves, or roots boiled in wine or water, and a draught thereof drank fasting, driveth forth choleric and phlegmatic humours, openeth obstructions of the liver, gall and spleen; helpeth the yellow jaundice, the heat of the reins, and of the urine; the dropsy also; and those that have an evil disposition in their bodies, by reason of long sickness, evil diet, &c. which the Greeks call cachexia. A decoction

thereof made with wine, and drank, is very effectual against long lingering agues; and a dram of the seed in powder, drank in wine, before the fit of the ague, helpeth to drive it away. The distilled water of the herb and flowers (if you can take them in time) hath the like properties, and is especially good for hot stomachs, and in agues, either pestilential or of long continuance; for swooning and passions of the heart, for the heat and head-ach in children, and for the blood and liver. The said water, or the juice, or the bruised leaves applied outwardly, allays swellings, inflammations, St. Anthony's fire, pushes, wheals, and pimples, especially used with a little vinegar; as also to wash pestiferous sores. The said water is very effectual for sore eyes that are inflamed with redness, and for nurses' breasts that are pained by the abundance of milk.

The wild succory, as it is more bitter, so it is more strengthening to the stomach and liver.

STONE-CROP, PRICK-MADAM, OR SMALL HOUSELEEK.

Descript.] IT groweth with divers trailing branches upon the ground, set with many thick, flat, roundish, whitish green leaves, pointed at the ends. The flowers stand many of them together, somewhat loosely. The roots are small, and run creeping under ground.

Place.] It groweth upon the stone walls and mud walls, upon the tiles of houses, and pent-houses, and amongst rubbish, and in other gravelly places.

Time.] It flowereth in June and July, and the leaves are green all the winter.

Government and Virtues.] It is under the dominion of the Moon, cold in quality, and something binding, and therefore very good to stay defluxions, especially such as fall upon the eyes. It stops bleeding, both inward and outward, helps cankers, and all fretting sores and ulcers; It abates the heat of choler, thereby preventing diseases arising from choleric humours. It expels poison much, resisteth pestilential fevers, being exceeding good also for tertian agues: You may drink the decoction of it, if you please, for all the foregoing infirmities. It is so harmless an herb, you can scarce use it amiss: Being bruised and applied to the place, it helps the king's evil, and any other knots or kernels in the flesh; as also the piles.

ENGLISH TOBACCO.

Descript.] THIS riseth up with a round thick stalk, about two feet high, whereon do grow thick, flat green leaves, nothing so large as the other Indian kind, somewhat round pointed also, and nothing dented about the edges. The stalk branches forth, and beareth at the tops divers flowers set on great husks like the other, but nothing so large; scarce standing above the brims of the husks, round pointed also, and of a greenish yellow colour. The seed that followeth is not so bright, but larger, contained in the like great heads. The roots are neither so great nor woody; it perisheth every year with the hard frosts in winter, but riseth generally of its own sowing.

Place.] This came from some parts of Brasil, as it is thought, and is more familiar in our country than any of the other sorts; early giving ripe seed, which the others seldom do.

Time.] It flowereth from June, sometimes to the end of August, or later, and the seed ripeneth in the mean time.

Government and Virtues.] It is a Martial plant. It is found by good experience to be available to expectorate tough phlegm from the stomach, chest and lungs. The juice thereof made into a syrup, or the distilled water of the herb drank with some sugar, or without, if you will, or the smoke taken by a pipe, as is usual, but fasting, helpeth to expel worms in the stomach and belly, and to ease the pains in the head, or megrim, and the griping pains in the bowels. It is profitable for those that are troubled with the stone in the kidneys, both to ease the pains by provoking urine, and also to expel gravel and the stone engendered therein, and hath been found very effectual to expel windiness, and other humours, which cause the strangling of the mother. The seed hereof is very effectual to expel the tooth ach, and the ashes of the burnt herb to cleanse the gums, and make the teeth white. The herb bruised and applied to the place grieved with the king's evil, helpeth it in nine or ten days effectually. Monardus saith, it is a counter-poison against the biting of any venomous creature, the herb also being outwardly applied to the hurt place. The distilled water is often given with some sugar before the fit of an ague, to lessen it, and take it away in three or four times using. If the distilled fæces of the herb, having been bruised before the distillation, and not distilled dry, be set in warm dung for fourteen days, and afterwards be hung up in a bag in a wine cellar, the liquor that distilleth therefrom is singularly good to use for cramps, achs, the gout and sciatica, and to heal itches, scabs, and running ulcers, cankers, and all foul sores whatsoever. The juice is also good for all the said griefs, and likewise to kill lice in chil-

dren's heads. The green herb bruised and applied to any green wounds, cureth any fresh wound or cut whatsoever; and the juice put into old sores, both cleanseth and healeth them. There is also made hereof a singular good salve to help imposthumes, hard tumours, and other swellings by blows and falls.

THE TAMARISK TREE.

IT is so well known in the place where it grows, that it needeth no description.

Time.] It flowereth about the end of May, or in June, and the seed is ripe and blown away in the beginning of September.

Government and Virtues.] A gallant Saturnine herb it is. The root, leaves, young branches, or bark boiled in wine, and drank, stays the bleeding of the hæmorrhoidal veins, the spitting of blood, the too abounding of women's courses, the jaundice, the cholic, and the biting of all venomous serpents, except the asp; and outwardly applied, is very powerful against the hardness of the spleen, and the tooth-ach, pains in the ears, and red and watering eyes. The decoction, with some honey put thereto, is good to stay gangrenes and fretting ulcers, and to wash those that are subject to nits and lice. Alpinus and Veslingius affirm, that the Egyptians do with good success use the wood of it to cure the French disease, as others do with lignum vitæ or guiacum; and give it also to those who have the leprosy, scabs, ulcers, or the like. Its ashes doth quickly heal blisters raised by burnings or scaldings. It helps the dropsy, arising from the hardness of the spleen, and therefore to drink out of cups made of the wood is good for splenetic persons. It is also helpful for melancholy, and the black jaundice that ariseth thereof.

GARDEN TANSY.

GARDEN tansy is so well known, that it needeth no description.

Time.] It flowereth in June and July.

Government and Virtues.] Dame Venus was minded to pleasure women with child by this herb, for there grows not an herb fitter for their use than this is; it is just as tho' it were cut out for the purpose. This herb bruised and applied to the navel, stays miscarriages; I know no herb like it for that use: Boiled in ordinary beer, and the decoction drank, doth the like; and if her womb be not as she would have it, this decoction will make it so. Let those women that desire children love this herb, it is their best companion, their husband excepted. Also it con-

sumes the phlegmatic humours, the cold and moist constitution of winter most usually affects the body of man with, and that was the first reason of eating tansies in the spring. At last the world being over-run with popery, a monster called Superstition perks up his head, and, as a judgment of God, obscures the bright beams of knowledge by his dismal looks; (physicians seeing the pope and his imps selfish, they began to do so too) and now forsooth tansies must be eaten only on Palm and Easter Sundays, and their neighbour days: At last superstition being too hot to hold, and the selfishness of physicians walking in the clouds; after the friars and monks had made the people ignorant, the superstition of the time was found out, by the virtue of the herb hidden, and now it is almost, if not altogether, left off. Surely our physicians are beholden to none so much as they are to monks and friars; for want of eating this herb in spring, maketh people sickly in summer; and that makes work for the physician. If it be against any man or woman's conscience to eat tansy in the spring, I am as unwilling to burthen their conscience, as I am that they should burthen mine; they may boil it in wine and drink the decoction, it will work the same effect. The decoction of the common tansy, or the juice drank in wine, is a singular remedy for all the griefs that come by stopping of the urine, helpeth the strangury and those that have weak reins and kidneys. It is also very profitable to dissolve and expel wind in the stomach, belly, or bowels, to procure women's courses, and expel windiness in the matrix, if it be bruised and often smelled unto, as also applied to the lower part of the belly. It is also very profitable for such women as are given to miscarry in child bearing, to cause them to go out their full time; it is used also against the stone in the reins, especially in men. The herb fried with eggs (as it is the custom in the spring-time) which is called a tansy, helpeth to digest and carry downward those bad humours that trouble the stomach. The seed is very profitably given to children for the worms, and the juice in drink is as effectual. Being boiled in oil, it is good for the sinews shrunk by cramps, or pained with colds, if thereto applied.

WILD TANSY, OR SILVER WEED.

THIS is also so well known, that it needeth no description.

Place.] It groweth in every place.

Time.] It flowereth in June and July.

Government and Virtues.] Now Dame Venus hath fitted women with two herbs of one name, the one to help conception, and the other to maintain beauty, and what more can be expected of her? What now remains for you, but to love your

husbands, and not to be wanting to your poor neighbours? Wild tansy stayeth the lask, and all the fluxes of blood in men and women, which some say it will do, if the green herb be worn in the shoes, so it be next the skin; and it is true enough, that it will stop the terms, if worn so, and the whites too, for ought I know. It stayeth also spitting or vomiting of blood. The powder of the herb taken in some of the distilled water, helpeth the whites in women, but more especially if a little coral and ivory in powder be put to it. It is also recommended to help children that are bursten, and have a rupture, being boiled in water and salt. Being boiled in water and drank it easeth the griping pains of the bowels, and is good for the sciatica and joint-achs. The same boiled in vinegar, with honey and alum, and gargled in the mouth, easeth the pains of the tooth-ach, fasteneth loose teeth, helpeth the gums that are sore, and settleth the palate of the mouth in its place, when it is fallen down. It cleanseth and healeth ulcers in the mouth, or secret parts, and is very good for inward wounds, and to close the lips of green wounds, and to heal old, moist, and corrupt running sores in the legs or elsewhere. Being bruised and applied to the soles of the feet and hand wrists, it wonderfully cooleth the hot fits of agues, be they never so violent. The distilled water cleanseth the skin of all discolourings therein, as morphew, sun-burnings, &c. as also pimples, freckles, and the like; and dropped into the eyes, or clothes wet therein and applied, taketh away the heat and inflammations in them.

THISTLES.

OF these are many kinds growing here in England, which are so well known, that they need no description: Their difference is easily known by the places where they grow, *viz.*

Place.] Some grow in fields, some in meadows, and some among the corn; others on heaths, greens, and waste grounds in many places.

Time.] They flower in July and August, and their seed is ripe quickly after.

Government and Virtues.] Surely Mars rules it, it is such a prickly business. All these thistles are good to provoke urine, and to mend the stinking smell thereof; as also the rank smell of the arm-pits, or the whole body, being boiled in wine and drank; and are said also to help a stinking breath, and to strengthen the stomach. Pliny saith, that the juice bathed on the place that wanteth hair, it being fallen off, will cause it to grow again speedily.

THE MELANCHOLY THISTLE.

Descript.] IT riseth up with tender single hoary green stalks, bearing thereon four or five green leaves, dented about the edges; the points thereof are little or nothing prickly, and at the top usually but one head, yet sometimes from the bosom of the uppermost leaves there shooteth forth another small head, scaly and prickly, with many reddish thrumbs or threads in the middle, which being gathered fresh, will keep the colour a long time, and fadeth not from the stalk a long time, while it perfects the seed, which is of a mean bigness, lying in the down. The root hath many strings fastened to the head, or upper part, which is blackish, and perisheth not.

There is another sort little differing from the former, but that the leaves are more green above, and more hoary underneath, and the stalk being about two feet high beareth but one scaly head, with threads and seeds as the former.

Place.] They grow in many moist meadows of this land, as well in the southern, as in the northern parts.

Time.] They flower about July or August, and their seed ripeneth quickly after.

Government and Virtues.] It is under Capricorn, and therefore under both Saturn and Mars, one rids melancholy by sympathy, the other by antipathy. Their virtues are but few, but those not to be despised; for the decoction of the thistle in wine being drank, expels superfluous melancholy out of the body, and makes a man as merry as a cricket; superfluous melancholy causeth care, fear, sadness, despair, envy, and many evils more besides; but religion teaches to wait upon God's providence, and cast our care upon him who careth for us. What a fine thing were it if men and women could live so? And yet seven years care and fear makes a man never the wiser, nor a farthing richer. Dioscorides saith, the root borne about one doth the like, and removes all diseases of melancholy. Modern writers laugh at him; *Let them laugh that win*, my opinion is, that it is the best remedy against all melancholy diseases that grows; they that please may use it.

OUR LADY'S THISTLE.

Descript.] OUR lady's thistle hath divers very large and broad leaves lying on the ground cut in, and as it were crumpled, but somewhat hairy on the edges, of a white green shining colour, wherein are many lines and streaks of a milk white colour, running all over, and set with many sharp and stiff prickles all about, among which riseth up one or

more strong, round and prickly stalks, set full of the like leaves up to the top, where at the end of every branch, comes forth a great prickly thistle like head, strongly armed with prickles, and with bright purple thrumbs rising out of the middle; after they are past the seed groweth in the said heads, lying in soft white down, which is somewhat flattish in the ground, and many strings and fibres fastened thereunto. All the whole plant is bitter in taste.

Place.] It is frequent on the banks of almost every ditch.

Time.] It flowereth and seedeth in June, July, and August.

Government and Virtues.] Our lady's thistle is under Jupiter, and thought to be as effectual as carduus benedictus for agues, and to prevent and cure the infection of the plague: as also to open the obstructions of the liver and spleen, and thereby is good against the jaundice. It provoketh urine, breaketh and expelleth the stone, and is good for the dropsy. It is effectual also for the pains in the sides, and many other inward pains and gripings. The seed and distilled water are held powerful to all the purposes aforesaid, and besides, it is often applied both outwardly with cloths or spunges to the region of the heart, against swoonings and the passions of it. It cleanseth the blood exceedingly: and in spring, if you please to boil the tender plant (but cut off the prickles, unless you have a mind to choak yourself) it will change your blood as the season changeth, and that is the way to be safe.

THE WOOLLEN, OR COTTON THISTLE.

Descript.] THIS hath many large leaves lying upon the ground, somewhat cut in and as it were crumpled on the edges, of a green colour on the upper side, but covered over with a long hairy wool or cotton down, set with most sharp and cruel pricks; from the middle of whose heads of flowers come forth many purplish crimson threads, and sometimes white, although but seldom. The seed that follows in those white downy heads, is somewhat large and round, resembling the seed of lady's thistle, but paler; the root is great and thick, spreading much, yet usually dieth after seed time.

Place.] It groweth on divers ditch-banks, and in the cornfields, and highways, generally throughout the land, and is often growing in gardens.

Government and Virtues.] It is a plant of Mars. Dioscorides and Pliny write, That the leaves and roots hereof taken in drink, help those that have a crick in their neck, that they cannot turn it, unless they turn their whole body. Galen saith, that the roots and leaves hereof are good for such persons that

have their bodies drawn together by some spasm or convulsion, or other infirmities; as the rickets (or as the college of physicians would have it, rachites, about which name they have quarrelled sufficiently) in children, being a disease that hindereth their growth, by binding their nerves, ligaments, and whole structure of their body.

THE FULLER'S THISTLE, OR TEASLE.

IT is so well known, that it needs no discription, being used with the clothworkers.

The wild teasle is in all things like the former, but that the prickles are small, soft, and upright, not hooked or stiff, and the flowers of this are of a fine blueish, or pale carnation colour, but that of the manured kind, whitish.

Place.] The first groweth, being sown in gardens or fields for the use of clothworkers: The other near ditches and rills of water in many places of this land.

Time.] They flower in July, and are ripe in the end of August.

Government and Virtues.] It is an herb of Venus. Dioscorides saith, that the root bruised and boiled in wine, till it be thick, and kept in a brazen vessel, and after spread as a salve, and applied to the fundament, doth heal the cleft thereof, cankers and fistulas therein, also taketh away warts and wens. The juice of the leaves dropped into the ears, killeth worms in them. The distilled water of the leaves dropped into the eyes, taketh away redness and mists in them that hinder the sight, and is often used by women to preserve their beauty, and to take away redness and inflammations, and all other heats or discolourings.

TREACLE MUSTARD.

Descript.] IT riseth with a hard round stalk, about a foot high, parted into some branches, having divers soft green leaves, long and narrow, set thereon, waved, but not cut into the edges, broadest towards the ends, somewhat round pointed; the flowers are white that grow at the tops of the branches, spike fashion, one above another; after which come round pouches, parted in the middle with a furrow, having one blackish brown seed on either side, somewhat sharp in taste, and smelling of garlick, especially in the fields where it is natural, but not so much in gardens: The roots are small and thready, perishing every year.

Give me leave here to add mithridate mustard, altho' it may seem more properly by the name to belong to M, in the alphabet.

MITHRIDATE MUSTARD.

Descript.] THIS groweth higher than the former, spreading more and higher branches, whose leaves are smaller and narrower, sometimes unevenly dented about the edges. The flowers are small and white, growing on long branches, with much smaller and rounder vessels after them, and parted in the same manner, having smaller brown seeds than the former, and much sharper in taste. The root perisheth after seed time, but abideth the first winter after springing.

Place.] They grow in sundry places in this land, as half a mile from Hatfield, by the river side, under a hedge as you go to Hatfield, and in the street of Peckham on Surry side.

Time.] They flower and seed from May to August.

Government and Virtues.] Both of them are herbs of Mars. The mustards are said to purge the body both upwards and downwards, and procureth women's courses so abundantly, that it suffocateth the birth. It breaketh inward imposthumes, being taken inwardly; and used in clysters, helpeth the sciatica. The seed applied, doth the same. It is an especial ingredient unto mithridate and treacle, being of itself an antidote resisting poison, venom, and putrefaction. It is also available in many cases for which the common mustard is used, but somewhat weaker.

THE BLACK THORN, OR SLOE-BUSH.

IT is so well known, that it needeth no description.

Place.] It groweth in every county, in the hedges and borders of fields.

Time.] It flowereth in April, and sometimes in March, but the fruit ripeneth after all other plums whatsoever, and is not fit to be eaten until the autumn frost mellow them.

Government and Virtues.] All the parts of the sloe-bush are binding, cooling, and dry, and all effectual to stay bleeding at the nose and mouth, or any other place; the lask of the belly or stomach, or the bloody flux, the too much abounding of women's courses, and helpeth to ease the pains of the sides, bowels, and guts, that come by overmuch scouring, to drink the decoction of the bark of the roots, or more usually the decoction of the berries, either fresh or dried. The conserve also is of very much use, and more familiarly taken for the purpose aforesaid. But the distilled water of the flowers first steeped in sack for a night, and drawn therefrom by the heat of balneum anglico a bath, is a most certain remedy, tried and approved, to ease all manner of gnawings in the stomach, the sides and bowels, or any griping pains in any of them, to drink a small

quantity when the extremity of pain is upon them. The leaves also are good to make lotions to gargle and wash the mouth and throat, wherein are swellings, sores, or kernels; and to stay the defluctions of rheum to the eyes, or other parts; as also to cool the heat and inflammations of them, and ease hot pains of the head, to bathe the forehead and temples therewith. The simple distilled water of the flowers is very effectual for the said purposes, and the condensate juice of the sloes. The distilled water of the green berries is used also for the said effects.

THOROUGH WAX, OR THOROUGH LEAF.

Descript.] COMMON thorough-wax sendeth forth a straight round stalk, two feet high, or better, whose lower leaves being of a blueish colour, are smaller and narrower than those up higher, and stand close thereto, not compassing it; but as they grow higher, they do more encompass the stalks, until it wholly pass through them, branching toward the top into many parts, where the leaves grow smaller again, every one standing singly, and never two at a joint. The flowers are small and yellow, standing in tufts at the heads of the branches, where afterwards grow the seed, being blackish, many thick thrust together. The root is small, long and woody, perishing every year, after seed-time, and rising again plentifully of its own sowing.

Place.] It is found growing in many corn-fields and pasture-grounds in this land.

Time.] It flowereth in July, and the seed is ripe in August.

Temperature and Virtues.] Both this and the former are under the influence of Saturn. Thorough-wax is of singular good use for all sorts of bruises and wounds either inward or outward; and old ulcers and sores likewise, if the decoction of the herb with water and wine be drank, and the place washed therewith, or the juice of the green herb bruised, or boiled, either by itself, or with other herbs, in oil or hog's grease, to be made into an ointment to serve all the year. The decoction of the herb, or powder of the dried herb, taken inwardly, and the same, or the leaves bruised and applied outwardly, is singular good for all ruptures and burstings, especially in children before they be too old. Being applied with a little flour and wax to children's navels that stick forth, it helpeth them.

THYME.

IT is in vain to describe an herb so commonly known.

Government and Virtues.] It is a noble strengthener of the lungs, as notable a one as grows; neither is there scarce a better remedy growing for that disease in children which they

commonly call the Chin-cough, than it is. It purgeth the body of phlegm, and is an excellent remedy for shortness of breath. It kills worms in the belly, and being a notable herb of Venus, provokes the terms, gives safe and speedy delivery to women in travail, and brings away the after birth. It is so harmless you need not fear the use of it. An ointment made of it takes away hot swellings and warts, helps the sciatica and dullness of sight, and takes away pains and hardness of the spleen: 'Tis excellent for those that are troubled with the gout; as also to anoint the cods that are swelled. It easeth pains in the loins and hips. The herb taken any way inwardly, comforts the stomach much, and expels wind.

WILD THYME, OR MOTHER OF THYME.

WILD thyme also is so well known, that it needeth no description.

Place.] It may be found commonly in commons, and other barren places throughout the nation.

Government and Virtues.] It is under the dominion of Venus, and under the sign Aries, and therefore chiefly appropriated to the head. It provoketh urine and the terms, and easeth the griping pain of the belly, cramps, ruptures, and inflammation of the liver. If you make a vinegar of the herb, as vinegar of roses is made (you may find out the way in my translation of the London Dispensatory) and anoint the head with it, it presently stops the pains thereof. It is excellent good to be given either in phrenzy or lethargy, although they are two contrary diseases: It helps spitting and pissing of blood, coughing, and vomiting; it comforts and strengthens the head, stomach, reins, and womb, expels wind, and breaks the stone.

TORMENTIL, OR SEPTFOIL.

Descript.] THIS hath reddish, slender, weak branches rising from the root, lying on the ground, rather leaning than standing upright, with many short leaves that stand closer to the stalks than cinquefoil (to which this is very like) with the foot-stalk compassing the branches in several places; but those that grow to the ground are set upon long foot-stalks, each whereof are like the leaves of cinquefoil, but somewhat long and lesser dented about the edges, many of them divided but into five leaves, but most of them into seven, whence it is also called septfoil: yet some may have six, and some eight, according to the fertility of the soil. At the tops of the branches stand divers small yellow flowers, consisting of five leaves, like those of cinquefoil, but smaller. The root is smaller than bis-

tort, somewhat thick, but blacker without, and not so red within, yet sometimes a little crooked, having blackish fibres there t.

Placé.] It groweth as well in woods and shadowy places, as in the open champain country, about the borders of fields in many places of this land, and almost in every broom field in Essex.

Time.] It flowereth all the summer long.

Government and Virtues.] This is a gallant herb of the Sun. Tormentil is most excellent to stay all kind of fluxes of blood or humours in man or woman, whether at nose, mouth, or belly. The juice of the herb and root, or the decoction thereof, taken with some Venice treacle, and the person laid to swear, expels any venom or poison, or the plague, fever, or other contagious diseases, as pox, measles, &c. for it is an ingredient in all antidotes or counter poisons. Andreas Valesius is of opinion, that the decoction of this root is no less effectual to cure the French pox than guiacum of China; and it is not unlikely, because it so mightily resisteth putrefaction. The root taken inwardly is most effectual to help any flux of the belly, stomach, spleen, or blood; and the juice wonderfully opens obstructions of the liver and lungs, and thereby helpeth the yellow jaundice. The powder or decoction drank, or to sit thereon as a bath, is an assured remedy against abortion in women, if it proceed from the over flexibility or weakness of the inward retentive faculty; as also a plaister made therewith, and vinegar applied to the reins of the back, doth much help not only this, but also those that cannot hold their water, the powder being taken in the juice of plantain, and is also commended against the worms in children. It is very powerful in ruptures and burstings, as also for bruises or falls, to be used as well outwardly as inwardly. The root hereof made up with pellitory of Spain and alum, and put into a hollow tooth, not only assuageth the pain, but stayeth the flux of humours which causeth it. Tormentil is no less effectual and powerful a remedy against outward wounds, sores and hurts, than for inward, and is therefore a special ingredient to be used in wound drinks, lotions and injections, for foul corrupt rotten sores and ulcers of the mouth, secrets, or other parts of the body. The juice or powder of the root put in ointments, plaisters, and such things that are to be applied to wounds or sores, is very effectual, as the juice of the leaves and the root bruised and applied to the throat or jaws, healeth the king's evil, and easeth the pain of the sciatica; the same used with a little vinegar, is a special remedy against the running sores of the head or other parts; scabs also, and the itch or any such eruptions in the skin, proceeding of salt and sharp humours. The same is also effectual for the piles or

hæmorrhoids, if they be washed or bathed therewith, or with the distilled water of the herb and roots. It is found also helpful to dry up any sharp rheum that distilleth from the head into the eyes, causing redness, pain, waterings, itching, or the like, if a little prepared tutia, or white amber, be used with the distilled water thereof. Many women use this water as a secret to help themselves and others, when they are troubled with too much flowing of the whites or reds, both to drink it, or inject it with a syringe. And here is enough, only remember the Sun challengeth this herb.

TURNSOLE, OR HELIOTROPIUM.

Descript.] THE greater turnsole riseth with one upright stalk, about a foot high, or more, dividing itself almost from the bottom, into divers small branches, of a hoary colour; at each joint of the stalk and branches grow small broad leaves, somewhat white and hoary. At the tops of the stalks and branches stand small white flowers, consisting of four, and sometimes five small leaves, set in order one above another, upon a small crooked spike, which turneth inwards like a bowed finger, opening by degrees as the flowers blow open; after which in their place come forth cornered seed, four for the most part standing together; the root is small and thready, perishing every year, and the seed shedding every year, raiseth it again the next spring.

Place.] It groweth in gardens, and flowereth and seedeth with us, notwithstanding it is not natural to this land, but to Italy, Spain, and France, where it grows plentifully.

Government and Virtues.] It is an herb of the Sun, and a good one too. Dioscorides saith, that a good handful of this, which is called the great turnsole, boiled in water, and drank, purgeth both choler and phlegm; and boiled with cummin, helpeth the stone in the reins, kidneys, or bladder, provoketh urine and women's courses, and causeth an easy and speedy delivery in child-birth. The leaves bruised and applied to places pained with the gout, or that have been out of joint, and newly set, and full of pain, do give much ease: the seed and juice of the leaves also being rubbed with a little salt upon warts or wens, and other kernels in the face, eye-lids, or any other part of the body, will, by often using, take them away.

MEADOW TREFOIL, OR HONEYSUCKLES.

IT is so well known, especially by the name of Honeysuckles, white and red, that I need not describe them.

Place.] They grow almost every where in this land.

Government and Virtues.] Mercury hath dominion over the

common sorts. Dodoneus saith, the leaves and flowers are good to ease the griping pains of the gout, the herb being boiled and used in a clyster. If the herb be made into a poultice, and applied to inflammations, it will ease them. The juice dropped in the eyes, is a familiar medicine, with many country people, to take away the pin and web (as they call it) in the eyes; it also allayeth the heat and blood-shooting of them. Country people do also in many places drink the juice thereof against the biting of an adder; and having boiled the herb in water, they first wash the place with the decoction, and then lay some of the herb also to the hurt place. The herb also boiled in swine's grease, and so made into an ointment, is good to apply to the biting of any venomous creatures. The herb also bruised and heated between tiles, and applied hot to the share, causeth them to make water who had it stopt before. It is held likewise to be good for wounds, and to take away seed. The decoction of the herb and flowers, with the seed and root, taken for some time, helpeth women that are troubled with the whites. The seed and flowers boiled in water, and after made into a poultice with some oil, and applied, helpeth hard swellings and imposthumes.

HEART TREFOIL.

BESIDES the ordinary sort of trefoil, here are two more remarkable, and one of which may be probably called heart trefoil, not only because the leaf is triangular, like the heart of a man, but also because each leaf contains the perfect icon of a heart, and that in its proper colour, viz. a flesh colour.

Place.] It groweth between Longford and Bow, and beyond Southwark, by the highway and parts adjacent.

Government and Virtues.] It is under the dominion of the Sun, and if it were used, it would be found as great a strengthener of the heart, and cherisher of the vital spirits as grows, relieving the body against fainting and swoonings, fortifying it against poison and pestilence, and defending the heart against the noisome vapours of the spleen.

PEARL TREFOIL.

IT differs not from the common sort, save only in this one particular, it hath a white spot in the leaf like a pearl. It is particularly under the dominion of the Moon, and its icon sheweth that it is of a singular virtue against the pearl, or pin and web in the eyes.

TUTSAN, OR PARK LEAVES.

Descript.] IT hath brownish shining round stalks, crested the length thereof, rising two by two, and sometimes three feet high, branching forth even from the bottom, having divers joints, and at each of them two fair large leaves standing, of a dark blueish green colour on the upper side, and of a yellowish green underneath, turning reddish toward autumn. At the top of the stalks stand large yellow flowers, and heads with seed, which being greenish at the first, and afterwards reddish, turn to be of a blackish purple colour when they are ripe, with small brownish seed within them, and they yield a reddish juice or liquor, somewhat resinous, and of a harsh and styptic taste, as the leaves also and the flowers be, although much less, but do not yield such a clear claret wine colour, as some say it doth; the root is brownish, somewhat great, hard, and woody, spreading well in the ground.

Place.] It groweth in many woods, groves, and woody grounds, as parks and forests, and by hedge-sides in many places in this land, as in Hampstead wood, by Ratley in Essex, in the wilds of Kent, and in many other places needless to recite.

Time.] It flowereth later than St. John's or St. Peter's wort.

Government and Virtues.] It is an herb of Saturn, and a most noble antivenerean. Tutsan purgeth choleric humours, as St. Peter's-wort is said to do, for therein it worketh the same effects, both to help the sciatica and gout, and to heal burning by fire; it stayeth all the bleedings of wounds, if either the green herb be bruised, or the powder of the dry be applied thereto. It hath been accounted, and certainly it is, a sovereign herb to heal either wound or sore, either outwardly or inwardly, and therefore always used in drinks, lotions, balms, oils, ointments, or any other sorts of green wounds, old ulcers, or sores, in all which the continual experience of former ages hath confirmed the use thereof to be admirable good, though it be not so much in use now, as when physicians and surgeons were so wise as to use herbs more than now they do.

GARDEN VALERIAN.

Descript.] THIS hath a thick short greyish root, lying for the most part above ground, shooting forth on all other sides such like small pieces of roots, which have all of them many long green strings and fibres under them in the ground, whereby it draweth nourishment. From the head of these roots spring up many green leaves, which at first are some-

what broad and long, without any divisions at all in them, or denting on the edges; but those that rise up after are more and more divided on each side, some to the middle rib, being winged, as made of many leaves together on a stalk, and those upon a stalk, in like manner more divided, but smaller towards the top than below; the stalk riseth to be a yard high or more, sometimes branched at the top, with many small whitish flowers, sometimes dashed over at the edges with a pale purplish colour, of a little scent, which passing away, there followeth small brownish white seed, that is easily carried away with the wind. The root smelleth more strong than either leaf or flower, and is of more use in medicines.

Place.] It is generally kept with us in gardens.

Time.] It flowereth in June and July, and continueth flowering until the frost pull it down.

Government and Virtues.] This is under the influence of Mercury. Dioscorides saith, that the garden valerian hath a warming faculty, and that being dried and given to drink it provoketh urine, and helpeth the strangury. The decoction thereof taken, doth the like also, and taketh away pains of the sides, provoketh women's courses, and is used in antidotes. Pliny saith, that the powder of the root given in drink, or the decoction thereof taken, helpeth all stoppings and stranglings in any part of the body, whether they proceed of pains in the chest or sides, and taketh them away. The root of valerian boiled with liquorice, raisins, and anniseed, is singular good for those that are short-winded, and for those that are troubled with a cough, and helpeth to open the passages, and to expectorate phlegm easily. It is given to those that are bitten or stung by any venomous creature, being boiled in wine. It is of a special virtue against the plague, the decoction thereof being drank, and the root being used to smell to. It helpeth to expel the wind in the belly. The green herb with the root taken fresh, being bruised and applied to the head, taketh away the pains and prickings there, stayeth rheum and thin distillation, and being boiled in white wine, and a drop thereof put into the eyes, taketh away the dimness of the sight, or any pin or web therein; it is of excellent property to heal any inward sores or wounds, and also for outward hurts or wounds, and drawing away splinters or thorns out of the flesh.

VERVAIN.

Descript.] THE common vervain hath somewhat long broad leaves next the ground, deeply gashed about the edges, and some only deeply dented, or cut all alike, of a blackish green colour on the upper side, somewhat grey under-

neath. The stalk is square, branched into several parts, rising about two feet high, especially if you reckon the long spike of flowers at the tops of them, which are set on all sides one above another, and sometimes two or three together, being small and gaping, of a blue colour and white intermixed, after which come small round seed, in small and somewhat long heads; the root is small and long, but of no use.

Place.] It groweth generally throughout this land in divers places of the hedges and way-sides, and other waste grounds.

Time.] It flowereth in July, and the seed is ripe soon after.

Government and Virtues.] This is an herb of Venus, and excellent for the womb to strengthen and remedy all the cold griefs of it, as plantain doth the hot. Vervain is hot and dry, opening obstructions, cleansing and healing; it helpeth the yellow jaundice, the dropsy and the gout; it killeth and expelleth worms in the belly, and causeth a good colour in the face and body, strengtheneth as well as correcteth the diseases of the stomach, liver, and spleen; helps the cough, wheezings, and shortness of breath, and all the defects of the reins and bladder, expelling the gravel and stone. It is held to be good against the biting of serpents, and other venomous beasts, against the plague, and both tertian and quartan agues. It consolidateth and healeth also all wounds, both inward and outward, stayeth bleedings, and used with some honey, healeth all old ulcers and fistulas in the legs or other parts of the body; as also those ulcers that happen in the mouth; or used with hog's grease, it helpeth the swellings and pains of the secret parts in man or woman, also for the piles or hæmorrhoids; applied with some oil of roses and vinegar unto the forehead and temples, it easeth the inveterate pains and ach of the head, and is good for those that are frantic. The leaves bruised, or the juice of them mixed with some vinegar, doth wonderfully cleanse the skin, and taketh away morphew, freckles, fistulas, and other such like inflammations and deformities of the skin in any part of the body. The distilled water of the herb when it is in full strength, dropped into the eyes cleanseth them from films, clouds, or mists, that darken the sight, and wonderfully strengthens the optic nerves; the said water is very powerful in all the diseases aforesaid, either inward or outward, whether they be old corroding sores, or green wounds.

THE VINE.

THE leaves of the English vine (I do not mean to send you to the Canaries for a medicine) being boiled, make a good lotion for sore mouths; being boiled with barley meal into a

poultice, it cools inflammations of wounds; the dropping of the vine, when it is cut in the spring, which country people call tears, being boiled in a syrup, with sugar, and taken inwardly, is excellent to stay women's longings after every thing they see, which is a disease many women with child are subject to. The decoction of vine leaves in white wine doth the like; also the tears of the vine, drank two or three spoonfuls at a time, breaks the stone in the bladder. This is a very good remedy, and it is discreetly done, to kill a vine to cure a man, but the salt of the leaves are held to be better. The ashes of the burnt branches will make teeth that are as black as a coal, to be as white as snow, if you but every morning rub them with it. It is a most gallant tree of the sun, very sympathetical with the body of man, and that is the reason spirit of wine is the greatest cordial among all vegetables.

VIOLETS.

BOTH the tame and the wild are so well known, that they need no description.

Time.] They flower until the end of July, but are best in March, and the beginning of April.

Government and Virtues.] They are a fine, pleasing plant of Venus, of a mild nature, no way harmful. All the violets are cold and moist while they are fresh and green, and are used to cool any heat, or distemperature of the body, either inwardly or outwardly, as inflammations in the eyes, in the matrix or fundament, in imposthumes also, and hot swellings, to drink the decoction of the leaves and flowers made with water in wine, or to apply them poultice-wise to the grieved places: It likewise easeth pains in the head, caused through want of sleep; or any other pains arising of heat, being applied in the same manner, or with oil of roses. A dram weight of the dried leaves or flowers of violets, but the leaves more strongly, doth purge the body of choleric humours, and assuageth the heat, being taken in a draught of wine, or any other drink; the powder of the purple leaves of the flowers, only picked and dried and drank in water, is said to help the quinsy, and the falling-sickness in children, especially in the beginning of the disease. The flowers of the white violets ripen and dissolve swellings. The herb or flowers, while they are fresh, or the flowers when they are dry, are effectual in the pleurisy, and all diseases of the lungs, to lenefy the sharpness of hot rheums, and the hoarseness of the throat, the heat also and sharpness of urine, and all the pains of the back or reins, and bladder. It is good also for the liver and the jaundice, and all hot agues, to cool the heat, and quench the thirst; but the syrup of violets is of most use, and

of better effect, being taken in some convenient liquor; and if a little of the juice or syrup of lemons be put to it, or a few drops of the oil of vitriol, it is made therby the more powerful to cool the heat, and quench the thirst, and giveth to the drink a claret wine colour, and a fine tart relish, pleasing the taste. Violets taken, or made up with honey, do more cleanse and cool, and with sugar contrary-wise. The dried flowers of violets are accounted amongst the cordial drinks, powders, and other medicines, especially where cooling cordials are necessary. The green leaves are used with other herbs to make plaisters and poultices for inflammations and swelling, and to ease all pains whatsoever, arising of heat, and for the piles also, being fried with yolks of eggs, and applied thereto.

VIPER's BUGLOSS.

Descript.] THIS hath many long rough leaves lying on the ground, from among which arise up divers hard round stalks, very rough, as if they were thick set with prickles or hairs, whereon are set such like rough, hairy, or prickly sad green leaves, somewhat narrow; the middle rib for the most part being white. The flowers stand at the top of the stalk, branched forth in many long spiked leaves of flowers, bowing or turning like the turnsole, all opening for the most part on the one side, which are long and hollow, turning up the brims a little, of a purplish violet colour in them that are fully blown, but more reddish while they are in the bud, as also upon their decay and withering; but in some places of a paler purple colour, with a long pointel in the middle, feathered or parted at the top. After the flowers are fallen, the seeds growing to be ripe, are blackish, cornered and pointed somewhat like the head of a viper. The root is somewhat great and blackish, and woolly, when it groweth toward seed-time, and perisheth in the winter.

There is another sort, little differing from the former only in this, that it beareth white flowers.

Place.] The first groweth wild almost every where. That with white flowers about the castle-walls in Lewes in Sussex.

Time.] They flower in summer, and their seed is ripe quickly after.

Government and Virtues.] It is a most gallant herb of the Sun; it is a pity it is no more in use than it is. It is an especial remedy against the biting of the viper, and all other venomous beasts, or serpents; as also against poison, or poisonful herbs. Dioscorides and others say, that whosoever shall take of the herb or root before they be bitten, shall not be hurt by the poison of any serpent. The root or seed is thought to be most effectual

to comfort the heart, and expel sadness, or causeless melancholy; it tempers the blood, and allayeth hot fits of agues. The seed drank in wine, procureth abundance of milk in women's breasts. The same also being taken, easeth the pain in the joins, back, and kidneys. The distilled water of the herb when it is in flower, or its chief strength, is excellent to be applied either inwardly or outwardly, for all the griefs aforesaid. There is a syrup made hereof very effectual for the comforting the heart, and expelling sadness and melancholy.

WALL FLOWERS, OR WINTER GILLIFLOWERS.

THE garden kind are so well known that they need no description.

Descript.] The common single wall-flowers, which grow wild abroad, have sundry small, long, narrow, dark green leaves, set without order upon small round, whitish, woody stalks, which bear at the tops divers single yellow flowers one above another, every one bearing four leaves a-piece, and of a very sweet scent: after which come long pods, containing a reddish seed. The roots are white, hard and thready.

Place.] It groweth upon church walls, and old walls of many houses, and other stone walls in divers places; the other sort in gardens only.

Time.] All the single kinds do flower many times in the end of autumn; and if the winter be mild, all the winter long, but especially in the months of February, March, and April, and until the heat of the spring do spend them. But the double kinds continue not flowering in that manner all the year long, although they flower very early sometimes, and in some places very late.

Government and Virtues.] The Moon rules them. Galen, in his seventh book of simple medicines, saith, that the yellow wall-flowers work more powerfully than any of the other kinds, and are therefore of more use in physic. It cleanseth the blood, and freeth the liver and reins from obstructions, provoketh women's courses, expelleth the secundine, and the dead child; helpeth the hardness and pains of the mother, and of the spleen also: stayeth inflammations and swellings, comforteth and strengtheneth any weak part, or out of joint; helpeth to cleanse the eyes from mistiness or films upon them, and to cleanse the filthy ulcers in the mouth, or any other part, and is a singular remedy for the gout, and all aches and pains in the joints and sinews; a conserve made of the flowers, is used for a remedy both for the apoplexy and palsy.

THE WALNUT TREE.

IT is so well known, that it needeth no description.

Time.] It blossometh early before the leaves come forth, and the fruit is ripe in September.

Government and Virtues.] This is also a plant of the Sun. Let the fruit of it be gathered accordingly, which you shall find to be of most virtues whilst they are green, before they have shells. The bark of the tree doth bind and dry very much, and the leaves are much of the same temperature: but the leaves when they are older, are heating and drying in the second degree, and harder of digestion than when they are fresh, which, by reason of their sweetness, are more pleasing, and better digested in the stomach; and taken with sweet wine, they move the belly downwards, but being old, they grieve the stomach; and in hot bodies cause the choler to abound, and the head-ach, and are an enemy to those that have the cough; but are less hurtful to those that have a colder stomach, and are said to kill the broad worms in the belly or stomach. If they be taken with onions, salt, and honey, they help the biting of a mad dog, or the venom or infectious poison of any beast, &c. Caias Pompeius found in the treasury of Mithridates, king of Pontus, when he was overthrown, a scroll of his own hand writing, containing a medicine against any poison or infection; which is this; take two dry walnuts, and as many good figs, and twenty leaves of rue, bruised and beaten together with two or three corns of salt and and twenty juniper berries, which taken every morning fasting, preserveth from danger of poison and infection that day it is taken. The juice of the other green husks boiled with honey is an excellent gargle for sore mouths, or the heat and inflammations in the throat and stomach. The kernels, when they grow old, are more oily, and therefore not fit to be eaten, but are then used to heal the wounds of the sinews, gangrenes and carbuncles. The side kernels being burned, are then very astringent, and will stay lasks and women's courses, being taken in red wine, and stay the falling of the hair, and make it fair, being anointed with oil and wine. The green husks will do the like, being used in the same manner. The kernels beaten with rue and wine, being applied, helpeth the quinsy; and bruised with some honey, and applied to the ears, easeth the pains and inflammations of them. A piece of the green husks put into a hollow tooth, easeth the pain. The carkins hereof, taken before they fall off, dried and given a dram thereof in powder with white wine, wonderfully helpeth those that are troubled with the rising of the mother. The oil that

is pressed out of the kernels, is very profitable taken inwardly like oil of almonds, to help the cholic, and to expel wind very effectually; an ounce or two thereof may be taken at any time. The young green nuts taken before they be half ripe, and preserved with sugar, are of good use for those that have weak stomachs, or defluxions thereon. The distilled water of the green husks, before they be half ripe, is of excellent use to cool the heat of agues, being drank an ounce or two at a time; as also to resist the infection of the plague, if some of the same be also applied to the sores thereof. The same also cooleth the heat of green wounds and old ulcers, and healeth them, being bathed therewith. The distilled water of the green husks being ripe, when they are shelled from the nuts, and drank with a little vinegar, is good for the plague, so as before the taking thereof a vein be opened. The said water is very good against the quinsy, being gargled and bathed therewith, and wonderfully helpeth deafness, the noise, and other pains in the ears. The distilled water of the young green leaves in the end of May, performeth a singular cure on foul running ulcers and sores, to be bathed with wet cloths or sponges applied to them every morning.

WOLD, WELD, OR DYER'S WEED.

THE common kind groweth bushing with many leaves, long, narrow and flat upon the ground; of a dark blueish green colour, somewhat like unto woad, but nothing so large, a little crumpled, and as it were round-pointed, which do so abide the first year; and the next spring, from among them rise up divers round stalks, two or three feet high, beset with many such like leaves thereon, but smaller, and shooting forth small branches, which with the stalks carry many small yellow flowers, in a long spiked head at the top of them, where afterwards come the seed, which is small and black, inclosed in heads that are divided at the tops into four parts. The root is long, white and thick, abiding the winter. The whole herb changeth to be yellow, after it hath been in flower a while.

Place.] It groweth every where by the way sides, in moist grounds, as well as dry, in corners of fields and bye-lanes, and sometimes all over the field. In Sussex and Kent they call it green weed.

Time.] It flowereth about June.

Government and Virtues.] Matthiolus saith, that the root hereof cureth tough phlegm, digesteth raw phlegm, thinneth gross humours, dissolveth hard tumours, and openeth obstructions. Some do highly commend it against the bitings of venomous creatures, to be taken inwardly and applied outwardly to

the hurt place; as also for the plague or pestilence. The people in some counties of this land, do use to bruise the herb, and lay it to cuts or wounds in the hands or legs, to heal them.

WHEAT.

ALL the several kinds thereof are so well known unto almost all people, that it is altogether needless to write a description thereof.

Government and Virtues.] It is under Venus. Dioscorides saith, that to eat the corn of green wheat is hurtful to the stomach, and breedeth worms. Pliny saith, that the corn of wheat, roasted upon an iron pan, and eaten, are a present remedy for those that are chilled with cold. The oil pressed from wheat, between two thick plates of iron, or copper heated, healeth all tetters and ringworms, being used warm; and hereby Galen saith, he hath known many to be cured. Matthiolus commendeth the same to be put into hollow ulcers to heal them up, and it is good for chaps in the hands and feet, and to make rugged skin smooth. The green corns of wheat being chewed, and applied to the place bitten by a mad dog, heals it; slices of wheat bread soaked in red rose water, and applied to the eyes that are hot, red and inflamed, or blood-shotten, helpeth them. Hot bread applied for an hour, at times, for three days together, perfectly healeth the kernels in the throat, commonly called the king's evil. The flour of wheat mixed with the juice of henbane, stayeth the flux of humours in the joints, being laid thereon. The said meal being boiled in vinegar, helpeth the shrinking of the sinews, saith Pliny; and mixed with vinegar, and boiled together, healeth all freckles, spots and pimples on the face. Wheat flour, mixed with the yolk of an egg, honey, and turpentine, doth draw, cleanse and heal any boil, plague, sore, or foul ulcer. The bran of wheat meal steeped in sharp vinegar, and then bound in a linen cloth, and rubbed on those places that have the scurf, morphew, scabs or leprosy, will take them away, the body being first well purged and prepared. The decoction of the bran of wheat or barley, is of good use to bathe those places that are bursten by a rupture; and the said bran boiled in good vinegar, and applied to swollen breasts, helpeth them, and stayeth all inflammations. It helpeth also the biting of vipers (which I take to be no other than our English adder) and all other venomous creatures. The leaves of wheat meal applied with some salt, take away hardness of the skin, warts, and hard knots in the flesh. Starch moistened with rose water and laid to the cods, taketh away their itching. Wafers put in water, and drank, stayeth the lasks and bloody flux, and are profitably used both inwardly and outwardly for the ruptures in

children. Boiled in water unto a thick jelly, and taken, it stayeth spitting of blood; and boiled with mint and butter, it helpeth the hoarseness of the throat.

THE WILLOW TREE.

THESE are so well known, that they need no description; I shall therefore only shew you the virtues thereof.

Government and Virtues.] The Moon owns it. Both the leaves, bark, and the seed, are used to stanch bleeding of wounds and at mouth and nose, spitting of blood, and other fluxes of blood in man or woman, and to stay vomiting, and provocation thereunto, if the decoction of them in wine be drank. It helpeth also to stay thin, hot, sharp, salt distillations from the head upon the lungs, causing a consumption. The leaves bruised with some pepper, and drank in wine, helps much the wind cholic. The leaves bruised and boiled in wine, and drank, stayeth the heat of lust in man or woman, and quite extinguisheth it, if it be long used: The seed is also of the same effect. Water that is gathered from the willow, when it flowereth, the bark being slit, and a vessel fitting to receive it, is very good for redness and dimness of sight, or films that grow over the eyes, and stay the rheums that fall into them; to provoke urine, being stopped, if it be drank; to clear the face and skin from spots and discolourings. Galen saith, the flowers have an admirable faculty in drying up humours, being a medicine without any sharpness or corrosion: you may boil them in white wine, and drink as much as you will, so you drink not yourself drunk. The bark works the same effect, if used in the same manner, and the tree hath always a bark upon it, though not always flowers: the burnt ashes of the bark being mixed with vinegar, taketh away warts, corns, and superfluous flesh, being applied to the place. The decoction of the leaves or bark in wine, takes away scruff and dandriff by washing the place with it. It is a fine cool tree, the boughs of which are very convenient to be placed in the chamber of one sick of a fever.

WOAD.

Descript.] IT hath divers large leaves, long, and somewhat broad withal, like those of the greater plantain, but larger, thicker, of a greenish colour, somewhat blue withal. From among which leaves riseth up a lusty stalk, three or four feet high, with divers leaves set thereon; the higher the stalk riseth, the smaller are the leaves; at the top it spreadeth divers branches, at the end of which appear very pretty little yellow flowers, and after they pass away like other flowers of

the field, come husks, long and somewhat flat withal; in form they resemble a tongue, in colour they are black, and they hang bobbing downwards. The seed contained within these husks (if it be a little chewed) give an azure colour. The root is white and long.

Place.] It is sowed in fields for the benefit of it, where those that sow it, cut it three times a year.

Time.] It flowers in June, but it is long after before the seed is ripe.

Government and Virtues.] It is a cold and dry plant of Saturn. Some people affirm the plant to be destructive to bees, and fluxes them, which, if it be, I cannot help it. I should rather think, unless bees be contrary to other creatures, it possesseth them with the contrary disease, the nerb being exceeding dry and binding. However, if any bees be diseased thereby, the cure is, to set urine by them, but set it in a vessel that they cannot drown themselves, which may be remedied, if you put pieces of cork in it. The herb is so drying and binding, that it is not fit to be given inwardly. An ointment made thereof stancheth bleeding. A plaister made thereof, and applied to the region of the spleen which lies on the left side, takes away the hardness and pains thereof. The ointment is excellent good in such ulcers as abound with moisture, and takes away the corroding and fretting humours: It cools inflammations, quencheth St. Anthony's fire, and stayeth defluxion of the blood to any part of the body.

WOODBINE, OR HONEY-SUCKLES.

IT is a plant so common, that every one that hath eyes knows it, and he that hath none, cannot read a description, if I should write it.

Time.] They flower in June, and the fruit is ripe in August.

Government and Virtues.] Doctor Tradition, that grand introducer of errors, that hater of truth, lover of folly, and that mortal foe to Dr. Reason, hath taught the common people to use the leaves or flowers of this plant in mouth-water, and by long continuance of time, hath so grounded it in the brains of the vulgar, that you cannot beat it out with a beetle; All mouth-water sought to be cooling and drying, but honey-suckles are cleansing, consuming and digesting, and therefore no way fit for inflammations; thus Dr. Reason. Again if you please, we will leave Dr. Reason a while, and come to Dr. Experience, a learned gentleman, and his brother; take a leaf and chew it in your mouth, and you will quickly find it likelier to cause a sore mouth and throat than to cure it. Well then, if it be not good

for this, what is it good for? It is good for something, for God and nature made nothing in vain. It is an herb of Mercury, and appropriated to the lungs; the Celestial Crab claims common over it; neither is it a foe to the Lion: if the lungs be afflicted by Jupiter, this is your cure: It is fitting a conserve made of the flowers of it were kept in every gentlewomen's house; I know no better cure for an asthma than this; besides, it takes away the evil of the spleen, provokes urine, procures speedy delivery of women in travail, helps cramps, convulsions, and palsies, and whatsoever griefs come of cold or stopping: if you please to make use of it as an ointment, it will clear your skin of morphew, freckles, and sun-burnings, or whatever else discolours it, and then the maids will love it. Authors say, the flowers are of more effect than the leaves and that is true; but they say the seeds are least effectual of all. But Dr. Reason told me, that there was a vital spirit in every seed to beget its like; and Dr. Experience told me, that there was a greater heat in the seed than there was in any other part of the plant; and withal, that heat was the mother of action, and then judge if old Dr. Tradition (who may well be honoured for his age, but not for his goodness) hath not so poisoned the world with errors before I was born, that it was never well in its wits since, and there is great fear it will die mad.

WORMWOOD.

THREE wormwoods are familiar with us; one I shall not describe, another I shall describe, and the third be critical at; and I care not greatly if I begin with the last first.

Sea Wormwood hath gotten as many names as virtues, (and perhaps one more) sariphian, santonicon, belchion, narbinense, hantonicon, misneule, and a matter of twenty more which I shall not blot paper withal. A papist got the toy by the end, and he called it holy wormwood; and in truth, I am of opinion, their giving so much holiness to herbs, is the reason there remains so little in themselves. The seed of this wormwood is that which usually women give their children for the worms. Of all wormwoods that grow here, this is the weakest, but doctors commend it, and apothecaries sell it: the one must keep his credit, and the other get money, and that is the key of the work. The herb is good for something, because God made nothing in vain: Will you give me leave to weigh things in the balance of Reason? then thus; the seeds of the common wormwood are far more prevalent than the seed of this, to expel worms in children, or people of ripe age; of both, some are weak, some are strong. The sariphian wormwood is the weakest, and haply may prove to be fittest for the weak bodies,

(for it is weak enough of all conscience.) Let such as are strong take the common wormwood, for the others will do but little good. Again near the sea many people live, and seriphian grows near them, and therefore is more fitting for their bodies, because nourished by the same air; and this I had from Dr. Reason. In whose body Dr. Reason dwells not, dwells Dr. Madness, and he brings in his brethren, Dr. Ignorance, Dr. Folly, and Dr. Sickness, and these together make way for death, and the latter end of that man is worse than the beginning. Pride was the cause of Adam's fall; pride begat a daughter, I do not know the father of it, unless the devil, but she christened it, and called it Appetite, and sent her daughter to taste these wormwoods, who finding this the least bitter, made the squeamish wench extol it to the skies, though the virtues of it never reached to the middle region of the air. Its due praise is this; it is weakest, therefore fittest for weak bodies, and fitter for those bodies that dwell near it, than those that dwell far from it; my reason is, the sea (those that live far from it, know when they come near it) casteth not such a smell as the land doth. The tender mercies of God being over all his works, hath by his eternal providence, planted seriphian by the sea-side, as a fit medicine for the bodies of those that live near it. Lastly, it is known to all that know any thing in the course of nature, that the liver delights in sweet things; if so, it abhors bitter; then if your liver be weak, it is none of the wisest courses to plague it with an enemy. If the liver be weak, a consumption follows; would you know the reason? It is this, a man's flesh is repaired by blood, by a third concoction, which transmutes the blood into flesh, it is well I said (concoction) say I, if I had said (boiling) every cook would have understood me. The liver makes blood, and if it be weakened that it makes not enough, the flesh wasteth; and why must flesh always be renewed? Because the eternal God, when he made the creation, made one part of it in continual dependency upon another; and why did he so? Because himself only is permanent; to teach us, that we should not fix our affections upon what is transitory, but what endures for ever. The result of this is, if the liver be weak, and cannot make blood enough, I would have said, sanguify, if I had written only to scholars, the seriphian, which is the weakest of wormwoods, is better than the best. I have been critical enough, if not too much.

Place.] It grows familiarly in England, by the sea-side.

Descript.] It starts up out of the earth, with many round, woody, hairy stalks from one root. Its height is four feet, or three at least. The leaves in longitude are long, in latitude narrow, in colour white, in form hoary, in similitude like southernwood, only broader and longer; in taste rather salt than bitter, because it grows so near the salt-water; at the joints,

with the leaves toward the tops it bears little yellow flowers; the root lies deep, and is woody.

Common Wormwood I shall not describe, for every boy that can eat an egg knows it.

Roman Wormwood: and why Roman, seeing it grows familiarly in England? It may be so called, because it is good for a stinking breath which the Romans cannot be very free from, maintaining so many bawdy-houses by authority of his Holiness.

Descript.] The stalks are slender, and shorter than the common wormwood by one foot at least; the leaves are more finely cut and divided than they are, but something smaller: both leaves and stalks are hoary, the flowers of a pale yellow colour; it is altogether like the common wormwood, save only in bigness, for it is smaller; in taste, for it is not so bitter; in smell, for it is spicy.

Place.] It groweth upon the tops of the mountains (it seems 'tis aspiring) there 'tis natural, but usually nursed up in gardens for the use of the apothecaries in London.

Time.] All wormwoods usually flower in August, a little sooner or later.

Government and Virtues.] Will you give me leave to be critical a little? I must take leave; wormwood is an herb of Mars, and if Pontanus say otherwise, he is beside the bridge; I prove it thus: What delights in martial places, is a martial herb; but wormwood delights in martial places, (for about forges and iron works you may gather a cart-load of it) *ergo*, it is a martial herb. It is hot and dry in the first degree, viz. just as hot as your blood, and no hotter. It remedies the evils choler can inflict on the body of man by sympathy. It helps the evils Venus and the wanton Boy produce, by antipathy; and it doth something else besides. It cleanseth the body of choler (who dares say Mars doth no good?) It provokes urine, helps surfeits, or swellings in the belly; it causeth appetite to meat, because Mars rules the attractive faculty in man: The sun never shone upon a better herb for the yellow jaundice than this; why should men cry out so much upon Mars for an unfortunate, (or Saturn either?) Did God make creatures to do the creation a mischief? This herb testifies, that Mars is willing to cure all diseases he causes; the truth is, Mars loves no cowards, nor Saturn fools, nor I neither. Take of the flowers of wormwood, rosemary, and black thorn, of each a like quantity, half that quantity of saffron; boil this in Rhenish wine, but put it not in saffron till it is almost boiled; this is the way to keep a man's body in health, appointed by Camerarius, in his book intitled, *Hortus Medicus*, and it is a good one too. Besides all this, wormwood provokes the terms. I would willingly teach

astrologers, and make them physicians (if I knew how) for they are most fitting for the calling; if you will not believe me, ask Dr. Hippocrates, and Dr. Galen, a couple of gentlemen that our college of physicians keep to vapour with, not to follow. In this our herb, I shall give the pattern of a ruler, the sons of a t rough cast, yet as near the truth as the men of Benjamin could throw a stone: Whereby, my brethren, the astrologers may know by a penny how a shilling is coined: As for the college of physicians, they are too stately to learn, and too proud to continue. They say a mouse is under the dominion of the Moon, and that is the reason they feed in the night; the house of the moon is Cancer; rats are of the same nature with mice, but they are a little bigger; Mars receives his fall in Cancer, *ergo*, wormwood being an herb of Mars, is a present remedy for the biting of rats and mice. Mushrooms (I cannot give them the title of Herba, Frutex or Arbor) are under the dominion of Saturn, (and take one time with another,) they do as much harm as good; if any have poisoned himself by eating them, wormwood, an herb of Mars, cures him, because Mars is exalted in Capricorn, the house of Saturn, and this it doth by sympathy, as it did the other by antipathy. Wheals, pushes, black and blue spots, coming either by bruises or beatings, wormwood, an herb of Mars, helps, because Mars (as bad as you love him, and as you hate him) will not break your head, but he will give you a plaister. If he do but teach you to know yourselves, his courtesy is greater than his discourtesy. The greatest antipathy between the planets, is between Mars and Venus; one is hot, the other cold; one diurnal, the other nocturnal; one dry, the other moist; their houses are opposite, one masculine, the other feminine; one public, the other private; one is valiant, the other effeminate; one loves the light, the other hates it; one loves the field, the other sheets; then the throat is under Venus, the quinsey lies in the throat, and is an inflammation there: Venus rules the throat, it being under Taurus her sign. Mars eradicates all diseases in the throat by his herbs (of which wormwood is one) and sends them to Egypt on an errand never to return more; this is done by antipathy. The eyes are under the Luminaries; the right eye of a man, and the left eye of a woman, the Sun claims dominion over; the left eye of a man, and the right eye of a woman are privileges of the Moon; wormwood, an herb of Mars, cures both; what belongs to the Sun by sympathy, because he is exalted in his house; but what belongs to the Moon by antipathy, because he hath his fall in her's. Suppose a man be bitten or stung by a martial creature, imagine a wasp, a hornet, a scorpion. wormwood, an herb of Mars, giveth you a present cure; then Mars, choleric as he is, hath learned that patience,

to pass by your evil speeches of him, and tells you by my pen, that he gives you no affliction, but he gives you a cure; you need not run to Apollo, nor Æsculapius; and if he was so choleric as you make him to be, he would have drawn his sword for anger, to see the ill conditions of those people that can spy his vices, and not his virtues. The eternal God, when he made Mars, made him for public good, and the sons of men shall know it in the latter end of the world. *Et calum Mars solus habet.* You say Mars is a destroyer; mix a little wormwood, an herb of Mars, with your ink, neither rats nor mice touch the paper written with it, and then Mars is a preserver. Astrologers think Mars causeth scabs and itch, and the virgins are angry with him, because wanton Venus told them he deforms their skins; but, quoth Mars, my only desire is, they should know themselves; my herb wormwood will restore them to the beauty they formerly had, and in that I will not come an inch behind my opposite, Venus: for which doth the greatest evil, he that takes away an innate beauty, and when he has done, knows how to restore it again, or she that teaches a company of wanton lasses to paint their faces? If Mars be in a Virgin, in the nativity, they say he causeth the cholic (it is well God hath set some body to pull down the pride of man.) He in the Virgin troubles none with the cholic, but them that know not themselves (for who knows himself, may easily know all the world,) Wormwood, an herb of Mars, is a present cure for it; and whether it be most like a Christian to love him for his good, or hate him for his evil, judge ye; I had almost forgotten, that charity thinks no evil. I was once in the tower and viewed the wardrobe, and there was a great many fine clothes: (I can give them no other title, for I was never either linen or woollen draper) yet as brave as they looked, my opinion was, that the moths might consume them; moths are under the dominion of Mars; this herb wormwood being laid among clothes, will make a moth scorn to meddle with the clothes, as much as a lion scorns to meddle with a mouse, or an eagle with a fly. You say Mars is angry, and it is true enough he is angry with many countrymen, for being such fools to be led by the noses by the college of physicians, as they lead bears to Paris garden. Melancholy men cannot endure to be wronged in point of good fame, and that doth sorely trouble old Saturn, because they call him the greatest infortunate; in the body of man he rules the spleen, (and that makes covetous men so splenetic) the poor old man lies crying out of his left side. Father Saturn is angry, Mars comes to him; Come, brother, I confess thou art evil spoken of, and so am I; thou knowest I have my exaltation in thy house, I give him an herb of mine, wormwood, to cure the poor man: Saturn consented, but spoke little, and so Mars cured

him by sympathy. When Mars was free from war, (for he loves to be fighting, and is the best friend a soldier hath) I say, when Mars was free from war, he called a council of war in his own brain, to know how he should do poor sinful man good, desiring to forget his abuses in being called an infortunate. He musters up his own forces, and places them in battalia. Oh! quoth he, why do I hurt a poor silly man or woman? His angel answers him, it is because they have offended their God, (look back to Adam:) Well, says Mars, though they speak evil of me, I will do good to them; death's cold, my herb shall heat them: they are full of ill humours (else they would never have spoken ill of me:) my herb shall cleanse them, and dry them; they are poor weak creatures, my herb shall strengthen them; they are dull witted, my herb shall fortify their apprehensions; and yet among astrologers all this does not deserve a good word: Oh the patience of Mars!

Felix qui potuit rerum cognoscere causas,
Inque domus superum scandere cura facit.
Oh happy he that can the knowledge gain,
To know th' eternal God made nought in vain.
To this I add,
I know the reason causeth such a dearth
Of knowledge; 'tis because men love the earth.

The other day Mars told me he met with Venus, and he asked her, what was the reason that she accused him for abusing women? He never gave them the pox. In the dispute they fell out, and in anger parted, and Mars told me that his brother Saturn told him, that an antivenerean medicine was the best against the pox. Once a month he meets with the Moon. Mars is quick enough of speech, and the Moon not much behind hand, (neither are most women.) The Moon looks much after children, and children are much troubled with the worms; she desired a medicine of him, he bid her take his own herb, wormwood. He had no sooner parted with the Moon, but he met with Venus, and she was as drunk as a bitch; Alas! poor Venus, quoth he; What! thou a fortune, and be drunk? I'll give thee an antipathetical cure; take my herb wormwood, and thou shalt never get a surfeit by drinking. A poor silly countryman hath got an ague, and cannot go about his business: he wishes he had it not, and so do I; but I will tell him a remedy, whereby he shall prevent it: Take the herb of Mars, wormwood, and if infortunes will do good, what will fortunes do? Some think the lungs are under Jupiter; and if the lungs, then the breath; and though sometimes a man gets a stinking breath, and yet Jupiter is a fortune, forsooth; up comes Mars to him; Come, brother Jupiter, thou knowest I sent thee a couple of trines to thy house last night, the one from Aries, and the

other from Scorpio; give me thy leave by sympathy to cure this poor man with drinking a draught of wormwood beer every morning. The Moon was weak the other day, and she gave a man two terrible mischiefs, a dull brain and a weak sight; Mars laid by his sword, and comes to her; Sister Moon, said he, this man hath angered thee, but I beseech thee take notice he is but a fool; prithee be patient, I will with my herb wormwood cure him of both infirmities by antipathy, for thou knowest thou and I cannot agree; with that the Moon began to quarrel; Mars (not delighting much in women's tongues) went away, and did it whether she would or no.

He that reads this, and understands what he reads, hath a jewel of more worth than a diamond; he that understands it not, is as little fit to give physic. There lies a key in these words which will unlock, (if it be turned by a wise hand) the cabinet of physic: I have delivered it as plain as I durst: it is not only upon wormwood as I wrote, but upon all plants, trees, and herbs; he that understands it not, is unfit (in my opinion) to give physic. This shall live when I am dead. And thus I leave it to the world, not caring a farthing whether they like or dislike it. The grave equals all men, and therefore shall equal me with all princes; until which time the eternal Providence is over me: Then the ill tongue of a prating fellow, or one that hath more tongue than wit, or more pride than honesty, shall never trouble me. *Wisdom is justified by her children.* And so much for wormwood.

YARROW, CALLED NOSE-BLEED, MILFOIL AND THOUSAND-LEAF.

Descript.] IT hath many long leaves spread upon the ground, finely cut, and divided into many small parts: Its flowers are white, but not all of a whiteness, and stayed in knots, upon divers green stalks which rise from among the leaves.

Place.] It is frequent in all pastures.

Time.] It flowereth late, even in the latter end of August.

Government and Virtues.] It is under the influence of Venus, an ointment of them cures wounds, and is most fit for such as have inflammations, it being an herb of Dame Venus; it stops the terms in women, being boiled in white wine, and the decoction drank; as also the bloody flux; the ointment of it is not only good for green wounds, but also for ulcers and fistulas, especially such as abound with moisture. It stays the shedding of hair, the head being bathed with the decoction of it; inwardly taken it helps the retentive faculty of the stomach; it helps the running of the reins in men, and the whites in women, and

helps such as cannot hold their water; and the leaves chewed in the mouth easeth the tooth-ach: and these virtues being put together, shew the herb to be drying and binding. Achilles is supposed to be the first that left the virtues of this herb to posterity, having learned them of his master Chiron, the Centaur; and certainly a very profitable herb it is in cramps, and therefore called Militaris.

DIRECTIONS.

HAVING in divers places of this treatise promised you the way of making syrups, conserves, oils, ointments, &c. of herbs, roots, flowers, &c. whereby you may have them ready for your use at such times when they cannot be had otherwise; I come now to perform what I promised, and you shall find me rather better than worse than my word.

That this may be done methodically, I shall divide my directions into two grand sections, and each section into several chapters, and then you shall see it look with such a countenance as this is.

SECT. I.

Of gathering, drying, and keeping Simples, and their Juices.

CHAP. 1. *Of leaves of Herbs, &c.*
Chap. 2. *Of Flowers.*
Chap. 3. *Of Seeds.*
Chap. 4. *Of Roots.*
Chap. 5. *Of Barks.*
Chap. 6. *Of Juices.*

SECT. II.

Of making and keeping Compounds.

CHAP. 1. *Of distilled Waters.*
Chap. 2. *Of Syrups.*
Chap. 3. *Of Juleps.*
Chap. 4. *Of Decoctions.*
Chap. 5. *Of Oils.*
Chap. 6. *Of Electuaries.*
Chap. 7. *Of Conserves.*
Chap. 8. *Of Preserves.*
Chap. 9. *Of Lohochs.*
Chap. 10. *Of Ointments.*
Chap. 11. *Of Plaisters.*
Chap. 12. *Of Poultices.*
Chap. 13. *Of Troches.*
Chap. 14. *Of Pills.*
Chap. 15. *The way of fitting Medicines to Compound Diseases.*
Of all these in order.

CHAP. I.

Of Leaves of Herbs, or Trees.

1. OF leaves, choose only such as are green, and full of juice; pick them carefully, and cast away such as are any way declining, for they will putrify the rest. So shall one handful be worth ten of those you buy in Cheapside.

2. Note what places they most delight to grow in, and gather them there; for betony that grows in the shade, is far better than that which grows in the Sun, because it delights in the shade; so also such herbs as delight to grow near the water, shall be gathered near it, though happily you may find some of them upon dry ground: The treatise will inform you where every herb delights to grow.

3. The leaves of such herbs as run up to seed, are not so good when they are in flower as before (some few excepted, the leaves of which are seldom or never used) in such cases, if through ignorance they were not known, or through negligence forgotten, you had better take the top and the flowers, than the leaf.

4. Dry them well in the Sun, and not in the shade, as the saying of the physicians is; for if the Sun draw away the virtues of the herb, it must needs do the like by hay, by the same rule, which the experience of every country farmer will explode for a notable piece of nonsense.

5. Such as are artists in astrology (and indeed none else are fit to make physicians) such I advise; let the planet that governs the herb be angular, and the stronger the better; if they can, in herbs of Saturn, let Saturn be in the ascendant; in the herbs of Mars, let Mars be in the mid-heaven, for in those houses they delight; let the Moon apply to them by good aspect, and let her not be in the houses of her enemies; if you cannot well stay till she apply to them, let her apply to a planet of the same triplicity; if you cannot wait that time neither, let her be with a fixed star of their nature.

6. Having well dried them, put them up in brown paper, sewing the paper up like a sack, and press them not too hard together, and keep them in a dry place near the fire.

7. As for the duration of dried herbs, a just time cannot be given, let authors prate their pleasure; for,

1st, Such as grow upon dry grounds will keep better than such as grow on moist.

2dly, Such herbs as are full of juice, will not keep so long as such as are drier.

3dly, Such herbs as are well dried, will keep longer than such as are slack dried. Yet you may know when they are corrupted,

by their loss of colour, or smell, or both; and, if they be corrupted, reason will tell you that they must needs corrupt the bodies of those people that take them.

8. Gather all leaves in the hour of that planet that governs them.

CHAP. II. *Of Flowers.*

THE flower, which is the beauty of the plant, and of none of the least use in physic, groweth yearly, and is to be gathered when it is in its prime.

2. As for the time of gathering them, let the planetary hour, and the plant they come of, be observed, as we shewed you in the foregoing chapter: as for the time of the day, let it be when the Sun shines upon them, that so they may be dry; for, if you gather either flowers or herbs when they are wet or dewy, they will not keep.

3. Dry them well in the Sun, and keep them in papers near the fire, as I shewed you in the foregoing chapter.

4. So long as they retain the colour and smell, they are good; either of them being gone, so is their virtue also.

CHAP. III. *Of Seeds.*

1. THE seed is that part of the plant which is endowed with a vital faculty to bring forth its like, and it contains potentially the whole plant in it.

2. As for place, let them be gathered from the place where they delight to grow.

3. Let them be full ripe when they are gathered; and forget not the celestial harmony before mentioned, for I have found, by experience, that their virtues are twice as great at such times as at others: "There is an appointed time for every thing under the Sun."

4. When you have gathered them, dry them a little, and but a little, in the Sun before you lay them up.

5. You need not be so careful of keeping them so near the fire, as the other before-mentioned, because they are fuller of spirit, and therefore not so subject to corrupt.

6. As for the time of their duration, it is palpable they will keep a good many years; yet, they are best the first year, and this I make appear by a good argument. They will grow soonest the first year they be set, therefore then they are in their prime; and it is an easy matter to renew them yearly.

CHAP. IV. *Of Roots.*

OF roots, choose such as are neither rotten nor worm-eaten, but proper in their taste, colour and smell; such as exceed neither in softness nor hardness.

2. Give me leave to be a little critical against the vulgar received opinion, which is, that the sap falls down into the roots in the autumn, and rises again in the spring, as men go to bed at night, and rise in the morning; and this idle talk of untruth is so grounded in the heads, not only of the vulgar, but also of the learned, that a man cannot drive it out by reason. I pray let such sapmongers answer me this argument: If the sap falls into the roots in the fall of the leaf, and lies there all the winter, then must the root grow only in the winter. But the root grows not at all in the winter, as experience teacheth, but only in the summer: Therefore, if you set an apple-kernel in the spring, you shall find the root to grow to a pretty bigness in that summer, and be not a whit bigger next spring. What doth the sap do in the root all that while? Pick straws? It is as rotten as a rotten post.

The truth is, when the Sun declines from the tropic of Cancer, the sap begins to congeal both in root and branch; when he touches the tropic of Capricorn, and ascends to us-ward, it begins to wax thin again, and by degrees, as it is congealed. But to proceed,

3. The drier time you gather the roots in, the better they are; for they have the less excrementitious moisture in the them.

4. Such roots as are soft, your best way is to dry in the Sun, or else hang them in the chimney corner upon a string; as for such as are hard, you may dry them any where.

5. Such roots as are great, will keep longer than such as are small; yet most of them will keep a year.

6. Such roots as are soft, it is your best way to keep them always near the fire, and to take this general rule for it: If in winter-time you find any of your roots, herbs or flowers begin to be moist, as many times you shall (for it is your best way to look to them once a month) dry them by a very gentle fire; or, if you can, with conveniency, keep them near the fire, you may save yourself the labour.

7. It is in vain to dry roots that may commonly be had, as parsley, fennel, plantain, &c. but gather them only for present need.

CHAP. V. *Of Barks.*

BARKS, which physicians use in medicine, are of these sorts: Of fruits, of roots, of boughs.

2. The barks of fruits are to be taken when the fruit is full ripe, as oranges, lemons, &c. but because I have nothing to do with exotics here, I pass them without any more words.

3. The barks of trees are best gathered in the spring, if of oaks, or such great trees; because then they come easier off, and so you may dry them if you please; but indeed the best way is to gather all barks only for present use.

4. As for the bark of roots, it is thus to be gotten. Take the roots of such herbs as have a pith in them, as parsley, fennel, &c. slit them in the middle, and when you have taken out the pith (which you may easily do) that which remains is called (though improperly) the bark, and indeed is only to be used.

CHAP. VI. *Of Juices.*

1. JUICES are to be pressed out of herbs when they are young and tender, out of some stalks and tender tops of herbs and plants, and also out of some flowers.

2. Having gathered the herb, if you would preserve the juice of it, when it is very dry (for otherwise the juice will not be worth a button) bruise it very well in a stone mortar, with a wooden pestle, then having put it into a canvas bag, (the herb I mean, not the mortar, for that will give but little juice,) press it hard in a press, then take the juice and clarify it.

3. The manner of clarifying it is this: Put it into a pipkin or skillet, or some such thing, and set it over the fire; and when the scum ariseth, take it off; let it stand over the fire till no more scum arise; when you have your juice clarified, cast away the scum as a thing of no use.

4. When you have thus clarified it, you have two ways to preserve it all the year.

(1.) When it is cold, put it into a glass, and put so much oil on it as will cover it to the thickness of two fingers; the oil will swim at the top, and so keep the air from coming to purify it: When you intend to use it, pour it into a porringer, and if any oil come out with it, you may easily skim it off with a spoon, and put the juice you use not into the glass again; it will quickly sink under the oil. This is the first way.

(2.) The second way is a little more difficult, and the juice of fruits is usually preserved this way. When you have clarified it, boil it over the fire, till (being cold) it be of the thickness of honey: This is most commonly used for diseases of the mouth, and is called roba and saba. And thus much for the first section, the second follows.

SECT. II.

The way of making and keeping all necessary Compounds.

CHAP. I. *Of distilled Waters.*

HITHERTO we have spoke of medicines which consist in their own nature, which authors vulgarly call simples, though something improperly; for in truth, nothing is simple but pure elements: all things else are compounded of them. We come now to treat of the artificial medicines, in the form of which (because we must begin somewhere) we shall place distilled waters; in which consider,

1. Waters are distilled of herbs, flowers, fruits, and roots.

2. We treat not of strong waters, but of cold, as being to act Galen's part, and not Paracelsus's.

3. The herbs ought to be distilled when they are in the greatest vigour, and so ought the flowers also.

4. The vulgar way of distillations which people use, because they know no better, is in a pewter still; and although distilled waters are the weakest of artificial medicines, and good for little but mixtures of other medicines, yet they are weaker by many degrees, than they would be were they distilled in sand. If I thought it not impossible, to teach you the way of distilling in sand, I would attempt it.

5. When you have distilled your water, put it into a glass, covered over with a paper prieked full of holes, so that the excrementitious and fiery vapours may exhale, which cause that settling in distilled waters ealled the mother, which corrupt them, then cover it close, and keep it for your use.

6. Stopping distilled waters with a cork, makes them musty, and so does paper, if it but touch the water: it is best to stop them with a bladder, being first put in water, and bound over the top of the glass.

Such eold waters as are distilled in a pewter still (if well kept) will endure a year; such as are distilled in sand, as they are twice as strong, so they endure twice as long.

CHAP. II. *Of Syrups.*

1. A SYRUP is a medicine of a liquid form, composed of infusion, decoction and juice. And. 1. For the more grateful taste. 2. For the better keeping of it: with a certain quantity of honey and sugar, hereafter mentioned, boiled to the thickness of new honey.

2. You see at the first view, that this aphorism divides itself

into three branches, which deserve severally to be treated of, viz.

1. Syrups made of infusion.
2. Syrups made by decoction.
3. Syrups made by juice.

Of each of these (for your instruction-sake, kind countrymen and women) I speak a word or two apart.

1st, Syrups made by infusion, are usually made of flowers, and of such flowers as soon lose their colour and strength by boiling, as roses, violets, peach flowers, &c. My translation of the London Dispensatory will instruct you in the rest. They are thus made: Having picked your flowers clean, to every pound of them add three pounds or three pints, which you will, (for it is all one) of spring water, made boiling hot; first put your flowers into a pewter pot, with a cover, and pour the water on them; then shutting the pot, let it stand by the fire, to keep hot twelve hours, and strain it out; (in such syrups as purge) as damask roses, peach flowers, &c. the usual, and indeed the best way, is to repeat this infusion, adding fresh flowers to the same liquor divers times, that so it may be the stronger; having strained it out, put the infusion into a pewter bason, or an earthen one well glazed, and to every pint of it add two pounds of sugar, which being only melted over the fire, without boiling, and scummed, will produce you the syrup you desire.

2dly, Syrups made by decoction are usually made of compounds, yet may any simple herb be thus converted into syrup: Take the herb, root, or flowers you would make into a syrup, and bruise it a little; then boil it in a convenient quantity of spring water; the more water you boil it in, the weaker it will be; a handful of the herb or root is a convenient quantity for a pint of water; boil it till half the water be consumed, then let it stand till it be almost cold, and strain it through a woollen cloth, letting it run out at leisure, without pressing: To every pint of this decoction add one pound of sugar, and boil it over the fire till it come to a syrup, which you may know, if you now and then cool a little of it with a spoon: Skim it all the while it boils, and when it is sufficiently boiled, whilst it is hot, strain it again through a woollen cloth, but press it not. Thus you have the syrup perfected.

3dly, Syrups made of juice, are usually made of such herbs as are full of juice, and indeed they are better made into a syrup this way than any other; the operation is thus: Having beaten the herb in a stone mortar, with a wooden pestle, press out the juice, and clarify it, as you are taught before in the juices; then let the juice boil away till about a quarter of it be consumed: To a pint of this add a pound of sugar, and boil it to a syrup,

always skimming it, and when it is boiled enough, strain it through a woollen cloth, as we taught you before, and keep it for your use.

3. If you make a syrup of roots that are any thing hard, as parsley, fennel, and grass roots, &c. when you have bruised them, lay them in steep some time in that water which you intend to boil them in hot, so will the virtue the better come out.

4. Keep your syrups either in glasses or stone pots, and stop them not with cork nor bladder, unless you would have the glass break, and the syrup lost, only bind paper about the mouth.

5. All syrups, if well made, continue a year with some advantage; yet such as are made by infusion, keep shortest.

CHAP. III. *Of Juleps.*

1. JULEPS were first invented, as I suppose, in Arabia; and my reason is, because the word julep is an Arabic word.

2. It signifies only a pleasant potion, as is vulgarly used by such as are sick, and want help, or such as are in health, and want no money to quench thirst.

3. Now-a-day it is commonly used,

1. To prepare the body for purgation.
2. To open obstructions and the pores.
3. To digest tough humours.
4. To qualify hot distempers, &c.

4. Simple juleps (for I have nothing to say to compounds here) are thus made: Take a pint of such distilled water as conduces to the cure of your distemper, which this treatise will plentifully furnish you with, to which add two ounces of syrup, conducing to the same effect; (I shall give you rules for it in the next chapter) mix them together, and drink a draught of it at your pleasure. If you love tart things, add ten drops of oil of vitriol to your pint, and shake it together, and it will have a fine grateful taste.

5. All juleps are made for present use; and therefore it is in vain to speak of their duration.

CHAP. IV. *Of Decoctions.*

1. ALL the difference between decoctions, and syrup made by decoction, is this; syrups are made to keep, decoctions only for present use; for you can hardly keep a decoction a week at any time; if the weather be hot, not half so long.

2. Decoctions are made of leaves, roots, flowers, seeds, fruits or barks, conducing to the cure of the disease you make them for; and are made in the same manner as we shewed you in syrups.

3. Decoctions made with wine last longer than such as are made with water; and if you take your decoction to cleanse the passages of the urine, or open obstructions, your best way is to make it with white wine instead of water, because this is penetrating.

4. Decoctions are of most use in such diseases as lie in the passages of the body, as the stomach, bowels, kidneys, passages of urine and bladder, because decoctions pass quicker to those places than any other form of medicines.

5. If you will sweeten your decoction with sugar, or any syrup fit for the occasion you take it for, which is better, you may, and no harm.

6. If in a decoction, you boil both roots, herbs, flowers, and seed together, let the roots boil a good while first, because they retain their virtue longest; then the next in order by the same rule, viz. 1. Barks. 2. The herbs. 3. The seeds. 4. The flowers. 5. The spices, if you put any in, because their virtues come soonest out.

7. Such things as by boiling, cause sliminess to a decoction, as figs, quince-seed, linseed, &c. your best way is, after you have bruised them, to tie them up in a linen rag, as you tie up calf's brains, and so boil them.

8. Keep all decoctions in a glass close stopped, and in the cooler place you keep them, the longer they will last ere they be sour.

Lastly, The usual dose to be given at one time, is usually two, three, four, or five ounces, according to the age and strength of the patient, the season of the year, the strength of the medicine, and the quality of the disease.

CHAP. V. *Of Oils.*

1. OIL olive, which is commonly known by the name of salad oil, I suppose, because it is usually eaten with salads by them that love it, if it be pressed out of ripe olives, according to Galen, is temperate, and exceeds in no one quality.

2. Of oils, some are simple, and some are compound.

3. Simple oils are such as are made of fruits or seeds by expression, as oil of sweet and bitter almonds, linseed and rape-seed oil, &c. of which see in my Dispensatory.

4. Compound oils, are made of oil of olives, and other simples, imagine herbs, flowers, roots, &c.

5. The way of making them is this: Having bruised the herbs or flowers you would make your oil of, put them into an earthen pot, and to two or three handfuls of them pour a pint of oil, cover the pot with a paper, set it in the sun about a fortnight or so, according as the sun is in hotness; then having warmed it very well by the fire, press out the herb, &c. very hard in a press, and add as many more herbs to the same oil; bruise the herbs (I mean not the oil) in like manner, set them in the sun as before; the oftener you repeat this, the stronger your oil will be: At last, when you conceive it strong enough, boil both herbs and oil together, till the juice be consumed, which you may know by its leaving its bubbling, and the herbs will be crisp; then strain it while it is hot, and keep it in a stone or glass vessel for your use.

6. As for chymical oils, I have nothing to say here.

7. The general use of these oils is for pains in the limbs, roughness of the skin, the itch, &c. as also for ointments and plaisters.

8. If you have occasion to use it for wounds or ulcers, in two ounces of oil, dissolve half an ounce of turpentine, the heat of the fire will quickly do it; for oil itself is offensive to wounds, and the turpentine qualifies it.

CHAP VI. *Of Electuaries.*

PHYSICIANS make more a quoil than needs by half, about electuaries. I shall prescribe but one general way of making them up; as for ingredients, you may vary them as you please, and as you find occasion, by the last chapter.

1. That you may make the electuaries when you need them, it is requisite that you keep always herbs, roots, flowers, seeds, &c. ready dried in your house, that so you may be in readiness to beat them into powder when you need them.

2. It is better to keep them whole than beaten; for being beaten, they are more subject to lose their strength; because the air soon penetrates them.

3. If they be not dry enough to beat into powder when you need them, dry them by a gentle fire till they are so.

4. Having beaten them, sift them through a fine tiffany scarce, that no great pieces may be found in your electuary.

5. To one ounce of your powder add three ounces of clarified honey; this quantity I hold to be sufficient. If you would make more or less electuary, vary your proportion accordingly.

6. Mix them well together in a mortar, and take this for a truth, you cannot mix them too much.

7. The way to clarify honey, is to set it over the fire in a

convenient vessel, till the scum rise, and when the scum is taken off, it is clarified.

8. The usual dose of cordial electuaries, is from half a dram to two drams; of purging electuaries, from half an ounce to an ounce.

9. The manner of keeping them is in a pot.

10. The time of taking them, is either in a morning fasting, and fasting an hour after them; or at night going to bed, three or four hours after supper.

CHAP. VII. *Of Conserves.*

THE way of making conserves is twofold, one of herbs and flowers, and the other of fruits.

2. Conserves of herbs and flowers, are thus made: If you make your conserve of herbs, as of scurvy-grass, wormwood, rue, and the like, take only the leaves and tender tops (for you may beat your heart out, before you can beat the stalks small) and having beaten them, weigh them, and to every pound of them add three pounds of sugar: you cannot beat them too much.

3. Conserves of fruits, as of barberries, sloes, and the like, is thus made: First, scald the fruit, then rub the pulp through a thick hair sieve made for the purpose, called a pulping sieve; you may do it for a need with the back of a spoon; then take this pulp thus drawn, and add to it its weight of sugar, and no more; put it into a pewter vessel, and over a charcoal fire; stir it up and down till the sugar be melted, and your conserve is made.

4. Thus you have the way of making conserves; the way of keeping them is in earthen pots.

5. The dose is usually the quantity of a nutmeg at a time morning and evening, or (unless they are purging) when you please.

6. Of conserves, some keep many years, as conserves of roses: others but a year, as conserves of borage, bugloss, cowslips, and the like.

7. Have a care of the working of some conserves presently after they are made; look to them once a day, and stir them about: conserves of borage, bugloss, and wormwood, have got an excellent faculty at that spot.

8. You may know when your conserves are almost spoiled by this; you shall find a hard crust at top, with little holes in it, as though worms had been eating there.

CHAP. VIII. *Of Preserves.*

OF preserves are sundry sorts, and the operation of all being somewhat different, we will handle them all apart. These are preserved with sugar:

1. Flowers. | 3. Roots.
2. Fruits. | 4. Barks.

1. Flowers are very seldom preserved: I never saw any that I remember, save only cowslip flowers, and that was a great fashion in Sussex when I was a boy. It is thus done: Take a flat glass, we call them jat glasses; strew on a laying of fine sugar, on that a laying of flowers, and on that another laying of sugar, on that another laying of flowers, so do till your glass be full; then tie it over with a paper, and in a little time, you shall have very excellent and pleasant preserves.

There is another way of preserving flowers; namely, with vinegar and salt, as they pickle capers and broom-buds; but as I have little skill in it myself, I cannot teach you.

2. Fruits, as quinces, and the like, are preserved two ways:

(1.) Boil them well in water, and then pulp them through a sieve, as we shewed you before; then with the like quantity of sugar, boil the water they were boiled in into a syrup, viz. a pound of sugar to a pint of liquor; to every pound of this syrup, add four ounces of the pulp; then boil it with a very gentle fire to their right consistence, which you may easily know if you drop a drop of it upon a trencher; if it be enough, it will not stick to your fingers when it is cold.

(2.) Another way to preserve fruits is this: First, pare off the rind; then cut them in halves, and take out the core; then boil them in water till they are soft; if you know when beef is boiled enough, you may easily know when they are: Then boil the water with its like weight of sugar into a syrup; put the syrup into a pot, and put the boiled fruit as whole as you left it when you cut into it, and let it remain until you have occasion to use it.

3. Roots are thus preserved: First, scrape them very clean, and cleanse them from the pith, if they have any, for some roots have not, as eringo and the like; boil them in water till they be soft, as we shewed you before in the fruits; then boil the water you boiled the root in into a syrup, as we shewed you before; then keep the root whole in the syrup till you use them.

4. As for barks, we have but few come to our hands to be done, and of those, the few that I can remember are oranges, lemons, citrons, and the outer bark of walnuts, which grow without-side the shell, for the shells themselves would make

but scurvy preserves; these be they I can remember, if there be any more put them into the number.

The way of preserving these, is not all one in authors, for some are bitter, some are hot; such as are bitter, say authors, must be soaked in warm water, oftentimes changing till their bitter taste be fled; but I like not this way, and my reason is this; because I doubt when their bitterness is gone, so is their virtue also; I shall then prescribe one common way, namely, the same with the former, viz. First boil them whole till they be soft, then make a syrup with sugar and the liquor you boil them in, and keep the barks in the syrup.

5. They are kept in glasses, or in glazed pots.

6. The preserved flowers will keep a year, if you can forbear eating of them; the roots and barks much longer.

7. This art was plainly and first invented for delicacy, yet came afterwards to be of excellent use in physic: For,

(1.) Hereby medicines are made pleasant for sick and squeamish stomachs, which else would loath them.

(2.) Hereby they are preserved from decaying a long time.

CHAP. IX. *Of Lohocks.*

1. THAT which the Arabians call lohocks, and the Greeks eclegma, the Latins call linctus, and in plain English, signifies nothing else but a thing to be licked up.

3. They are in body thicker than a syrup, and not so thick as an electuary.

4. The manner of taking them is, often to take a little with a liquorice stick, and let it go down at leisure.

5. They are easily thus made: Make a decoction of pectoral herbs, and the treatise will furnish you with enough; and when you have strained it, with twice its weight of honey or sugar, boil it to a lohock; if you are molested with much phlegm, honey is better than sugar; and if you add a little vinegar to it, you will do well: if not, I hold sugar to be better than honey.

6. It is kept in pots, and may be kept a year and longer.

7. It is excellent for roughness of the wind-pipe; inflammations and ulcers of the lungs, difficulty of breathing, asthmas, coughs, and distillation of humours.

CHAP. X. *Of Ointments.*

1. VARIOUS are the ways of making ointments, which authors have left to posterity, which I shall omit, and quote one which is easiest to be made, and therefore most bene-

ficial to people that are ignorant in physic, for whose sake I write this. It is thus done:

Bruise those herbs, flowers, or roots, you will make an ointment of, and to two handfuls of your bruised herbs add a pound of hog's grease dried, or cleansed from the skins, beat them very well together in a stone mortar with a wooden pestle, then put it into a stone pot (the herb and grease I mean, not the mortar) cover it with a paper, and set it either in the sun, or some other warm place, three, four, or five days, that it may melt; then take it out and boil it a little; then whilst it is hot, strain it out, pressing it out very hard in a press; to this grease add as many more herbs bruised as before; let them stand in like manner as long, then boil them as you did the former: If you think your ointment is not strong enough, you may do it the third and fourth time; yet this I will tell you, the fuller of juice the herbs are, the sooner will your ointment be strong: the last time you boil it, boil it so long till your herbs be crisp, and the juice consumed, then strain it, pressing it hard in a press, and to every pound of ointment add two ounces of turpentine, and as much wax, because grease is offensive to wounds, as well as oil.

2. Ointments are vulgarly known to be kept in pots, and will last above a year, some above two years.

CHAP. XI. *Of Plaisters.*

1. THE Greeks made their plaisters of divers simples, and put metals into the most of them, if not all; for having reduced their metals into powder, they mixed them with that fatty substance whereof the rest of the plaister consisted, whilst it was yet hot, continually stirring it up and down, lest it should sink to the bottom; so they continually stirred it till it was stiff; then they made it up in rolls, which, when they needed for use, they could melt by the fire again.

2. The Arabians made up theirs with oil and fat, which needed not so long boiling.

3. The Greeks emplaisters consisted of these ingredients: metals, stones, divers sorts of earth, feces, juices, liquors, seeds, roots, herbs, excrements of creatures, wax, rosin, gums.

CHAP. XII. *Of Poultices.*

1. POULTICES are those kind of things which the Latins call *cataplasmata*, and our learned fellows, that if they can read English, that's all, call them cataplasms, because it is a crabbed word few understand; it is indeed a very fine kind of medicine to ripen sores.

2. They are made of herbs and roots, fitted for the disease, and members afflicted, being chopped small, and boiled in water almost to a jelly; then by adding a little barley-meal, or meal of lupins, and a little oil, or rough sweet suet, which I hold to be better spread upon a cloth, and apply to the grieved place.

3. Their use is to ease pain, to break sores, to cool inflammations, to dissolve hardness, to ease the spleen, to concoct humours, and dissipate swellings.

4. I beseech you take this caution along with you: Use no poultices (if you can help it) that are of an healing nature, before you have first cleansed the body, because they are subject to draw the humours to them from every part of the body.

CHAP. XIII. *Of Troches.*

1. THE Latins call them *placentula*, or little cakes, and the Greeks *prochikois*, *kukliscoi*, and *artiscoi*; they are usually little round flat cakes, or you may make them square if you will.

2. Their first invention was, that powders being so kept, might resist the intermission of air, and so endure pure the longer.

3. Besides, they are easier carried in the pockets of such as travel; as many a man (for example) is forced to travel whose stomach is too cold, or at least not so hot as it should be, which is most proper, for the stomach is never cold till a man be dead; in such case, it is better to carry troches of wormwood, or galangal, in a paper, in his pocket, than to lay a gallipot along with him.

4. They are made thus: At night when you go to bed, take two drams of fine gum tragacanth; put it into a gallipot, and put half a quarter of a pint of any distilled water fitting for the purpose, you would make your troches for to cover it, and the next morning you shall find it in such a jelly as the physicians call mucilage; with this you may (with a little pains taken) make a powder into a paste, and that paste into cakes called troches.

5. Having made them, dry them in the shade, and keep them in a pot for your use.

CHAP. XIV. *Of Pills.*

1. THEY are called *pilulæ*, because they resemble little balls; the Greeks call them *catapolia*.

2. It is the opinion of modern physicians, that this way of

making medicines, was invented only to deceive the palate, that so by swallowing them down whole, the bitterness of the medicine might not be perceived, or at least it might not be unsufferable: and indeed most of their pills, though not all, are very bitter.

3. I am of a clean contrary opinion to this. I rather think they were done up in this hard form, that so they might be the longer in digesting; and my opinion is grounded on reason too, not upon fancy, or hearsay. The first invention of pills was to purge the head; now, as I told you before, such infirmities as lie near the passages were best removed by decoctions, because they pass to the grieved part soonest; so here, if the infirmity lies in the head, or any other remote part, the best way is to use pills, because they are longer in digestion, and therefore the better able to call the offending humour to them.

4. If I should tell you here a long tale of medicines working by sympathy and antipathy, you would not understand a word of it: They that are set to make physicians may find it in the treatise. All modern physicians know not what belongs to a sympathetical cure, no more than a cuckow what belongs to flats and sharps in music, but follow the vulgar road, and call it a hidden quality, because it is hidden from the eyes of dunces, and indeed none but astrologers can give a reason for it: and physic without reason, is like a pudding without fat.

5. The way to make pills is very easy, for with the help of a pestle and mortar, and a little diligence, you may make any powder into pills, either with syrup, or the jelly I told you before.

CHAP. XV. *The way of mixing Medicines, according to the Cause of the Disease, and Part of the Body afflicted.*

THIS being indeed the key of the work, I shall be somewhat the more diligent in it. I shall deliver myself thus;

1. To the vulgar.

2. To such as study astrology; or such as study physic astrologically.

1st, To the vulgar. Kind souls, I am sorry it hath been your hard mishap to have been so long trained in such Egyptian darkness, even darkness which to your sorrow may be felt: The vulgar road of physic is not my practice, and I am therefore the more unfit to give you advice. I have now published a little book, (Galen's Art of Physic) which will fully instruct you, not only in the knowledge of your own bodies, but also in fit medicines to remedy each part of it when afflicted; in the mean season take these few rules to stay your stomachs.

1. With the disease, regard the cause, and the part of the body afflicted; for example, suppose a woman be subject to miscarry, through wind, thus do:

(1.) Look abortion in the table of diseases, and you shall be directed by that, how many herbs prevent miscarriage.

(2.) Look wind in the same table, and you shall see how many of these herbs expel wind.

These are the herbs medicinal for your grief.

2. In all diseases strengthen the part of the body afflicted.

3. In mixed diseases there lies some difficulty, for sometimes two parts of the body are afflicted with contrary humours, as sometimes the liver is afflicted with choler and water, as when a man hath both the dropsy and the yellow jaundice; and this is usually mortal.

In the former, suppose the brain be too cool and moist, and the liver be too hot and dry; thus do;

1. Keep your head outwardly warm.

2. Accustom yourself to the smell of hot herbs.

3. Take a pill that heats the head at night going to bed.

4. In the morning take a decoction that cools the liver, for that quickly passeth the stomach, and is at the liver immediately.

You must not think, courteous people, that I can spend time to give you examples of all diseases: These are enough to let you see so much light as you without art are able to receive: If I should set you to look at the sun, I should dazzle your eyes, and make you blind.

2dly, To such as study astrology (who are the only men I know that are fit to study physic, physic without astrology being like a lamp without oil); you are the men I exceedingly respect, and such documents as my brain can give you at present (being absent from my study) I shall give you.

1. Fortify the body with herbs of the nature of the lord of the ascendant, it is no matter whether he be a fortune or infortune in this case.

2. Let your medicine be something antipathetical to the lord of the sixth.

3. Let your medicine be something of the nature of the sign ascending.

4. If the lord of the tenth be strong, make use of his medicines.

5. If this cannot well be, make use of the medicines of the light of time.

6. Be sure always to fortify the grieved part of the body by sympathetic remedies.

7. Regard the heart, keep that upon the wheels, because the Sun is the foundation of life, and therefore those universal remedies, *Aurum Potabile*, and the philosopher's stone, cure all diseases by fortifying the heart.

TABLE OF DISEASES.

Abortion, 36 43 231 256
Aconites, 25 177 201
Aches, 177 201 215 255
Adders, 73 266
Adust choler, 57 92
After-birth, 9 24 25 66 72 103 110 138 272
Agues, 5 18 31 33 47 63 92
Agues in the breast, 11 155
Almonds in the ears, 38 56 181
Andicomes, 26 176
St. Anthony's Fire, 4 29 76 81 94 139 145
Appetite to procure, 21 31 66 119 126 145
Apoplexy, 14 52 166 171
Arm-pits, ill scent, 217 257
Arteries, 23 26 126
Asthma, 278
Back, easeth pains, & strengtheneth, 3 76 180 272
Baldness, 29 98 273
Barrenness, 14 56 147
Beasts, venomous, 20 24 25 29 36
Belching, 50
Belly-ach, 155 161 175
Belly binds, 151 221
Belly opens, 19 29 212 261
Bees, 140 161 238
Biting of mad dogs, 22 30 108 118 138 140 204
Birth, 2 3
Biting of serpents, 20 22 28
Binding, 10 35 137
Bleedings, 28 47 50 56 267
Bleeding by leeches to stay, 26
Blood cooleth, 24 39 131
Blood spitting, 203
Blood purging, 44 168
Bloody urine, 5
Blastings by lightning, 209
Black and blue spots, 35 59 70
Bladder, 20 52 80 124
Blemishes, 109
Blindness, 154 227
Blows, 161 163
Breast, 4 112 207
Brain, 21 55 72 81 97 119
Breath, difficult, 2 22 27 43 99 228
Bloody-flux, 5 7 23 29 42 47
Blisters, 29 231 248
Bowels, 59 70 151 161 188 218
Bots, 118
Boils, 22 31 72 179 231
Bruises, 4 7 21 41 48 148 157 244
Burning, 4 16 30 42 77 97 128 141 198
Cachexia, 6 11 78 89
Cancers, 6 43 60 69 72
Cankers, 28 36 48 52 56 139 146 180
Cantharides, 36 184
Carbuncles, 238 242 273
Casting, 11 244
Cattle poisoned, 134
Catarrhs, 160 252
Child-birth, 31 106
Chilblains, 29 132 146
Chincough, 218 262
Choler, 22 58 78 97 102 104 112 120 134 142 151 161 169 206 212 219 226
Choleric pushes, 77
Choleric-fluxes, 208
Choleric humours, 200 254
Chops, 205 233
Cold, 31 55 163 175 202
Colic, 5 11 23 36 55 59 62 97 103 112 125 128 144 149 177 180 203 221 228 237 240 245 273
Cough, 5 25 37 43 35 55 64 76 141 144 180 182 191 201 205 210 224 228 233 264 269 271

Cods, 26 132 146 159 269 276
Conception, 58 148 232
Congealed blood, 2 17 72 94 107
Consumption, 40 52 53 119 138 144 162 193 203 278
Convulsions, 20 31 54 64 81 100 118 120 121 126 129 144 148 160 229 240 249 250 270
Costiveness, 69
Corrosion, 110
Cramp, 3 20 42 54 63 81 100 112 118 119 129 144 149 161 167 176 197 202 232 240 249 254 263 278
Corruption, 78
Counter poison, 144 160
Dandriff, 28 91 171 180 241
Dead Child, 3 43 109 156 164 196 204
Deafness, 12 92 161 238 248 273
Deformity, 104 108 113 163
Defluxions, 208 214 277
Diabetes, or those who cannot keep water, 88 264
Digestion, 221 236 238
Difficulty of breathing, 52 86 182
Dimness of sight, 11 144 164 196 206 260 270
Diseases, sudden, 2
Dislocations, 14 45
Dogs, 31 118 138
Dreams, 150 169 209
Dropsy, 9 20 21 31 45 97 100 108 118 128 129 136 148 165 176 188 246 264
Drowsiness, 222
Drunkenness, 143
Dulness of spirit, 119 232
Dysury, 25 26 36 41 44 51 65 78 85 88 93 97 101 105 117 122 128 137 142 145 155 156 179 188 190 214 257 266
Ears, 8 16 24 26 32 73 97 108 147 161 169 184 192 195 203 218 226 238 260 273
Earwig, 131
Epidemical diseases, 11 31 41 49 185 187
Ephialtes, or the Mare, 80 196
Excoriations, 99 139 159
Eyes, 8 13 20 25 26 31 38 47 63 72 85 94 95 99 102 109 116 129 137 140 143 154 167 188 193 219
Face, 4 260 277
Fainting, 93 118
Falls, 2 3 48 66 69 91 145 160 233
Falling-sickness, 2 3 31 80 114 142 144 160 171 179 188 191 194 196 203 232 270
Fat decreaseth, 105
Felons, 17 26 181
Fevers, 24 38 40 42 91 111
Films in the eyes, 72 97 105 272
Fistulas, 8 13 18 49 110 125 147 182 185 190 195 216 238 260 270
Forgetfulness, 222
Fleas, 10 13
Flies, to keep from sores, 17
Flagging breasts, 146
Flux of blood, 13 34 47 50 70 92 109 111 114 139 142 144 148 150 210 211 212 277
French pox, 101 126 133 137 220 232 255
Frenzy, 106 140 190 203 209
Fundament, 107 219
Gall, 55 88 92 93 131
Galled feet, 10
Gangrenes, 49 78 89 147 132 255 273

Gout, 8 16 24 26 31 42 53 64 69 76 94 97 100 120 132 152 164 178 180 183 193 195 198 203 206 209 228
Gnats, 154
Green sickness, 151
Gravel, 3 22 38 43 45 56 57 64 77 94 108 121 123 147 164 194 214 270
Griping, 94 160
Groin, 182
Gums, 38 56 127 196 219 257
Hair to make yellow, 23 to restore, 29
Head, 31 45 79 94 97 104 106 111
Head-ach, 149 173 222 254 273
Heat, 88 140 147 208 219
Hearing, 9. See Ears.
Heart, 50 73 118 152 163 221 266
Hemorrhoides, 63 68 77 107 112 141 144 248
Hemlock, 182
Henbane, 182
Hiccough, 90 104 127 169
High colour, 36
Hips, 263
Hoarseness, 108 111 152 180 208 232
Humours, 45 65 136 161 168 218 275
Hypochondria, 89 92
Jaundice black, 2 3 14 116
Jaundice yellow, 6 8 9 20 23 29 31 116 125 158 188 192 219 255 271
Jaws, 6
Iliac passion, 238
Impostlumes, 7 23 171 181 215 230 232 236
Inflammations, 4 5 10 13 23 29 70 72 124 126 136 140 146 147 166 195 210 248 260 273
Infection to preserve from it, 12 219 242 273
Indigestion, 31 60 118 150 219
Joints, 25 29 64 75 100 112 118 249
Itch, 10 26 38 39 68 91 118 182 203 246 254
Kernels, 22 88 161 254 266 273
Kibes, 29
Kidneys, 27 125 145 160
King's evil, 16 41 57 107 118 169 184 254
Knots in the flesh, 70 75 253
Lasks, 107 174 176
Lechery, 130
Leprosy, 3 13 20 24 98 107 108 161 185
Lethargy, 4 13 117 149 179 222 264
Lice, 10 46 133
Liver, 2 9 18 22 31 55 68 87 94 98 112 138 149 153
Loathing of meat, 92 104 165 226
Longings, 165 270
Loose teeth, 209 218 256
Lungs, 6 25 76 81 108 156 158 161 180 194 205 263
Lust provokes, 20 27 67 72 73 169
Lust stops, 128 149 276
Madness, 134
Mad dogs, 3 12 23 31 98 108 117 119 275
Mandrakes, 182
Mare, 49 198
Marks in the skin, 26 154 162 196 222 234
Matrix, 38 131
Measles, 36 163 264
Meagrims, 25 112 253
Melancholy, 8 21 40 50 88 100

104 119 132 168 196 251 255 257
Members disjointed, 111 141 205
Memory, 19 57 102 144 152 165 223
Milk in nurses, 40 104 150 159 205 217 272
Milk curdling, 206
Milk in cattle, 58
Mind, 7
Mineral vapours, 118
Miscarriage, 164
Morphew, 3 44 86 89 92 95 100 103 129 136 150 178 179 186 228
Mother, 14 25 35 36 43 103 168 173 184 202 238 240 254 273
Mouth, 7 31 34 70 158 182 196 202 210 212 232 244 270
Mushrooms, 22 91 192
Muscles cut, 74 160
Nails in the flesh, 5 171
Navels of children, 209 264
Neck, 100 260
Nestles, 141
Nerves, 25 38
Nightshade eaten, 181
Nits, 254
Nipples, 112
Nocturnal pollutions, 127
Noise in the ears, 28 131 136 161 245
Noli me tanger 109
Nose, 140 145
Obstructions of the gall, 62 88 93 157 237 253
Obstructions of the liver, 17 22 29 88 100 105 115 137 157 162 163 195 200 210 244 251 267
Obstructions of the spleen, 7 19 29 115 137 157 159 161 162 195 215 245 252 272
Obstructions of the reins, 177 194
Pains, 12 26 91 176 208 256
Pain in the bowels, 153 278
Pains in the sides, 26 47 69 161 228 241
Pains in the reins, 196
Pains in the back and belly, 9 11 80
Pains in the ears, 161 205 218 226 228 245 253
Pains in the head, 207 219 232 264
Palsy, 31 68 97 106 120 143 145 157 201
Pestilence or plague, 11 22 40 50 60 66 86 94 115 152
Phthysic, 11 66 127 152 176 188 193 203 226
Phlegm, 40 52 63 79 97 104 118 134 168 190 212 240
Piles, 38 76 86 145 156 195 203
Pimples, 83 110 115 140 145 220 228
Pin and web, 129 152
Pissing blood, 7 31 47 65 80 139
Pleurisy, 155 159 206 241
Poison, 22 25 36 40 41 51 57 85 104 119 161 201 213 261
Pox small, 3 35
Polypus, 85 183 205
Privities, 76 146 153
Purples, 37 263
Pushes, 32 67 110 205 249 253 273
Quartan agues, 16 134 204 213
Quotidian agues, 79 101
Quinsey, 37 70 79 136 155 188 214
Rheum, 25 78 79 112 139 146 164
Reins, 14 20 101 104 106 148 220 229 270

Reds, 16 218
Rickets, 95 157
Ringworms, 40 43 61 88 130 251
Ruptures, 21 42 54 69 74 88 98 140 257
Sadness, 104
Scabby heads, 20 38 63 116 181
Scabs, 7 9 23 26 48 53 68 82 91 116 121 144 168 183 185
Scars, 53 82 154 223
Sciatica, 8 20 26 69 81 112 198
Serpents biting, 9 19 31 35
Scurvy, 45 144 161 217
Seed increase, 68 101
Shingles, 69 191 202
Sinews, 21 27 52 106 162 241
Skin, 86 121 244
Small pox, 36 163 217 231
Smell lost, helpeth, 14
Sneezing, 11 162 193
Speech lost, 152
Spleen, 16 18 31 99 102 107 110 244
Stomach, 11 23 31 86 98 118
Stoppings, 9 19 94
Strangury, 9 12 20 146
Stone, 11 20 22 104 118 184 189
Sun burning, 31 81 95
Surfeits, 53 153 209
Swellings, 32 56 76 88 90 249 263
Teeth, 10 12 17 22
Tenesmus, 80
Terms, provokes, 12 13 15 44 51 90 100 104
Terms, stops, 13 37 60 70 81 125 128 263
Tendons, 195
Tetters, 23 32 130 133 168
Testicles, 176
Thirst, 149 204 245
Throat, 15 35 56 86 91 147
Thrusts, 3
Tooth-ach, 3 20 31
Travail in women, 29 123
Trembling, 80 93 141 226
Tumors. See swellings.
Venom, 152 261
Vermin, 22
Veins broken, 146 233
Venery, 27 150 184 217
Vertigo, 21 26 29
Vipers, 271
Vomiting, 4 19 90 148 169 173 219
Uvula, 147 176 179
Ulcers, 4 12 17 30 78 87 90 94 99 103 109 113 128 164 200 203 262 274
Warts, and Wens, 108 229 260 276
Wases, 107
Watchings, 88 128 132 141 148
Weariness, 29 32 138 182
Wheals, 43 164 205
Wheesings, 51 105 136 160
Whitloes, 43 181
Whites, 4 13 16 29 124
Wind-break, 9 64 91 103
Womb, 14 43 80 106 162 181 257
Worms, 3 7 16 66 94 111
Wounds, 16 31 38 44 45 77 117 154 164 167 185 186
Wrinkles, 26
Yellow jaundice, 7 29 88 101 109

THE

MODERN PRACTICE

OF

ENGLISH GARDENING.

In a concise Monthly Display of

All the Practical Works

OF

GENERAL GARDENING,

THROUGHOUT THE YEAR:

FORMING

A Complete Practical Remembrancer and Compendious Journal of the proper Seasons, and different Methods of Sowing, Planting, Propagating, and Raising their various Productions of the Kitchen and Fruit-garden, Flower-garden, Shrubbery, and Plantations, Pleasure-grounds, Nursery, Green-house, and Hot-house, Hot-beds, and Forcing-house; with the essential Culture of the respective Plants, Trees, Shrubs, Flowers; and a General Register and full Display of all the necessary Works requisite in the Practical Management of the several Months of the Year, from the Beginning of January to the End of December.

COMPILED FROM

THE MOST APPROVED AUTHORS.

Manchester:

PRINTED BY S. RUSSELL, DEANSGATE.

1806.

THE

MODERN PRACTICE, &c.

NOTE. That in this work, in order to admit of introducing the practical matter as fully as it could possibly be done, the publisher has used the abbreviations of b. m. l relating to the different times of the month for performing the various works: (b.) stands for the beginning; (m.) for the middle; and (l.) for the latter end of the respective months; implying, that the different works and operations may be performed accordingly; and where (b. m.) occurs, denotes that the particular works may be performed in the beginning or middle, and (b. l. m.) in the beginning or middle, and latter end of the months; and similarly where (b. l.) occurs.

But as great part of the directions are without any of the above initials, or any relative intimations, it may generally be considered, that they may be respectively performed any time of the month occasionally.

JANUARY.

THE KITCHEN-GARDEN.

AT this season the principal business in the kitchen-garden is to prepare ground for future crops, by manuring, digging, and trenching, protecting tender plants in frames, hand-glasses, borders, &c. in frosty and other inclement weather, making hot-beds for early forcing, where required; and only a few articles are necessary to be sowed and planted, and these principally in but small portions, some on warm compartments, in the full ground, if dry, mild, settled weather; and some in hot-beds, for early crops, as hereafter explained under the respective heads.

Ground vacant.—Prepare at all opportunities for early and general crops, by augmentation of dung for manure, where most needful; and by digging and trenching the ground up in rough ridges to improve by the weather, till wanted for sowing and planting, which can then be expeditiously levelled down in an improved fertilized state for the reception of the respective seeds, plants, and roots.

The work of sowing and planting—may be performed moderately, in some particular crops, both in the natural ground, when open dry weather, and in hot-beds.

For natural ground crops—dig some warm borders for early produce, and main quarters for sowing and planting larger supplies.

For hot-bed crops—prepare necessary supplies of proper dung, for making the hot-beds, composts of rich earth, loam, &c. laying some under cover to have dry for earthing the hot-beds at this season, and let the frames and glasses be ready in the best order, for placing upon the said beds, with good garden mats for covering the glasses at night; and at other times occasionally in bad weather.

Sowing in the natural ground—perform in open dry weather, upon south borders and other warm compartments, small portions of radishes, spinach, lettuce, peas, beans, cabbage, parsley, carrots, a few Welch and other onions, to draw young for sallads, &c.

In hot-beds—may sow cucumbers, melons, radishes, lettuce, small sallading, carrots, peas, kidney-beans, cauliflowers, some best early cabbage, and red cabbage. [See each article under its respective head.]

Planting—may be performed both in the open ground and in hot-beds, for earliest production.

In the free open ground, if open settled weather—may plant cabbages, beans, coleworts, horse-radish, mint-roots, Jerusalem artichokes, liquorice, garlick, shallots, cives, &c and for seed plant old cabbages, savoys, carrots, parsneps, onions, turneps, and red beet.

And in hot-beds—may plant asparagus, kidney-beans, mint-roots, peas, mazagan-beans, potatoes, mushroom-spawn, strawberries, tansey, tarragon, and young plants of cucumbers and melons, all of which when required in early production.

Natural ground sowing and planting—perform only in open dry weather.

Hot-bed sowing and planting—under frames and glasses may be effected both in mild and frosty weather occasionally, in several sorts of seeds, plants, and roots, as above.

Forcing in hot-beds—may be proceeded in any time this month for various early crops.

Hot-bed dung—provide and prepare a proper quantity as may be required, ready in eligible order for making hot-beds where intended for early crops above-mentioned, having for this occasion fresh horse stable dung, the long and short warm moist litter together, forking it up in a heap to mix all parts equally, and to remain a week or fortnight, turning it over once or twice in that time, and will then be in good preparation for hot-beds.

Make hot-beds—for such early crops as may be in demand, as cucumbers, melons, asparagus, sallading, strawberries, kidney-beans, &c. before intimated; and for which generally make the

hot-beds of well prepared horse-dung, already explained, or occasionally of tanner's bark; but for general hot-beds, dung, as above, is the most eligible for common use, both as being more readily and cheaper obtained in most places, and more convenient and effective on most occasions for common hot-beds, which in dimensions make in width and length for a one, two, or three-light garden-frame, or two or more such frames as may be required, making the bed from two feet and a half, to three and a half high in dung, and earthed within the frame six or eight inches thick, with rich light earth, in which to sow or plant.

Earth for earthing the above early hot-beds—for cucumbers and melons particularly, lay a quantity in some covered shed, &c. several weeks, or a month or more, previous to making the hot-beds, that it may be moderately dry, of a proper temperature, both for seed-beds, and others for young plants of the above.

Dung for manure—of old hot-beds and dunghills wheel in when frosty, or dry weather, upon different vacant compartments, where most wanted, and for principal crops.

Asparagus to force—for early production, plant three years old plants in a hot-bed, to gather next month. [For the method of making and planting the bed, see October, November, &c.]

Asparagus beds now in forcing—keep to a proper moderate heat, by applying straw litter round the sides, or when the heat declines, add a lining of hot dung; give air occasionally every day, especially when the shoots are advancing, by opening the glasses a little; and cover the glasses every night with straw or garden mats.

Artichokes—where not landed up last month or November should now be done; otherwise, if severe frost set in, cover each plant round with light mulchy stable litter.

Beans—plant early kinds, (b. m.) in open weather, if before omitted, or to succeed any former planted: also a good crop of long pods, Windsor, Toker, or other broad beans in rows a yard asunder, three or four inches apart in the row, and two or three inches deep.

—— hoe and earth up early beans, that are up an inch or two high.

—— *to force*—plant some young early plants of the mazagans, in the borders of a forcing house, or in hot-beds.

Cabbages—plant out some strongest winter plants, (m. l.) if open weather, in rows fifteen inches to two feet asunder.

———— sow early, and red cabbage seed (m. l.) a small portion in a warm border, or under a frame, or in a hot-bed, for earlier transplanting.

———— plant old cabbages for seed. [See October.]

Cauliflower plants—in frames and under hand-glasses; give plenty of air in open dry weather daily, but defended with the glasses when wet, or very cold, and at nights, and kept close in frosty weather; and when severe frost, cover the glasses also with litter or mats; and pick off decayed leaves.

———— also, any cauliflower plants pricked in borders, defend with mats or dry straw-litter in rigorous frosts.

———— sow a little cauliflower seed (l.) in a hot-bed, both to succeed the winter-standing plants, and to have a supply of young plants ready for planting in the spring, in case those should be killed by the frost, or that none were raised last autumn to stand the winter, and in either case these now sowed will be of proper growth for planting out the latter end of March, or early in April.

Carrots—sow a small portion on a warm border, to grow early; or for earlier young carrots, sow in a hot-bed.

Cardoons—cover in hard frost with mats or straw round each plant, or if of tall growth, may loosen the roots, turn down the plants to the ground, and cover them thick with long litter.

Celery—earth up the full grown crops almost to the top; the advancing crops according to their growth; and at the approach of severe frost, cover some best plants, and remove some also under shelter.

Composts—prepare for hot-beds with rich earth, light surface loam, and rotten dung, all blended together in an heap.

———— turn former made composts, breaking the clods, and mixing the parts well together.

———— lay some prepared composts or rich light earth in a shed or other cover, to have dry in proper order for earthing early cucumber and melon hot-beds, &c.

Cresses, mustard and rape—for small sallading sow in a hot-bed under frames, &c. once a fortnight to gather young, or in open weather may be sowed in beds of natural earth under glasses.

Cover young tender plants—in frosty weather, as radishes, cauliflowers, lettuce, &c. Also in severe frosts protect artichokes, celery, endive, cardoons.

Cucumbers—for earliest crops, may be sowed in a hot-bed any time in this month; and when the plants are come up with the first or seed leaves half an inch broad, prick them in small pots, three or four in each, to remain till advanced in the second or rough leaves two or three inches, then transplanted into larger hot-beds for fruiting in March, April, &c. [See February, March, and April, for further directions.

———— Sow more cucumber seed two or three times in

the same hot-bed, at a week's interval, to have plenty of young plants in case of accidents.

——— also may sow or plant cucumbers in pots, &c. in a hot-house.

Melons—if required in early maturity, may also be sowed in a hot-bed, and managed as directed above for the cucumbers.

Peas—sow early hotspurs, both on south borders, and larger supplies in the main quarters, all in drills, two feet and a half, or a yard asunder; also a first crop of marrowfats, in drills a yard, or three feet and a half distance, especially if they are intended to be sticked.

——— draw a little earth to early peas that are up in a dry day in open weather, and in severe frost it would be adviseable to cover some rows of the earliest crop with dry straw litter, &c.

——— *peas to force*—plant some early young plants of the dwarf frame pea in a hot-bed; or sow some thick in a hot-bed to transplant into larger hot-beds when an inch or two high; or sow some early kinds at once in a larger hot-bed in cross rows, to remain where sowed; some also sown and planted, in pots, may be placed in a forcing frame, &c.

Lettuce plants—in frames or under hand-glasses, give the full air in all mild dry days, and defended with the glasses at nights, and from excessive wet, and sharp cold; and kept close in frosty weather.

——— sow a small portion of lettuce seed (m. l.) in a warm border, or under a frame, or in a gentle hot-bed for early transplanting.

——— *Lettuce to force*—transplant some with small balls of earth about the roots of the largest plants, from borders, &c. into a hot bed.

Mushroom-beds—defend constantly with dry straw or long litter a foot thick, and over which spread large garden mats, the more effectually to keep out cold and wet from the bed, which would perish the spawn.

——— make mushroom-beds for spring production. [See September, &c.]

——— *Mushroom-beds*, in production, should be looked over once or twice a week, to gather the mushrooms while young or of middling growth; covering up the beds again directly.

Strawberries to force—for early fruit, plant some two year old plants, with balls of earth about the roots, in pots, and place in a hot-bed, or rather at this season pots thereof placed in a hot-house, &c.

Radishes—sow early short-topped kinds on a warm border, &c. cover them with straw two inches thick, till they come up; then uncovered every mild day, and covered again towards the evening, and kept constantly covered in frosty weather.

——— or some may be sowed in a hot-bed to draw earlier by three or four weeks; make a moderate hot-bed for a one, two, or three-light garden frame, and earthed within the frame six inches thick; sow the seed on the surface and earthed over about half an inch depth: put on the glasses, and when the plants come up admit fresh air moderately every day. [See Hot-beds, page 9.]

Potatoes—if young ones, are required early, plant some early dwarf kinds in a hot-bed.

Spinach—sow a first early crop (m. l.) of the round-leaved kind, in a warm situation.

——— winter spinach, raised last autumn, keep always very clear from weeds; and in strong plants gather some for use of the larger outer leaves, the others will advance in succession.

Parsley—may be sowed (m. l.) in open weather.

Endive to blanch—tie up the leaves of some full grown plants every week, in dry open weather; or if wet ground, remove some with small balls of earth to the roots into the south side of a raised sloping bank of dry light earth, defended with a frame, &c. to remain more secure from rotting by wet at this season, which endive is very liable to in wet ground in winter. (See November.) And in frosty weather may cover some principal plants; some may be removed under cover, or in a frame at the approach of severe frost, and laid into a ridge of dry earth or sand, to whiten; covering with long litter.

Horse-radish—provide sets for planting, of the small side and bottom off-sets, of the large roots when digged up for use, cutting off the top part two inches long for planting.

——— plant horse-radish (m. l.) with sets as above, in rows two feet distance, one foot in the row, and twelve inches deep, planted either by dibble that depth, or if a light mellow soil, by trenching the ground in regular trenches two feet wide, and the depth as above: and along the bottom of each trench plant a row of sets by dibble; but, in this method, inserted only just down to their tops, and digging the next trench, turn in the earth upon the sets twelve inches deep as aforesaid, and so proceed trench and trench; and they will thus produce long straight root-shoots in proportion.

Tansey, tarragon, and mint—if required early, plant in a hot-bed.

Jerusalem artichokes—may be planted, (m. l.)

Plants for seed—plant good headed old cabbages and savoys; also carrots, parsneps, red beet, turneps, onions, &c. [See October.]

Small sallading—sow once a week or fortnight, as may be required, in a hot-bed, such as cresses, mustard, sallad-radish, lap-lettuce, all to cut young; or if mild open weather, may sow those seeds in a bed of natural earth, defended with frames and lights, or hand-glasses, &c.

Winter-onions—keep clean from spreading weeds, by careful hand-weeding.

——— *old dried housed onions*—examine, to pick out decayed ones, and such as begin to sprout, and plant them for scallions.

——— sow a little onion seed (m. l.) to raise a small supply of early young plants for sallads, &c.

In frosty weather—wheel in old dung for manure: fresh-horse-dung for hot-beds; rich fresh earth, loam and rotted dung for composts, and turn over former-made composts; likewise protect tender plants from frost, as radishes, cauliflowers, lettuce, sallading, &c.

In open weather—forward all necessary digging and trenching, laying the ground in ridges, as before intimated.

Liquorice—may now be planted (m. l.) where intended for its roots; and all liquorice of three years growth digged up—[See February and December.]

Defend hot-beds—from driving cold rains, snow, and piercing winds, by laying straw litter round the sides; or if declined in heat, line the sides with hot dung as directed below.

Hot-beds—give careful attendance both to admit air every favourable day, at the upper end of the glasses, raised half an inch to one or two inches, shutting close before evening, or when the weather changes severely cold; and to cover the glasses every evening with mats or straw, and uncovered in the morning; as also to support a good moderate heat, by applying linings of hot dung to the sides, according as it declines; and occasionally to give very light waterings when the earth becomes dry.

——— admit air to hot-beds every day when the bed is of good heat.

——— cover the glasses of hot-beds every evening soon after sun-setting, and uncover about sun-rising in the morning, or soon after, especially in mild weather; but at any rate, give all possible advantage of day-light and air to the plants in hot-beds now in these short days; as the heat of the bed will conti-

nue them in growth, and if kept too close, would draw them up weak, dwindling, and unsuccessful.

——— line hot beds with hot dung to the sides when the heat decreases, in order to revive and continue the bed in a moderate regular heat, to resist the external cold and forward the plants in proper growth.

Kidney-beans—if required early, sow or plant in a hot-bed (m. l.) some early dwarfs; or also some in pots, and placed in a hot-house, which will be considerably more successful in growth and general production; having moderate sized pots (24s.) filled with dry light rich earth: plant four or five beans in each, pot an inch deep; and when the beans have sprouted, and after the plants come up, supply moderate waterings, and they will grow freely, and produce an early spring crop in March, &c. [See February.]

For hot-house forcing—sow and plant in pots, &c. any time this month, cucumbers, kidney-beans, strawberry-plants, mint-roots, small sallading, &c. and place them in a hot-house, pinery stove, vinery, or any forcing-house at work; they will be obtained for early use.

Where a new kitchen-garden is forming or intended, should now forward the preparation of the ground by digging, trenching, and occasionally manuring with dung where needful, or also applying portions of fresh earth to particular parts where it may seem necessary, having the whole one or two spades depth of good fertile soil; and when wholly prepared as above, divide and lay out the ground into regular compartments, generally forming a border along next the outward fence, three or four to five or ten feet wide, and next to this allot the same width for a walk, then a border three or four to five or six feet wide; and within this have the main quarters for the principal general crops, divide into beds and other compartments.

FRUIT GARDEN AND ORCHARD.

The business of planting and pruning should now be forwarded at all proper opportunities, both in wall, espalier, and standard fruit trees, in a garden and orchard, &c.

Planting—may be performed in open weather, in apples, pears, cherries, medlars, quinces, mulberries, filberts, wall-nuts, chesnuts, services, gooseberries, currants, raspberries, &c.

——— likewise in mild settled weather, plant peaches, nectarines, apricots, grape-vines, and figs.

Pruning and nailing—should now be forwarded at all con-

venient opportunities, both in wall-trees, espaliers, and standards, both in open weather, and when but moderate frosts.

Prepare borders, &c.—where intended to plant wall and espalier fruit trees, by necessary manuring with good dung, if the ground is poor, and by proper digging or trenching the borders, &c.

——— the borders for wall and espaliers, where a general new plantation is intended, should be trenched one or two spades deep, where the depth of good fertile soil admits, or if poor ground or bad soil, apply plenty of dung, and some good loam or other fresh earth or compost of good substance; but if already a good cultivated fertile soil, no more will be necessary than to dig an aperture for each tree.

——— likewise for standard trees, if an improvement in the soil seems necessary, augment it as above in the places where each tree is to be planted; or, if the ground is in good cultivation, nothing more will be required than to open a hole for the trees at proper distances.

Wall-trees—intended for planting, should be principally peaches, nectarines, apricots, vines, figs, planted mostly against south walls, or some on south west and easterly aspects, all at fifteen to eighteen feet asunder.

——— also for walls plant some best cherries, plums, pears, and finest eating apples, both on southerly walls, and other exposures, fifteen to eighteen feet, or pears eighteen to twenty feet distance.

And for espaliers—generally allot a range along the inward edge of the main borders surrounding the quarters of the kitchen garden, &c. principally of some finest eating apples, and pears, at twelve or fifteen to eighteen or twenty feet distance, with some best cherries, and plums, at fifteen feet, as also some apricots, figs, and vines, &c. having a trellis of stakes and poles, or regular post and railing, ranged close behind the trees, about four or five feet high, on which to train the branches horizontally, in the manner of wall trees.

Prune wall-trees—of peaches, nectarines, apricots, all which bearing principally upon the young shoots of last summer, a plentiful supply of these must be now retained for next year's bearers, and from which prune out the superabundancy and all ill-placed and improper shoots, and part of the past bearers and naked old wood; the retained shoots shortened one third or fourth of their length, and which, and the general branches, nailed in regular to the wall horizontally, about three to four or five inches asunder.

Vines against walls—may likewise now be forwarded in pruning; they bearing on the young wood only, leave a plentiful

general succession of the strongest well placed last summer's shoots, cut the rest away, with part of the former bearers of the two last years, and long-advanced naked old wood, to make room for training the present supply of young shoots for next summer's bearers, which now prune or shorten to three, four, five, or six joints, according to their strength and situation in different parts of the tree; or strong shoots in wide vacant spaces above and below, may be left, eight, ten, or twelve joints long, and nail the whole regular to the wall, six to eight or ten inches distance.

Plums, cherries, and pairs—trained in wall-trees and espaliers, should also be forwarded now in the winter pruning, these trees bearing upon small short spurs arising at the sides and ends of the general branches, which continuing several or many years in bearing, they after being fully trained, require only occasional supplies of young wood; therefore in such, where many of last year's shoots were retained in summer, the superabundancy and improper should now be pruned away, retaining however a sufficiency in all vacant parts, and a leader to each mother branch, (where room for extension) all continued at their full length, not shortened in these trees, except where any casually extend much beyond their limited bounds; or occasionally in vacancies to shorten some particular young shoots to obtain a further supply of branches; and let the whole be trained in regularly to the wall and espalier, four or five inches asunder.

Likewise apple-trees—trained in espaliers, and against walls, prune and train as directed above for the plums, pears, &c. their mode of bearing being similar; do not shorten the branches when not extended beyond their proper limits.

Also medlars and quinces—in espalier trees prune and train in the same manner, their way of bearing being similar to the pairs, apples, &c.

Fig-tree pruning—is adviseable to defer principally till next month.

———— defend some choicest fig-trees in severe frost with mats; the shoots being succulent, are liable to suffer.

Plant standards—where intended in gardens, orchards, &c. principally of apples; pears, cherries, plums, disposed in ranges, twenty-five or thirty to forty or fifty feet distance; but generally plant most abundantly of apples and pairs, and most of all of apples. Always where there is sufficient scope of ground, allot plenty of standards, for producing the principal supplies of fruit.

———— likewise in standards, plant some medlars, quinces, mulberries, filberts, hazel-nuts, services, berberries, damsons, bullaces, walnuts, almonds, chesnuts, where there is proper

extent of ground, or plant only some of the most esteemed.

——— As standard fruit-trees consist of full standards, half standards, and dwarf standards, should plant principally the former for the general supply, and occasionally some half standards; and in small gardens may have half and dwarf standards, to take up less room, as being generally grafted, &c. upon moderate shooting or dwarf stocks; the trees growing with moderate or small heads accordingly, and will bear sooner.

Nail wall-trees—performing it generally according as each tree is pruned, laying the branches horizontally, and having proper shreds and nails, fasten them in straight and regular, three or four to five or six inches distance.

Tie and nail espalier trees—when they are pruned, which may be effected both occasionally by nailing as in wall-trees, and by tying with osier twigs, &c. arranging the branches in the same order and distance, as advised above for the wall trees aforesaid.

Stake standard-trees—that have been lately planted, especially those with tall stems.

Mulch fruit-tree roots—of such as have been newly planted, laying strawey mulch on the ground over the roots to keep out the frost.

Dig fruit-tree borders—when the trees are pruned and nailed.

Likewise dig between rows of gooseberries—currants and raspberries, when pruned, clearing out all root or bottom suckers from the main plants.

Plant gooseberries and currants—observing generally, if they are applied for at the public nurseries, &c. for planting, to choose three years old trees, with full heads, to form immediate bearers the ensuing season; and plant them some in a single range, both to divide large quarters, and in a row along the edges or borders six or eight feet apart; and some in close plantations in continued parallel rows, eight or ten feet distance.

—— likewise plant some gooseberries and currants against south walls, &c. and of other exposures, to obtain fruit earlier, and in best perfection; but generally plant the most of white and red currants, six to eight or ten feet asunder.

Prune gooseberries and currants—cut out many of the last summer shoots, only leaving a requisite supply in vacant parts, to furnish a proper head of branches, and to supply the place of any worn-out or decayed wood; and leave terminal ones for leaders to the general branches, or two long branches pruned down to lateral shoots to remain for leaders, which, and the general retained shoots, shorten moderately; or some of mid-

dling growth, shorten but little; or others, as the gooseberry kind particularly, shorten more sparingly, or some not at all, or not in a general manner, except too long extended rambling growths, low stragglers, and very crooked reclining shoots; as when too considerably shortened, it occasions a confused thickety production of superfluous shoots the following summer, detrimental to the fruit.

Plant suckers and cuttings—of gooseberries and currants, to raise supplies of new plants where required, detaching the bottom suckers with roots to each; and take cuttings of the young straight shoots above, cut ten or twelve inches long, and planted in rows a foot asunder.

Plant and prune raspberries—having, for planting, young sucker shoots of last summer, produced from the roots of old plants, choosing them about three feet growth detached with good roots, and pruning the weak top part, plant them in rows four feet and a half or five feet assunder by three feet in in the rows: and prune old plantations, cutting out the dead stems, last summer's bearers, for the same shoots or stems never bear but once, being succeeded by young ones produced from the root every summer, which becomes bearers next year, and perish the following winter, and should now be cut out as above, close to the ground; and then thin the young shoots to three, four, or five of the strongest on each stock, and prune them at top moderately, more or less, by cutting away the weak bending part.

Propagate fruit-trees—by suckers, layers, cuttings. [See February.]

Young wall and espalier trees—that are in training, give necessary pruning, cut out all the foreright and other ill-placed shoots, and train-in the rest neatly to the wall and espaliers.

Orchards—plant with different sorts of standard fruit-trees, as apples, pears, plums, and cherries, for the principal supply, twenty to thirty, or forty feet asunder; and also plant some of other kinds usually trained as standards, but more plentifully of apples and pears; or generally a larger portion of apples.

In fruit forcing-houses—for early fruits may now proceed (b. m.) to begin the forcing by fire heat, &c., especially in vineries (b.), and in other fruit-houses (m. l.) Observing either of which to proceed in making the fires accordingly, every evening and morning, &c.; or also occasionally bark beds, or dung hot-beds, in the pit within, or of dung and bark together, the dung below, and the tan at top. Or sometimes fruit forcing is effected wholly without fires, either by bark-beds or dung hot-beds in the extended pit within the department: or also sometimes in a glass-case or forcing frame, fronted with glass work, and the forcing effected entirely by dung-heat, by making

a hot-bed, either in an internal pit, or by strong hot dung linings applied outward to the back of the frame, half a yard or two feet wide, and five or six feet high.

FLOWER GARDEN, PLEASURE GROUND, &c.

Tender or curious plants in pots—should now be protected from rigorous frost; such as double wall-flowers, double stocks, double sweet-williams, &c. as also any curious tenderish evergreens, and other shrubs; placing them either under garden frames, or any temporary shelter, or awning of mats, &c.

——— Likewise plunge other pots of hardier plants and shrubs, &c. in some dry compartment, to guard the roots more securely from the frost.

Beds of bulbous roots—of the more valuable kinds, defend in severe frost by a covering of mats, or long litter; as tulips, hyacinths, &c. also anemonies and ranunculuses.

Auriculas and carnations in pots—should, at this season, be kept in a warm situation, or in frames, or to have shelter of mats in severe weather; for although these plants are hardy enough to stand the weather, the giving any principal sorts occasional protection from frost, snow, and excessive rains, preserves them in strength and good condition, to flower in greater perfection at the proper season.

Prepare for planting—the several compartments of beds, borders, clumps, by digging, trenching, &c. both for various hardy herbaceous plants, bulbous roots, and many sorts of shrubs and trees, where intended.

Beds and borders—dig for bulbous roots and other flowering plants.

Planting—may be performed in open weather in many sorts of bulbs, and other herbaceous plants, as well as in most sorts of hardy deciduous shrubs and trees.

Bulbous roots—may be planted (m. l.) in open dry weather, both in the general flower borders, and in beds, such as crocusses, snow-drops, narcissuses, tulips, hyacinths, jonquils, daffodils, Star-of-Bethlehems, fritillarias, bulbous irises, Persian irises, common flags, or gladioles, polyanthus-narcissus, crown-imperials, &c.

——— Observe in planting the above bulbs in the borders, large roots may either be planted singly towards the middle, and front, or plant some three or four roots together, or small roots, as crocusses, and snow-drops, &c. plant five or six in a clump.

——— and in planting them in beds, each sort separately, plant them in rows lengthways, the small roots five or six inches asunder, the others six to nine inches apart, two or three inches deep.

——— likewise plant some bulbs in pots, either to blow in the apartment of a house, or to place in a hot-house or hot-bed, for early flowering, such as early dwarf tulips, hyacinths, jonquils, polyanthus-narcissus, common narcissus, soliol narcissus, Persian irises, or any other sorts required of the moderate growing bulbs.

——— or may also place any of the above in bulb water glasses, to blow in the apartments of a house, filling the glasses with soft water up to the concavity of the mouth, and place one bulb in each, with only the bottom part in the water; and when the water becomes very foul and fetid, change it for fresh, once a fortnight.

Anemones and ranunculuses—may be planted in mild dry weather.

Off-sets—of all kinds of bulbous roots remaining out of the ground may now be planted in beds (m. l.) if mild open weather.

Hardy herbaceous plants—of the perennial and biennial fibrous, fleshy, and tuberous-rooted tribes, may be planted, if open weather, such as asters, golden-rods, perennial sun-flowers, campanulas, Canterbury-bells, asphodels, aconites, and many others.

Shrubberies prune and dig—cutting out long rambling shoots and other very irregular growths; then dig the ground where the shrubs do not overspread the surface.

Plant shrubberies—in open weather, where intended, with different kinds of hardy flowering shrubs.

New ground-work—where intended for a flower-garden, pleasure-ground, or shrubbery, &c. should now be forwarded, and the borders, beds, and other compartments, digged ready for planting in proper time, with flowers, shrubs, and trees, as it may be required.

Flowering plants—of various hardy herbaceous sorts, may now be planted, especially towards (m. l.) if mild weather.

Shrubs and trees—of many different sorts may now be planted for ornamental and useful plantations, when the weather permits.

Flowering shrubs—and other ornamental kinds may be planted now in shrubberies, &c. when the weather is favourable, especially most of the deciduous tribe, or occasionally many of the hardier sorts of ever-greens.

Ornamental trees—mostly of the deciduous kinds, may also be planted for any decorative, or other plantations required.

Evergreens—of the hardier sorts, as pines, firs, cedars, and several others of similiar quality, may be planted (m. l.) if settled open weather.

Forest trees—may be continued planting in open weather, for timber and other plantations intended.

Grass lawns, &c.—poll and roll occasionally in dry open weather, to keep the surface clean, firm, and even.

———— may now lay grass turf for lawns and plants, &c. in open weather.

Gravel walks—keep clean, and roll them in dry open weather.

Edgings—of box and thrift may now be planted: [See October and November] also of daisies, pinks, London pride, strawberries, &c.

Hedges—may be planted of white-thorn or quickset, or any other deciduous kinds, as privet, beech, elm, horn beam, poplar, alder, &c. [See March.]

———— clip hedges of deciduous kinds, omitted in summer; but not of evergreens now.

———— plash old run up hedges in outward, or division fences in gardens or fields.

Clean borders, walks, lawns, &c.—from all weeds and rubbishy litter.

Pruning shrubs and trees—may now be performed in most sorts where needful.

The stems and heads of trees, &c.—may be pruned up from low straggling branches, and any occurring irregularities above.

Stake tall trees and shrubs—lately planted.

Mulch new planted shrubs and trees—of the more curious and tender sorts, by laying dry light mulchy dung on the ground over the roots, to protect them from severe frost.

Suckers plant—of roses, lilacs, and various other shrubs in open weather.

Plant in pots—any desirable roots, plants, flowers, and shrubs, or some for forcing.

Tender curious evergreens, &c.—planted in the full ground, cover with mats in hard frost, as magnolias, rhododendrons, broad-leaved myrtle, tea-tree, &c.

And any young plants of these sorts in pots, or of any other tenderish or curious evergreens or other plants, both shrubby and herbaceous, &c. if not before removed in their respective pots to places of shelter, under frames, &c. or temporary awnings; it should now be done (b.) and in severe weather or frost, give proper protection with glasses to those in frames, and occasional covering of mats and straw litter, as also to those under awnings give similar covering.

Annual flower seeds—may be sowed in pots (l.) of balsam, ten week stocks, mignonette, sweet peas, candy-tuft, virgin

stock, dwarf lark spurs, &c. and placed in a hot-house for early flowering.

———— also sow hardy annuals in borders, &c. towards (l.) if mild weather, as sweet peas, candy-tuft, lark-spurs, adonis, cornbottles, dwarf sun-flower, persicaria, venus navel-wort, venus looking glass, lobels catchfly, pansies, nigella, &c. to flower early. [See February and March.]

For forcing flowers—place pots and water-glasses of bulbs in a hot-house; also pots of pinks, roses, and other small or moderate growing flowering plants and shrubs.

WORK IN THE NURSERY.

The nursery being appropriated to the business of raising the various different sorts of trees and shrubs, consisting of all the species and varieties of fruit-trees, forest and ornamental trees, flowering shrubs and evergreens, and as these are raised by many different methods, such as by seeds, suckers, slips, layers, cuttings, grafting, budding, &c. they are performed some occasionally at this season, but the greater part principally in the spring months; some also in summer, and more considerably and general in autumn; but in the grafting and budding particularly, the former is always performed in the spring, and the latter in summer, (July and August); and the young trees and shrubs raised by the different methods, being planted in nursery-rows, remain two, three, or several years under requisite culture, to attain proper growth for garden plantations; the particular process of all which essentials, and the general nursery culture, is explained in the proper places in the monthly directions, which, in the present month, consist of the following:

At this season the principal works of the nursery consist some in preparing ground ready for spring-planting or transplanting various sorts of trees and shrubs, and for sowing seeds, and planting cuttings, layers, suckers, &c. the giving occasional pruning to trees and shrubs, and digging between the nursery rows thereof; and in giving temporary protection to tender or curious sorts from severe frost, and in drawing or taking up trees, &c. of proper growth, as required for different plantations, and in some other necessary works.

Dig or trench ground—ready for planting out in spring, many sorts of young trees and shrubs, from seed-beds and other compartments, and for transplanting others, as occasion requires, from compartments where formerly planted at small distances, and now in their advanced growth require more room.

Pruning perform—as may be required, in hardy deciduous

trees and shrubs, such as trimming up the stems of forest and ornamental trees by cutting away all rude or large shoots, and shorten those of small growth to three or four inches; also to prune any disorderly growths in the different sorts of shrubs.

——— likewise in fruit trees; prune or cut out all shoots produced on the stem, eradicate suckers rising from the roots, and prune any disorderly growths in the branches of the head.

——— but in evergreens it would not be adviseable to give any considerable pruning at this season, only to reduce casual rude rambling shoots; as any general close cutting would admit the cold too suddenly, and injure the interior young shoots and leaves.

Dig between the rows of trees and shrubs—of former planting, which should be performed annually in winter or spring, both to turn down all top weeds, and for the benefit of the trees, &c. by loosening the ground about their roots to encourage their growth, as well as to have the ground appear neat and clean between the rows.

Planting and transplanting—may be performed (m.l.) if open settled weather, in most sorts of hardy deciduous trees and shrubs, where necessary both in young plants from seed-beds, and others that have been planted in compartments, in which they remain too close, and require transplanting at wider distances; planting the whole in nursery-rows one or two, to three feet asunder, according to the size and nature of growth of the different sorts.

Mulch the ground between young trees or shrubs—lately planted, especially of some principal sorts, and any more curious or tender kinds, spreading it on the ground close about the stems over the roots, to protect them more securely from the rigours of severe frost.

Protect tender exotic trees and shrubs—from severe frost, both such as are growing in beds in the full ground, either by matting over the beds of small young plants, or covering them above with dry long straw litter, and such as are in pots, should now, if not done before, be placed either in garden frames, defended with the glasses occasionally, or under proper awnings, to be covered with mats and long litter in severe weather, but to have the free air in mild dry days.

Plants in pots in general—both of all hardy curious sorts of trees, shrubs, &c. and others of a more tender nature, if not removed to a dry situation in the two last months, should now be done (b.) and in which it is adviseable to plunge them in the earth down to the rims, to prevent the frost entering by the sides of the pots to the roots.

——— likewise to pots that are plunged in the

earth as above, it is adviseable at the approach of severe weather, to spread some straw litter on the surface of the pots between the plants, to exclude the frost more effectually.

GREEN HOUSE.

At this season give good attention to preserve the green-house plants from frost in severe weather, and when mild, to admit air, and to give occasional waterings.

In frosty weather—keep the windows of the green-house close shut; and when very rigorous frosts, defend the windows with shutters or mats; and if flues, make moderate fires evening and morning, or occasionally all day when the frost is extremely severe.

But admit air—in open mild weather, by opening the glasses moderately, from nine, ten, or eleven, till two, three, or four o'clock; but if the weather change sharply cold, shut the glasses accordingly.

Keep the windows shut—always of nights, and frosts, very wet and foggy weather, and when sharply cold.

Watering—give occasionally in mild weather, according as the earth in the pots become dry; but always very moderate, and exceedingly sparing to the succulent plants, and by no means over-water any sorts at this season, observing generally for this occasion to have soft water at this season particularly, if possible, from a pond, river, brook, or some reservoir, where it has remained exposed to and softened by the full air, as hard-water from a well, &c. immediately applied now, is often too sharp or chillingly affecting, as to occasion a defoliation or shedding of the leaves.

Decayed leaves—pick off when they appear on any of the plants.

Dead wood and decayed shoots—cut off as soon as they occur.

In very foggy weather—sometimes make moderate fires in the flues, if any, to expel the damps which would prove pernicious to many of the plants.

Loosen the earth—in the tops of the pots, if any is become of a binding nature, or mossy.

Frame green-house plants—such as myrtles, &c. wintered under deep garden frames, either in want of green-house room, or being wholly destitute of one, should have the free air every mild-day, kept close at nights, and well covered in frosty weather with mats and straw, &c. adding also a thick lining of stable litter along the outside of the frame in very severe frosts.

HOT-HOUSE AND STOVE.

In this season a good internal heat must be constantly supported in the hot-house, and sometimes to admit a little air, and to give gentle waterings.

The pine apple plants—being constantly plunged in the bark-beds, these must be continued always in a good state, to impart a moderate lively bottom heat about the roots, especially the present year's fruiting plants; but is also essentially requisite to the pines, &c. in general.

The heat in general—of the hot-house or pinery, continue always in regular temperature, by a constant bark-bed heat; and to make fires every evening till nine or ten o'clock, to warm the internal air effectually till morning; when also make moderate fires, and if severe frost, or sharply cold, continue the fire the whole day, supporting the heat in a regular degree, agreeable to the standard *ananas*, marked on the thermometer.

The bark-beds—if failed in heat, should now be revived, by adding a portion of fresh tanner's bark at top, previously removing some of the most exhausted earthy parts of the old, at top of the bed, filling up with the new tan, and then fork-up the new and old together.

Admissions of fresh air—may be allowed in mild, calm sun shining days, by opening some of the glasses in front, two or three inches or more, according to the temperature of the weather, being careful to shut close again in proper time, either of the weather changing cloudy, &c or timely towards afternoon.

Watering—may be performed very moderately, only according as the earth in the pots appear dry; observe as estimated for the green house plants, to have principally soft-water for watering at this season.

The fruiting pines—of this year beginning to advance in fruit, must have a lively heat in the bark-beds.

The succession, and other young pines—must also have a good bark-bed heat continued, observing as before.

If severe frosts prevail—guard the hot-house plants by constant fires; and in very rigorous weather and no sun, defend the glasses with shutters or mats

In the hot-house—may now introduce pots of strawberries for early fruiting; also kidney-beans and cucumbers, and pots or boxing of small sallading; or likewise have pots of any desirable bulbous roots, pots of pinks, carnations, roses, and any other small ornamental flowering plants and shrubs to flower early, may likewise introduce some pots of bearing grape-vines for early fruiting.

In grape forcing-houses, may now (b. m) begin the forcing by fire, heat, &c.

FEBRUARY.

KITCHEN GARDEN.

In the kitchen-garden, if settled open weather, considerable attention is now required relative to the preparation of all vacant ground, by dunging, digging, and trenching, &c. and to get dung and other materials for hot-beds, all in proper order for sowing and planting the principal early and main crops and the two following months for the general supply of the present year; some to attain early perfection in the summer and beginning of summer; but considerably the greater part the main crops for the general service of summer and autumn and many also for the following winter, &c

For general crops—to sow and plant this and next month, forward at all opportunities the preparation of vacant ground by dunging, digging, &c.

Dung and manure ground—where most wanted for principal crops; such as the main crops of onions, leeks, cauliflowers, cabbages, spinach, lettuce, &c. and for new plantations of asparagus and artichokes; and to such compartments where the ground appears poor or much exhausted.

Digging and trenching—should now be forwarded in all vacant ground, laying it in ridges to improve by the weather, and to be ready for levelling down for sowing and planting the numerous necessary crops, this and the following spring months.

Horse-dung for hot-beds—where intended, should now be prepared in sufficient quantity, forking it up together mixedly, in a heap or ridge, to prepare in proper order for a week or a fortnight.

Sowing and planting—is now to be performed in many principal early and general main crops, mostly in the natural ground and some in hot-beds of tender plants, and others for earliest perfection.

Sowing in the natural ground—may be performed now in many principal crops, as radishes, peas, beans, spinach, lettuce, leeks, onions, carrots, parsneps, beets, cabbages, colewort, savoys, borecole, broccoli, cauliflower, parsley, small salading, chervil, dill, fennel, sorrel, burnet, clary, marigolds, angelica, corn-sallad, cresses, mustard, rape, &c.

———*for early natural crops*—sow on south borders, and warmest quarters (b. m.) radishes, spinach, lettuce, peas, beans, carrots, small sallad; and for succession sow more of each (m. l.)

Sowing in hot-beds—cucumbers, melons, radishes, small sallading, lettuce, purslane, kidney-beans, celery, cauliflowers, carrots, a few early turneps, cabbage, red cabbage, and coriander; and in a hot-house, kidney-beans and cucumbers.

Planting natural crops—is now proper in many principal sorts, as cabbages, beans, some early potatoes, horse-radish, Jerusalem artichokes, garlick, shallots, rocambole, mint, balm, tansey, tarragon, sorrel, fennel, burnet, cives; and towards (l.) if mild weather, and the plants tolerably strong, cauliflowers and lettuce from frames and hand-glasses.

Plant for seed—old cabbages, savoys, carrots, parsneps, turneps, red-beet, leeks, onions, celery, endive, borecole, &c.

To plant in hot-beds—may be performed in transplanting therein young plants of cucumbers, and melons; asparagus, early young peas and bean plants, strawberries, mushroom-spawn, kidney-beans, potatoes, and mint-roots; and to prick young lettuce, cabbage, and cauliflowers. [See the different articles.]

For hot-beds—prepare proper supplies of fresh horse-dung, rich dry light earth, frames and glasses, mats, &c.

In hot-beds—several articles may now be sowed and planted to obtain them in the earliest perfection, of the sorts already mentioned above, under the articles of *sowing and planting*.

Make hot-beds—in dimensions for one or more garden frames, of one, two, or three lights, as may be required, two feet and a half to three and a half high in dung, the frames placed on, and in proper time, the bed earthed within the frame with light rich dry mould, six to eight inches thick; and in which, when become of a moderate lively heat, sow or plant the several or particular crops intended.

——————— *or hot-beds for forcing*—may, in some kinds of plants, in want of frames, be arched over with hoops or rods, to cover with mats, such as for radishes, carrots, lettuce, kidney-beans, turneps, potatoes, &c.

Cucumbers and melons—sow in hot-beds under frames and glasses, two or three times this month to have plenty of young plants, and of which, when come up three or four days, prick some in small pots, three or four in each, of the cucumbers, and of the melons only two in a pot, and plunge them in the earth of the hot-bed, in which to continue two, three, or four weeks, to acquire a proper growth for ridging out or final transplanting into larger new-made hot-beds wherein to remain for fruiting; observing in the mean time to give air to the young plants, every day less or more, and occasionally at nights, if a strong heat and steam in the bed, otherwise only in the day-time; opening the upper end of the lights half an inch to an inch or more in mild weather, which also gives vent to the

steam arising from the heat of the bed, to transpire: cover the glasses every night with mats, and keep up a proper moderate heat in the bed, by occasionally laying dry long litter round the sides; and when the heat declines, apply a lining of hot dung close to that of the bed, first to the back part, afterwards in a week or ten days or a fortnight, to the front, if it appears necessary. [See the directions following: also March and April for more particulars on their further management.]

——— Line former made hot-beds of cucumbers and melons in proper time, to support a constant and moderate heat.

——— Make large hot-beds for one or more, two or three light frames, for ridging out the cucumber and melon plants raised last month, earthing the bed, within the frame, in proper time, laying first a small hill under the middle of each light, eight or ten inches depth for the plants; the other parts earthed only two or three inches for the present, but raised afterwards, by degrees, equal with the hills: then when the hills of earth are warmed by the heat of the bed, and the plants advanced in the rough leaves, one, two, or three inches, or beginning to push runners, are of proper size for this purpose, removing them out of the pots where pricked, with the ball of earth to the roots, and plant one pot of plants in each of the above hills of earth; giving a little water to the roots, and shut down the glasses.

——— Prick young seedling plants of cucumbers and melons into small pots in a hot-bed, ready when of advanced growth to remove into others where they are to remain for fruiting.

——— In hot-beds in general of cucumbers and melons, be careful to admit air moderately every day in temperate weather, by raising the upper ends of the lights half an inch to one or two inches, according to the temperature of the external air and internal heat of the beds, from nine, ten, or eleven, to three or four o'clock; give occasional moderate waterings; cover the glasses of the hot-bed every night, and keep up proper heat by occasional linings of hot dung to the sides of the bed.

——— Sow or plant cucumbers in pots, &c. in a hot-house, and place towards the top glasses over the back flues.

Asparagus—sow asparagus (m. l.) in a bed or beds of rich earth, to raise a supply of young plants for transplanting next year.

——— plant asparagus (m. l.) for new plantations where required. [See March.]

——— To force asparagus, plant a quantity of three or four year old roots in a hot-bed, under frames and glasses, to

produce a succession for early gathering next month. [See October and November.]

——— give air and water to asparagus now advancing in hot-beds; and support the heat by linings.

Artichokes—if rigorous frost happen, defend with some driest light dungy litter laid round each plant.

Aromatic plants—may be sowed and planted towards (l.) in mild weather, as thyme, savory, marjoram, and may plant rooted plants of sage, mint, balm, penny-royal, chamomile, hyssop, fennel, tarragon, tansey, &c. [See March.]

Beans—plant both of some early kinds, if before omitted in November or December, &c. and full crops of all, or any of the large sorts, as long pods, Windsor, Toker, &c.

——— hoe earth to early beans, advanced two inches high or more.

——— transplant early bean plants, that were raised thick for that purpose into some warm border or other compartment. [See October, November, &c.]

Peas—sow now in plentiful crops, both hot-spurs and marrowfats, and any other sorts required.

—— hoe early peas, and draw earth to the stems moderately of all that are come up, two, three, or four inches in growth.

—— to early peas in hot-beds, give air daily in favourable weather, and necessary waterings.

—— or may plant peas in a hot-bed (b. m.) of some early young plants of one or two inches growth; and may also plant some in pots, and place in a hot-house or forcing frame.

Cauliflower plants—in frames and hand-glasses, give them full air every mild dry day, but defended of nights and frost, and from much rain, snow, &c.

——— plant out cauliflowers (l.) if mild open weather from hand-glasses, leaving two strong ones under each glass, and some may also be planted out from the frames; but if an unfavourable season, and the plants not of tolerable strength, leave the whole till next month.

——— sow cauliflower seed (b. m.) in a hot-bed or under a frame, or in a warm border, to plant out in April or May. [See January.]

——— prick early raised seedling cauliflower in a hot-bed, to forward their growth, for final transplanting (l.) next month or April.

Radishes—sow (b. m.) in a south border or warm quarter, and (m. l.) in an open situation for main crops

——— cover early radishes with straw of nights and frost, and uncovered every mild morning.

——— sow some radishes in hot-beds (b. m.) for early drawing.

——— likewise sow some Italian turnep-radish, both in a border, &c. and a few in a hot-bed, to attain earlier perfection.

——— admit air to radishes in hot-beds, give water, thin them where too thick, and keep up a moderate heat in the bed, by lining the sides with hot dung.

Carrots—begin sowing (m. l.) in mild weather, the first main crop, allotting them light rich ground.

——— or for earliest young carrots, sow some in a warm border, frame, or hot-bed (b.).

——— plant some best old carrots for seed.

Spinach—sow in a warm situation (b. m.) of the round-leaved sort, and sow a larger full crop (m. l.) either generally sowed broad-cast and raked in, or some sowed in flat shallow drills an inch deep, and covered in evenly that depth with the earth.

——— or may occasionally sow spinach and radishes mixed together broad-cast, either in a distinct compartment, or between wide rows of young or new-planted cabbages, cauliflowers and young beans, &c. the radishes will draw off time enough for the spinach to advance to its proper growth.

——— winter spinach clear from weeds, and gather the largest leaves for use as wanted.

Lettuce plants—wintered in frames and hand-glasses, give plenty of air in mild dry days, and protected of nights and frost.

——— begin planting out lettuce from frames, &c. (l.) if mild weather into warm borders.

——— sow lettuce seed of the cos and cabbage kinds, and other different sorts, in a warm border, (b. m.) or some also in a hot-bed; and a larger sowing (m. l.) in any open situation, to have plenty for thinning, and planting out in successional crops.

——— prick young seeding lettuce, in a gentle hot-bed or frame to forward for final transplanting.

Parsneps—begin sowing the main crop (m. l.) in an open compartment of the lightest deep rich ground.

——— old parsneps remaining in the ground, dig up before they begin to shoot, and lay in sand or dry earth, to continue longer good for spring supply.

——— Plant parsneps for seed.

Turneps—sow a small supply of the early Dutch (l.) in a warm border, or some also in a hot-bed.

——— Plant or leave some best old turneps for seed.

Turnep-tops now beginning to shoot, are good and tender greens to boil.

Beets—begin sowing the different sorts, (m. l.) such as red-beet for its root, and white and green for the leaves.

—— The red-beet sow in drills a foot asunder, or dot in the seed that distance an inch deep, or may be sowed broad-cast on the surface, and with a large rake well raked in the ground.

—— the white and green beets sow also either in drills, or broad-cast as above.

—— of the beet kind, there is a variety called the *mangel murzel*, or *root of scarcity*, which is only a degenerated variety of the green and red beet, but the root much longer and larger, it however, is most estimable to cultivate, for its leaves, being excellent to boil like spinach, continuing in summer, &c. and the fleshy stalks of the leaves to dress in the manner of asparagus; and may be easily raised by the same culture, as the red and other beet kinds, though there is a treatise published, treating wholly on the merits and particular culture of this kind of beet, but all that is necessary is to sow the seed in drills one to two feet asunder, and when the plants are come up, to hoe and thin them six or eight inches to a foot distance, or we believe they are advised to be sowed in a bed, and afterwards transplanted the distances as above; however it will certainly thrive equally well to remain where sowed, and the plants thinned as above.

—— old red-beet roots, remaining in the ground, may be digged up to retard their shooting, and laid in the ground again, they will continue longer good for use.

—— plant or leave some old plants of beets for seed.

Leeks—may be sowed the first crop (m. l.) both for transplanting in June or July, &c. and part to remain where sowed.

—— Transplant some large finest old leeks for seed (m. l.)

Garlic, rocambole, and shallots—may be planted by cloves, and off-sets of the roots, in beds, six inches asunder, and two inches deep.

Onions—begin sowing (m. l.) the first main crop on rich ground, if favourable mild dry weather, otherwise sow only a few now in a dry warm situation.

——— winter young onions, keep clear from weeds, and some may be drawn for use, especially of the Welch onions, if advanced in tolerable growth.

Pot-herbs—may now be sowed (m. l.) such as parsley, chervil, borage, dill, marigolds, fennel, sorrel, burnet, clary, beets, spinach.

——— plant pot and aromatic herbs of the perennial kinds, as mint, tansey, tarragon, sage, savory, thyme, penny-royal, balm, hyssop, marjoram, cives, sorrel, burnet, (m. l.) both in full plants, rooted slips, and parting the roots.

Parsley—may be sowed (m. l.) for the principal crop, either

of the common plain-leaved or curled, in a drill for an edging, or as required.

——— Large rooted Hamburgh parsley for its root, may also be sowed either thin in drills six inches distance, or broad-cast and raked in.

Scorzonera, salsafy, and skirrets—for their roots, may be sowed (m. l.) either broad-cast and raked in, or in drills six or eight inches asunder; each sort separate.

———————————— or plant skirrets by root off-sets, or slips of old roots, which being perennial, admit of propagating by that means.

Fennel sow—either in drills, or on the surface, and rake in the seed.

——— or may plant and propagate fennel by the roots, either planting some old main roots, or side off-sets thereof.

Small sallading—sow in hot-beds, or in frames, or hand-glasses once a week or fortnight; or also in warm borders (m l.) consisting of cresses, mustard, rape, radish, &c.

———— Give air to young sallading in hot-beds.

Jerusalem artichokes—may be planted now by cuttings of the roots, in rows two or three feet distance, and three or four inches deep.

Celery earth-up—the late planted crops of last autumn.

—— sow celery seed in a hot-bed, and warm border (l.) for the early summer and autumn crops.

Kidney-beans—required for early crops by forcing, may now be sowed in a hot-bed, or some also in pots in a hot-house, and for either of which have some beans of the early dwarf kinds: they will produce in March, or in April and May; but in a hot-house, or pinery, they are raised to greater perfection, with less trouble, than in a hot-bed; planting four beans in each pot an inch deep, placing the pots upon the tops of the flues, &c. and that of the bark-bed wall; planting more in two or three weeks after in small pots, to have young plants advancing for transplanting into larger pots to come in for succession, giving frequent waterings when the plants are come up.

Mint plant—by off-sets or slips of the roots in drills, six or eight inches asunder.

———— or for early green mint, plant some roots in a hot-bed, or in pots in a hot-house.

Balm—may be planted in full plants, or by parting the roots.

Dill sow—in drills a foot asunder (m. l.)

Thyme—may be planted in full plants or slips.

Endive—if any remain good, tie up the leaves for blanching, or transplant some into ridges of dry earth, for the same occasion, defended with a frame, &c.

Potatoes plant—some early kinds in a warm dry situation, (m. l.) and may plant a few in hot-beds (b.)

Broccoli and Borecole—sow a small first crop (m. l.) for early transplanting. [See March and April.]

Tansey and Tarragon—plant in full plants, or parting the roots.

For seed—plant several sorts of best old plants and roots, as cabbages, savoys, borecole, leeks, onions, beets, celery, endive, carrots, parsneps, turneps, salsafy, scorzonera, &c.

To produce sprouts—reserve or plant cabbage and savoy stalks, and of borecole and purple broccoli.

Sorrel, burnet, and clary—may be sowed (m. l.) or the two former planted by parting the roots, or in full plants.

Cresses, mustard, rape and radish—for small sallading, sow in a hot bed, (b. m.) and in warm borders (m. l.)

Mushroom-beds—may be made, if required, to produce in spring and summer. [See September.]

———— cover mushroom-beds constantly with straw, a foot thick, and mats over the straw-covering.

———— collect mushroom-spawn where any appears in decayed old hot-beds or dung heaps, &c. for spawning new beds. [See July.]

Cabbage-plants—of strong growth, may now be planted out finally in rows, one, two, or three feet distance.

———— or plant some in close rows for use in coleworts, or young cabbaged hearts.

———— sow cabbaged-seed, (m. l.) of the sugar-loaf, Battersea, and Yorkshire kinds, for succession summer crop: also red cabbage, for autumn and winter.

———— plant old cabbages for seed.

Savoys—sow a small portion (m. l.) to plant for early autumn supply; and plant old savoys for seed.

Horse-radish—may now be planted by top cuttings of the off-sets, &c. two inches long. [See January.]

Liquorice—when intended for culture in the kitchen garden for its roots, may now be planted, procuring sets of the side root shoots six inches long, and planted by dibble in rows two feet asunder, inserting the sets wholly into the ground, on which may sow a crop of onions the first year, and the liquorice, when of three years growth, is proper to dig up for use.

———— dig up liquorice that is of three years growth, as above. [See December.]

Strawberry-beds—begin the spring dressing (m. l.) if open settled weather; and new beds may be planted, if the plants are in tolerable growth, otherwise deferred a month longer. [See March, April, June, and September.]

——————— strawberries required early by forcing may be planted in hot-beds, or pots thereof placed in a hot-house, all of which should be two year old plants of a bearing state. [See January, September, October and November.]

Chervil and corn-sallad—where in request, sow in drills, or broad cast; each to remain where sowed.

Coriander—if required early for its young leaves in soups, &c. sow in a warm border, or in a frame or hot-bed.

Protect tender young plants—in beds and borders in the natural ground, both generally every cold night, and continued also of days occasionally, if severe frost happens, especially lettuces and cauliflowers, in frames and hand-glasses; also small sallading and radishes. [See each of these articles.]

——————————————— likewise cover always the glasses of hot-beds every night with mats, &c. to remain till the morning.

Defend hot-beds—by laying straw or long stable litter round the sides, to preserve the heat.

Line hot-beds—when the heat declines, by applying hot-dung close to the sides, fifteen inches wide, and as high as the dung of the beds.

Give air—to plants under glasses in the natural ground as lettuces, cauliflowers, radishes, &c. every mild day, by tilting up one side of the hand-glasses two or three inches, and those in frames raise or draw down one end of the lights proportionally, or in moderate dry weather take the glasses off entirely; and any under awnings of mats uncover every mild day, but generally cover the whole of nights, and in very wet or cold cutting weather.

——— Also admit air to plants in hot-beds daily, in temperate weather, by propping up the upper ends of the glasses, half an inch to an inch or two, according to the heat of the bed, and temperature of the external air.

FRUIT GARDEN AND ORCHARD.

All planting and pruning—should now be forwarded as much as possible, to have the whole completed or nearly finished this month.

Ground for planting—prepare by digging, trenching, and improving where necessary with dung, loam, or other fresh earth or compost, either general or only where each tree is to stand.

Borders—where wall and espalier trees are to be planted,

dig or trench one or two spades deep, adding improvement of dung, &c. if necessary, as mentioned above. [See January.]

General planting—may now be performed in all kind of fruit trees.

——— for wall trees may now plant peaches, nectarines, apricots, vines, figs, plums, cherries, pears, and some best eating apples.

——— In espaliers, may plant apples, pears, plums; cherries, and medlars; or also, for variety, some vines, figs, mulberries, apricots, currants, &c.

——— And in standards, the principal sorts are apples, pears, cherries, plums; but most of apples and pears, as being the most useful kinds of fruit; likewise in standards, may plant medlars, mulberries, quinces, filberts, berberries, services; all of which standard trees may be planted both in gardens and orchards; also in orchards and out-grounds may plant walnuts and chesnuts in full standards.

——— For the above general planting, or for any particular species of fruit trees, it is of much importance to have good varieties of the respective sorts; as most of the species furnish many or several different varieties of their respective fruits, and may be obtained in great choice in the nurseries, in all the principal varieties, and at different ages, either of one or two years old young trees, for training in the order required, for walls, espaliers, and full and half standards, dwarf standards, &c. or they may be had in the nurseries ready trained, of three, four, or five years growth or more, furnished with a good expansion of branches, advanced to a bearing age, so as probably to bear a tolerable crop of fruit the same or following year.

——— Likewise in wall-tree planting, may have half or full standards planted between the common dwarf wall-trees, especially in high walls, whereby to cover the upper parts while the others advance below, and thus may have the advantage of planting a greater variety of different sorts, and by having the whole space of walling from bottom to top sooner completely covered, will produce a larger supply of fruit in proportion, though it should be observed, that as the common wall-trees are to be considered as the principal continuing residents, they, after some years advanced growth, will have reached the others above, when the under branches of the latter must be cut away by degrees, to make room for the regular expansion of those of the former.

——— *Also for espaliers*—may have either young trees of one or two years for your own training; or may have ready trained trees of several years growth, with some considerable spread of branches, for immediate bearing the same or next

year; and also thereby have the espalier formed almost at once.

Pruning—should now be diligently forwarded, as much as possible in wall trees and espaliers; and occasionally for standards, where required, to have the whole complete this month, before the trees advance considerably in their blossom buds.

———— All wall trees and espaliers, as being limited to a certain space, require regular pruning twice every year; a summer pruning to regulate the young shoots of that season; and a general winter pruning both among the young and old branches, to cut out the superabundant, irregular, and improper growths, and to reform any disorderly extensions, &c. thereby both to preserve the requisite regularity, and the expansion of branches within their allotted bounds.

———— but standard trees having full scope to branch out freely above, all around to their full extent, they only require occasional pruning, probably only once in several years to reform casual ill-growing, cross placed, or crowding branches, and to cut out dead wood.

The wall tree pruning—in peaches, apricots, nectarines, &c. should now be forwarded with the utmost attention, as those trees will now be advancing fast in their blossom buds; observing, as remarked last month, that as these bear principally on the young wood, leave a plentiful supply of the best well-placed shoots of last summer, cutting out all the others, and useless naked old wood. [See January.]

———————— likewise prune wall trees, of pears, plums, and cherries; and finish the whole this month, if possible, and nail each tree as soon as pruned. [See January.]

———————— vines in general, both against walls and in vineyards, complete pruning and nailing, &c. as advised last month.

———————— fig-trees, advised to defer pruning till this season, should now, or next month, be wholly pruned and nailed; the young shoots of last summer are the proper bearers for the present year, and being of a somewhat succulent tender nature, liable to be much damaged by severe frost, that by leaving the whole unpruned till the spring, there will be a greater chance of choice in obtaining a proper sufficiency to train in for the general bearers the ensuing summer; therefore be careful to leave a plentiful supply thereof in all parts of the tree of the best well-placed of middling strong growth; and always a terminal or leading shoot to each mother branch, either naturally placed, or in some cases, particular branches pruned down to a proper shoot, as circumstances require; and cut away the superfluous, or what are not wanted, with all ill-placed and improper shoots, and naked old branches, and dead wood, continuing the retained supply of

young shoots always at their whole length, in these trees, and nail them in regular to the wall.

Currants and Gooseberries—finish pruning, and where intended to plant any, this is a proper season to make a full plantation; have trees with full heads, they will bear the same year, [See January.]

Espalier tree pruning—forward now as much as possible, such as apples, pears, plums, cherries, &c. and tie and nail the branches regularly to the trellis.

Young wall and espalier trees—give necessary pruning; and train in proper supplies of young wood to furnish the head with a proper expansion of branches. [See January.]

Nail wall-trees—according as each tree is pruned; likewise observe the same in espaliers.

Prune standards—some will need it occasionally, where any very irregular or cross-placed branches occur, which cut out or prune in a regulating order; thin very crowded branches, and cut out decayed wood.

Plant all kinds of fruit trees—where intended, do not omit the season, this being now a proper time for planting the various sorts, both wall-trees, espaliers, and standards; all of which, being both profitable in their productions of fruit, and appear ornamental in their general growth, no time should be lost in making plantations thereof more or less, according to the extent of ground, walls, &c. in gardens and orchards, as it must be considered that it will be several years before they arrive to a tolerable bearing state, and in which the fruit will always be highly acceptable.

——— *To plant wall-trees*—allot a portion of the best peaches, nectarines, apricots, vines, figs, plums, and cherries, with some choice eating pears, also some best early eating apples, all planted fifteen to eighteen or twenty feet distance.

——— *In planting espaliers*—have generally plenty of principal apples and pears with some cherries and plums, &c. and planted the same distance, as above, in the wall-trees.

——— *And to plant standards*—which being for the main production of several principal fruits, generally have a large supply of the finest apples of different sorts, as the most useful and profitable to plant, both in gardens and orchards, &c. allot also some good pears, cherries, and plums; likewise in standards, have a few damsons, medlars, quinces, mulberries, filberts, berberries, and services; planted twenty to thirty or forty feet distance.

——— *For the above plantations*—of fruit-trees it may be proper to observe, that they will mostly succeed in any common fertile soil of a garden, orchard, field, &c. or where it oc-

curs of a mellow loamy nature, it will prove of greater advantage: but avoid, as much as possible, planting in very low wet situations, and strong clayey and very gravelly soils; or however, where this is unavoidable, the ground must be improved by removing part of the bad soil, and applying a compost of good earth and rotten dung, either generally, or only at present in the places where each tree is to be planted, and the rest augmented by degrees.

Defend blossoms of principal wall-trees—particularly of apricots, peaches, nectarines, &c. by nailing up mats in cutting frosty weather, but always taken off when the weather is tolerably mild; or stick cuttings of evergreens spreading between the branches, to remain constantly till the fruit is set, as the cuttings being furnished with leaves, will afford some protection, by breaking off, in some degree, the keen edge of cutting frosty winds; or also, for the same effect, may suspend large old fishing nets, to remain till the fruit is all well set in advancing growth.

Raspberries—may now be planted, and will bear the same year, and finish pruning old plantations. [See January.]

Plant cuttings and suckers—of gooseberries, currants, codlins, figs, and vines, mulberries and filberts, &c.

Make layers—of figs, vines, filberts, and mulberries.

Suckers of plums, pears, codlins, &c.—plant for stocks, for grafting and budding, and make layers of muscle plums, to raise stocks, on which to bud some particular sorts of peaches, nectarines, apricots, &c.

Provide grafts (m. l.)—ready for grafting the latter end of this, and in next month.

Grafting—may be commenced (m. l.) upon apples and pears, plums and cherries.

Stocks for grafting and budding—plant out in nursery lines to attain a proper size for that operation.

Sow kernels—of apples and pears, to raise stocks for grafting.

Stake tall standards—to secure them from being displaced by the wind.

Walnut trees—may now be planted in orchards, parks, or out grounds, or where convenient: and in any extensive grounds some larger plantations would, in process of time, prove very profitable in their annual production of nuts.

——— Sow walnuts, chesnuts, and filbert nuts.

Mulberries and almonds—are proper to plant now in full and half standards.

Apricots—may also be planted in standards, especially the Breda and Brussels apricots.

Filberts—plant in detached half standards, ten feet in the

row, and fifteen or twenty feet between; or some also planted hedge-fashion, or to form a shady walk, in a single or double range, and permitted to run up in full growth above: and in both methods will grow very desirably in gardens or orchards, &c. and bear plentiful annual productions, ripening in August and September.

For general standards—plant plenty of apples, pears, plums, and cherries, but most of all of apples of the best sorts; not omitting some good codlins.

Half and dwarf standards—are proper to plant in small gardens; or in any other, for variety, &c. as they will bear very agreeably.

[For several particulars in pruning and planting, &c. see the fruit garden of the other different months of spring, summer, and autumn, &c.

Forcing fruit trees—for early bearing, if not proceeded in last month, may now be commenced (b.) in forcing stoves, &c.

——— *In fruit forcing houses*, &c.—To obtain early fruit of different principal sorts, as grapes, peaches, apricots, nectarines, cherries, plums, &c. should now (b.) forward that business by fire heat continued every evening and morning, &c. or by tan bark or dung hot-beds, or by both or either of these assisted also by fire-heat, as above: or where tan bark and hot dung are used together on this occasion, have the dung generally below, and the tan above, laid a foot at least thick. [See January.]

FLOWER GARDEN AND PLEASURE GROUND.

Forward now all the necessary preparations for planting, where intended, in the various sorts of flower roots, plants, shrubs, and trees: as also for sowing the different sorts of annual flowers, both in the open ground and in hot-beds; and likewise to dig and clean the different compartments of beds, borders, shrubberies, walks, &c. in the best order, now in the commencement of the spring-season.

Dig and prepare—the compartments of beds, borders, shrubberies, &c, both for planting where intended, with flowers and shrubs, sowing many sorts of flower seeds; and that the whole may appear in the most decent order.

Bulbous roots—of all sorts, finish planting as soon as the weather permits as crocuses, snow-drops, tulips, hyacinths, jonquils, narcissus, ornithogalums, or Star of Bethlehem, bulbous-iris, fritillaries, gladioles, &c. in beds and borders, or some in pots, all for flowering the same year, in spring and summer.

—— *Plant bulbous roots in pots* (b. m.)—to flower in the apartments of a house, or placed in a hot-bed or hot-house for earliest flowering.

—— *To bulbs in pots*—placed in a house or stove, &c. give moderate watering.

—— Bulbs may also be placed in water glasses (b. m.) for flowering in a room, &c. and change the water about once a fortnight, or when foul or fetid.

Annual flower seeds—of the hardy kinds, begin sowing the principal supply (m. l.) in borders, beds, and pots, &c. and tender sorts in hot-beds. (l.)

Anemones and ranunculuses—plant in open dry weather to flower this spring, and in April and May, and generally begin planting the principal supply (m. l. or sooner) either in a bed or beds of light earth, each sort separate, in rows six inches asunder, and two inches deep, or plant some in the principal borders in small patches, three to four or five roots together, in which they will make an agreeable variety in assemblage with other spring flowers.

——— or some of the above roots may be planted in pots, for moving occasionally to any particular compartment required.

Defend beds of curious bulbs—and of the choice anemones and ranunculuses, from frost, especially those now advancing above ground, having the beds of the choicer curious sorts arched over and covered with mats to protect the young flower buds.

Curious or tender plants in pots—give still occasional protection, if severe frost prevail, either continued under frames, &c. or arched beds and covered with mats, &c. [See January.]

——— But in open mild weather, let them always enjoy the full air.

Dress and fresh earth plants in pots—(m. l.) in mild weather, clear off decayed leaves, weeds, and litter; loosen and take out some of the top earth, and an inch or two deep round the sides, then fill up the pots with fresh mold, which will encourage the plants in their spring growth.

——— Or any of the above wanting larger pots, may be shifted towards (l. or sooner) removed with the ball of earth about the roots, and some fresh earth previously applied in the larger pots, and fill up with more round the ball, and about an inch over the top; giving a moderate watering.

Auriculas and carnations in pots—of the more curious sorts continue still in a sheltered situation, or in frames, or in a bed under hoop arches (as in January, &c.) and give occasional protection of the glasses or mats, if severe frost or snow, &c. occur, to preserve them strong in good condition, to blow in

full perfection ; but in all open weather, let them be always fully exposed to the free air to continue them in good strength.

——— *Spring dress auriculas and carnations in pots*—(m. l.) pick off decayed leaves; loosen the top earth in the pots, and a little down round the sides, taking out the loosened old earth, then fill up the pots with fresh, which will greatly encourage the plants in their flowering.

——— *Plant auriculas and carnations*—where required (m. l.) in pots, beds, borders, in open weather, all to remain for flowering the same year.

——— *Carnations may now plant finally*—(m. l.) where they are required to remain, in beds, borders, &c. for flowering the ensuing summer, both of last year's seedlings and layers; also plant a portion in pots, particularly some best plants of layers, allotting pots of proper sizes, sixteens or twenty-fours, one or two good layers in each, and those in small pots transplant into larger to remain for flowering: likewise plant some best layers in the principal flower-borders.

Planting—may now be performed in open weather, in most sorts of herbaceous plants, shrubs, and trees.

Perennials and biennials—of most sorts may now be planted where required, in beds, borders, and pots, for flowering this year; such as pinks, carnations, polyanthuses, daises, auriculas, catchfly, scarlet lychnis, campanulas, rose-campion, rockets, wall-flowers, sweet-williams, holly-hocks, columbines, &c.

——— *Propagate perennials*—by slips, off-sets, and parting the roots.

Flowering shrubs—may now be planted in open weather, of all sorts, for shrubberies, and other ornamental plantations.

Evergreens—may also be planted, if open settled mild weather.

Sowing—may be performed in hardy annuals, perennials, and all sorts of tree and shrub seeds (m. l.)

Hardy annuals—begin sowing (m. l.) in beds, borders, and pots; such as lark-spurs, candy-tuft, yellow lupines, sweet-peas, venus looking-glass, venus navel-wort, pansies, flos adonis, cyanus, dwarf sun flower, persicaria, nigella, hawk-weed, lobel's catchfly, virgin stock, sweet scabious, lavatera, mignonette, ten weeks stock, &c. [See the list of annuals.]

——— or sow some also in pots, to place in a hot-house or hot-bed, for earliest flowering; such as sweet and scarlet peas, ten weeks stock, yellow lupines, virgin stock, mignonette, &c.

Tender annuals—sow in hot-beds, (m. l.) double balsams, globe aramanthus, cock's comb, tricolors, bicolors, egg-plant, ten weeks stocks, mignonette, &c.

Sowing hardy perennial and biennials—may be performed towards (l.) in a border or beds of light mellow earth.

Sow tree and shrub seeds—(m. l.) in open mild weather; as acorns, beech-mast, seeds of cones, berries, ash-keys, &c. also nuts, as walnuts, chesnuts, filberts, hazel-nuts, fruit-stones and kernels, &c.

Propagate shrubs and trees, &c.—by cuttings, layers, and suckers. [See the nursery.]

Also propagate herbaceous perennial—by parting the roots, or by detaching rooted slips and off-sets thereof, and may be planted some strongest sets at once into the flower-borders, &c. to flower the same year; the smaller plants in nursery-beds.

Suckers—plant off from roses, and various other sorts of flowering shrubs, &c.

Off-sets plant—of all sorts of bulbous roots remaining out of the ground, or that have been lately detached; and may now detach outward off-sets from fibrous-rooted perennials, and plant them.

Box and thrift for edgings—to beds and borders; may now be planted, in which plant the box close, to form at once a regular edging. [See box edgings, October.] The thrift may also be planted in the same manner, or not more than two or three inches apart, that the plants may soon meet.

——— *Also for edgings*—may occasionally plant daisies, pinks, London-pride, strawberries, polyanthuses, &c.

——— repair old edgings that are deficient.

Flower borders and beds—may now be planted with various sorts of flowering plants required, both of bulbous, tuberous, and fibrous-rooted perennials and biennials, and any sorts of ornamental flowering shrubs, &c.

In pots—plant any sorts of flowering plants and desirable shrubs.

Grass lawns, walks, &c.—pole and roll in dry open weather, the poling is performed on fine lawns, with a long taper pliant ashen pole, to break and scatter the worm cast earth, which deface the surface of the grass; and then if rolled, it will clear up the scattered earth, render the surface clean, firm, and even.

Lay grass turf—where required for any intended new grass work; and likewise to mend any deficiencies in old: beating it well down with a heavy wooden beater, close and even, then rolled.

——— Or in want of a sufficiency of turf, may sow grass seed (m. l.)

Gravel walks—weed, sweep, and roll, in dry open weather.

Shrubbery planting—may now be performed in open weather, in all sorts of desirable shrubs and ornamental trees, espe-

cially all the deciduous kinds; and if quite mild weather, also most sorts of evergreens.

Prune shrubberies—where necessary, cutting out or shortening long rampant shoots, &c. low stragglers, and dead wood; and dig up or clear away bottom suckers.

Dig shrubberies—and generally finish that work mostly this month.

Plantations—of ornamental and forest trees where intended, should now be forwarded in settled open weather, of the deciduous and evergreen kinds; both for any decorative compartments, in groves, walks, clumps, thickets, &c. or occasionally for shade, shelter, blind: and also to form woods, coppices, hedges, &c. as may be required.

For general planting—of trees and shrubs those of moderate young growth are preferable to old, for successful removal, especially of the tree kinds: about five or six to eight or ten feet is an eligible size, and as to shrubs they are various, from one foot or less, to four, five, or six feet.

——— *Or occasionally*—large trees, deciduous kinds, of from ten to fifteen feet or more, may be removed for particular purposes where a speedy shade or shelter is wanted.

——— *For expeditious growth*—the Lombardy poplar is superior to most other trees, to plant for a speedy shade, shelter, blind, &c. and in assemblage or alone, near great road sides, to break off the dust in summer from the interior parts of the garden, and front of a dwelling-house, &c. though it is now greatly too prevalent and abundant in many such places, to the exclusion of almost all variety of other trees, more beautiful and superiorly ornamental and valuable in growth.

Hedges—where wanted, may now be planted, of any sorts required for fences, shade, shelter, &c. of deciduous and evergreen kinds.

——— *For deciduous hedges*—the principal sorts are white, or hawthorn, privet, hornbeam, beech, elm; also sometimes elder, willow, poplar; the first five principally by young plants, and the three latter either by plants or cuttings: but the hawthorn is superiorly effectual for an outward fence, though it does not grow up speedily as several of the others, and the privet forms an expeditious close neat garden hedge.

——— *Evergreen hedges*—may also be planted (m. l.) if open mild weather, and of which holly and yew are the principal sorts; or occasionally laurel, bay, tree-box, alaternus &c.

——— *Clip or trim hedges*—deciduous kinds omitted last autumn, &c. but not evergreen at this season.

——— *Plash and lay down old deciduous hedges*—that are run up rough above and naked below.

Ten weeks stocks and mignonette—sow in a hot-bed, or in pots, &c. sheltered from the cold, to come in forward for early flowering.

Fresh earth—the tops of the pots, containing flowering plants, shrubs, &c.

Shift into larger pots—(m. l.) any plants and shrubs that require it, removing them with balls of earth entire, and add some fresh mould.

Begin to spring dress—and clean all the principal parts of the flower-garden and pleasure ground.

New work—now carrying on or intended, should be well forwarded at this season.

Lately planted—tall trees and shrubs should be supported timorously with stakes, especially those in exposed situations.

To force for early flowering—place pots of pinks, roses, hypericums, and other small plants and shrubs, in a hot-house, &c. also pots of bulbous roots.

WORK IN THE NURSERY.

Now as this month may be properly considered as the commencement of the spring season, various works of nursery planting and transplanting will be necessary in many sorts of young trees and shrubs, in open settled weather, as well as in taking up, or drawing many sorts for garden and other plantations; also in the work of propagation, by sowing many kinds of tree and shrub seeds, &c. planting suckers, cuttings, layers, and ingrafting; likewise in forwarding the digging or trenching vacant ground, and digging between the nursery rows of young trees and shrubs; some occasional work of pruning, with several other requisite works of nursery culture, explained under their respective heads.

As the works of planting and propagation—will now, in open weather, and in the two following spring months be necessary, in various sorts of trees and shrubs in the nursery, all the requisite preparations of the allotted compartments of ground, should now be forwarded as much as possible, to be ready in proper order for these occasions.

Planting or transplanting—will be necessary now on several occasions, in many sorts of young trees and shrubs in the nursery, such as planting out young seedling plants thereof, of one or two years old, from seed-beds into nursery-rows; and in some others, having been formerly planted in that order, and being of much advanced growth, will require transplanting in

rows at wider distances, one to two or three feet, as may seem necessary, according to the growth of the different sorts.

Digging and trenching—of vacant spaces of nursery-ground, designed for spring planting, &c. this and the following months, should now be forwarded at all proper opportunities, to be ready in good condition for the reception of such nursery plantations of young trees, &c. as may be intended; as also for seeds, suckers, and cuttings for raising many sorts of trees and shrubs.

Prepare beds of mellow light ground—three or four feet wide, for sowing various sorts of tree and shrub seeds, and for pricking out many sorts of small seedling and other plants, both of trees, shrubs and herbaceous perennials.

All necessary planting—in young trees and shrubs should now, in open weather, be forwarded in the deciduous kinds particularly.

Plant out seedling trees, &c.—in open weather, (m. l.) of most sorts of hardy deciduous kinds from seed-beds into nursery rows, one to two or three feet asunder, according to the sizes and nature of growth of the different sorts.

Prick out small plants—of seedlings, and others of slender growth of young deciduous trees and shrubs into nursery-beds, in rows a foot asunder.

Plant out fruit tree stocks—of seedling plants and others, of one or two years growth, from seed-beds, &c. into the large quarters of the nursery, in rows two or three feet asunder, to remain for grafting and budding.

Transplanting—will be occasionally necessary in young nursery trees and shrubs, formerly planted out at small distances, and having increased considerably in growth, requiring a larger scope of room, this is now a proper time to perform all requisite works of that kind in all the hardy deciduous tribe particularly, and should accordingly be transplanted at eligible distances, conformably to their different growths.

Planting or transplanting of evergreens—may now be occasionally performed in some of the more hardy kinds, in open mild weather, but for any general removal or transplanting of these kinds of trees and shrubs, it would be adviseable to defer it till the two following months.

The works of propagation—may now be performed in open weather, by different methods, such as by seed, suckers, layers, cuttings, grafting.

By seed—many sorts of trees and shrubs are raised, and may now be sowed of all the hardy kinds, both of deciduous and evergreens, in open mild weather, in beds of light mellow earth, three or four feet wide, the seeds being various in the dif-

ferent sorts of trees, &c. consisting of some small dry seeds, others of berries, nuts, acorns, mast, cones, stones and kernels of fruits, ash-keys, &c. may be sowed some broad-cast on the surface, earthed over one to two inches deep, and the largest sorts in drills the same depth, or other largest kinds may be planted by dibble, &c.

By suckers from the roots—many trees and shrubs are also raised, such as in roses, lilacs, lime-trees, and numerous others; and may now be taken up with roots to each, and planted in the nursery, in rows one to two feet asunder.

Likewise by layers—of the young shoots, many sorts of trees and shrubs are propagated, and this is a proper time to perform it; effected by bending down the young branches or shoots, as they remain on the parent-plant, giving a small cut or slip upward on the under-side, laying that part along bendingly into the earth, three or four inches deep, pegged down with some hooked sticks, and earthed over, leaving the tops upright several inches above ground: they will be well rooted for planting off next autumn.

—— *Also by cuttings of young shoots*—many sorts of trees and shrubs are increased, and may now be planted for propagating the respective sorts, choosing the young shoots of last year, cutting them six or eight to ten or twelve inches long, and planted in nursery-beds, or rows six inches to a foot asunder, inserting them half way into the ground; they will be well rooted, and produce shoots above the following summer.

—— Or cuttings of any of the more tender or curious sorts, may be planted in pots, and plunged in a hot-bed or bark-bed, to forward their rooting more successfully.

And by grafting—many of our choice varieties of fruit-trees are raised, such as all the sorts of apples, pears, plums, cherries, &c. and of many other sorts of trees occasionally; and may be commenced towards (l.) if mild open weather, and any time in March.

Pruning perform—where necessary, such as trimming up the trees and shrubs from any rampant or rude shoots, as also to regulate casual disorderly growths above.

Head down budded stocks—of fruit trees and others as were budded last summer, cutting them off slantingly, near to or only three or four inches above the inserted bud, which will soon after begin to shoot.

Digging between the nursery-rows—of young trees, should be forwarded now as much as possible, at all convenient opportunities.

Plant cuttings---of gooseberries, currants, honey-suckles, and of many other shrubs and trees.

Plant suckers—of roses, lilacs, limes, codlins currants,

gooseberries, raspberries, and of many other tree and shrub kinds.

Make layers—of the various sorts of trees and shrubs as are raised by that method of propagation, as directed in February.

Transplant rooted layers—of last spring, &c. or the autumn before, into nursery-rows.

Grafts, or coins for grafting—begin to collect (m. l.) of the middling strong shoots of last summer, before they advance much in bud for shooting, especially of those inclinable to get forward, making choice of the young shoots of the respective trees intended, tie them in little bundles, and those not immediately wanted, place with the bottom ends into some light earth, to preserve them in proper condition ready for grafting.

Begin grafting—towards (l.) if mild open weather, upon apples, pears, plums, cherries, and other trees.

Mulch the ground—between new-planted young trees and shrubs of some principal sorts, and of any curious or tender exotics, to preserve the roots from frost at this season, and drought in spring, &c.

Occasional protection—of tender or curious plants in pots and beds, should still be attended to if severe weather, as observed in January and December.

—— *But in mild settled weather*—let all plants, as have had a temporary shelter from severe frost, be now fully exposed.

Drawing or taking up trees and shrubs—of proper growth for garden and other plantations, may now in open weather be performed in all the hardy kinds, as shall be occasionally required, both of the deciduous and evergreen shrubs.

GREEN HOUSE.

The general care of the green-house plants, now is to supply them with plenty of free air every mild day, gentle waterings, and to defend them still from cold by shutting all close every night, and in frosty and other inclement weather.

Admit air—in mild open weather daily, by opening some of the glasses about eight, nine, or ten in the morning, and shut close towards the evening.

Watering—will be required moderately once or twice a week to the oranges, lemons, myrtles, and others of that nature; but give it very sparingly to the succulent plants, and water only in mild open weather in a forenoon.

Loosen the earth—in the tops of the pots, especially where it appears bound, or hard crusted on the surface.

Give fresh earth—to the tops of the pots; first loosen the old earth, take some out, and fill up with fresh mold.

Shifting into larger pots—and some fresh earth added, may be performed (m. l.) where it appears necessary. [See March.]

Decayed leaves—will, at this time, occur frequently, and should be detached as soon as they appear.

Likewise dead wood—decayed or mouldy shoots, &c. cut out wherever they occur, and prune any run-up weakly dwindling growths.

Succulent Plants—if any have decayed leaves or shoots, cut them off close.

Foulness—contracted on the leaves of oranges, lemons, &c. should be washed off clean, as also occasionally in the plants in general, when very dusty, by watering over the heads in a fine mild sunny forenoon.

The green-house windows—open every mild day; but shut close every night, and always in frosty, foggy, and sharp cold weather, and defended with shutters or mats in severe frosts.

In severe frosty and very foggy weather—make moderate fires occasionally in the flues, if any, otherwise in some utensil placed within the green-house, to keep out the frost and dry up the damps.

HOT-HOUSE.

Continue always a regular heat in the hot-house, by a constant bark-bed, especially the pinery stove, and fires every night, and cold days.

A high state of heat—is requisite for all hot-house exotics, and in pineries, as the full-grown fruiting pines will be now advancing in young fruit, should have both a good bottom heat, supported in the bark-bed, and regular moderate fire heat every night, and very cold morning, &c. to forward their fruiting freely in proper season; continuing the pine plants in general always plunged in the bark-bed.

The bark-bed heat—should be continued always in a lively state, by forking up occasionally once in six or eight weeks, and adding a proportion of fresh tanner's bark when the heat is much decreased, observing previous to which, to take up all the pots, and if any of the top bark is much decayed, or become earthy, remove it, and fork up the bed to the bottom; or if some new tan is thought necessary, apply about one third or

fourth part at top of the bed, which will soon revive the heat of the whole: or may fork up the new, and part of the old together about half way downward, and directly replunge the pots in regular order.

Fires—make every evening till ten o'clock, or sufficient to support a good heat all night: and continued also in cold mornings, or all day in rigorous weather.

In mild calm days—and a good sun, admit air moderately; but shut close if cold or cloudy, and always soon in the afternoon.

Water—give moderately when the earth in the pots becomes dry, once a week or fortnight, or as it may appear necessary.

If severe frost—it would be good precaution to cover the glasses of the hot-house, of nights particularly, with shutters or large thick mats, and continue constant moderate fires.

Succession pines—for the next and succeeding years fruiting, if in a separate stove, &c. keep up a proper heat by bark-beds and moderate fires, as directed above, only be careful not to force them by over fire heat to run them into fruit.

—— Or if any young pines are contained in dung hot-beds under frames and glasses, continue the beds in a proper heat by occasional strong linings of hot dung to the sides, and admit a moderate portion of air in sunny mild days.

To force in the hot-house—may introduce pots of strawberries, kidney-beans, cucumbers, pease, &c. also pots of pinks, roses, sweet and scarlet peas, and other desirable flowering plants of moderate growth; or may likewise introduce pots of bearing vines: if none are trained within, though most hot-houses and pineries have vines rained extendedly within, under the inclined or sloping glasses, produce abundantly in very great perfection at a most early season, April, May, and June, &c.

In forcing houses for early fruit, &c.—should now proceed fully in the forcing by fire-heat in the flues every evening and morning, &c. or by continued bark-beds, or with both, or occasionally by fire only; or is sometimes effected wholly by bark or dung hot-beds, also sometimes by dung and tan-bark heat together, having the dung below and the tan at top, as formerly intimated: and by either of which, fruit trees of the desired sorts having been previously planted within, and arrived at proper growth for bearing, such as vines, peaches, nectarines, apricots, cherries, plums, &c. or occasionally may introduce pots of dwarf trees of the above sorts, advanced to a bearing state; or likewise pots of flowering plants, strawberries, kidney-beans, sallading, &c. the same degree of moderate heat

will suit the whole, and forward their growth to early perfection very agreeably.

——— *though in vineries*—designed principally for forcing grape vines to the most early production, they will generally bear a higher degree of forcing-heat by fire than most other fruit-trees that are usually forced; and on which consideration most hot-houses and vineries have vines trained within under the glasses.

MARCH.

KITCHEN GARDEN.

In this month particular attention is required to prepare for, and to sow and plant, many principal crops for the service of the present year, both in the natural ground for the general supply, and in hot-beds for several tender plants, and to forward some others of more hardy growth, when desired in early perfection.

The preparation of ground—by dunging, digging, and trenching, is now particularly required, without loss of time, not to omit the proper season for sowing and planting particular crops, for in this month many principal crops are necessary to be sowed and planted.

General sowing and planting—should now be forwarded in many principal crops, some for early, and others for main supplies in summer, autumn, and following winter.

Ground digged up in ridges—should now be levelled down according as wanted, for sowing and planting, as it will now work in excellent order for these occasions.

Sowing—is now necessary in the full ground for many principal crops, as onions, leeks, carrots, parsneps, beets, radishes, spinach, lettuce, cabbages, savoys, broccoli, borecole, coleworts, asparagus, peas, beans, some early turneps, salsafy, scorzonera, celery, cauliflowers, alexanders, large-rooted parsley, cardoons, finochio, &c.

—— *And of small herbs*—to sow parsley, small sallading of cresses, mustard, radish, rape, &c. chervil, coriander, borage, marigolds, nasturtiums, corn-sallad, clary, fennel, dill, angelica, thyme, savory, marjoram, and hyssop.

—— *to sow in hot-beds*—cucumbers, melons, small-sallad, purslane, cauliflowers, celery, love-apples, capsicum, kidney-beans, coriander, and basil.

Planting—is also requisite, in many principal articles, for natural ground crops, as asparagus, artichokes, cabbages, can-

liflowers, horse-radish, beans, potatoes, garlick, shallots, lettuces, coleworts, Jerusalem artichokes, crambear, sea-kale, strawberries, and liquorice.

——— *And of small herbs*—to plant mint, balm, thyme, sage, marjoram, savory, hyssop, penny-royal, tansy, tarragon, sorrel, burnet, cives, camomile, angelica, rue, lavender, &c.

——— *To plant in hot-beds*—cucumbers, melons, asparagus, kidney-beans, strawberries, and mushrooms.

——— *And to prick in hot-beds*—young cucumber and melon plants, to attain a proper growth for final transplanting into other hot-beds for fruiting; also early celery, and early spring-sowed cauliflowers and lettuce to forward them for planting into the full ground.

For all sowing and planting—be careful to have fresh seed, principally of last year's saving, that you may not be disappointed in your principal crops when too late to sow again, to have them in perfection at the proper season expected.

Artichokes—give the spring dressing (m. l.) digging and levelling the ground, between the plants, and slip or take off the superabundant suckers to three of the strongest on each stock.

——— *Plant artichokes*—by young suckers slipped off as above, in rows four feet and a half asunder, by three feet in the rows: they will produce heads in autumn.

Beans plant—full crops now of the principal large kinds, two or three times this month, to have a good succession, also any of the smaller sorts—hoe and draw earth to beans that are come up and advanced in growth, two, three, or several inches high.

Cabbages—plant out full crops of the strongest winter-standing plants, both of the early and late kinds, for summer and autumn, &c.

——— Likewise plant red cabbages for autumn and winter.

——— *In Cabbages*—planted last autumn or winter, make good any deficiences, or if any run to seed pull them up and plant others.

——— *Sow cabbage seed*—of the sugar-loaf, early York, and other forward sorts, to come in for young cabbages the same year, in summer and autumn, &c. and sow also some of the large late kinds for autumn and winter; likewise some red cabbage for the same season.

Sea-beach cabbage, or sea-colewort—estimable for its young spring shoots, may now be planted in year old plants; or seed sowed in one or more wide beds of light loose earth, in drills, either to remain or transplant, in rows, one or two feet distance; and in autumn or winter, clearing off the old leaves, &c.

the beds then earthed with light soil, or dry light mellow dung, three inches thick, or more; and in the spring, the young shoots rising from the roots, through a substance of earth, are large, white, and tender, most excellently good to boil in the manner of asparagus, &c. or also occasionally at this time, by whelming garden pots over the advancing shoots at their first protrusion through the soil, or a month or two sooner, closely stopping the holes in the pots, it will draw them up in quick growth, and increase the length of the white or blanched part, more crisp and tender for use in improved perfection.

Asparagus—sow now in full crop in any compartment of rich earth for planting out next spring.

——— *Plant asparagus*—young plants raised last year, or not more than two years old; allotting them a compartment of the best mellow ground, well dunged several inches thick, and trenched in a spade deep; and in which plant them in beds four feet and a half wide, four rows lengthways each bed, in drills or small narrow trenches five or six inches deep, cut out with a spade, forming thereby, one side of each drill upright; so inserting the plants against the upright side, a foot asunder, with the crown of the roots about two inches below the surface, covering in each drill as planted equally with the earth; and then rake the surface of the beds lightly over;—they will produce buds or shoots for gathering in three years, not sooner, but the same plants continuing manys year in perfection, produce from the roots succession crops annually, from April (l.) or May (b.) till middle or latter end of June or beginning of July, then should be permitted to shoot up in stalk till the end of autumn, that the roots may not be too much weakened by repeated production, and every autumn, in October, the stalks to be cut down, and the beds cleared and landed up; [See October and November.] so that a new plantation of asparagus is required only once in several or many years, according as the strength of the roots appear by their produce to be more or less exhausted. [See April.]

——— *on new-planted asparagus beds as above*—may sow a thin crop of onions the first year, where it is necessary to make every possible advantage of the kitchen ground, the plants of both crops will advance in proper growth without detrimenting each other.

——— *Likewise plant asparagus*—in beds, as above, for forcing, after having three years growth in the said transplanted natural beds; the plants being then of proper growth for planting in hot-beds, in order for forcing as below. [See also November.]

——— *asparagus to force*—plant a proper quantity of three year old plants, as above, in hot-beds, to produce the final

forced crop for the present season in succession to those of last month. [See November.]

Onions—sow the main crops in the richest ground, in beds three or four to five or six feet width, and rake the seed in regularly; or large crops may be sowed in one continued plat of ground; though the sowing in beds is generally the most convenient in the necessary culture of the crop; some sowed thick to draw young in summer, and a large supply to remain for full bulbing keeping onions.

—— *Winter onions*—raised last autumn, clear from weeds; and may now be thinned out for use as wanted. [See April.]

—— Plant old onions for seed, (b.) if not done.

Leeks—sow a good crop now, both for transplanting in summer, and some to remain where sowed

Carrots—should now be sowed in full crops, some to draw young in summer, and a larger portion to attain full size for autumn and winter.

Parsneps—sow a plentiful crop in good ground.

Cauliflower plants—wintered in frames, &c. should now be planted into a compartment of rich ground, two feet and a half asunder.

——— *Likewise the cauliflowers under hand-glasses*—should be thinned to two of the strongest under each glass; and those drawn out, plant in the open ground; continue the glasses over the others, and prop them up three or four inches.

——— *Prick young spring raised cauliflower plants*—in a hot-bed or warm border, three or four inches asunder, to attain proper strength for final transplanting next month, &c.

——— *Sow cauliflower seed*— (b. m.) for a late summer crop.

Lettuces—that have stood all winter in frames, plant out a foot asunder; any remaining thick in open borders, thin out the superabundant regularly, and plant the same distance.

—— *Sow different sorts of lettuce*—plenty of white and green cos for principal crops, and cabbage, Cilicia, Imperial, &c. and other sorts, for variety and succession.

—— *Prick out young early-sowed lettuce*—in a frame, warm border, or in a hot-bed, to forward them.

Peas—sow principal crops once a fortnight or three weeks, both of the hot-spurs for succession, and larger supplies of marrow-fats, or any other sorts required.

—— *Hoe earth to peas*—that are up two or three inches or more.

—— *Stick early peas*—when six or eight inches high.

—— *Early peas in hot-beds*—give air and water.

Tree onion—a bulbous perennial, may now pe planted for its production of small top bulbs; it rising with a tall stem, producing many small bulbs at top, which are good to eat, of an agreeable flavour, either raw or in sauces, or excellent to pickle; plant them in rows, a foot asunder, and six inches in the row, two inches deep.

Hot-dung—provide and prepare for making hot-beds, and lining others when declined in heat.

Hot-beds—are now required for several tender plants, and others for early crops; as cucumbers, melons, capsicum, love-apples, basil, &c. also for forcing asparagus, kidney-beans, strawberries, &c.

Line hot-beds—when the heat declines by applying hot-dung to the sides. [See January and February.]

Cucumbers and melons—sow in hot-beds, either as successional or first crops for ridging out into other hot-beds when two or three weeks old, to remain for fruiting.

Prick young cucumber and melon plants—in small pots when but a few days old, in the seed leaves, three or four in each pot of cucumbers, and two of melons, and plunged in the hot-bed, or prick others in the earth of the bed; all to attain a proper growth for planting out finally into other hot-beds, when advanced in the rough leaves two or three inches.

—— *Ridge out cucumbers*—raised last month or beginning of this, into large hot-beds, to remain for fruiting. [See February.]

—— *Or plant some melons*—also in a tanner's bark hot-bed, made in a pit, defended with frames and glasses; being superior for its long continuance in a good moderate heat.

—— *Impregnate or set the young fruit of cucumbers*—according as they come into blossom, by applying the central anthera of the male to the stigma in the centre of the female flower.

This business of setting the fruit in cucumbers is a curious and most necessary operation in early plants, and in which observe the following particulars; cucumbers and melons, producing male and female blossoms distinct on the same plants; that as the female only produces the fruit, always appearing under the base of the blossom, and the males, often denominated false blossoms, having the anthera or male part situated centrically or in the centre of the flower, is furnished with a fine yellow farina or dust, designed by nature for fertilizing or impregnating the female; but which in early plants in frames, not having the full air, &c. require the assistance of art; therefore according as the female blossoms fully expand, observe in the same day, or second morning at farthest, to pluck a fresh full expanded male

flower, pull away the petal or flower leaf, then holding it by the stalk, applying the remaining anthera or male in the centre, to the stigma or central part of the female blossom, twirling it about between the finger and thumb, to discharge some of the fecundating powder on the female organ; and thus the fructification is effected, which will be obvious in two or three days, by the young fruit beginning to swell, observing generally, if possible, to have a fresh male blossom for each impregnation.

——— *For hand-glass crops*—sow cucumbers and melons (m. l.) to plant under glasses in April and May.

—— *Hot-beds of cucumbers and melons*—give air in mild days; cover the glasses every night, and keep up a good heat by lining the sides occasionally in proper time, with hot-dung.

—— *Stop or prune young cucumbers and melon plants at the first joint*—by taking off the top of the first advancing runner-bud, to strengthen the plants, and make them put forth fruitful runners.

Turneps—sow some early Dutch (b. m.) to draw in May; and as these will soon run to seed, sow a larger portion (m. l.)

Radishes—sow full crops of the common red and salmon kind, two or three times this month in an open situation.

—— Likewise sow some white and red turnep radishes.

—— *Water early radishes*—in dry warm weather in hot-beds and borders.

Red beet—for its root, sow the main crop, if not done last month. [See February.]

Sow also white and green beets—for their leaves.

—— *Likewise sow mangel wurzel beet*—both for its root, and for its leaves; but principally the latter, being excellent to boil like spinach, and the stalks of the leaves also as asparagus. [See February.]

Spinach—sow full crops of the round leaved sort once a fortnight or three weeks.

—— *Winter spinach*—clear from weeds, which will now be in perfection to gather for use, either the large leaves or the plants thinned out where thick.

Gourds and pompions—sow in a hot-bed (l.) to plant out in May.

Capsicum love-apples, and basil—sow in a hot-bed (m. l.) to plant out in May or (b.) June.

Purslane and Coriander—sow in a hot-bed, and some in a warm border, (m. l.) both of which to remain where sowed.

Nasturtium major—sow in a drill near a hedge, wall, paling, &c. on which to train the plants as climbers; their flowers for sallads and garnish, and the berries to pickle;

the young leaves, also, being of warm relish, eat agreeable in a sallad.

Garlick, shallots, and rocambole—finish planting.

Fennel—sow seed, or plant some roots or off-sets.

Sweet marjoram—sow in a hot-bed or bed of rich earth, some of each for transplanting.

Small salladings—of cresses, mustard, rape, and radish, sow every week or fortnight in a warm situation; or, if cold weather, sow also in a hot-bed, or under glasses.

Kidney beans—sow, if warm dry weather, in a south border (l.) a small crop.

——— *Sow also early kinds*—in a hot-bed, or in pots in a hot-house.

Mint—plant either by slips of the roots, or young spring plants.

—— *Clear old mint-beds*—from weeds

Balm—plant either in full plants, or by parting the roots, or slipping the young spring shoots.

Tarragon and tansey—plant by parting the roots, or in full plants.

Corn sallad, chervil, and dill—may now be sowed.

Thyme, savory, marjoram, and hyssop—may now be sowed (m. l.) or plant some of each in full plants, or by slips or parting the roots.

Sage—may be planted by rooted full plants, or by rooted off-sets, slips, suckers, &c.

Parsley—sow now the principal supply, if not done last month, generally in drills.

Hamburgh parsley, salsafy, scorzonera and skirret—where in request for their roots, sow now the first main crops in open situations; either broad-cast on the surface, and raked in, or in shallow drills, six or eight, to ten or twelve inches asunder.

Broccoli—sow a moderate supply of the early purple for heading in autumn.

—— The spring broccoli of last year's sowing and planting, is now in great perfection, for general use, in the production of large heads in the manner of cauliflowers.

—— Mark and leave for seed, some best old broccoli plants, now in full heads, to discover their goodness for that occasion.

Borecole—of the green and red curled sorts, sow the first principal crops (m.) to plant early in summer, to produce tall stems and large top heads for autumn and winter, being very hardy, to stand severe frost when other greens are often killed by rigorous weather; and the tall stems produce abundance of sprouts from bottom to the top; all excellent to boil.

Savoy—sow in an open situation, (m. l.) for planting out in plentiful crops in summer, to produce large cabbaged heads for autumn and winter.

Celery—sow on a warm border, or some in a hot-bed (b.) and prick out early young seedling plants of last month, in a hot-bed, or warm border.

—— *Sow celeriac*—or turnep-rooted celery.

—— *Earth-up old celery*—late planted last autumn, for spring supply.

Cardoon—sow a small crop (m. l.) for transplanting in May or June.

Potatoes—begin planting the principal crops, either by cuttings of large ones, or good middlings; all in rows two feet and a half asunder, by twelve or fifteen inches distance in the row, and three or four inches deep.

——— *Early potatoes in hot-beds*—give air and occasional waterings.

Jerusalem artichokes—plant by cuttings thereof, or small ones whole, three by two feet asunder, three or four inches deep.

Strawberries—plant by young off-sets, or runner plants of last year, twelve to fifteen or eighteen inches distance.

—— Spring dress all strawberry beds, hoe, dig, or loose the surface, clear away weeds, and runner strings of last year, from the plants; and spread some loose earth between them from the alleys, &c.

—— *Place pots of two years scarlet strawberry plants*—in a hot-house or hot-bed, for a succession of early fruit.

Rue, rosemary, and lavender—may now be planted in slips or rooted plants.

Horse-radish—finish planting the main crop. [See February.]

Cives, sorrel and burnet—may now be planted by full plants, or parting the roots, or seed of the two latter sowed.

Alexanders—sow, and those raised last autumn hoe and earth-up to blanch.

Rampion—for its root, sow in a bed or border, either broadcast, or in drills, remain where sowed.

Hoeing—perform in dry weather, between advancing young crops in rows, as peas, beans, cabbages, &c. to loosen the earth, cut down any weeds beginning to advance, and to draw a little earth to the stems of the plants.

Digging and trenching should now be finished in all vacant ground.

Herbary furnish—by planting and sowing with different sorts of pot, sweet, and aromatic herbs. [See pot herbs, &c.]

——— *Dress and clean the herbary*—clearing the plants from decayed stems, &c. dig or hoe and rake the beds, stir and

loosen the surface, clear off all seeds, and apply some loose earth from the alleys, &c. between the plants, or in some of close growth, as mint, spread a little earth over the general surface.

Pot herbs and aromatics—sow and plant different sorts required.

——— *Sow pot herbs*—of all sorts as parsley, chervil, borage, beets, marigolds, sorrel, fennel, burnet, coriander, dill, clary, angelica, thyme, marjoram, savory, hyssop, &c. all in beds or borders of common light earth.

——— *Plant pot and aromatic herbs*—of the perennial kinds, as thyme, pot and winter marjoram, savory, sage, hyssop, mint, balm, pennyroyal, fennel, tarragon, tansey, sorrel, burnet, cives, chamomile, angelica, rue, lavender, &c. all either in rooted full plants, or most of them also by slips, off-sets, and parting the roots.

——— *Propagate pot-herbs and aromatics*—by slips, off-sets, and parting-roots, as thyme, sage, marjoram, mint, balm, and most of the perennial sorts just above advised for planting.

——— *Spring-dress the old beds of pot-herbs*—hoe, rake, or dig down the weeds, and to loosen the ground about the plants. [See herbary above.]

Mushroom-beds—if required, may now be made, to furnish a spring and summer crop; keep them constantly covered with dry straw a foot thick. [See September.]

Liquorice—may be planted (b. m.) if omitted last month, &c.

Weeds—now advancing among winter standing plants, as spinach, onions, carrots, celery, leeks, coleworts, &c. should be diligently extirpated by hand and hoe before they spread considerably.

FRUIT GARDEN.

All planting and pruning should now be finished.

Planting—may be performed in all sorts of fruit trees, any time this month, but is adviscable to complete all that is intended as soon as possible, before the trees advance much in their spring buds.

Ground for planting—finish the necessary preparation required; such as manuring, digging, and trenching borders for wall-trees and espaliers, &c.

Wall-tree planting—may be performed in any sorts required; as peaches, nectarines, apricots, figs, vines, plums, cherries,

pears, &c. but is of particular advantage to have the whole completed as soon as possible this month. [See January and February.]

Espalier-trees—may also be planted, as apples, pears, plums, cherries, &c. as directed in the two foregoing months.

Pruning—in wall trees and espaliers, should now be completed the beginning of the month, if possible, particularly in all sorts of peaches, nectarines, and apricots, as they will be considerably advanced in their blossom buds: likewise forward all remaining pruning in vines, figs, plums, cherries, pears, apples, and all other sorts in the wall and espalier tree order.

—— In the above puning, observe the order of bearing of the different sorts of trees, as hinted in January, &c. and prune them accordingly.

—— According as each tree is pruned, nail and train them to the wall and espalier, in the most regular order, arranging the branches horizontally, three to four or five inches asunder.

Standard fruit-trees—of all sorts may yet be planted in full collection, or as may be required, of the different kinds mentioned in the two last months.

—— *Pruning standards*—where any require it, should now be wholly finished.

Gooseberries, currants, and raspberries—finish planting (b. m.) or as soon as possible, as they will now be advancing fast in their spring shoots and blossom buds. [See January and February.]

——— Likewise finish all remaining pruning of gooseberries, currants, and raspberries (b. m.)

——— Plant cuttings and suckers of gooseberries and currants, for young plants; also suckers of raspberries.

Protect wall-trees in blossom—from frost, of the principal sorts of apricots, peaches, and nectarines: nailing up large mats in frosty nights and days, and taken off in mild weather.

—— Or have cuttings of evergreens, furnished with the leaves, stuck between the branches, or large old fishing-nets suspended doubly before the trees, and either of these may remain constantly till the fruit is all well set, and past all danger from frost.

Head down young wall trees—of peaches, nectarines, apricots, and others of a year old, planted any time since last autumn, with the first shoot from budding, &c. entire, cutting each down to five or six eyes or buds, to obtain several lateral shoots below, to give the head its first proper formation.

—— *Other young fruit-trees*—advancing with only a single naked shoot or two, should also be headed down as above, in order to force out lateral shoots near the stems, to form a first regular set of branches from the beginning.

Train young wall and espalier-trees—now, in the first or second year shoots, after leading down; pruning out fore-right and cross-placed productions, and nail-in the others in a regular expansion.

Prune fig-trees—against walls, &c. where not yet done: generally completing the whole this month; and in which observe the same directions as in February.

—— *Finish planting fig-trees*—where it is intended, against south-walls, eighteen or twenty feet asunder.

—— Plant suckers, and make layers of fig-trees, for a supply of young plants, if required.

Nail wall trees, and tie and nail espaliers—according as each tree is pruned.

Dig fruit tree borders—of wall trees and espaliers, when the trees are finished pruning and nailing.

Dig between rows of gooseberries—currants, and raspberries.

Stake new planted standards—of tall growth, to secure them from being displaced by the wind.

Mulch fruit-trees—lately planted, laying it on the ground over their roots to keep out the drought.

Orchard fruit-trees—in standards, finish planting where intended, and complete all requisite pruning thereof in former planted or old trees.

Cut grafts—(b.) of young shoots of apples, pears, plums, cherries, filberts, &c. for grafting this spring.

Grafting—may now be performed in general, in apples, pears, plums, cherries, medlars, quinces, filberts, sweet service, &c. finishing it mostly this month.

Suckers eradicate—from the roots of all kinds of fruit trees.

Plant suckers—of fruit trees, both for young plants in several sorts, as figs, codlins, quinces, filberts, hazel-nuts, &c. and also in several kinds, for stocks, on which to graft and bud.

——— *For stocks*—plant suckers of plums, pears, quinces, codlins, and filberts.

Sow for stocks—kernels of apples, pears, quinces, medlars, for grafting and budding.

Plant out young seedling stocks—raised last year, into nursery rows, for budding and grafting, &c.

Propagate fruit trees—by different methods, some by grafting, as apples, pears, plums, cherries, medlars, &c. and also by planting young cuttings of vines, figs, mulberries, codlins, quinces, elderberry, gooseberries, currants; by suckers, currants, gooseberries, raspberries, codlins, filberts, hazel-nuts, quinces, berbetries; and by layers, vines, figs, mulberries, or also occasionally codlins, and other apples, and plums, &c.

—— *And by nuts*, &c.—walnuts, chesnuts, filberts, hazel-nuts, and almonds.

Head or cut down budded stocks—of young fruit trees, that were budded last summer, heading them off near the insertion of the bud, which will then advance in strong growth.

Finish pruning of vines—and let the whole be now completed as soon as possible; as when late pruned in the spring are apt to discharge the sap exceedingly at the cut parts. [See January and November.]

—— *Make layers of vines*—both in the full ground, and any particular sorts may be layed in pots, either by bending the layer down into the pot, or drawing it through the hole at the bottom, and fill up the pots with earth; but preferably the former.

—— *In wall vines, &c.*—where any are vacant of proper wood below, or required to extend the expansion, lay down into the earth some of the side branches, or others occasionally as may be required.

Hot walls and forcing houses—for early fruit, continue making fires every evening and cold mornings, to support a regular internal heat.

In the above may introduce pots of strawberries, kidney-beans, flowers, &c. to forward to early perfection.

FLOWER GARDEN AND PLEASURE GROUND.

Compartments designed for planting with any kind of flower roots or plants, shrubs and trees, should now be forwarded, that all principal planting may be completed in proper time.

Planting—may now be performed in numerous sorts of flowering plants, and all kinds of shrubs and trees.

Sowing—is also now proper in many sorts of annual, perennial, and biennial flowers, and many sorts of trees and shrubs.

Also propagating—many sorts of perennials by parting roots, off-sets, slips, &c. and shrubs and trees by layers, cuttings, suckers, and grafting.

Clean and spring dress—the flower garden and pleasure ground, by digging, hoeing, and raking the borders, beds, and shrubberies; weed, sweep, and roll the gravel walks, and mow the grass compartments in walks and lawns, cut the edges of grass even, and regulate all sorts of edgings of box, thrift, &c. in best order.

Furnish the beds, borders, &c.—with all necessary flower plants, seeds, shrubs and trees, now at the proper season, before too late, as most sorts may now be removed and planted, and seeds sowed.

Dig all compartments—of beds, borders, and shrubberies; and where sowing and planting is intended.

Trees and shrubs—of all hardy sorts, both deciduous and evergreen may be planted; and is a proper season to sow seed, and propagate numerous sorts by layers, cuttings, slips, and suckers.

Bulbous roots—of all sorts remaining out of the ground finish planting (b.) some of which will flower the same year; others by this late planting, will flower but weakly, or not at all, it however will save the roots.

—— *No removal of bulbs*—now all advancing in growth, should be practised at this season, which in most sorts would prevent their flowering; but if any are unavoidably removed, replant them again directly.

Defend bulbous flowers—of the more curious capital sorts in beds, now advancing in their flower buds, covering them with mats, in frost, hail, or snow, such as the superior sorts of hyacinths, tulips, polianthus-narsissus, &c.

Also protect the choice anemones and ranunculuses.

Anemones and ranunculuses—finish planting all that remain out of the ground; they will flower in May and June.

Annual flower seeds—may now be sowed of all sorts, both of hardy kinds in the open ground, and tender sorts in hot-beds; all for flowering the same year in summer and autumn.

—— *Hardy annuals*—may now sow all sorts in beds and borders to remain, and some principal sorts in pots; all of which generally sow in small patches, several or many seeds in each, according to the sorts and nature of growth of the respective plants, and which in most sorts, are generally to remain where sowed for flowering; or some occasionally transplanted of the larger growing kinds in May or June.

—— *Tender annuals*—sow in a hot-bed for transplanting in April, May, and June, in pots, borders, &c. as balsams, cock's-combs, tricolors, globe amaranthus, tree amaranthus, egg-plant, double stamonium, marvel of Peru, &c. also African and French marigolds, chrysanthemums, china-asters, ten week stocks, mignonette, &c.

Perennial and biennial flowers—of all the fibrous and fleshy rooted tribes, may now be planted in beds, borders, &c. where required: and seed sowed of all sorts raised by that method: numerous sorts to be propagated by slips, off-sets, parting roots, &c. and those raised last year plant out into the borders for flowering this season.

Planting perennials and biennials—may be performed in all sorts for flowering the same year, such as pinks, polyanthuses, auriculas, daisies, carnations, campanulas, wall-flowers, sweet-

williams, stocks, columbines, rose-campions, and numerous other sorts, in borders, beds, shrubberies, &c.

—— *Sow perennials and biennials*—for flowering next year, of pinks, carnations, wall-flowers, sweet-williams, rose campions, stock July-flowers, polyanthuses, auriculas, and many others, all in beds of common earth, for pricking out in summer.

—— *Propagate perennials*—by parting or slipping the roots, which may now be performed in numerous sorts.

Auriculas and carnations in pots—clear from decayed leaves, and add some fresh earth to the top of the pots, if not done last month.

—— *Best auriculas in pots*—defend from frost when the flower-buds advance.

—— *Slip and plant off-sets of auriculas*—and sow seed; and may plant some full plants in borders and pots.

Carnations—plant in pots and borders.

———— *The carnations in small pots*—transplant into larger, with the ball of earth to the roots.

———— *Sow carnation seed* (m. l.)

Polyanthuses—plant in beds, borders, and pots, and sow seed.

———— *Slip polyanthuses for increase*—or divide the roots, and plant the off-sets.

Hedges—finish planting where intended, both of deciduous and evergreen kinds. [See February.]

—— *Trim or clip hedges*—where needful.

—— Plash or lay down any over-grown rough hedges, naked or open below.

Edgings—may be planted of box and thrift, or occasionally of daisies, pinks, London-pride, strawberries, &c.

——— Repair, trim and regulate old edgings where disorderly.

Hoe and rake—borders, beds, and shrubbery compartments.

Gravel walks—weed, sweep, and roll every week.

——— *Turn gravel walks*—and new lay them (m. l.) to remain clean, neat, and of a fresh appearance all spring and summer.

——— *Make new gravel walks*—where intended, this being the proper season.

Grass lawns, walks, &c.—pole, roll, and mow once a week or fortnight. [See February.]

——— *Lay grass turf*—for making new or repairing old work; or in want of turf, sow grass seed.

——— *Edges of grass*—cut close and even.

Walks—keep always clean from weeds and litter.

Flowering shrubs—of all sorts may still be planted, and finish the principal part this month, such as roses, honeysuckles, hypericums, spiræas, syringas, and numerous other sorts.

Evergreens—of shrubs and trees of all the hardy sorts may now be safely planted; as laurels, laurustinus, bay, alaternus, phislyrea, magnolia, thododendron, arbutus, arbor-vitæ, pines, firs, cedars, cypress, holly, &c.

——— *Curious or tender evergreens*—may be transplanted or removed with balls of earth not to feel much check by removal; or any small, young, curious, or tender sorts, may now be planted in pots, to place in any particular compartments required.

——— *Pruning evergreens*—where wanted may now be performed, if mild weather, to reduce any irregular growth.

——— *Sow seed of evergreens*—of most sorts that are raised by that means; as pines, firs, cedars, cypress, holly, bay, yew, arbutus, &c. in beds of light earth; but the arbutus should generally have a gentle hot-bed.

——— *Tender evergreens*—against walls, or under any kind of occasional shelter; as broad-leaved myrtle, olives, tea trees, magnolias, &c. give full air every mild day, but still cover with mats, &c. if cold frosty nights.

Prune shrubberies—cutting out rude shoots, dead wood, and eradicate suckers from the roots.

——— *Finish digging shrubberies*—or hoe and rake the ground.

Ornamental and forest trees—finish planting for groves, clumps, walks, woods, coppices, and for shelter and shady plantations.

Stake new planted—tall standard trees.

Mulch the ground—over the roots of new planted trees and shrubs of the more curious or tender evergreens and others, to keep out the drought, &c.

Climbers—plant to ascend upon walls, poles, trees, arbours, &c. both of shrubby and herbaceous kinds.

Roses plant—of different sorts; plant off-suckers thereof, and lay moss roses.

Deciduous tree and shrub trees—finish sowing.

Sow seeds of evergreens—as fir, pine, cedars, bay, cypress, arbor-vitæ, arbutus, &c.

Forest trees—both of deciduous and evergreens may now be planted, both for woods of timber trees, and for coppices of underwood, especially many of the deciduous tribe; completing the whole this month.

Sow forest tree seeds—as acorns, mast, berries, nuts, stones of fruit and cone seeds.

Herbaceous plant seeds—of flowers, &c. may now be sowed of most sorts.

Slip and part roots—of perennials for encrease.

Suckers and cuttings—plant of shrubs and trees, and make layers.

Plant slips—of young shoots of many sorts of under-shrubby plants.

Large cuttings, poles, and truncheons—may now plant of willow, Lombardy-poplar, alder and elder, &c. in low moist grounds, marshy places, or any other out situations or where thought eligible; and along the sides of brooks, rivers, and banks of watery ditches, &c. either to grow up for standards, pollards, or for underwood, or some to form hedges, or as may be required.

Or elder cuttings—of strong young shoots, cut in lengths of one to two or three feet or more, may be planted along the sides or tops of banks, ditches, &c. either to form a speedy hedge, or some to run up in standards in natural growth, for their production of berries for elder wine.

Graft—curious varieties of trees and shrubs to continue the sorts, and graft English elms.

Ten weeks stocks and mignonette—sow in a hot-bed or warm border, or in a frame, hand-glasses, or pots defended from the cold.

Early raised plants of the above—prick in pots, three or four in each.

——— Plant willow and osier cuttings of strong young shoots, in moist or marshy situations, or by ditch sides, &c. to procure rods for baskets, and several garden occasions.

Plants in pots—of different sorts of perennials, clear from weeds, decayed leaves and litter, &c. and fresh earth the tops of the pots.

Tuberoses—beautiful tall flowering bulbo-tuberous roots, and the flower flagrant, may now be planted in pots, in a hot-bed, or hot-house.

——— *Those in pots*—protected in winter, give now, the full air, in mild fine days.

Shift plants—into larger pots and some fresh earth, such as require it.

Plant into pots—any curious or desirable flowering plants and shrubs.

Sweet briars—sow seed, and plant young plants where wanted.

Place in a hot-house—pots of desirable flowers, and small flowering shrubs, to blow early.

WORK IN THE NURSERY.

Planting and transplanting—where necessary, may now be performed in any sorts of hardy trees and shrubs, both deciduous and evergreen kinds; such as planting out-seedlings from seed-beds, and transplanting from other compartments where needful, agreeable to the cultivation of last month, and all of which should now at this season be forwarded with great diligence, and in great part wholly or nearly completed this month.

——— But in all the deciduous tribe particularly, it is adviseable to complete all the necessary principal planting intended to be done this spring, as soon in this month as possible, before they advance for the spring shoot in any considerable degree: and they will now soon strike fresh root and grow.

——— In evergreens, however, they, in most sorts, may be planted or transplanted any time this month and beginning and middle of the next, more successfully than earlier in the spring when cold weather prevails; or if this month should prove frosty or very cold in the beginning, it would be better to delay the principal planting of these kinds till the middle or towards the latter end.

Complete all principal digging—of vacant nursery ground intended for planting this season with new plantations of young trees and shrubs, or for sowing seeds thereof, or planting cuttings, suckers, &c. to raise supplies of young plants.

Finish or forward all requisite pruning—in any sorts of trees and shrubs, by cutting out or reducing casual irregular shoots and branches, or to trim up the stems of forest trees and others from strong lateral shoots.

Dig between nursery rows of young trees, &c.—and should now complete or forward all work of that kind as soon as possible.

Forward now all planting and transplanting—which should be principally completed this month, especially in most of the deciduous trees and shrubs.

Plant out seedling trees and shrubs—of all kinds from the seed-beds, where raised, into nursery-beds, or some larger kinds quartered out in nursery-rows, a foot and a half to two or three feet distance.

Plant out fruit tree stocks—both of seedling plants, and others into the nursery quarters, in rows two to three feet asunder, to remain for grafting and budding, after having one to two or three years growth or more, according to the smaller and larger sizes, for different occasions.

Prick out small seedling trees and shrubs—into nursery-beds in rows, six inches to a foot asunder.

Transplant young trees and shrubs—where required, in such as have been formerly planted in nursery-beds, &c. in close rows, and now in advanced growth require more room, which should now be transplanted accordingly, completing it principally this month.

Evergreen trees and shrubs—of all the hardy sorts, or of most kinds, both of young seedling plants and others, may now be planted or transplanted as occasion may require.

The propagation of trees and shrubs—by the different methods, may now at this season be performed almost in general, especially by seed, suckers, cuttings, layers, slips, off-sets, grafting, &c.

Sow tree and shrub seeds—of most sorts, both evergreens and deciduous kinds, in beds or borders, &c. of light earth, inserting or covering them in one to two inches deep according to the smaller and larger seeds.

—— Or some may be sowed in pots or boxes, &c. of some of the more curious or tender evergreens, &c.

—— Likewise any of the more curious or tender sorts being sowed in pots, may be plunged in a bark-bed, &c. to bring them forwarder.

Plant cuttings and slips—of young shoots, to propagate various sorts of trees and shrubs, both of deciduous and evergreen kinds.

Propagate by layers—many sorts of trees and shrubs, both of the evergreen and deciduous tribe: observe as directed in February.

Transplant rooted layers—of last year's laying into nursery rows to acquire proper growth.

Plant suckers and bottom off-sets—of various sorts of trees, shrubs, and plants, taking them up with roots, and planted in nursery rows.

Propagate evergreens—many sorts by seeds, as pine-tree, firs, cedars, cypress, &c. and many other by layers, cuttings, suckers, &c.

Collect grafts—from the respective trees, before they begin to shoot, ready for grafting. [See February.]

Grafting may now be performed in general—both in all the sorts of fruit-trees, usually propagated by that method, as apples, pears, plums, cherries, &c. and in such other trees as are either occasionally or generally encreased by grafting, and should be mostly completed this month.

——— Inarching or grafting by approach—may also be performed now.

Head down budded stocks—of fruit trees and others, which were budded last summer; the bud being always inserted into the side of the stock, the top of which remaining entire, must now

be cut down sloping, near the insertion of the bud, which having remained dormant, will, after this, soon push forth in a strong shoot to form the new tree of the desired sort.

Head down young fruit trees—having their first shoots, from grafting and budding, of one year's growth, cutting them to five or six eyes or buds, that they may push lateral shoots below to give the trees their first formation for the wall and espalier, &c.

Planting in pots—may now be performed in any curious sorts of trees, shrubs, and plants, as may be required; and where any of former planting require shifting into large pots or fresh earth, this is a proper time for that work.

———— Or former-planted trees, shrubs, &c. in pots, not requiring to be shifted, should have the top earth loosened, and a little fresh compost added.

Herbaceous perennials—of numerous sorts may now be planted and propagated in the nursery; and of which most sorts may be propagated by off-sets, and parting the roots; many also by seeds.

Tender evergreens and other exotics—having had occasional protection in winter, &c. should now enjoy the full air.

Propagate tender exotics—now by sowing seeds, planting cuttings, layers, &c. in pots, and plunged in a bark-bed or other hot-bed under glasses.

Mulch new planted trees, &c.—of some particular or principal kinds, spreading it on the ground over the roots, to preserve them from the drought of the spring and summer.

GREEN HOUSE.

Continue all the plants still in the green-house—and at this season allow them a large admission of free air, and will require frequent watering.

During their continuance in the green-house—keep all the plants in good order, clean from any foulness they are apt to contract, clearing off all decayed leaves and dead shoots, and occasionally stir, or fresh-earth the tops of the pots, or any may be shifted into larger pots where required.

Fresh air—admit freely every mild day, but shut close at night and when cold.

Give water—now frequently to most of the green-house plants, according as the earth in the pots appear dry.

Stir the earth on the top of the pots—where any appears of a binding nature.

Fresh earthing—the top of the pots, if not lately done, will now prove beneficial.

Clean the heads and leaves—of any plants that are foul or mildewed, washing with a sponge, &c. any very foul large leaved sorts, and watering all over the heads of others.

Decayed leaves and shoots—always clear off whenever they appear.

Prune the heads—of any plants that are very irregular, of myrtles, geraniums, oranges, lemons, &c. cutting out or shortening any disorderly or weak straggling growth.

Heading down—may be occasionally performed to any greenhouse plants of a very naked, shabby, or straggling growth; pruning down the branches more or less, to have them break forth in fresh shoots, and thereby form more compact regular heads.

Shift into larger pots, &c.—any plants that require it; removing them with the ball of earth, cut away matted or mouldy dry outside roots, plant them in the new pots, previously adding some fresh earth at bottom, then inserting the plant, fill up with more earth round the sides and over top of the ball, and watered.

Oranges, lemons, myrtles, &c.—in pots, or tubs too small, may now be shifted as above into larger.

—— In the work of shifting into larger pots, it should be observed, that as some greenhouse plants grow to a large size, such as oranges, lemons, citrons, &c. also the American aloes, and that after having been shifted into the largest sized pots, and having increased to a larger growth therein, they should be shifted from the pots into tubs of proper size, of larger dimensions; and any that are now in tubs too small, may be shifted into larger.

—— The tubs for the above purpose should be made strong, and hooped with iron, and have two hooked iron handles at the sides near the top, opposite, and holes bored in the bottom of the tubs to discharge the redundant moisture, after watering, &c.

Plant cuttings and slips—of the young shoots of myrtle, geraniums, and other shrubby kinds in pots; and may be forwarded in a hot-bed, &c.

Suckers and off-sets—where they occur in any of the greenhouse exoties, detach and plant in pots.

Sow seeds—of green-house exoties, as geraniums, balm of Gilead, winter cherry, &c. in pots, &c.—Also sow kernels of oranges to raise stocks for budding, and may all be forwarded in a hot-bed or bark-bed of a hot-house.

Make layers—for propagation of the lower young pliant branches or shoots of any shrubby kinds.

Planting—may be performed in any green-house plants; or where any have been raised several together in a pot or pots, and the young plants still remaining therein, transplant them singly in small pots.

HOT-HOUSE AND STOVE.

The hot-house plants—still require the constant aid of a lively bark-bed heat, assisted by fires, evenings and in cold mornings: continuing the pines always in the bark-bed, and this supported in a good heat.

The plants in general—should have the benefit of fresh air, and will now require frequent moderate waterings, and some want shifting into larger pots.

Fruiting pine plants—will now be advancing fast in young fruit, and require to have a good lively bottom heat in the bark-bed, in which they are plunged, to forward the fruit in a free regular growth, and if the heat is much declined, revive it by forking up the tan-bark, &c.

The succession pines—also require a moderate and lively heat in the bark-bed, or as they will require shifting (l. or next month) the heat must then be renewed.

The bark-bed—in the pinery, in which the fruiting pines are plunged, keep of a lively temperature, that if not lately revived by forking up and adding some fresh tan, it will now be required.

Give air—to the hot-house plants in mild sun-shining days moderately, but keep close when cold, cloudy, and every night.

Moderate watering—will be required once or twice a week, or occasionally as the earth in the pots become dry.

Shifting into larger pots—may be occasionally performed as required; or the young succession pines will require it in general next month: but the fruiting pines advancing in fruit do not require shifting, nor should they be removed when in that state of growth, except where any appear in a defective state. [See hot-house, April.]

Clean the leaves—of any plants that are foul, or invaded with insects.

Propagate hot-house plants—by different methods, as sowing seed, planting suckers, off-sets, slips, cuttings, layers, &c. all in pots, and forwarded in a bark-bed, either that of the general stove or hot-house, or its appendages, of bark-pits, &c. under glasses.

APRIL.

KITCHEN GARDEN.

Finish preparation of ground—by dunging, digging, and trenching, ready for sowing and planting.

Sowing—may still be successfully performed in most of the principal crops (b. m.) both in the open ground and in hot-beds, which, however, should now be forwarded as much as possible, in the main crops of several sorts, such as onions, leeks, parsneps, carrots, red-beet, lettuce, celery, cabbage, savoys, broccoli, &c.

——— *In the open ground*—may sow onions, leeks, carrots, parsneps, radishes, red-beet, peas, beans, kidney-beans, cabbage, cauliflowers, broccoli, borecole, savoys, red cabbage, sea-cabbage, celery, cardoons, lettuce, asparagus, turneps, spinach, white-beet, green-beet, turnep-cabbage, turnep-radish, salsafy, scorzonera, skirrets, alexanders, rampion, nasturtiums, and small-sallading.

——— *Of the above*—finish sowing the main crops of onions, leeks, carrots, parseneps, red-beet, cabbage, cauliflowers, asparagus, lettuce, radishes, and spinach.

——— *Likewise of pot-herbs*—may sow parsley, borage, fennel, dill, thyme, marjoram, savory, hyssop, marigold, sorrel, burnet, chervil, clary, coriander, and purslane, if not done last month.

—— *In hot-beds*—sow cucumbers, melons, kidney-beans, capsicum, tomatoes, or love-apple, and basil.

Planting—is now proper in many principal crops, as asparagus, artichokes, cabbages, cauliflowers, coleworts, sea-cabbage, beans, kidney-beus, potatoes, horse-radish, lettuce, Jerusalem artichokes, strawberries, with several kinds of aromatics, pot and sweet herbs, both in full plants, slips, off-sets, cuttings, &c. as sage, mint, balm, tansey, tarragon, thyme, savory, marjoram, hyssop, sorrel, burnet, fennel, penny-royal, chamomile, cives, rhubarb, lavender, rue, &c.

To plant in hot-beds—are cucumbers, melons, asparagus (b.) strawberries, mushrooms, and to prick therein young seedling cucumbers, melons, capsicums, love-apples, basil, &c.

Asparagus—finish sowing in an open situation for new plantations next year, where necessary, or intended.

——— *Planting asparagus*—in beds, complete (b. m.) young plants of a year old are proper, have rich ground well

dunged, laid out in four feet and a half wide beds, with alleys two feet wide between; and for planting, form with a line and spade four narrow trenches or drills, in each bed lengthways, a foot asunder, and six inches deep, but form only one drill at a time, making the line side upright; and directly plant each drill according as it formed, placing the plants therein against the upright side of a foot apart, with their crowns all equally a little below the surface, and earth them in evenly two or three inches deep, and thus proceed in planting each row; and when finished planting, rake the surface lightly even; or as intimated last month, may previously sow a thin crop of onions on the beds this first season. [See March.]

——— *Plant also some asparagus for forcing*—in beds, as above, or in continued rows nine to twelve inches distance, and in two or three years will be of proper growth to take up for forcing in hot-beds in winter, &c. [See September, October, and November.]

——— *Fork and spring dress the productive old asparagus beds*—(b. m.) turning up and loosening the earth a moderate depth, and rake the surface even.

——— *For forcing*—plant asparagus in hot-beds (b.) the last crop. [See the preceding month.]

Artichokes—finish the spring dressing, as in March.

——— *Complete planting artichokes*—where intended (b. m.) in rows four feet and a half distance, by a yard in the rows, as directed last month.

Aromatic herbs—finish sowing and planting, as thyme, savory, marjoram, angelica, sage, tarragon, tansey, fennel, dill, mint, balm, penny-royal, &c.

——— Propagate aromatics by parting the roots, slips, &c.

Beans—plant full crops of Windsor, Toker, long pods, white blossoms, &c. once a fortnight, in rows two feet and a half, or a yard asunder.

——— Hoe beans that are up, and draw earth to the stems.

——— Top early beans in blossom, to make the pods set sooner and more abundant.

Beet, red—finish sowing the main crop (b. m.) that the roots may attain their peculiar large growth for autumn, winter, and following spring.

——— *Green and white beet*—for their leaves may also be sowed, if not done in February or March.

——— Also may sow the mangel wurzel beet, if before omitted. [See February.]

Broccoli and borecole—sow a tolerable crop in an open situation, to plant out in summer for autumn and winter. [See March.]

—— Prick out young seedlings of broccoli and borecole, to acquire strength for final transplanting.

Cabbages—finish planting out all the winter standing plants for principal crops in summer and autumn.

—— Prick out young seedling cabbages

—— *Sow cabbage seed*—of the Yorkshire, Battersea, sugar-loaf, &c. to plant for summer and autumn young cabbages and coleworts.

—— Tie up the leaves of early cabbages to forward their heading.

—— *Sea-beach cabbage*—may yet be sowed and planted (b. m.) where required, if not done last month. [See March.]

Carrots—complete sowing the main crop (b.) or sow some (m. l.) to draw young in summer.

Cardoons—may be sowed for the main crop (b. m.) either at once where they are to remain, in rows four or five feet distance, and the seed sowed three or four together in small patches, four feet asunder in the rows; and the plants to be thinned to one in each place; or may be sowed thinly in a bed for transplanting as above, in June, &c.

Cauliflower plants—finish planting out the main crops from frames, hand-glasses, and warm borders, (b. m) but leave one or two good plants under each hand-glass, planting the others two feet and a half distance.

—— Continue the hand-glasses over the earliest cauliflowers, till (m. l.) raising them three inches upon props, and draw earth about the stems of the plants.

——— *Prick out spring raised cauliflowers*—and plant out the earliest raised plants.

——— *Sow cauliflower seed*—(b. m.) for a late summer and autumn crop.

Coleworts—plant of early cabbage kinds for summer greens, and sow seed. [See March, &c.]

Celery—sow a principal crop in an open situation, and prick out the early raised plants.

——— *Finish earthing up old celery*—late planted last autumn, for spring supply.

Capsicum, love-apples, and basils—sow in a hot-bed, if not done in March; and any raised last month, thin and prick three inches asunder, also in a hot-bed, to obtain a proper growth for planting in the natural ground next month.

Cress, mustard, rape, and radish—sow every week or fortnight, for small sallading, in any open situation.

Cucumbers and melons—sow in a hot-bed, and prick therein young seedling plants of these, and ridge out large ones into other hot-beds, under frames and hand-glasses; and in young plants beginning to push the first runner-bud in the centre,

stop or prune the said bud, at the first joint, to promote strength in the plants, and a production of lateral runners for fruiting.

——— *Complete ridging out cucumbers and melons*—(b. m.) into large hot-beds under frames, to remain for fruiting.

——— *To cucumbers, &c. in hot-beds*—admit air every day, give necessary waterings, train out the runners regular, impregnate, or set the young fruit in blossom, [see March], and keep up a good moderate heat by lining with hot dung to the sides, and cover the glasses every night with mats, or straw.

——— *For hand-glasses*—sow cucumbers and melons in a hot-bed (b. m.) and those raised last month prick some in pots, and in the earth of the hot-beds.

——— *Ridge out cucumbers and melons*—in hot-beds, under hand-glasses (m. l.)

Dill—finish sowing, if not done.

Endive—may be sowed (m. l.) only a small portion now, as the plants of this sowing will soon run.

Fennel—may be sowed, or plant old roots, or offsets thereof.

Fitochio—sow in drills two feet asunder; and, when of advanced growth in summer, earth up the plants three or four inches, to whiten the bottom part.

Horse dung—prepare ready for hot-beds as wanted, and for linings.

Horse radish—finish planting (b.) if before omitted.

Hot-beds—make for cucumbers and melons, both for frames and hand-glasses, also for capsicums, love-apples, basil, kidney-beans, and strawberries.

Line hot-beds—with hot dung when the heat declines.

Herbary—furnish with pot-herbs, by seeds, plants, slips, off-sets, &c. [See March.]

Onions—finish sowing the main crops (b.) or sow some (m. l.) to draw young in summer, and for small bulbs to pickle.

——— *Young winter onions*—will now be in perfection to draw for use; thin and leave some of the bulbous kinds for early bulbing in June.

Leeks—may be sowed the main crop, if before omitted, and (m. l.) for late transplanting.

Lettuces—plant out from frames, hand-glasses, beds, &c. where they have remained thick all winter.

Sow lettuce of different sorts.

Prick out early sowed young lettuce.

Cos lettuce—of advanced growth, tie the leaves together to forward their cabbaging, &c.

Mint—plant by young plants, or cuttings of the spring shoots.

Mushroom beds—may be made for summer production, and keep both the new and old beds constantly covered with dry straw a foot thick. [See September.]

Potatoes—finish planting the main crops (b. m.) in rows eighteen inches or two feet asunder, by twelve or fifteen inches distance in each row, and three or four inches deep.

Early potatoes in hot-beds—give air daily, and occasional waterings.

Jerusalem artichokes—finish planting (b.) [See the two last months.]

Kidney-beans—sow early dwarf sorts on a warm border (b. m.) and sow larger supplies (m. l.) in any open situation, in drills two feet and a half asunder.

Some early sorts—may be sowed thick in a large pot or two in a hot-bed, &c. (b.) for transplanting, in the latter end of this month, or (b. next) in a warm border.

Sow runner kidney-beans—(l.) a small first crop of the scarlet or other kinds required.

To kidney-beans in hot-beds, &c.—give air and water, and sow a successional hot-bed crop (b.) or some in pots in a hot-house.

Parseneps—sow the main crop (b.) if not done in February or March.

Parsley—sow, if not done the two last months.

Hamburgh large-rooted parsley—may still be sowed if omitted before.

Turneps—sow a moderate crop (b.) and a larger (m. l.) as the first will soon run: hoe early sowed crops, and thin them six or eight inches asunder.

Radishes—sow occasional crops once a fortnight, and water the advanced early crops in dry weather; and thin those that are too thick, two or three inches distance.

Turnep-radishes—sow of the small white, and red sorts; and thin early crops two or three inches distance.

Melons—ridge out the last crop in hot-beds under frames (b. m.) and plant the first main crop in hot-bed ridges under hand-glasses (m. l.)

To all hot-beds of melons—give proper air daily, occasional waterings moderately, train out the vines or runners regular, and keep up a good heat by linings of hot dung; and cover the glasses every night.

Sow melons—(b.) in a hot-bed, to ridge out under hand-glasses (b.) next month.

Peas—sow plentiful crops once a fortnight, or three weeks at this season for succession supplies, both of marrow-fats and prin-

cipal hotspur kinds, or any sort that may be required; but the two former for the main supplies.

——— Hoe and draw earth to peas advanced several inches in growth.

——— *Stick peas*—when six or eight inches high, where intended, a range of sticks to each row.

——— *Early peas in warm borders*—water in dry weather.

Spinach—round-leaved sort, sow once a fortnight for succession crops, broad-cast, and raked in regularly; or some may be sowed in broad shallow drills; or may sow spinach between rows of young cabbage, cauliflowers, beans, &c. either broad-cast and raked in, or in drills, as above.

—— *Hoe and thin early spring spinach*—three to four or five inches distance; especially that sowed broad-cast, that the leaves may attain a large thick growth.

—— Leave some old winter spinach for seed.

Gourds and pompions—sow in a hot-bed (b. m.) to plant out in May.

Prick out seedling plants—from seed-beds, of cabbages, cauliflowers, broccoli, borecole, savoys, celery, lettuce, all in beds of rich earth; and in hot-beds, prick young cucumbers, melons, capsicum, basil, gourds, love-apples, &c.

Purslane—sow more on a warm border.

Nasturtiums—if not sowed, finish now. [See March.]

Savoys—sow a principal crop of the green curled, &c. in an open situation (b. m.) to plant out in June, July, &c. for autumn and winter supply.

—— Prick out young seedling savoys of the early sowing, in beds three or four inches asunder, to acquire strength for final transplanting next month, &c.

Turnep cabbage—may be sowed, to plant out in May and June, a small crop for use of a family: large supplies in fields to feed cattle.

Garlick, shallots, and rocambole—finish planting (b. m.)

Tree onion—may still be planted, if not done. [See March.]

Strawberries—may be planted, and (b. m.) complete the spring dressing of old beds. [See March, June, September, &c.]

—— *To strawberries forcing in hot-beds, &c.*—give air and water, and place more pots thereof in a hot-bed or hot-house (b.) for the last forcing crop.

Pot-herbs—sow and plant of any sorts required; and propagate by slips, parting roots, &c.

—— *By seed may raise pot and sweet herbs*—of different sorts, thyme, sweet marjoram, pot marjoram, savory, hyssop, fennel, dill, chervil, marigolds, burnet, sorrel, clary, basil, coriander, beets, parsley, and angelica.

—— *Or by plants, slips, parting roots*—may plant several sorts of pot-herbs, and aromatics, as thyme, sage, savory, pot and winter marjoram, hyssop, tansey, tarrogan, mint, balm, penny-royal, chamomile, sorrel, burnet, cives, fennel, lavender, rue, &c.

Small sallading—sow every week or fortnight, of cresses, mustard, radish, and rape, in open situations, beds, or borders, &c.

—— Sow or leave proper supplies of the above small sallading, to produce seed.

Mustard—may be sowed (b.) to produce supplies of seed, with which to make flower of mustard for table sauce; sowed either in dills a foot asunder, or broad-cast, and raked in regularly.

Scorzonera, salsafy, and skirrets—may still be sowed (m. l.)

Rhubarb—may now be planted; a few plants set two feet distance, it being of large spreading growth: the young fleshy footstalks of its large leaves possessing an agreeable acid relish, are occasionally used for tarts, in April, May, &c.

Hoeing perform—between plants in rows, to cut down advancing weeds, as also to loosen the surface of the ground, and to draw earth to the stems of the plants, as early cabbages, cauliflowers, peas, beans, &c. greatly beneficial in forwarding their growth.

Hand-weeding—will be necessary in beds of small plants, which always perform in proper time, before the weeds advance considerably.

To produce seed—leave some spinach, parsley, beets, celery, endive, small sallading, Welsh onions, chervil, leeks, broccoli, borecole, turneps, parsneps, carrots, and other plants of the season.

FRUIT GARDEN.

Planting—may still be performed, but should be wholly completed (b. m.) in the different sorts of wall, espalier, and standard fruit trees; giving water as soon as planted.

Stake new planted standards—of tall growth, if much exposed to the winds.

Mulch fruit trees—of late planting, spreading it on the ground over the roots; especially where exposed to the sun, that it may keep out the drought, and preserve the moisture in the earth.

Winter pruning—unfinished, complete, now as soon as possible (b.) in all wall trees, espaliers, and standards.

Nailing and tying—in wall trees and espaliers, finish according as each tree is pruned.

In former pruned—wall trees, &c. if any decayed shoots, or ends of any are dead, prune them to the live wood.

Heading down—in young wall trees, espaliers, &c. of only a year old, from budding and grafting, if omitted last month, should now be finished (b.) whereby to obtain a production of lateral shoots, to form the head; performing it principally on the first shoots from budding, &c. produced last summer, cutting them down to five or six eyes. [See March.]

Grafting—may still be performed; but let the whole be completed (b.)

Defend wall trees—of apricots, peaches, and nectarines, now in blossom and young fruit, from frost, by the means advised last month.

Suckers, cuttings, and layers—of fruit trees, finish planting and laying (b.)

Water—in dry weather all late planted fruit trees, once a week moderately.

Fruit tree borders—finish digging, or others formerly digged and become hard, or the surface bound, loosen the earth about the trees.

Digging—between rows of gooseberries, currants, and raspberries, should now be finished (b.)

Clear fruit trees—both young and old, from all root-suckers, and shoots emitted from the stems.

Caterpillars—appearing in their webs on fruit trees, clear off before they animate and over-run the general branches, and devour the leaves.

Disbudding—or rubbing off useless shoots of the year, in wall-trees, may be commenced in some early shooting kinds (m. l.) as apricots, peaches, nectarines, taking off only the foreright productions at present.

Vines—unfinished in the general winter-pruning and railing, should now be wholly completed (b.) as soon as possible. [See March.]

—— And vines having had the proper general pruning and training as above, either in the foregoing or present month; and now advancing in their spring shoots, it would be proper (l.) to begin displacing or rubbing off the most useless and improper. [See May.]

Cuttings of vines—for propagation, finish planting (b.) either in a nursery, or where they are to remain.

Layers of vines and figs—may be successfully effected (b. m.) choosing principally the young wood; and layed in the common method; they will root effectually the same year: may also lay vines in pots, having largish pots of light mellow earth, bend

the body of the layer-shoot down into the earth several inches depth, with the tops uprightish, and shortened above; or may occasionally perform the laying, by drawing the shoot through the hole at the bottom of the pot, filling up with earth: and, in either method, when they are of one, two or three years growth in the said pots, may be transplanted with the ball of earth about the roots entire: or some may remain in the pots to move occasionally therein, where required, or to place in a stove or forcing-house for early fruiting, as may be thought expedient.

Thin young wall fruit—of apricots (m. l.) if in clusters.

Hot walls, &c.—for forcing early fruit, should have fires continued to be made moderately of nights and mornings, or of bark beds, therein, to support them in a proper heat—air admitted in warm days to the trees and advancing fruit, and occasionally watered at root and top: keep the glasses shut every night, and in cold weather.

—— In the above forcing houses, some early cherries will be now ripe, and plenty of strawberries, and sometimes early grapes (l.)

—— May still introduce therein, strawberry plants in pots (b.) raspberries, &c. in pots, and kidney beans, and flower plants.

FLOWER GARDEN AND PLEASURE GROUND.

Borders and beds—should be digged or hoed, and neatly raked, both to appear neat, and be ready for the reception of seeds and plants of flowers, that may be intended.

Walks and grass lawns—should also now be put into neat order, for the spring season.

Sowing—may be performed in all sorts of annuals and biennials, many sorts of perennials; also of many tree and shrub seeds.

Planting—may still be continued, in fibrous-rooted perennials and biennials, but finish planting all bulbs (b.) and most kinds of flowering shrubs, and various trees, both deciduous and evergreen; (b m.)

New work—or alterations carrying on, or intended should now be completed, ready to furnish with seeds and plants in proper time.

Annual flower seeds—of all sorts may now be sowed, both of hardy and tender kinds.

—— *Hardy annuals*—may now be sowed in full collection, in borders, beds, pots, &c. (b. m.) to remain where sowed for flowering the same year, such as lark-spurs, sweet peas, candy-tuft, convolvulus, lupines, alysson, mignonette, ten weeks stocks, virgin stocks, nasturtiums, lavatera, cyanus, nigella; all of

which sow in small patches, each sort separate, or some in drills, as may be required.

—— *Tender annuals*—sow in hot-beds (b. m) the principal supply for the general blow, to plant out in May and June; such as African and French marigolds, India pink, for planting out in May and June, China-aster, yellow Sultan flower, ten weeks stocks, mignonette, marvel of Peru, tree amaranthus, and many other sorts.

—— Or in want of hot-beds, most of these, except the two latter, may now be sowed in a warm border or pots, &c. (m. l)

—— *Most-tender annuals*—sow also in hot-beds (b. m.) to plant out in June, as cock's comb, tricolor, bicolor, globe amaranthus, balsams, egg plant, double stramonium, ice plant, sensitive plant, &c.

—— *Any tender annuals*—raised last month, or this, prick in another hot-bed, or some in pots, plunged therein, to forward them in growth till May or June.

Auriculas in pots—curious sorts now in bloom, place on a stage covered at top, to defend the flowers from rain, and the full sun; and water the pots.

Anemones and ranunculuses—finish planting (b.) for a late blow. [See March.]

Arbutus or strawberry-tree—a most beautiful evergreen and flowering shrub, may now be planted.

—— *Bulbous roots*—any remaining out of the ground, plant as soon as possible (b.)

—— *Bulbous roots in flower*—curious sorts in beds, as fine tulips, hyacinths; also anemones and ranunculuses, if defended from sun, rain, and bad weather, with mats, &c. will continue them longer in perfection.

—— *Early flowering bulbs*—out of bloom, and the leaves decayed (l.) may be taken up. [See May and June.]

Biennial flower seeds—of all sorts, should now be sowed for flowering next year, as sweet-william, Canterbury bells, stock gilliflowers, wall-flowers, scabius, French honeysuckle, &c. all sowed in any bed or border, to prick out in summer.

—— *Finish planting biennials*—(b.) of last year's seedlings, &c. for flowering this year in their proper season.

Beds and borders—finish digging, or hoe and rake them in a neat manner.

Box, thrift—and other edgings may still be planted.

Balm of Gilead—sow in a hot-bed, or warm border, and may plant slips, cuttings, and off-sets thereof, which may be greatly forwarded by aid of a hot-bed.

Carnations—finish planting (b.) in pots, beds, or borders, to blow the ensuing summer.

——— *Finish shifting*—carnations in small pots, into larger b.) [See March.]

Climbing plants—both of shrubby and herbaceous kinds, may be planted and sowed (b.) where required to run over arbours, bowers, &c. or to ascend upon sticks, in borders, &c.

Cuttings, suckers, and layers—finish planting of evergreen shrubs and trees, and late shooting deciduous kinds.

Clipping—may be performed in edgings and hedges, where needful.

Herbaceous plants—of fibrous-rooted perennials and biennials, flowering kinds, may still be planted (b. m.) and seed sowed.

Hydrangea—a fine ornamental-flowering, under shrubby plants, may now be planted in pots.

Hoe and rake—borders, beds, and shrubberies.

Hot-beds—make for sowing, pricking, and planting tender annuals.

Laying—finish in evergreens, and other shrubs.

Lombardy poplar—a most swift growing tree, for speedy shade, shelter, &c. may yet be planted (b. m.) and cuttings thereof most freely grow.

Mignonette—sow in beds, borders, or pots, for its sweet scent; and prick some early-raised young plants in pots, four or five in each.

Mow grass lawns, &c.—once a week or fortnight.

Magnolia—a superbly beautiful evergreen, may now be planted, allotting it a sheltered, but conspicuous situation.

Ornamental trees—and other tree kinds may still be planted, particularly evergreens, and late shooting deciduous kinds (b. m.)

Part, or slip roots—for increase of late shooting, or moderate growing perennials, and plant the slips, &c. some will flower the same year.

Perennials—of all sorts that are raised from seed, may now be sowed for flowering next year; and young plants of last year's seedlings, also old plants, slips, off-sets, &c. may likewise be planted in beds, borders, pots, to flower the same season, summer and autumn.

——— *Slip and divide roots*—of old perennials, for an increase of young plants.

Edgings—finish planting; and any old edgings that are irregular make good the deficiency, and clip, or trim, to proper order.

Edge grass walks, &c.—close and even.

Evergreens—of all tree and shrub kinds may still be planted

(b. m.) and well watered, and it is now a proper season to plant any of the more tender or curious sorts of evergreens.

——— *Prune evergreens*—where they require, or are of disorderly growth; and cut out decayed wood, this being a proper season for pruning these kinds.

——— Finish sowing seeds of evergreens.

Flowering shrubs—finish all planting thereof, that is intended (b. m.)

Flowering herbaceous plants—of perennials and biennials, may still be transplanted into beds, borders, pots, &c.

Forest trees, &c.—complete all intended planting and sowing (b.)

Grass lawns, &c.—continue to pole, roll, and mow frequently, to have a clean even surface.

——— *Lay grass turf*—where wanted, or sow seed; but the former is considerably preferable.

Gravel walks—weed, sweep, and roll every week.

——— Finish turning gravel walks, and fresh laying; also complete making new where intended.

Grafting—may be performed in any curious varieties of trees, &c.

Hedges—finish planting (b.) and cut and regulate old hedges, where they stand in need.

Passion flower—if in request, plant against a south wall (b. m.) and prune such as require it, cutting out the weak shoots, and thin the superabundant regularly, leaving the strong ones for flowering, and shortened, then nailed up regularly.

Pinks and daisies—may still be planted, and may also plant slips, and part the roots, &c. of these plants, for increase, where required.

Pruning—required in any shrubbery, compartment, or tree-plantations, should be completed.

Pots of plants—fresh earth at top, or shift into larger pots, as required, and give water in dry weather.

——— *In pots*—may still plant any herbaceous, or shrubby plants required, (b. m.)

Planting—finish mostly in all biennials, perennials, shrubs and trees, hedges and edgings.

Propagate—plants by slips, and off-sets, parting roots, &c. and trees and shrubs by layers, and cuttings; some by grafting, &c.

Privet and quickset edges—may be still planted (b. m.)

Roses—plant of suckers, or full plants (b. m.)

Rake borders—occasionally, to give them a fresh, good appearance.

Roll grass and gravel—every week.

Runners—scarlet and large white kidney beans, plant in borders, pots, &c. as flowering plants, (l.) sow also convolvulus-major, nasturtiums, sweet-peas, &c.

Shrubs—may be planted of evergreens; finish planting deciduous kind (b. m.) and prune shrubs where needful.

Strawberries—may be planted for edgings, or plant some in the borders, &c. singly, or three together, in small clumps.

Strawberry-tree or arbutus—an elegant evergreen flowering shrub, may now be planted in some conspicuous shrubbery clump, flower-border, or in a grass-plat: is beautiful as an evergreen, and very ornamental in its numerous small white flowers, and strawberry-like fruit in autumn.

Stocks, Brompton, &c.—sow (m. l.) for flowering next year.

Sowing—generally now finish, mostly in annuals, biennials, and perennials, and in all trees and shrubs.

Ten weeks stocks—sow plenty now for transplanting to flower this summer, or sowed in patches, &c. to remain, and be thinned.

Tube-roses—plant some roots in pots, in a hot-bed, or hot-house.

Turf—may still be laid successfully.

Wall-flowers—may still be transplanted with balls of earth; sow seed: and propagate double bloody kinds, by slips and cuttings of young shoots.

Watering—give in dry weather, to plant in pots, seed-beds, late planted articles, and to annuals in hot beds.

Walnut-trees—may be planted in young trees, or nuts.

WORK IN THE NURSERY.

All spring-planting—of trees and shrubs should be wholly completed this month.

Finish planting out all seedling and other young plants—of deciduous trees and shrubs, as early in this month as possible, before they began to shoot as it would then be too late to transplant many sorts successfully. [See the Nursery of February and March.]

But in evergreens—most sorts may now be safely and generally more successfully transplanted (b. m.) this month than at an earlier season in cold weather. Therefore may now plant or transplant all sorts of evergreens, both seedling plants and others, as may be required, and planted in nursery rows, at proper distances; such as the different sorts of pine and fir-trees, cedars, cypress, cistus, cytissus, junipers, laurels, laurustinus, bays, hollies, yews, arbutus, arbor-vitæ, magnolia, rhododendron,

alaternus, phillyreas, evergreen oaks, and many other sorts; and as soon as planted, it would be advisable to give a moderate watering to settle and moisten the earth about the roots.

Also for garden plantations—any sorts of evergreens, of proper growth, may now be successfully removed and planted.

In transplanting evergreens of larger growth—it would be of particular advantage to remove any particular or principal sorts with a ball of earth about the roots, and replanted with the ball entire.

However in deciduous trees and shrubs—any intended planting particularly required at this season, it is advisable only in such as have not advanced, or but very little, in the spring shooting, and should be wholly finished early in the month.

Propagate by layers—many sorts of evergreens in the young wood of last summer; they will be rooted for planting off in autumn.

——Finish laying deciduous kinds the beginning of the month.

Plant cuttings—of trees and shrubs, which in the deciduous kinds finish early in the month; and evergreens as soon as possible.

Finish planting suckers (b.)—especially of all deciduous trees and shrubs, and evergreens (b. m.)

Plant slips, suckers, cuttings—of many sorts of under-shrubby plants, as rue, rosemary, lavender, southernwood, and many others of similar growth.

———*herbaceous flower-plant seeds*—of perennials and biennials, in all sorts may now be sowed, and by which numerous species and varieties are raised, all for flowering next year.

———*Likewise propagate perennials*—by slipping and parting the roots, and by which numerous sorts may be encreased.

———*But in Biennials*—they are mostly raised principally by seeds, sowed annually at this season.

The sowing of tree and shrub seeds—should now be wholly finished (b. m.) especially in all the deciduous kinds.

Likewise in evergreens—all intended spring-sowing should be completed (b. m.) though most sorts may then be successfully sowed; and is a good season for sowing all the sorts of pine and fir, cedars, juniper, cypress, bays, evergreen oak, arbutus, magnolia and many other sorts.

Examine seedbeds—of trees, shrubs, &c. sowed last autumn, or early this spring; keep them clean from weeds, and give occasional watering in dry warm weather.

Tender exotics in pots—having had occasional protection in

cold weather, should now be fully exposed; and some of advanced growth may be planted in the full ground.

———Any tender or curious sorts, planted or sowed in pots this spring, may be forwarded by plunging the pots in a moderate hot-bed, or bark-pit, under a frame, &c.

Grafting—if not finished last month should now be wholly completed the beginning of this month.

Any pruning—not yet finished, should now be completed; and this is now a proper season to perform any principal pruning in all sorts of evergreens.

Finish all digging—both in compartments for sowing and planting, and between rows of young trees, &c.

GREEN-HOUSE.

Admit air—in mild days from morning till evening, but shut close when cold, and every night.

Waterings—will be necessary once or twice a week.

Clean the leaves—of oranges, lemons, and of any other exotics that are foul, by washing the large-leaved kinds with a sponge, and the others by watering over the branches and leaves.

Decayed leaves and shoots, &c.—clear away.

Fresh earth—to tops of the pots of those not yet done this spring.

Shift into larger pots, &c.—with some fresh earth, any plants that are in pots or tubs too small; removed with the ball of earth entire, and watered. [See March.] And where any of the larger-growing plants, as oranges, lemons, and American aloes, now growing in the largest-sized pots, and are considerably advanced in large growth, should be shifted from the pots into tubs of a larger size, and any in tubs too small, should be shifted into others of larger dimensions. [See the Green-House of last month.]

———*Or those not shifted*—loosen the top earth, and add a little fresh compost. [See March.]

———*Or any plants appearing of a sickly or infirm state*—it would be advisable to shift them into entire fresh earth, previously pruning any decayed roots, branches, &c.

Oranges, and lemons, &c.—requiring larger pots and tubs, may now be shifted.

Pruning or heading down—may be performed to any myrtles, geraniums, oranges, &c. having straggling, or naked shabby heads, that they may break out full in young shoots.

Planting green-house plants—finish in any sorts required, in

pots of common rich earth, or moderate loamy compost; but the succulents should generally have a dry light soil.

Young oranges, lemons—and other exotics imported from Italy, &c. at this season, if any are obtained, wash and soak them in water, then plant them singly in pots, and if plunged in a bark-bed, made in a glass-case, &c. it will forward their rooting and production of shoots at the top more effectively.

Sow orange and lemon kernels—in pots in a hot-bed, to raise stocks for budding.

————Plant young orange stocks of the last year separately, in small pots, and may be forwarded in a hot-bed.

Propagate—green-house plants by suckers, layers, slips, cuttings, off-sets, seed, &c.

Cuttings—of myrtles, geraniums, &c. heaths, and various other shrubby kinds; plant of young wood in pots, and if forwarded in a hot-bed, or bark-bed, will mostly root much sooner. [See May and June.]

Seeds—of green-house plants sow in pots in a hot-bed.

Succulent plants—may be shifted where any want larger pots; and suckers and cuttings thereof planted.

HOT-HOUSE.

The bark-bed heat—will now require to be renewed with about one-third of new tan, if not done last month; first take up the pots of pines, &c. and remove some of the waste, or earthly old bark, at top, then apply the fresh tan, and the old and new forked up together, and directly replunge the pots of plants.

Fire-heat—will still be necessary every evening and cold mornings.

Air—should be admitted moderately in mild sun-shining days.

Watering—will be necessary about once or twice a week, according as the different sorts of plants shall require.

Pine apple plants—now advancing in young fruit, require a good bottom heat, supported in the bark-bed, observing as above, and give proper moderate watering.

—— *Succession pines*—for future fruiting, will now require shifting (b. m.) into larger pots (32s.) with some fresh earth, if not done in March; and the heat of the bark-bed to be then renewed, with some fresh tan, and forking up, as above advised.

—— But observe, the present fruiting pines must not generally be shifted, or only occasionally, as any particular plants may seem to require, on discovering a defective growth or unhealthful state, in which may draw them out of the pot with the ball

of earth entire : trim off some of the loose outward old earth at sides and bottom ; add some fresh in the pot, and replace the plant therein, filling up with more fresh mould, and directly watered, and replunged in the bark-bed.

Shifting—into large pots, and some fresh earth may be performed to any other hot-house exotics that require it, except the fruiting pines aforesaid.

Clean any plants—that are foul, by washing or watering over the leaves.

Vermin—appearing on the pines, or other plants, should be exterminated, which should be very particularly attended to, especially those small vermin which often destructively invade the pine plants.

Propagate hot-house plants—by cuttings, suckers, off-sets, slips, layers, and seed, all in pots plunged in the bark-bed.

Crowns and suckers—of pines, where they occur, may also be planted, each separately in a small pot, and placed in the bark-bed of the pinery or succession house, &c.

To force in the hot-house—may still admit pots of strawberries, kidney-beans, flower-plants, &c. (b. m.) give frequent waterings.

MAY.

KITCHEN GARDEN.

Sowing and planting—is necessary now for several succession summer crops, and some full crops for autumn and winter supply ; mostly all in the natural ground, and some in hot-beds.

For sowing—the principal sorts of peas, beans, kidney-beans, radishes, lettuce, spinach, turneps, cabbages, cauliflowers, broccoli, borecole, savoys, coleworts, celery, endive, a few carrots and onions, to draw young ; leeks for late transplanting, turnep-cabbage, turnep-radish, small sallad, purslane, coriander, finochio ; also any sort of seeding pot herbs, if before omitted, likewise pickling cucumbers.

——*And for hot-bed sowing*—cucumbers, melons, gourds, &c.

To plant—the requisite sorts are beans, kidney-beans, cabbages, coleworts, savoys, broccoli, borecole, lettuce, early celery and endive ; late potatoes, cauliflowers, spring raised ; also pot-herbs and aromatic plants, before omitted ; and from hot-beds, capsicums, love-apples, gourds, and basil.

——— *To prick out*—from seed-beds, cabbages, savoys, broccoli, borecole, and celery.

——— *For hot-bed planting*—cucumbers, melons, under hand-glasses, &c.

Crops failed—of the spring sowing, through bad seed, or inclement weather, &c. lose no time, but sow and plant again (b.) as soon as possible, with the same or other crops.

Beans—plant succession crops of the large or sword long pods; also of broad beans, such as Windsor, Toker, and any other sorts required; generally, at this season, planting some once a fortnight, or three weeks, and hoe and draw earth to young beans that are up.

——— Top early beans and others, when in full blossom, to turn the whole nourishment to the advancement of the pods.

——— Plant some white blossom beans, and sword and other long pods.

Kidney-beans—sow or plant full crops of the Canterbury, Battersea, speckled dwarfs, and other dwarf sorts required (b. m.)

——— Likewise sow runner kidney beans of the scarlets, large white runner, Dutch, and other sorts.

——— If any dwarf kidney beans were sowed in a hot-bed last month for transplanting into the natural ground, they should be planted out when an inch or two high, in a warm border.

Asparagus beds—both old and new planted, and seed-beds will now require a careful weeding.

——— Old asparagus beds will now at this season be in full production of young shoots for gathering, which, when from about two or three to four or five inches high, are proper for cutting, while the top buds remain compact and firm.

——— In gathering or cutting asparagus, be careful not to injure the advancing young buds that are still within the ground, for as several, shoots are generally arising from the same roots, in different degrees of successional growth, should therefore, in gathering the proper advanced shoots, thrust the knife straight down close to each shoot, cutting it off about three, four or five inches within the surface, in a slanting downward cut; the others will advance in regular succession for cutting two or three times a week.

Artichokes—hoe to destroy weeds, and loosen the earth about the plants: and complete planting all that are intended (b.)

Aromatic, sweet and pot-herbs—may still be sowed (b.) and in most perennial sorts planted in slips, off-sets, &c. and in full plants, as required.

Lettuces—thin the main crops, and plant out plenty a foot distance, of cos and other principal sorts.

——— Tie up the leaves of early cos lettuce for cabbaging.

——— Sow lettuce in succession crops two or three times this month.

Cabbages—hoe between, and draw earth about the stem of the plants; and in earlier crops of cabbages, tie up the leaves to forward their heading.

——— Plant out spring raised cabbage plants for young summer and autumn cabbages, and for coleworts.

——— Sow cabbage seed, Yorkshire, Battersea, or sugar-loaf, both for coleworts and young cabbaging, towards the latter part of summer and in autumn, &c.

Cucumbers—sow and plant the last crops in hot-beds, both under frames and in hand-glasses.

——— To cucumbers in hot-beds give air freely every day, and frequent moderate waterings: support a good moderate heat in the beds, by occasional lining with hot dung on the sides; and cover the glasses every night.

——— Impregnate, or set the young cucumber fruit in blossom. [See March.]

——— *For hand-glass cucumbers*—make hot-bed ridges, either on level ground, three or four feet wide, and two and a half high, or in trenches that width and half a yard deep, earthing the bad eight inches thick; place the hand-glasses a yard asunder, and when the earth is warm plant three or four plants under each glass; water and shade them till they take good root, and cover the glasses and bed every night.

——— Or in want of plants for the above ridges, may sow seed under each glass to remain.

——— Or also in want of glasses may put in some young plants or seed, in patches, the above distance, along the middle, and the hot-bed protected with oiled paper-frames, or covered with mats of nights and bad weather.

——— *Where hot dung is scarce*—or not sufficient to make regular beds, as above, may now, at this season, dig holes two feet wide, a foot deep, and fill them with hot dung, then earth them over, and put in plants or seed as above and defended similarly.

——— Cucumbers may now be sowed in the open ground (l.) for picklers and other occasions; allot them a rich compartment of ground, or some on a warm south border; dig or loosen the earth in patches a foot and a half wide, three to four or five feet asunder, and each patch a little hollowed bason form, gradually about an inch deep, and sow several seeds in the middle part of each hole, half an inch to an inch deep in the earth:—and may sow some also close under a south wall or paling, &c. both in order to have the benefit of these sheltered warm situations and the opportunity of training some part of the plants to the wall,

for the improvement of the fruit in a clean regular growth and good flavour. [See also June.]

Cauliflowers—the early hand-glass crop now well advanced should have the glasses entirely discontinued (b.) if not done last month; and if very dry weather, give one or two good waterings to make the heads grow large previously hoeing some earth round each plant to contain the water.

Potatoes—finish planting (b. m.) if omitted before, they will come in for a tolerable crop in autumn.

Hot-bed dung—provide and prepare fresh supplies (b.) for making the last hot-beds for cucumbers and melons, and for occasional linings.

Frame hot-beds—for cucumbers and melons finish making, sowing, and planting (b. m.)

Hand-glass hot-beds—for cucumbers and melons finish wholly this month, especially melons (b. m.)

Line hot-beds—of cucumbers and melons, in which the heat is declined, applying hot dung to the sides to support a moderate bottom heat all this month.

Covering of nights—must still be continued to cucumber and melon hot-beds, with mats or straw over the glasses.

Air admit—to all hot-beds of cucumbers, melons, &c. every warm day, by tilting the glasses behind in the frame beds, an inch or two, or more, according to the heat of the day, and the hand-glasses raised on the south side, one or two inches, or according to the temperature of the weather, and as the sun is less or more powerful, but shut close of nights.

Shade—in hot sun shining weather, will be proper to cucumbers and melons, under glasses in frames, with mats or litter, in the heat of the day.

Hot-beds—finish making principally this month for cucumbers or melons, to sow or plant.

Melon hot-beds—give air every day, and apply moderate waterings, but more sparingly where the young fruit is setting, as much moisture would make them go off in their infant state; still keep up a tolerable good heat in the beds, by lining occasionally, and cover the glasses every night with mats or straw.

——— For hand-glass crops of melons, finish making hot-bed ridges, observe as directed for cucumbers, earth them eight or ten inches with some mellow, loamy compost, or other rich mould, place the glasses a yard asunder, and plant one or two melon plants under each, water and shade them from the sun till they take root and grow.

——— Likewise plant melons in a hot-bed, as above, to be covered with oiled-paper frames.

——— Finish sowing melons (b.) to ridge out, as above, the latter end of the month, for a late crop.

Oiled-paper frames—prepare for melons, and cucumber ridges as above, to place over the beds this month or next, both in some of those planted under hand-glasses, the glasses being previously removed away; or, in want of such glasses, may, at this season, place the paper-frames immediately over the bed and plants—which frames are beneficial by defending those beds effectually from rain and cold, and afford a fine shade from the scorching sun; and by which, excellent crops of melons are obtained in autumn, and cucumbers in summer. [See June.]

Gourds and pompions—plant out from hot-beds, &c. (b.m.) planting some gourd kinds near walls, rails, arbours, &c. on which to train them.

——— Or sow gourds, &c. in the natural ground (b. m.) to remain; or in a hot-bed (b.) to forward them for transplanting (l. m.)

Carrots, parsneps, and red-beet—now require clearing from weeds, and thinning to proper distances, either by hand-weeding or small hoeing.

——— The carrots thin about four to six or eight inches, in which those intended to draw for use in young growth, in a thinning order as wanted, may now be thinned only about four or five inches; but those designed to grow to a larger size for the main crop, thin from about six to eight inches asunder.

——— Parsneps thin wholly six or eight inches asunder.

——— Red-beet thin ten or twelve inches distance.

——— Carrots may be sowed, a small crop to draw young, the latter end of summer, and in autumn.

Salsafy and scorzonera—hoe and thin six inches distance.

Celery—early raised, plant out in trenches for blanching. [See June and July.]

——— Prick out young celery from the seed bed three inches asunder.

——— Sow a good crop of celery now (b. m.) for autumn and winter, watered in dry weather.

Endive—may be sowed a small crop of the white and the green curled for early use, and plant out the earlier raised plants; but as what is raised before June will soon run to seed, should now sow or plant only a small supply.

Leeks—weed and thin, and may sow some (b.) for late transplanting.

Broccoli—plant out early raised plants for heading in autumn and winter.

——— Sow a full crop of purple and white broccoli (b. m.) for winter, and following spring.

——— Prick out small seeding broccoli from seed beds, three inches distance.

Borecole—plant out some of the strongest spring raised plants, to obtain a large growth for autumn and winter.

——— Sow the last crop (b. m.)

——— Prick out small seedling plants of borecole from seed beds, three or four inches asunder.

Coleworts—plant and sow seed of the sugar loaf, or Yorkshire cabbage kind, &c. for summer and autumn.

Capsicum, love-apples, basil and gourds, &c.—plant out from hot-beds (b. m. or l.) when settled warm weather.

Finochio—sow a succession crop, and hoe and clean the former sowed. (See April.)

Spinach—sow some once a fortnight for succession crops, as the plants now soon run.

——— Hoe and thin spinach, when an inch or two in growth, especially that from broad-cast sowing, leaving the plants three or four inches asunder.

——— Leave some strong spinach plants, for seed.

Sage—plant slips of the young shoots in a shady border, and watered.

Mint—may still be planted, either by rooted young plants, or cuttings of the stalks, well watered.

Tarragon—plant cuttings of the young shoots, and watered.

Strawberries—shooting in numerous runners, should have some of the grossest cleared away, that they may not crowd the main plants; and when in blossom, give water abundantly in dry weather.

Savoys—plant out some early-raised plants, to produce large heads in autumn.

——— Sow the last crop (b.)

——— Prick out small savoy plants from seed beds.

Small sallading—sow once a week of cresses, mustard, rape and radish; watered in dry weather.

Pricking out—and thinning seed beds of young plants will now be proper in several sorts of transplanting articles, as cabbage, cauliflowers, broccoli, borecole, celery, savoys, &c. thinning them out where thickest, and prick them in other beds, three or four inches asunder, to acquire strength for final transplanting next month, &c. giving water.

Planting out finally—perform in succession crops of cabbages, lettuces, cauliflowers, coleworts, also early celery and endive, capsicum, love-apples, gourds, pompions, cucumbers, &c.

Thinning—will now be required in various close crops, as carrots, onions, leeks, lettuce, turneps, parsneps, spinach, salsafy, sconzonera, Hamburgh parsley, beets, &c. also seed-beds as cabbages, cauliflowers, broccoli, borecole, savoys, celery, &c. for pricking out.

Coriander and purslane—sow successional crops, small portions, in a bed or border.

Parsley—if omitted sowing, may still be sowed.

———— Hamburgh, or large-rooted parsley, hoe and thin six inches distance.

Pot and aromatic herbs—may be sowed (b. m.) if before omitted; as thyme, savory, marjoram, hyssop, sorrel, burnet, chervil, fennel, dill, coriander, parsley, marigolds, borage, purslane, and angelica.

— ——— Planting aromatics and sweet herbs may also be performed, if required, both in full plants, and by slips, off-sets, cuttings, &c. as thyme, sage, savory, marjoram, hyssop, mint, penny-royal, balm, tarragon, tansey, fennel roots, chamomile, sorrel, burnet, and cives.

—— Likewise may plant rue, rosemary, lavender, in plants, cuttings, and slips (b. m.)

Nasturtiums—may be sowed (b. m.) if omitted last month.

Seeds to produce—leave some parsley, spinach, lettuce, leeks, celery, endive, small sallading, chervil, coriander, purslane, broccoli, borecole, Welch onions, turneps, radishes, &c.

Seed-plants support—particularly onions and leeks, by stakes and lines along the rows, &c.

Seed-beds thin—of cabbages, cauliflowers, broccoli, borecole, savoys, celery, lettuce: and prick those thinned out of the first six sorts into other beds, three or four inches asunder, to obtain strength for final transplanting; but prick the lettuce finally at once six or eight to twelve inches distance.

Hoeing—perform in dry weather, to cut down weeds between all plants in rows, as cabbages, cauliflowers, peas, beans, &c. loosening the surface, and draw some earth to the stems; also to small-hoe, thin, and cleer from weeds, several close crops, as onions, carrots, turneps, parsneps, beets, spinach, leeks, lettuce, salsafy, &c.

Showery weather—take opportunity to prick and plant out various transplanting articles; also for sowing many sorts of small seeds.

Watering—in dry weather, is necessary to all new planted crops, and seed-beds of small plants.

Hand-weeding—perform in proper time, as now required in many seedling plants, before the weeds encrease much.

In this month may sow turnep-cabbage, Anjou cabbage, Milan cabbage, Brussels sprouts, and large Scotch cabbage, all for autumn and winter.

FRUIT-GARDEN, &c.

The pruning—principally required at this season, and all summer, is chiefly in wall trees and espaliers, not so generally necessary in standards.

Summer pruning—begin in early shooting wall-trees, by disbudding the improper and superabundant young shoots of the year.

——— *In apricots, peaches, and nectarines*—particularly, the shoots will be advancing numerously; go over them, and rub off all the foreright and other ill-placed shoots, and thin the superfluous, or over-abundant productions.

——— Likewise in other wall trees, advancing considerably in young shoots, as plums, pears, cherries, &c. may commence the disbudding the improper shoots as above.

Vines—will likewise now be advancing considerably in their young shoots, and is adviseable to regulate them now as soon as possible in their early growth, displacing all the ill-placed and improper; but carefully retaining the strong well-placed shoots, and all those furnished with young fruit, now appearing, which always is produced only in the shoots of the year, emitted from those of the year before; and when the retained shoots in general are about a foot long, train them regularly to the wall.

Espalier trees—when advanced in the young shoots (m. l.) rub off the foreright and others ill placed, as advised in the wall trees.

Wall trees protected—when in blossom, and young fruit in the preceding spring months, should have now all covering discontinued and removed, as the fruit will now be of some advanced growth.

Thin wall fruit—in apricots, peaches, nectarines, plums, &c. where set too thick, or in clusters.

——— The thinned off young green fruit, of apricots, nectarines, plums, are proper for tarts.

Late planted fruit trees—give water to the roots in dry hot weather.

Mulch—continue to late planted fruit trees, on the ground over their roots, especially where exposed to the sun, to defend them from the drought, and preserve the earth moist.

Blights, or insects—sometimes attacking the leaves and shoots of wall trees, &c. at this season, should be prevented from spreading, by pulling off the distempered, or infested crumpled leaves, and pinch or prune off the bunched clammy ends, and other parts of the distempered young shoots, to prevent the malady from spreading destructively to the trees and fruit.

——— Or in case of small insects, strew also tobacco dust, or Scotch snuff, over the branches and leaves.

——— Also in blighted trees, and of weakly growth, dig and open the ground, and apply a compost of loamy, or other fresh earth, and rotten dung together, and work it in about the roots some considerable width, and watered.

——— Likewise in blighted wall and espalier trees, &c. or attacked with small insects, in dry hot weather, it is of advantage both to water the roots, and with a garden watering engine, play water in a strong stream against the branches, leaves, and fruit.

Caterpillars—where they appear in webs on fruit trees, destroy as much as possible, before they encrease much in growth to over-run and devour the leaves—also water the branches, as above.

Water—to late planted fruit trees, will be proper in dry hot weather, once a week.

Young wall and espalier trees—now advancing in the summer shoots, should have the foreright, and others ill-placed, pruned, or rubbed off close.

Pinch or top strong shoots of the present year—in vacant parts of wall and espalier trees (1.) to obtain laterals therefrom the same season to supply the void spaces.

Improper and useless shoots—advancing in wall and espalier trees, should be displaced in their early growth, consisting of foreright productions, others that are ill-placed, inapplicable for training with regularity: also the superfluous, or overabundant shoots.

But regular-placed—side shoots in wall trees, &c. and a terminal one to each branch, must be reserved in all parts at this time, for training to the wall and espaliers when of due length.

Foreright shoots—produced immediately from the fronts or back of the branches, in a foreright direction, are improper, and should be displaced.

Ill-placed shoots—being either foreright, or others, advancing in wall and espalier trees, where not well situated for training to the wall, &c. or rise in places where not wanted, should be pruned or rubbed off close.

Superfluous shoots—or such that are abundantly more than is wanted or necessary, or than there is room to lay in with proper regularity, should be reduced in a thinning order, pruning out close the most irregular, and of the most improper growth; retaining for the present, till winter-pruning, an abundant supply of the best well-placed side shoots, and a leading one to each mother branch.

Side shoots—in wall trees and espaliers, produced from the upper and under sides of the branches, should be preserved now in due abundance, as the most proper regular growths for

training-in for requisite supplies of wood and bearers: and from which prune away the ill-placed and superabundant.

Terminal shoots---or leaders at the end of the branches, in wall and espalier trees, should in the summer pruning be preserved, one generally of principal growth to each branch, for the present, and continued entire, and displace the others in that part.

All the retained proper shoots—now preserved for training to the wall and espalier, should mostly continue entire, not shortened now nor any time in their summer's growth, especially where there is room to run them; and when of proper length this or next month, should be trained in regularly.

Budded and grafted young trees—should have all shoots from the stem, and suckers advancing from the roots, displaced.

In grafted trees—of this year, the clay may be now removed (m. l.)

Snails—where any attack the young wall fruit, should be searched for early in a morning, and after rain.

In fruit forcing houses, &c.—where early fruit is advancing, continue fires of cold nights; or where bark-beds, &c. support them in proper heat. Admit air in warm days; shut close towards evening, and all night; and water the borders occasionally. Also prune and train-in the young shoots, to admit the sun to fruit; which, in some sorts, will now be ripe; as grapes and cherries (b. m.) sometimes apricots, peaches (m. l.) plenty of strawberries, some early currants, &c.

FLOWER GARDEN, PLEASURE GROUND, &c.

Sowing—may be performed in most sorts of annuals, biennials, and perennials the former to flower the same summer, but the two latter the year following.

The work of planting—is necessary in many flowering plants, particularly tender annuals, from hot-beds into borders, beds, pots, &c. and occasionally in some biennials and perennials, where omitted before, in full plants, to flower the same summer, transplanting them with balls of earth, and watered: also may be performed in some moderate shrub kinds, especially of evergreens (b. m.) and in lilacs and privet, removed with balls of earth about the roots.

Annuals—will require thinning, some pricking out and transplanting, and some sorts sowed.

—— *Hardy annuals*—raised in the borders, beds, pots, &c. in patches, where they are to remain for flowering, will require

thinning in some of the larger growing sorts, some to one in a patch, as sun-flower, persicaria, palma-christi, belvidere, love-lies-bleeding, &c. others of less growth, to three or four in a patch; and small kinds may remain several together.

—— May plant several sorts of the above young annuals, that are thinned out; and watered, they will grow.

——*Sowing hardy annuals*—may yet be performed in most sorts, either in default of sowing before, or to flower in succession.

—— Water the patches of hardy annuals in dry weather.

Tenderest annuals—in hot-beds, as cock's-combs, tricolor, balsams, double stramoniums, globe amaranthus, egg plant, and others of that class, plant in pots singly, if not done, or those in small pots remove into larger, or prick some smaller young plants in the earth of the hot-beds, all to remain in the hot-beds, till (m. l.) this month, or (b.) next, then removed into the open air, and some planted in the borders, &c.

——— Or any larger growing kinds required to run up in a tall growth, should now (b.) be plunged into a hot-bed, under a deep frame, or so as the frames can be raised occasionally as the plants draw up in height.

——— To all the above tender annuals, in hot-beds, admit air every day, and give water two or three times a week, or as required.

——— *Sow tenderest annuals*—of the above kind (b.) if before omitted, in a hot-bed, or warm border.

Less-tender annuals—as the African and French marigolds, china-asters, ten-weeks stocks, chrysanthemums, marvel of Peru, India pink, and all the others of that tribe, raised in hot-beds, or under glasses, &c. should have plenty of air, and give proper waterings; and those in hot-beds or frames, &c. have the glasses now taken off daily, and in warm nights, to harden the plants by degrees for planting out (b. m.)

——— Prick and plant out the above class of less tender annuals (b. m.) some pricked in beds, others planted in the borders, pots, &c. to remain, giving water.

——— Sowing less-tender annuals may be performed now on a warm border, (b. m.)

Bulbous-rooted flowers—in beds, in full-bloom, of the curious tulips, and hyacinths, if defended from rain, and the mid-day sun, will continue longer in beauty.

——— *Bulbous roots*—of early flowering, out of bloom, and the leaves decayed, (m. l.) may be taken up where intended, and separate the off-sets, which may be done either annually, or once in two or three years; dried and housed for planting again in autumn.

——— *Bulbs in water-glasses*—past flowering, cut down the leaves, and plant in the ground.

Auriculas in pots—water often; and those out of bloom move to a shady border.

———*Off-sets* of auriculas may be planted.

Carnations—advancing in flower-stalks, place sticks, and tie the stems thereto neatly; and those in pots give water frequently.

Autumnal flowering bulbs—if their leaves are decayed, may be taken up to separate the off-sets, and to plant again in July and August, for autumn flowering, as colchicum, autumnal crocus, &c.

Anemones and ranunculuses—done flowering, and the leaves decayed, should be taken up; off-sets separated.

Balm of Gilead—may be sowed, and cuttings of the stalks planted for more immediate encrease.

Biennials and perennials—finish sowing (b. m.) if omitted before, for flowering next year, and old plants thereof, of moderate growth, may be transplanted with balls, to flower the same year, well watered.

Box edgings—may still be planted, and clip old edgings where in rough growth.

Candy tuft—sow in beds, borders, or pots, for successional flowering.

Cock's combs and tricolors, &c.—plant some in pots; and continued in the hot-beds till (m. l.) or next month.

Climbing plants—give support of sticks, poles, &c. as sweet peas, scarlet-runners, convolvulus, &c.

——— *Train shrubby climbers*—now advancing in young shoots, to walls, &c. as passion-flower, honey-suckles, jasmine, virgin's bower, Virginia creeper.

Clip hedgings and hedges—where required.

Clean and dress—the flower and pleasure garden, by hoeing and raking the borders, weeding, sweeping, rolling the gravel, and moving the grass.

Edgings of box and thrift, &c.—may be planted.

—— Clip old edgings where disorderly.

Edge grass walks—either by cutting in even, or trimming the projecting rough grass close.

Egg-plant—continue forwarding in a hot-bed till (m. l.) this, or (b.) next month.

Evergreens—if particularly required, may still be removed with balls, and planted (b. m.)

—— Prune or trim evergreens, or hedges thereof, where needful.

—— Finish laying evergreens, planting cuttings, and sowing seed thereof.

Flower beds and borders—hoe and rake in neat order, clearing away all littery and decayed parts of plants; trim and regulate any disorderly and straggling growths in the advancing flowers, and support and tie up such as require it, in a regular manner.

Flower stalks—advancing in tall growth, or long and feeble, give support of sticks, &c. in proper time.

Flowering shrubs—late planted, water in dry weather.

——— *Planting flowering shrubs*—may be performed in lilacs, privet, &c. removed with balls, and watered.

Gourds—plant out (m. l.) and may sow seeds in borders, &c.

Grass—mow once a week or fortnight, in dewy mornings, or after rain.

——— Turf or grass may be laid, or seed sowed.

——— Edge grass walks and lawns close and even.

Gravel walks—keep always clean from weeds; sweep and roll every week.

——— Turn and lay gravel walks, where required.

Hedges—in rude growth, may be clipped.

Hoe in dry weather—beds, borders, and shrubberies.

Honeysuckles (climbing)—train to walls or stakes, or to run over arbours.

Hyacinths done flowering—and their leaves decayed, take up, separate the off-sets, dry and house them to plant again in autumn, &c.

Ice-plant—continue in the hot-bed till next month.

Mignonette—sow more in a bed, border, or pots, to flower in succession.

Marvel of Peru—continue forwarding in the hot-bed (m. l.) this month, or (b.) June.

Perennials and biennials—may yet be sowed (b. m.)

Planting—perform in less tender annuals from hot-beds, or frames, borders, &c. into the full ground, and in pots; likewise thinned out plants of some sorts of hardy annuals, and plant tender annuals in pots; also occasionally old plants of small or moderate growing perennials and biennials may be transplanted with balls, for flowering the same year.

Plants in pots—water often in dry warm weather.

Peas, sweet and scarlet, &c.—sow in beds, borders, or pots, for successional flowering.

——— Stick sweet peas advancing in growth.

Prick out seedling plants—of annuals from and in hot-beds, and early sowed perennials and biennials from seed-beds.

Rake borders, beds, &c.—occasionally, to appear clean, fresh and neat.

Running plants—give support of sticks, as sweet peas, convolvulus, nasturtiums, &c.

Scarlet beans—may sow some, if not done, in the borders, &c. for climbers, or to ascend upon arbours or poles, or lines, against walls, &c.—and place sticks to any now advancing in the borders, to climb upon.

Seedling plants and seed beds—water in dry weather.

Sensitive plant—continue under glasses.

Showery weather—prick and plant out annuals.

Shrubberies—keep clean by hoeing and raking, in dry weather.

Shrubs of disorderly growth—may be pruned.

Stick or stake plants—such as run up with tall or long weak stalks, and all climbing kinds.

Ten-weeks stocks—plant out in beds in rows six to twelve inches asunder; or placed by threes together in the flower borders and in pots, and sow seed to flower late in summer and autumn.

Trim or cut—edgings, hedges, also flowering plants, shrubs, &c. from irregular productions.

Tree amaranthus—plant out from hot-beds (m. l.) in borders, pots, &c.

Tulips—early kinds out of bloom; break off the seed-pods to improve the roots and off-sets in growth, till the leaves decay, then may be taken up (l.) or next month, where intended. [See bulbous roots.]

Tuberoses—plant some roots in pots for successional flowering. [See April.]

Wallflowers—double bloody: plant slips or cuttings, of the young shoots, of three or four to five or six inches growth, in a shady border or in pots; watered at planting and in dry weather.

Water in dry weather—all lately planted young plants, seed-beds, and plants in pots; also late planted trees and shrubs.

Weeds—keep under in all parts by timely hoeing, and hand-weeding.

Virgin stock—may be sowed in patches, edges, and in pots, to flower in succession.

WORK IN THE NURSERY.

New planted trees and seed-beds—should now be carefully observed, to keep them clear from weeds now advancing numerously; and to give occasional watering in dry weather, as also

to shade some particular sorts of small tender plants, in beds and pots, from the mid-day sun.

Hoe between the roots of young trees, &c.—where weeds are advancing considerably, performing it in dry days, cutting them clean within the surface, and they will soon die.

Attend to seed-beds—to weed them properly in due time before the weeds spread considerably; and in dry weather to give moderate waterings lightly; as also in some principal or more tender or curious sorts of trees and shrubs now coming up in slender growth, give occasional shade from the sun in the middle of the day till they encrease in strength.

In young seedling evergreens now advancing—be particularly careful as above; such as cedars, cypress, pines, firs, bays, hollies, arbutus, &c. giving frequent waterings in dry weather; and sometimes moderate shading in the middle of hot sunny days, in their young slender growth.

To new planted trees and shrubs—both in many of the evergreen, and some other principal sorts, give moderate watering occasionally in very dry weather.

—— *Likewise to mulch the ground*—over the roots of some principal sorts of new planted trees, would be very beneficial in keeping out the drying winds and sun, and preserving the moisture about the roots more effectually.

To young plants and seedlings in pots—give proper waterings in dry weather; and to some small seedling evergreens and tenderer exotics, just coming up in slender growth, give occasional shade from the meridian sun.

Watering in dry weather—should be attended to in most seed-beds, and in many principal sorts of new planted trees, till they have taken good root in a growing state.

—— Also water layers and new-plant cuttings.

Mulching the ground—between or about new-planted young trees, &c. of the more tender or curious kinds, is of great service in preserving the earth moist about the roots.

Shading in hot sunny days—is advisable in several sorts of slender seeding exotics, both of evergreens, and others now coming up in beds or pots.

—— Or pots containing seeds or seedling plants of the above, or of others lately transplanted, may be removed to a shady situation.

——— *Any young tender plants in hot-beds*—either seedlings, or young plants transplanted therein, should in their advancing growth have the free air admitted, frequently watered, and occasionally shaded, in hot sunshine days.

Examine young wall trees—in training against walls, palings or reed-hedges, &c. to displace foreright and other ill-placed young shoots of the year.

In new grafted trees—examine if the claying round the grafts is defective in any, or fallen off, and let it be immediately renewed with fresh.

Pruning—may still be performed where necessary, in any sorts of evergreens particularly.

—— Complete all sowing (b.) for this season, both of trees, shrubs, and herbaceous perennials and biennials.

Propagating evergreens by layer—may still be performed in the young shoots of the last year (b. m.)

—— Also by layers of the present year's shoots (m. l.) which will strike root more expeditiously the same season.

GREEN-HOUSE.

Give air—freely now to the green-house plants, by opening the glasses almost fully every warm day, shut in cold nights; but when warm (m. l.) continue them open all night, to inure the plants now by degrees to the full air.

Shifting—into larger pots, &c. and some fresh earth may still be performed to any green-house plants, that are in pots or tubs too small; generally removing them with the ball of earth entire, and give water.

Fresh earthing—the tops of pots to plants not lately earthed or shifted, will now be necessary and beneficial.

Watering—will now be frequently required to the green-house plants in general.

Pruning or heading down—the branches, or shoots, of ill-formed or decayed heads may be performed (b. m.) in myrtles, geraniums, oranges, lemons, or other woody kinds.

—— *Or plants dropped their leaves*—may have the naked branches pruned, and the plants shifted with balls into other or same pots, with some fresh earth added; and watered.

Oranges, lemons, myrtles, &c.—if any require larger pots or tubs, may be shifted therein (b. m.)

Finish planting—any kind of green-house plants (b. m.) in smaller or larger pots, &c.

—— Or any oranges, lemons, jasmines, &c. imported from abroad in naked roots, and are obtained for planting, should be planted in pots or tubs (b. m.) and plunged into a bark-bed in a glass-case, to forward their taking root, and shooting at top; giving water; and shaded occasionally in hot sunny days.

Plant cuttings—of geraniums, myrtles, double nasturtiums, balm of Gilead, foreign heaths, and various other shrubby green-house plants, all principally of the young wood,

and planted in pots of light mellow earth; giving occasional gentle watering, and shade from the full sun. [See June.]

Young seedling oranges, &c.—for stocks advanced three or four inches, prick separately in small pots.

——— Sow kernels of oranges and lemons for stocks.

Seedling green-house plants—give light waterings; and very small ones shade from the sun in the middle of hot days.

Suckers, cuttings, and layers—may be planted and layed.

Succulent plants—as aloes, &c. water moderately; and any sorts may be shifted, or fresh earthed; and suckers, off-sets, and cuttings, may be planted.

Removing into the open air—may be commenced in the hardiest green-house plants (m. l.) if settled weather, as myrtles, oleanders, geraniums, &c.

Myrtles or geraniums, &c. with decayed heads—or drooped their leaves, may be pruned, or cut down, and shifted or fresh-earthed, or some (l.) may be turned out of the pots, and plunged in the ground to recover.

——— *Or young myrtles*—of small growth, one or two years old from cuttings, growing several or many together in pots, may either be potted off separately, or, if thought expedient, be turned out of the pots, and planted (m. l.) in beds in the full ground, in which they will increase considerably in growth; and in autumn (Sep.) transplanted with balls separately into small pots.

Propagate—or raise green-house plants, by seeds, cuttings, suckers, off-sets, layers, all in pots, and the seeds and cuttings, &c. may assist by placing the pots in a hot-bed, or bark-bed, or a hot-house.

HOT-HOUSE AND STOVE.

Bark-beds—support still of a good heat, that if not renewed in April, by adding some fresh tan, and forking up the old and new together, perform it now (b.) [See April.]

Young pines—if not shifted into larger pots in April, it should now be done (b.) as soon as possible.

Pines fruiting—should have the bark-bed continued in a lively bottom heat, and give proper waterings.

Fresh air—admit into the hot-house every warm day, but shut close if cold, and always in proper time towards the evening.

Watering—will now be necessary in warm weather, two or three times a week.

Shifting—into large pots, and some fresh earth, may be performed (b.) to any plants required, removed with the ball of earth to the roots; but not shift any of the pines that are now advancing in fruit.

Propagate hot-house plants—by seeds, suckers, cuttings, layers, off-sets, &c. and pines by crowns of the ripe fruit, and suckers from the roots; all in pots plunged in the bark-bed.

JUNE.

KITCHEN GARDEN.

As early crops—in several plants will now be in perfection, and mostly gathered off for use this month, the ground should be prepared in proper time, and sowed or planted with others in succession.

Advanced forward crops—in rows that will soon come off, as cauliflowers, cabbages, beans, &c. may be inter-cropped with other articles, to gain ground and time, in the advancing growth of the intermediate crops, which may be cabbage plants, coleworts, borecole, celery, lettuces, leeks, &c. also occasionally, beans, peas, kidney-beans, cucumbers, &c.

Sowing and planting—is still necessary in many succession and several principal crops.

For sowing—the principal sorts are turneps, kidney-beans, lettuce, endive, cucumbers, celery, cabbages, savoys, spinach, radishes, peas, beans, borecole, broccoli, carrots, finochio, turnep-radish, small sallading, coleworts, turnep-cabbage, and a few onions to draw young.

——— *To sow in hot-beds*—nothing is now required, except if cold wet weather, may sow cucumbers to plant out for picklers, &c. [See cucumbers.]

To plant—several principal and succession crops is necessary, as cabbages, coleworts, savoys, borecole, broccoli, leeks, lettuce, beans, celery, endive, cardoons; also many aromatic and pot-herbs in young seedling plants of the year, slips, cuttings, off-sets, &c.

——— Pricking out from seed-beds, is necessary in celery, cauliflowers, cabbages, savoys, broccoli, borecole, and the different aromatic and sweet herb seedling plants.

——— *To plant in hot-beds*—is principally to finish planting the last crop of cucumbers and melons, (b.) under hand-glasses, and oiled paper frames.

For sowing and planting—in this warm season, showery weather, or in prospect of rain, or immediately after, is most eligible, and in which lose no opportunity in performing these works in such crops as are necessary.

But for hoeing and weeding—dry weather is the most proper; particularly for all sorts of hoeing work.

Asparagus beds—in all stages of growth, should now be well cleared from weeds, by hand-weeding or small-hoeing, which is the only care they require now.

Gather asparagus—in old beds, now in full production, according as the shoots advance, two or three to four or five inches high. [See May.]

Artichokes—will now require occasional hoeing, to keep down weeds.

Aromatic and sweet herb seedlings—prick or plant out for seed beds.

—— *Also plant aromatics*—by cuttings and slips; as sage, savory, hyssop, mint, tarragon, rue, rosemary, lavender, pennyroyal, chamomile, &c.

Beans—plant further successional crops once a fortnight or three weeks, of larger or smaller kinds, or any sorts required; only moderate crops at this season.

—— But plant also some white blossom beans, sword long pods, and a few mazagans.

—— In planting these late crops of beans at this season, if very hot weather, it would be of advantage first to soak the beans a few hours in water; but where the ground is tolerably moist, this will not be needful.

—— Advancing crops of beans, hoe and draw earth to the plants; and top those in blossom.

Red beets—now require hoeing and thinning a foot distance, that the roots may have good room to swell to their proper large size.

—— Also thin green and white beets six or eight inches, that the leaves may grow large and thick.

Broccoli and borecole—plant out moderate crops two feet and a half asunder; and sow seed (b. m.) to plant out for late crops.

—— Prick out young seedlings of the above.

Cabbages—hoe the advancing crops, draw earth to the stems, and plant out plenty of the spring-raised plants for autumn and winter.

——— Sow cabbage-seed of the York or sugar-loaf kind, or the Battersea or other quick-hearting sorts, for late young cabbaging and autumn coleworts.

——— Prick out young seedling cabbage plants from seed-beds, four inches asunder.

Cucumbers in hot-beds—under frames, must still have the glasses continued over till (m. l. this, or b. next month); but give plenty of air daily, and frequently watering; shaded in the middle of hot sunny days, and still cover the glasses of nights (b. m. &c.) if cold.

——— But towards (m. l.) if settled, dry, warm weather, and the plants of strong advanced growth, the frame may be raised at bottom for the runners to come out; otherwise may be occasionally pruned, and wholly retained within the frame.

——— Ridging out cucumbers under hand-glasses, should be wholly finished (b.) [See May]; and those of advanced growth, in extended runners; should have the hand-glasses raised upon props (b. m. or l.) for the runners to come out, trained along in regular order; give necessary waterings, and after (m.) if settled warm weather, the night covering with mats will not be needful.

——— In this crop it would be of advantage to spread some clean dry straw, or reeds, &c. thinly and regular upon the surface of the beds for the runners to extend upon, and to preserve the moisture and the roots of the plants from being parched by the scorching heat of the sun.

——— Young cucumber plants may now be planted in the natural ground.

Sow natural ground cucumbers—for pickling and other occasions, they will now succeed in the open ground; but finish sowing the main crop (b.) in any compartments of rich earth, beds, borders, &c. to produce in August and September. [See May.]

——— Or for the above crop, if a cold or wet season, some may be sowed in clusters in a slender hot-bed, (b.) either defended with a frame or hand-glasses, or mats, &c. and when the plants are come up a few days, or a week or two at most, transplant them in small bunches with earth to the roots, into the natural ground, and watered.

——— Sow or plant some cucumbers close under a south wall, to have the runners trained thereto.

Cuttings plant—of sage, mint, tarragon, rue, lavender, &c.

Cauliflowers—planted out in the spring should now be hoed, and draw earth to the stems.

——— *Early cauliflowers*—give water in dry weather, to enlarge the flower heads; and according as the young heads appear, turn down some of the leaves to defend them from rain and the sun.

——— Mark some best early cauliflowers when in full flower-heads, to stand for seed, where intended to save any.

——— Prick out the young cauliflowers sowed last month, for the autumn and winter crop. [See July, &c.]

Celery—plant out a quantity of largest plants, in trenches for blanching; dig the trenches a yard asunder, nine or ten inches wide, six or eight inches deep; plant a row in each, and watered.

——— Begin to earth-up early planted celery.

——— Sow some celery seed (b.) to plant in autumn for spring crops.

Celeriac, or turnep-rooted celery—plant in drills, two feet asunder, and the plants five or six inches apart in each drill.

Colewarts—plant a foot asunder, to come in for use in open or small hearted greens in July and August.

——— Sow also colewort seed of the smaller quick-hearting cabbage kinds for autumn supply.

Carrots and parsneps—finish hoeing or weeding and thinning the main crops; the former thin about four, to five or six inches, the parsneps eight or ten. [See May.]

Capsicum, love-apple, and basil—finish planting out (b.) into the open ground.

Cardoons—plant out in rows five feet asunder, by four and a half in each row.

——— Or where any were sowed at once in the places where they are to remain, should now be thinned to one strongest plant in each patch. [See April.]

Coriander—sow a small portion for succession.

Endive—sow the first main crops (b. m.) as the plants of this sowing will not run; green curled for the principal supply; smaller portions of the white and Batavia sorts.

——— Plant out early endive a foot asunder.

Finochio—hoe and earth-up, and sow a succession crop. [See April and May.]

Fennel—should be thinned this year's seedlings, and plant some out a foot asunder; well watered.

Garlic and shallots—may take up some young for present use; but not wholly till next month or August.

Gourds and pompions—finish planting (b.); give plenty of water in dry weather.

Hot-bed ridges—finish making for hand-glass crops of cucumbers and melons; which complete wholly in the first week of the month.

Hoeing—will now be required in many kitchen crops, both to broad hoe between all plants in rows, as cabbage, cauliflowers, beans, peas, kidney-beans, &c. to kill weeds, as well as to loosen the soil, and to hoe earth to the stems of the plants; also to small-hoe, and thin various close crops, as onions, car-

rots, parsneps, turneps, lettuce, spinach, &c. all generally perform principally in dry weather.

Herbs (aromatic)—prick and plant out seedlings, and plant cuttings, and slips of older plants, such as mint, tarragon, sage, &c.

Hand-weed—in due time all small crops in seed-beds, and others growing close, where not room for hoeing.

Herbs for drying and distilling—gather of spear-mint, pepermint, pennyroyal, balm; and of chamomile, lavender, and marigold flowers.

Kidney-beans—sow full crops of the best dwarf kinds, for successional production; also a good crop of runners; if hot dry weather, either soak the beans in water, or water the drills previous to sowing, &c.

——— Pole or stick runner kidney-beans, or to those near walls, &c. suspend lines for them to climb upon.

Leeks—clear from weeds, and those to remain where sowed, thin six inches asunder.

——— Transplant now a full crop of leeks (m. l.) thinning out a quantity from the seed-beds, shorten the long weak tops and fibres of the roots, and plant them nine by six inches distance.

Lettuce—thin a foot asunder, and plant out a good crop of all sorts the same distance, well watered.

——— Sow lettuce-seed of different sorts for succession.

——— *Lettuce for seed*—leave or plant out some best sorts of different kinds. [See July.]

Love-apples—finish planting out (b.) in borders, under a south wall, &c. five to ten feet distance, or where any vacant spaces between the wall-trees, plant some close to the wall, the extending branches of the plants may be trained thereto, to have the fruit ripen sooner and more effectually.

Melons—in hot-beds under frames, must have the glasses constantly continued; admit air every day, and give moderate waterings, shaded thinly from the mid-day sun; and give night covering, if cold, but discontinued (m. l.) if warm settled weather.

Young melon fruit—according as they set, place a piece of clean tile under each.

——— Finish ridging out melon plants under hand glasses (b.)

——— Or may now ridge out melons under oiled paper frames, generally successful for good autumn crops.

——— *Likewise oiled paper frames*—may now be placed over melons that were ridged out under hand-glasses last month, &c. previously removing the hand-lights. [See May.]

——— *Hand-glass melons*—in which the runners are advanced to fill the glasses, should now be trained out, but cover with mats at nights till towards (m. or l.) if cold or very wet weather.

Mint—plant a full crop of cuttings of the stalks, as soon as rain falls, six inches asunder.

——— Gather full grown mint to dry.

Nasturtium major—give support of sticks, or trained to walls, hedges, &c.

Onions—give now a thorough clearing from weeds, and thin those intended for full bulbers, performing it either by hand or small hoeing, thinning them about three to four or five inches asunder..

——— Or may leave some for thinning out by degrees in young green onions and small bulbs, leaving a sufficiency at last for a full crop to bulb in large growth.

——— Transplanting of young onions, where crops have failed or are deficient, may be practised occasionally, (b. m.) if rain or showery moist weather; procuring a quantity of strongish plants of young onions, and preparing beds of rich, well dunged ground, plant them in rows five or six by three or four inches asunder, inserting the root-part only a moderate depth; and well watered.

Parsley, large-rooted—thin six inches distance.

——— Sow common parsley, if before omitted.

Peas—sow succession crops of marrowfats, hot-spurs, &c. and a crop of Leadman's dwarf. If dry hot weather, first soak the seed or water the drills.

——— Hoe and stick advancing crops of young peas.

Potatoes—hoe, cut down weeds, and draw earth to the bottom part of the advanced stalks.

——— Early potatoes begin to dig up for use (m. l.)

Parsneps—hoe and thin six or eight inches distance.

Pot-herbs—plant out seedling six inches distance, and watered; as thyme, savory, marjoram, hyssop, sorrel, &c.

Planting—be careful to perform now in proper season, in all necessary crops mentioned at the beginning, &c.

Prick out various seedlings—from seed beds; in cabbages, broccoli, cauliflowers, celery, and aromatic and sweet herbs.

Radishes—may be sowed once a fortnight, for late succession crops, both of the common and turnep-rooted kind.

Rampion—hoe and thin to six inches.

Savoys—plant out main crops in open situations, for autumn and winter, two feet asunder, and watered.

Sage—plant slips or cuttings of the young shoots in a shady border; take off the under leaves, and plant them down within an inch or two of the top; and well watered in dry weather.

Showery weather—take opportunity of, for performing all requisite sowing, pricking out, and planting.

Small sallading—sow every week; shaded and watered in dry hot weather.

Spinach—sow and hoe, and thin advanced young crops, especially those of the broad-cast sowing.

Strawberries—in blossom and setting the fruit, water in dry weather.

——— Plant strawberries by young runner plants of the year, either in beds, &c. to remain, or pricked in a shady border six inches asunder, till September, when they will be advanced to a fine stocky growth for final transplanting.

Scorzonera and salsafy—hoe and thin six inches apart.

Stake seed-plants—of onions, leeks, &c.

Sowing—give good attention to perform in proper time, in the different crops necessary, as hinted in the beginning part, and under the respective articles, and if rain happens, it will be an advantageous opportunity for that occasion at this season.

Tarragon plant—by cuttting off the young stalks.

Thin close crops—remaining where sowed; as carrots, parsneps, onions, leeks, lettuce, turneps, spinach, beets, turnep-radish, Hamburgh parsley, salsafy, rampion, scorzonera, fennel, borage, marigolds, &c.

Thin seed-beds—of transplanting crops; as cabbages, cauliflowers, celery, broccoli, endive, borecole, colewarts, lettuce, cardoons, savoys; and those thinned out, prick and plant in other compartments.

Turneps—sow now a plentiful crop, twice this month, for autumn and winter service; rain for this will be of great advantage.

——— Hoe the last sowed turneps to six or eight inches.

Turnep-radishes—may be sowed, both of the white and red, and thin the last sowed, two inches asunder.

——— Sow also black Spanish turnep-radish, first crop.

Turnep-cabbage—may now be sowed, to plant for autumn and winter; and plant out the former sward two feet and a half asunder.

Watering—is necessary now to all new planted crops and seed-beds, in dry weather, principally in a morning or evening.

FRUIT-GARDEN.

Pruning—at this season is required only principally in wall and espalier fruit: seldom in standards.

Summer pruning—of all wall and espalier trees, if not forwarded a little last month, now demands our most early attention to proceed in it timorously, before the trees run into a confused disorder in the numerous shoots of the year, which is of particular importance, both for the advantage of the trees and fruit, as well as to give the trees an agreeable appearance to the sight, when timely trained in regular order.

Wall-trees—should have the summer pruning and regulation commenced as soon as convenient, particularly in apricots, peaches, nectarines, and vines; afterwards to cherries, plums, pears, apples, &c. to displace the foreright productions, with other ill-placed, and all very luxuriant and other improper shoots; as also the superfluous or overabundant.

The summer pruning of peaches, nectarines, and apricots—keep in mind, that as these trees bear mostly on the young wood of a year old, a full supply of the well-placed present side and leading shoots must be retained in all parts for next year's bearers; and from which prune away the improper, unnecessary, and superabundant productions.

———— All the retained shoots continue at their full length as far as the limited bounds of each tree admits, and trained in regularly to the wall. [See May.]

Vines—also now require a thorough regulation, they bearing on the young wood only, a general supply of the present shoots must be every where retained, especially all those now in fruit, and others that are strong and well-placed, and from which take out all the very weak and other evidently improper and useless shoots; and train the others in close and regular to the wall, mostly at full length for the present, where room to extend them in a regular manner, otherwise shorten them accordingly.

Cherries, plums, pears, and apples—in wall-trees and espaliers, will now require a regulation of pruning and training in the shoots of the year; but as these bear several years on the same branches, no general supply of young wood is wanted in the full trained trees, as in apricots and peaches, &c. only retaining some well-placed lateral shoots in the most vacant parts, and the leading terminal shoots to the general branches, where room to extend them within their proper limits; all mostly at their full length, and trained in between the main branches to choose from in winter pruning, in case they should then be wanted; and be careful to retain a proper supply in all young trees under training, cutting out the foreright and other ill-placed and unnecessary shoots; and train the others to the wall, &c. in a regular manner, not shortened.

Fig-trees—advanced in strong shoots, prune out principally the foreright, and train in the side and terminal shoots, all at their full length.

Thin young wall-fruit—if any remain too thick, or in clusters, of apricots, peaches, nectarines, &c.

Vacancies in wall-trees, &c.—furnish by leaving proper shoots, or those deficient, pinch down adjacent young shoots to a few eyes (b. m.) to produce laterals the same season, to supply the vacant spaces.

Young wall and espalier trees—under training, displace the foreright shoots, and any very rank luxuriants: and train the well-placed side and terminal shoots in regular order.

Headed down young wall-trees, &c.—of this year, cut away the foreright shoots, and train in the others regularly.

Currants and gooseberries—against walls and in espaliers, divest of the foreright and superabundant shoots, and lay in the others close; also those in standard bushes may have the crowded lateral shoots thinned, to admit the sun and air to the fruit.

Luxuriant shoots—in wall and espaliers, should be taken out close, where they are of a singularly rank growth, drawing the nourishment from the others; or where strong shoots or middling luxuriants, rise in vacant parts, they may be cut down now to a few lower eyes or buds, from which to produce several moderate shoots the same summer to furnish the vacancies.

———— Also in young standard fruit-trees, vigorous luxuriants should be displaced.

Foreright shoots—generally displace in all wall and espalier trees, cutting them off close.

Superfluous or over-abundant shoots—prune out in a thinning order, the most unnecessary.

Regular placed proper shoots—in wall and espalier trees, should in this pruning be retained in due abundance; such as the best placed lateral side shoots, and a principal leader to each branch, where room to run them; preserving the whole at their full length now and all summer.

Nail and train in the regular shoots—in wall and espalier trees, according as you advance in the pruning, and continue it afterwards occasionally, according as the shoots of the year advance in length.

Water late planted—fruit trees in dry hot weather.

Blighted wall trees, &c.—the leaves crumpling, and the shoots bunched at top, attend to as advised in May.

Cherries now ripe—defend best sorts from birds with large nets.

Budding—may be performed (l.) in apricots, peaches, nectarines, cherries, plums, pears, &c.

Forced fruit trees—against hot walls, &c. will now furnish ripe grapes, apricots, peaches, nectarines, &c. Still continue the glasses, and admit air; or any forcing houses, in which the

fruit is all gathered, expose the trees to the full air, by removing all or most of the glasses fully open.

FLOWER GARDEN, PLEASURE GROUND, AND SHRUBBERY.

Annual flower plants—of many sorts will now require final removal or transplanting, where they are to flower; some in pots, others into borders, beds, &c. and some to be sowed, observing generally in transplanting these sorts into the borders, &c. it would be of great advantage to take the opportunity of showery weather; if it happens otherwise, must be constantly watered every day till they strike root.

——— *Tender annuals*—raised in hot beds, as cocks-combs, tricolors, balsamines, globe amaranthus, egg plant, &c. remove into the open air, some in pots, the others planted into the borders, &c. all to remain for flowering the same summer.

——— *Less tender annuals*—raised also either in moderate hot beds, or warm borders, pots, &c. should now be finally transplanted where they are to remain; such as the African and French marigolds, with all others of that tribe, planting a full supply in the beds, borders, and some in pots; and properly watered.

——— *Hardy annuals*—sowed in the open ground, in beds and borders, to remain, will, in all the large sorts, want thinning.

——— *Sowing annuals*—may still be performed, (b.) in many of the hardy kinds particularly, for successional and late flowering, such as candy tuft lupines, virgin stock, sweet peas, ten-weeks stocks, mignonette, convulvulus-minor, moldavian or queen's balm, and several others of the quick-flowering tribe.

——— *Water*—all new planted annuals in dry weather, also those lately sowed, or of small growth, and all sorts in pots.

Anemones and ranunculuses—done flowering, should be taken up when the leaves decay.

Auriculas—continue all those in pots in a shady border, [see May] and give proper waterings; plant off-sets, and prick out seedling plants.

Bulbous roots—done flowering, and the stalks and leaves decayed, should be taken up; at least all such as are intended for removal or lifting, and the off-sets separated, as tulips, hyacinths, jonquils, crocus, narcissus, &c.

—— *For in all bulbs*—the decay of the flower and leaves is the most proper period for removing those kinds, either annually, or once in two or three years.

—— The more curious sorts of tulips, hyacinths, or any other principal varieties of bulbs, and the tuberous roots of anemones, ranunculuses, &c. may be taken up annually, to separate the off-sets, and to new-prepare the beds, for planting again in autumn, &c. the bulbs dried and housed till that season, but the small off-sets planted sooner.

—— But the more common bulbs may either be taken up occasionally as above, or remain two or three years without removal.

Biennial seedling plants—of this year should now be pricked out; as Canterbury bells, sweet-williams, French honeysuckles, &c.

Borders—keep neat by weeding, hoeing, and raking.

Box-edgings—should now be clipped after rain.

—— Edgings of box may be planted.

Carnations—will now require the flower stems to be tied up to sticks; those in pots want frequent watering.

——— Prick out seedling carnations.

——— Begin to lay carnations (m. l.) and plant pipings. [See laying and piping, page 103.]

Clipping perform—in box edgings and hedges.

Climbing plants—give proper support of sticks, poles, and trained to walls, arbours, &c.

Cuttings plant—of young flower stalks, of some curious double flowers, (as below—see *Flower-stalks*) and of the young shoots of double wall-flowers, and several sorts of shrubby evergreens, &c.

Decayed flower stalks—cut down.

Edgings—keep always in neat order, clipping those of box; and edges of grass trim-in close and even.

Evergreens—may be pruned, to regulate disorderly growths, and may now lay and plant cuttings of the young shoots; likewise clip evergreen hedges.

Flower-stalks—plant cuttings of; such as double scarlet lychnis, lychnidea, double rocket, &c. in a shady border.

Flower plants for transplanting—to flower the same year, may be performed in many kinds of annuals; the larger kinds removed with balls; and by the same means may occasionally transplant several sorts of moderate growing perennials and biennials, where required; all well watered.

Flower-stalks support—those of tall growth and climbers.

Grass—should now be often mowed, swept, and rolled, and keep the edges always trimmed close and even.

Gravel-walks—continue them always clean weeded, all litter swept off, and rolled once or twice a week, well rolled after rain.

Gourds—finish planting (b.) in borders, &c.

Hyacinths—done flowering and the leaves decaying, is the proper period for taking them up.

Hedges—of any sorts grown rough in the summer shoots, may be clipped, cutting them in close and even, and generally keep them gradually narrower upward regularly to the top.

——— By clipping hedges now it continues them in neat regular order, and makes them grow close and even: they however when cut at this season, will require a second and final clipping in August.

Hardy annuals—may be sowed, or any sorts transplanted, if rain, in beds, borders, and pots; but sow some also for successional flowering; as sweet peas, candy-tuft, lupines, convolvulus, mignonette, ten-weeks stocks, virgin-stocks, &c. or may also sow any other sorts before omitted.

Hoe and rake borders, &c.—occasionally, to have a clean, neat appearance.

Laying—may be performed (m. l.) in carnations, pinks, double sweet-williams, and young shoots of curious roses, and evergreens.

—— *To lay carnations and pinks, &c.*—the young lower shoots are the proper layers; pull away the under leaves; and then, with a knife, cut a small slit or gash upward at a middle joint on the under side; lay that part in the earth an inch or two deep, peg each down with a small hooked stick, keeping the top upright above ground, and the slit part open, and earth them in a proper depth, as above: thus proceed laying the whole, and give water.

Marvel of Peru—remove from hot-beds in pots, and plant some without pots into borders, &c.

Mignonette—plant out, and sow some seed in a bed, border, or pots, to remain.

Nasturtium (major) support with sticks.

Off-sets of bulbous roots—that are taken up after their flowering, separate from the main bulbs, and the small ones may be planted soon after in beds, for a year or two, till of a proper size for full flowering; and the larger off-sets may be housed with the parent bulbs to plant in autumn.

—— Also off-sets of fibrous-rooted perennials, of any particular desirable sorts that now occur, may be taken off and planted directly in a shady border.

Peas (sweet scented) sow more in patches, &c. for successional flowering.

Perennial and biennial flowers—of seedling plants raised this year, prick out from the seed beds into others, six inches to a foot asunder, to obtain a proper strength for flowering the year following; watered at planting, &c.

——— *Sowing perennials and biennials*—may still be performed (b. m.) if omitted before.

Piping—may now be performed to propagate pinks, carnations, and double sweet-williams, by cuttings, &c. of the young shoots; they will now root freely.

This propagation is effected by planting detached parts of the young shoots of the year, which either pull out of the pipe, or cut off below in proper lengths, pull away the under leaves, and cut each shoot clean to a firm lower joint; cutting that part even at the end, and shorten the top leaves even; then prick them into a bed, border, or pots of fine earth an inch or two asunder, inserted down to the leaves, well watered, and shaded from the sun; or, if covered down close with hand-glasses, they will root more effectively sooner; or may be greatly forwarded if also plunged in a hot-bed, or bark-bed.

Plant out seedling flowers—of this year in showery weather, such as all sorts of transplanting annuals from hot-beds, &c. into pots, borders, &c. for flowering this summer; also biennials and perennials prick in beds, to acquire a proper growth for flowering next year.

——— Likewise plant cuttings or slips of double wall-flowers, pipings of pinks and carnations, cuttings of flower-stalks of curious perennials, &c.

——— Also plant slips and cuttings of shrubby evergreens in a shady border.

Pruning—may be performed in any kinds of shrubs to reduce any disorderly growths of the same year.

Plants growing in pots—give frequent watering in dry weather; and in those done flowering, cut down the decayed stalks, and place them in a shady border.

Rake borders—to appear with a clean fresh surface.

Rolling—perform often now to gravel-walks, and occasionally to grass.

Running plants—give timely support of sticks, &c.

Seeds ripe—of flowers, gather in dry weather.

Seedling young plants—give necessary watering.

Sowing—may be performed in several sorts of quick flowering annuals (b. m.) as sweet peas, candy tuft, lupines, virgin stocks, ten-weeks stocks, mignonette, convolvulus, &c. to flower late; also perennials and biennials (b. m.) if not done before, to flower next year.

Shrubs prune—from any disorderly productions as they may require.

Strawberries keep in decent order—by pruning any very rambling, disorderly shoots, and hoeing down weeds, and raking the ground.

Stock gilliflowers—this year's seedlings, plant out some finally, while in young growth; and may still sow seed (b. m.)

Stake flower plants—many sorts will now require support, especially those of tall growth, and others with straggling stems, &c.

Sensitive plant—continue always under glasses.

Tuberous roots—done flowering, whose leaves decay, may be taken up or removed, where required.

Water, in dry weather—all plants in pots, and others lately planted.

Wall-flowers—double sorts, propagate by planting slips or cuttings of the young shoots of the year, three, four, or five inches long; and plant or prick out seedling plants of walls, raised this year; also may sow seed (b.)

WORK IN THE NURSERY.

Weeds rising numerously—at this season should be diligently destroyed, in all parts between rows of young trees, and shrubs, &c. and among all young plants in seed-beds.

Hoeing perform in dry weather—between the nursery rows of trees and shrubs, &c. cutting the weeds clean up by the roots, that they may be effectually killed.

Hand-weed seed-beds—carefully in good time before the weeds advance considerably.

Watering in dry hot weather—should be continued occasionally, in several sorts of small young seedling trees; shrubs and other plants in seed-beds, and pots, &c. also to some small plants in transplanted beds, and to all plants in pots.

Shading from the sun—in very hot weather in the middle of the day, is advisable in several sorts of small young seedling exotics of slender growth.

Propagation by layers and cuttings—of the young shoots of the same year, may now be performed (m. l.) upon any curious or particular sorts of trees and shrubs, or especially in such as discover a reluctancy of rooting in the older wood, as in some hard-wooded evergreens, they will emit roots more freely in the young tender shoots the same season, giving proper waterings.

——— *Likewise plant cuttings and slips*—of the young same year's shoots, in several sorts of shrubby evergreens principally, planted in a shady border and watered; also may plant

cuttings or slips of the young firm shoots of many sorts of herbaceous perennials, for encrease.

Prick out some young seedling evergreens (l.)—particularly of the pine and fir kinds, in cloudy, showery or moist weather, to thin the seed-beds; but as they must be well watered, and occasionally shaded till they take root, the pricking out may not be so conveniently practicable in large quantities at this season, as in the spring.

Plant or prick out seedling herbaceous plants—of perennials and biennials of this year's raising, into nursery beds in rows six or eight inches asunder, and watered.

Grafted young trees—of the last spring, may now have the balls of clay surrounding the grafted parts removed, and the bandages loosened; as the graft will now be generally well united with the stocks, and advancing in growth.

——— observe in grafted trees to cut away all shoots from the stem below the grafts, and eradicate all root suckers.

Budding or inoculating—may be commenced towards (l.) especially if a somewhat moist season, to propagate several sorts of fruit trees, beginning first with some of the earliest kinds of pears, apricots, peaches, and nectarines, plums and cherries, as also in some curious ornamental trees and shrubs; observing however, previously, whether the buds of the shoots, and bark of the stocks will readily separate from the wood; if not, must defer the business till next month.

—— *also by budding*—may propagate many sorts of curious trees and shrubs, such as the moss-rose, Italian jasmine, variegated lilies, and several curious evergreens, &c. that do not propagate freely by other methods.

Stocks designed for budding—should previously have the stems trimmed up from lateral shoots.

Examine grafted and budded trees—of last spring and summer, or before, and clear away all shoots on the stems below the graft and bud-shoots.

Attend to young training wall trees, &c.—to divest them of any ill-placed and bad shoots; and train the others in regular at their full lengths.

GREEN-HOUSE.

Remove into the full air—all the myrtles, geraniums, oleanders, &c. (b.) also, if warm weather, the oranges, lemons, and all the other exotics, except the more tender succulent plants; placing them at first in a sheltered situation for a week, then dis-

pose them where required, to ornament the flower-garden or pleasure-ground, four-courts, &c.

——— When in the open air, those not fresh earthed at the top of the pots within a month or two past, should now have it done, others wanting larger pots shifted, the plants cleared from decayed leaves and dead wood; and prune or cut down any irregular growths of the head.

——— Observe that where necessary to shift any at this season, they should generally be removed with the ball of earth about the roots, cutting off any very dry matted outward root-fibres; adding fresh earth in the new pots, filling more round and over the top of the ball, and then watered.

The succulent plants—hardier kinds may also now be placed abroad (b.) such as the American aloes, sedums, &c. but may retain the tenderer sorts of African aloes, cereuses, &c. till (m. l.)

Watering—will now be often required to the green-house plants in genesal.

Shifting into larger pots—and some fresh earth, may still be performed to any of the green-house plants, where needful, removed with balls, and watered.

Fresh earthing—the tops of pots, or stirring the top earth, will prove beneficial, and appear neat.

Pruning—may be performed to any shrubby or tree kinds, of green-house exotics, to regulate disorderly shoots and branches, or to shorten long, weak, or straggling shoots, and to cut out any decayed.

Head-down—or prune the branches of any decayed, sickly, or naked straggling heads, in myrtles, oranges, lemons, geraniums, &c. to renew them with young wood the same summer.

Oranges, lemons, &c.—should now have the heads and leaves well cleansed, watering also all over the leaves.

——— Young orange-stocks for budding, if any are now drawing in hot-beds, give air and water.

——— Small young orange stocks remaining thick in pots, prick in small pots singly; and may sow kernels (b.) to raise a supply of stocks where required.

Propagate green-house plants—by cuttings, suckers, slips, off-sets, and layers.

Plant cuttings—of geraniums, myrtles, &c. under a hand-glass, or geraniums will also strike without glasses, but not so effectively soon.

——— Sow geranium seed in pots.

Myrtles—plant slips of the young shoots three inches long, the under leaves taken off, plant the slips thick in large pots, or in a bed of rich earth, covered down close with hand-glasses,

and watered; or the pots plunged also in a hot-bed, they will strike much sooner, giving occasional shading from the mid-day sun.

Foreign heaths—of which there are a great variety of many curious sorts, may now plant slips or cuttings, taking previously the quite young wood of the year, about one to two or three inches long, cutting off the low leaves, and plant them in middle size pots of soft light fine earth, one or two inches apart, and the pots covered down with a small hand-glass: giving gentle watering and occasional shade from the full sun.

Succulent plants—wanting larger pots, may be shifted, plant suckers, off-sets, and cuttings thereof.

Layers—may be made in myrtles and some other shrubby plants.

Seedling young green-house plants—give water, and thin and prick out some in small pots, and seed may be sowed; give shade from the hot sun.

HOT-HOUSE AND STOVE.

The pine plants—will now need watering two or three times a week, continuing them constantly plunged in the bark-bed; and this should be continued in a moderate lively heat.

The bark-bed—renewed in April or last month, by adding some fresh tan, and forking-up will remain now in a proper heat; but if much declined, fork up the bark to the bottom, and replunge the pots of pines, &c.

The fruiting pines—now in full fruit require a lively bottom heat, supported in the bark-bed, to forward the fruit in a free growth.

—— Give those plants also moderate waterings twice a week, or oftener, if hot weather.

Ripening pine apples—will now be advancing in some earliest fruit, and some ripe, which, according as they ripen, gather while in perfection, discoverable by their high fragrance; and when served to table, reserve the crowns, &c. for planting, if wanted.

Fresh air—should now be admitted every warm day, in an increased degree; but shut close in proper time towards the evening.

Watering—is now necessary to the hot-house plants in general two or three times a week.

—— A morning or afternoon is the most proper time to water at this season.

Shifting—may be performed to any particular plants in want of larger pots, removed with balls, adding some fresh earth, and watered.

Propagate hot-house plants—by seed, suckers, cuttings, slips, off-sets, some by layers.

—— *The propagation of Pines*—being only by suckers from the bottom of the old plants, crowns at the top of the ripe fruit, and small suckers at the base; all which according as they occur, or are procured, should after lying a few days to dry the succulency at bottom a little, be planted each in a small pot, first pulling away some of the under leaves, and cut even any rugged part at bottom then planted, having the pots filled with rich, mellow earth, or of a somewhat light, loamy composition; plant one in each pot, and moderately watered, and then plunged in a bark-bed, for young succession plants: they will advance to a fruiting state in two years.

—— Thus the succession of pines must be continued annually, as the same individual plants never fruit but once.

JULY.

KITCHEN GARDEN.

To sow—several succession and principal crops are necessary; as turneps, coleworts, cabbages, endive, lettuces, kidney-beans, spinach, radishes, carrots, onions, turnep-radish, black Spanish radish, finochio, coriander, borage, beets, small sallading, &c. See each under its proper head.

—— No hot-bed sowing is required at this season.

Planting—is now requisite in many full crops for autumn and winter, &c. and some for autumnal succession, as savoys, broccoli, coleworts, borecole, cabbage, celery, endive, leeks, lettuce, some late beans for production in August and September, &c. cauliflowers for autumn and winter, and to prick out several seedling plants, in cabbages, coleworts, broccoli, celery, borecole, and various aromatic and other pot-herbs.

For sowing and planting—prepare ground as it becomes vacant, by dunging and digging; and now cropped while fresh turned up, especially in sowing.

—— Or the planting some particular articles may be performed between other crops in rows, to gain time and ground; as cabbages, coleworts, savoys, planted between wide rows of advanced beans, cauliflowers, kidney-beans, also endive and

lettuce, or coleworts, between celery trenches, and celery between rows of early cabbages, cauliflowers, &c. soon coming off the ground.

In the general sowing and planting at this season, it is of great advantage to take opportunity of rain.

Asparagus—old beds in production may still be gathered (b.) but soon after discontinued for the season; and the whole permitted to shoot up in stalks till October, then to be cut down and the beds have the winter dressing. [See October.]

——— All asparagus beds should now be well cleared from weeds.

Aromatic and sweet herbs—finish pricking out from seed beds.

——— Gather aromatics for drying and distilling, as mint, balm, pennyroyal, peppermint, tarragon, sweet marjoram, sage, savory, pot marjoram, hyssop, &c.

——— Also gather the flowers of marigolds, chamomile, and lavender to dry, &c.

Broccoli—plant out now full crops of the purple and cauliflower white, in rich ground, two feet and a half distance.

——— Prick out broccoli seedling plants sowed last month.

Borecole—finish planting the main winter crops (b. m. l.) a plentiful supply, in rows two feet asunder, and prick out the last raised seedling plants.

Borage—may be sowed (m. l.) to obtain a production of its young leaves in autumn, &c.

Beans—plant a moderate crop for late production in autumn, some mazagans, a larger portion of white blossoms, long pods, and a few Windsors, (b. m.) if dry weather, first soak the beans a few hours in water, then planted.

—— Leave some beans now in production, of different sorts for seed.

Beet (red)—finish thinning (b.) and clearing from weeds.

—— Green and white beet may be sowed (b.)

Artichokes—will now be advancing in heads for gathering, or may also gather some of the small side suckers for use, and the main heads will grow larger.

Alexanders—earth up to blanch.

Asparagus—should now terminate the general cutting or gathering for the season, if not done in June, that the roots may not be awakened, detrimentally to their future production; cleaning the beds now thoroughly from weeds, and the plants wholly permitted to run up in stalks till October, &c.

Cabbages in young plants—should now be planted out in good plenty, both for young, autumn and winter cabbaging, and for cabbage coleworts.

—— Hoe former planted advancing young cabbages, and draw earth to the plants.

—— Prick out the last sowed.

—— And sow cabbage seed of the smaller quick heading kinds, for autumn and winter coleworts, and young cabbages.

Cauliflowers sowed in May—plant out finally (m. &c.) for the Michaelmas crop in October, November, &c. and will sometimes continue in tolerable heads, till Christmas.

Carrots—finish thinning the main crop. [See June.]

—— Sow a small or moderate crop of carrots (b. m.) to draw young in autumn, &c.

Chamomile flowers—are now in perfection to gather.

Coleworts—plant out and sow full crops for autumn and winter, both to use in young open greens and small cabbaged hearts.

Coriander—sow a succession small crop.

Celery—Plant now full crops in trenches, for autumn and winter supply.

—— Earth-up early planted celery.

—— Prick out more from seed-beds.

—— Early planted celery blanched six or eight inches, may begin taking up for use.

Celeriac, or turnep rooted celery—plant in drills two feet asunder, by six inches in the row.

Distilling herbs gather—of peppermint, spear-mint, ranny-royal, lavender, &c. all which are in best perfection when advanced for flowering.

Dill—may be gathered for use in the leaves, and top seed-umbels, to use in pickling, &c.

Drying herbs likewise gather—such as mint, balm, sweet marjoram, penny-royal, lavender spikes, sage tops, hyssop, &c. dried in a shady place, then housed.

Dung ground—for some principal autumn and winter crops.

Earth-up plants to blanch—as celery, cardoons, Alexanders, finochio, celeriac, &c.

Endive plant—the first main crops for autumn and winter of the green curled, and smaller portions of the white and Batavia kinds, twelve to fifteen inches asunder; and watered.

—— Sow more endive (b.) and (m. l.) for principal and late winter crops.

Finochio—earth-up to blanch and sow the last crop, in drills two feet asunder; observing, that as this plant after attaining full growth, soon runs for seed, must be sowed every month from April to July for succession.

Garlick and shallots—may be taken up for present use; and when arrived to full growth, (m. l.) the leaves turning yellow, should be taken up wholly, then dryed and housed. (See August.)

Gourds and pompions—water plentifully in dry weather.

Horse radish—in old plantations, draw out the small suckers between the main stools.

Herbs for drawing and distilling—should now be gathered the principal supply.

Cucumbers—under frames give plenty of free air and supplies of water; and in some may have full scope to run, by raising the frame at bottom, and the glasses taken off; others may be confined still wholly within the frame, and continue defended with the glasses, in case of bad weather.

—— The hand-glass cucumbers have full liberty to extend, having the glasses raised upon props, and, as observed in June, it would be beneficial (b.) to spread some clean wheat straw, or dry reeds, thinly and regularly even on the surface of the bed to extend the runners thereon, and to preserve the moisture in the earth, and the roots of the plants more effectually from the scorching heat of the season, and the fruit also from spotting

—— Night covering is not now required.

—— Water cucumbers in general plentifully now in dry hot weather, every day or two, in a morning or afternoon.

—— *Natural ground cucumbers*—for picklers, and other purposes, should be thinned (b.) to four or five each hole; earth-up the stems, and press them gently asunder in different directions; give plenty of water in dry weather.

—— Stick some holes of cucumbers in the hand-glass or natural crop; to climb upon, to elevate the fruit from the ground, to preserve it clean from spotting, &c. by the moisture of the earth.

—— Or may also train the runners of some against walls, where sowed or planted near enough.

Chervil—may be sowed (m. l.) for autumn use, always to remain where sowed, and does not require thinning.

Dig vacant ground—cleared from summer crops, ready to sow and plant with others this month.

Kidney-beans—sow a principal late crop of the dwarf kinds (b.) and more (m. l.) and may also sow a small last crop of runners (b.) observing now, if dry hot weather, either water the drills, or soak the beans in soft water a few hours before sowing.

—— Hoe and draw earth to advancing young crops of kidney-beans, and place sticks to runners.

Hand-weeding—is required in many close crops, and seed-beds, and others where not room for hoeing.

Hoe in dry weather—between all plants in rows, or that stand distant, to kill weeds, and to loosen the ground about the plants; and also to hoe earth to the stems of several sorts, as young peas, beans, cabbages, cauliflowers, broccoli, borecole, savoys, celery, kidney-beans, &c.

Lavender—gather the flower spikes.

Leeks—clear from weeds, and thin those intended to remain where sowed.

—— Likewise plant out now a full crop of leeks, (b. m.) shorten the tops of the leaves, and the long root fibres, and then planted in rows, nine by six inches distance, inserting the neck or shank part several inches into the ground, and well watered.

Lettuce—plant out different sorts, twelve to fifteen inches asunder, and watered.

—— Thin lettuces remaining where sowed.

—— Sow lettuce seed, different sorts (b.) and (m. l.) for autumn.

—— *Lettuce to produce seed*—leave some best full plants of different sorts, such as acquire a full cabbaged growth before they run up to stalk; otherwise the seed is not to be depended on to produce good full plants in return. (Observe this.)

Love-apple plants—train to walls or stakes.

Marigold flowers—gather and dry for keeping.

Marjoram, sweet or knotted—gather some when advancing to flower, for drying.

Melons—in frames continue still defended with the glasses, especially when rain, and every night; admit plenty of free air every day, and give supplies of water moderately.

—— *Hand-glass melons*—should have the glasses raised three inches upon props (b.) if not done for the runners to extend from under, conducting them out in regular order, in different directions; continuing the glasses constantly over the heads or main stems of the plants; and when heavy rains, defend the whole with large thick mats, canvas, &c. or frames and glasses placed over—give water in dry weather.

—— The melons under oiled paper-frames, should have those shelters continued constantly day and night, giving proper air daily, and necessary waterings.

—— *Ripening melons*—cut or gather while in full perfection, the maturity being discoverable in some sorts by their changing yellowish and emitting a fragrant odour, and by the thick end of the foot-stalk at the place of its union, with the base of the fruit cracking and separating as it were, in that part: and that agreeable to these tokens, should be cut before it becomes too mellow or dead ripe.

Mint—may still be planted by cuttings of the stalks (b.) or also by rooted off-set plants: all well watered.

Mushroom beds—continue constantly covered with straw, or may admit a moderate warm shower.

——— Begin making mushroom beds (m. l.) for autumn production. [See September.]

——— *For spawning new mushroom beds*—collect proper supplies of spawn from old hot-beds, horse-stable dung-hills of several months lying, horse-rides, and horse-mill tracts under cover, dry-dungy composts, &c. in all of which the spawn casually occur, of a white fibrous-like nature, in cakes or lumps of the dry rotted dung, which gather in said lumps, and deposit under cover till wanted; covered close with straw or garden mats. [See September.]

Onions—keep clear from weeds, and if any remain too thick, thin them to proper distance. [See June.]

——— Sow onion seed (b. m.) to draw young in autumn.

Parsneps—where any still remain too close should now finish all necessary thinning thereof (b.)

Parsley—may be sowed, if before omitted, and thin the large rooted kind six inches asunder.

Peas—sow the last crops (b. and l.) of hotspurs, some Leadman's dwarf, or other dwarf kinds; and marrowfats; and may also sow rouncivals, and egg peas, &c. observing, if dry hot weather, first soak the peas in water a few hours, or water the drills.

—— Hoe advancing young crops of peas, and stick those intended.

—— Leave some peas now in full production for seed.

Peppermint—for distilling, gather when in flower.

Pot-herbs—prick or plant out from seed-beds, as thyme, marjoram, savory, hyssop, sorrel, &c. in showery weather.

Potatoes—may be digged up for use in small portions, as wanted.

Pompions and gourds—now in small young green fruit, may be gathered to boil or stew, and pickle, &c.

Prick out—young broccoli, cabbage, savoys, coleworts, celery, three or four inches asunder, to obtain strength for final transplanting next month.

Plant all necessary crops—in proper time, and if rain falls, do not omit that opportunity in planting cabbage, savoys, broccoli, borecole, coleworts, celery, endive, lettuce, cardoons, winter cauliflowers, late beans, &c.

Radishes—sow (b.) and (m. l.) both of the short top, salmon, and turnep-radish, for an autumn crop next month, &c.

Rampions—the roots will now be proper for use, (m. l.)

Savoys—plant out full crops in the most open situations (b. m. l.) in rows, two feet to two and a half asunder, that they may have proper time and good scope of room to form full cabbaged heads of a large growth for winter, being the most useful table cabbage in that season.

Salsafy, scorzonera, and Hamburgh parsley—thin if too close, and clear from weeds.

Small sallading—sow every week in a shady border, otherwise shaded and watered in dry weather.

Seeds ripening—guard from birds, particularly of cabbage, broccoli, savoy, borecole, turnep; and gather all sorts according as they ripen, when beginning to harden.

Shading—will prove beneficial in dry hot weather to seed-beds, of small seeds not come up, with mats, or straw litter.

Spinach—may be sowed, of the round-leaved for succession next month, &c. hoe and thin the last sowed.

——— Towards (l.) may sow some prickly seeded spinach for autumn and winter. [See August.]

Sowing—be careful to perform in the proper crops necessary to sow at this season, as turneps, coleworts, lettuce, endive, kidney-beans, spinach, carrots, cabbage, radishes, peas, turnep-radish, black Spanish radish, &c.

Showery weather—take opportunity to sow and plant all requisite crops.

Strawberries—may be planted in young runner plants, or side off-sets, either in a shady border till September, or where they are to remain. [See June and September.]

Turneps—sow a plentiful crop for autumn, and winter (b. m.) and some also towards (l.) if rain fall it will be of particular advantage for sowing.

——— Hoe and thin advancing young crops of turneps, having leaves an inch broad thinning them six or eight inches distance.

French turnep—may now be sowed, (b. m.) for autumn and winter, &c. has a smallish oblong root; boils exceedingly tender and good flavoured, much esteemed to boil in broth, soups, and other culinary occasions.

Thinning—attend to in proper time in all remaining close crops that are usually thinned, as onions, leeks, lettuce, turneps, carrots, radishes, beets, spinach, parsneps, &c.

Turnep-radish—sow some small white, and red sorts, for autumn, and black Spanish for autumn and winter.

Watering—is necessary to all new planted crops, and in dry weather to seed-beds of small seeds and plants.

Weeds destroy—timely in all parts by hand-weeding and hoeing, performing the hoeing in dry weather between all plants

that stand distant in rows, &c. to admit the hoe, cutting up the weeds clean within the surface of the ground, that they may soon effectually die not to grow again.

FRUIT-GARDEN.

The summer pruning—where commenced in May or June, and the improper and superfluous shoots displaced, will not be so considerable at this time, and the principal business required is to fasten in the retained regular shoots to the walls, &c. according as they advance in growth, and to cut out useless after-shoots.

—— But where omitted the summer pruning of wall and espalier trees till this time, great confusion must consequently occur in the numerous shoots of the year, and should now be regulated with the utmost attention and expedition, to complete the whole early in the month.

Wall trees in general—should now be finished summer pruning and training as soon as possible, both for the regularity and benefit of the trees, and prosperity of the fruit, proceeding in apricots, peaches, nectarines, plums, cherries, &c. cutting out the foreright, other ill-placed and very luxuriant shoots, and thin the superfluous, &c. agreeable to the directions in June, retaining abundance of the well-placed proper shoots all at their full length, and nailed close and regular to the wall.

—— *Likewise pears and apples*—in wall trees and espaliers, give the necessary pruning and regulations, cutting out irregular, improper, and superabundant shoots, reserving proper supplies of the well-placed, not shortened, and train them in close and regular. [See June.]

Wall fruit thin—where any still remain too thick, particularly of apricots, peaches, nectarines, and large plums, &c.

Vines give good attention—they still shooting numerously and strong, prune out the improper, useless and unnecessary shoots, as directed in May and June, retaining all those in fruit, with others that are strong and well placed; and nail the whole in close to the wall in regular order.

Fig trees—now advanced in numerous strong shoots, prune out the foreright and nail in all the others close to the wall, not shortened.

Go over wall trees—every week or fortnight after the general regulation, to prune out useless after-shoots, and to nail-in the regular supply close, according as they advance in length, and such as casually detach from their places.

Espalier trees prune—and regulate, as advised for wall trees.

Cherries, ripe—continue to defend from birds with nets, particularly best sorts on walls, &c.

Currants and gooseberries against walls, &c.—prune out the superfluous, crowding, and irregular shoots, and nail the others in close, to admit the benefit of the sun to the fruit; likewise in standard bushes.

——— *Ripe currants*—net some to keep off birds; others, in the full sun, may be shaded with mats, to continue the fruit longer in perfection.

Raspberries—clear from straggling suckers between the rows, to admit the sun and air to the fruit now ripening.

Protect ripe wall fruit—from birds and wasps, &c. the former by nets placed over the trees; the latter by phials of sweetened water, or other liquor, to decoy and drown them therein.

Blighted wall trees, &c.—attend to as advised last month.

Stocks for budding, &c.—clear from lower lateral shoots.

Budding—may now be commenced in general (m. l.) in peaches, apricots, nectarines, plums, cherries, pears, &c.

Walnuts, green—are now proper to gather for pickling, before the internal parts begin to shell or harden.

FLOWER GARDEN, PLEASURE GROUND, AND SHRUBBERY.

Annual flowers—having been all principally sowed, planted, and removed to the places where they are to flower, they now only require occasional waterings, especially those in pots, and some to be supported with sticks.

——— *All annuals in pots*—give frequent waterings in dry weather.

——— Support annuals with sticks, all those of tall growth and climbers.

——— Sowing hardy annuals to flower in autumn, may be performed (b.) in any quick flowering kinds, mentioned last month, as lupines, sweet peas, mignonette, ten-weeks stocks, candy-tuft, virgin stock, &c.

All compartments—of borders, beds, shrubberies, lawns, walks, &c. keep in the neatest order; flower plants of irregular rude growth, trimmed as required, and stick those wanting support, clip edgings and hedges; prune disorderly shrubs, &c. mow and sweep grass; weed, sweep and roll gravel.

Auriculas and polyanthuses—have young seedlings pricked out, and off-sets from old roots planted.

——— Old auriculas in pots may be fresh potted, (m. l.) [See August.]

Bulbous roots—lately done flowering, and the leaves decayed, should be taken up where intended, before they commence a fresh growth, and the off-sets separated.

——— The bulbous roots of lilies, martagons, and others of the scaly-rooted tribe, lately done flowering, and the leaves, &c. decayed, may be taken up, and the off-sets separated and planted again soon, as these sorts will not keep long out of the ground, so well as the solid and tunicated bulbs.

——— Seeds of bulbous roots may be sowed.

——— *Autumnal flowering bulbs*—may now be planted (m. l.) to blow in September and October.

Beds in which bulbous roots have flowered—and the roots are taken up, should be digged to improve the soil for planting with bulbs, &c. in autumn.

Box edgings—not had the summer clipping, should now have it performed in general; and new edgings may still be planted, and well watered.

Budding—may be performed in any curious roses, and Italian jasmines, and other curious shrubs and trees, whereby to propagate any choice or desirable sorts.

Clipping—will now be required in all sorts of hedges, cutting them close and even at sides and top.

—— Also clip edgings of box and thrift, &c.

Carnations—should have the flower stalks tied up neatly to straight sticks; and the stage-carnations in pots, place on the stage or stand where intended (b. m.) to remain for flowering; the pots often watered.

——— May continue laying carnations, and plant pipings. [See June.]

——— Prick out carnation seedlings.

Colchicum and autumnal crocus—may now be planted (m. l.) to flower in autumn; also the autumnal narcissus, and Guernsey lily, &c. [See August.]

——— Dig vacant flower-beds.

Dry weather—water all plants in pots every day; also give proper waterings to all newly-planted articles, and to layers, cuttings, seed-beds, &c.

Double flowered perennials—of any curious kinds, propagate some by cuttings of the flower stalks (b.) others by slips and cuttings of young shoots, and some by bottom off-sets, &c.

Edgings—cut those of box, clipping them narrow and low; also thrift when done flowering.

——— The clipping of box edgings, &c. is most advisable after rain or in moist weather, as when cut in very dry hot weather it is apt to parch, and make them change of a disagreeable foxy-colour.

Edges of grass—continue cut close and neat.

Evergreens—may be pruned where they advance in any disorderly productions.

——— Evergreen hedges clipped.

——— *And seedling evergreens thick in seed-beds*—may be thinned in showery weather, and pricked in other beds, more particularly firs and pines, giving occasional watering, and shading from the sun in dry hot weather.

——— Or larger evergreens may be transplanted with balls, if occasionally wanted.

Flowering plants—advancing in tall growth and climbers, support with sticks in a neat manner.

——— Where flowering plants of rambling growth are very irregular, trim and regulate them as required.

Flower plants required for transplanting—to flower the same year, may be performed in most of the transplanting annuals particularly, removed with balls, especially large plants, and watered; also some fibrous-rooted perennials or biennials, that are but of moderate or middling growth, either such as are beginning to flower, or that are advancing to that state, if transplanted with good balls, and well watered, will succeed.

Grass lawns, &c.—still keep regularly cut close and even, by timely mowing once a week or fortnight.

Gravel walks—roll every week once or twice; and commonly every Saturday.

Hardy annuals—thin the patches of large kinds, where remaining too close.

Hearts-ease—large Dutch, plant slips and off-sets thereof (m. l.) and well watered, as the seed is not always to be depended on, at least not with certainty of coming the same.

Hedges—of all sorts should now be clipped, as they will now be grown rough in the numerous shoots of the year. [See June and August.]

Honeysuckles and jasmines—running kinds, train up to walls, arbours, stakes, and prune away irregular and superabundant shoots.

Layers—now make of all curious carnations, also of cloves, double scarlet and mule sweet-williams, and capital varieties of pinks. [See the directions of June for the method of laying.]

——— Likewise may lay young shoots of curious evergreens, roses, &c.

Lilies and martagons—done flowering, (m. l.) and the stalks decayed, may be taken up, where in large bunches, which may then be parted, or the off-sets separated, and either planted again directly or soon after, especially the off-sets; the large bulbs, also soon in autumn. [See August.]

Mignonette—may still be sowed to flower late.

Off-sets—plant of bulbous roots, and of any curious fibrous-rooted perennials that occur.

Passion flower—prune out the irregular and superfluous shoots, and train the others to the wall, &c. in regular order for flowering.

Plants in pots—water often in dry weather.

Pruning—may be performed to any kind of shrubs and plants, to reduce disorderly growths.

Perennials and biennials—prick out all seedlings, or may sow seed (b.) if before omitted.

Piping—should now be principally finished in pinks and carnations, by planting cuttings of the young bottom shoots. [See June.]

—— And any early planted pipings, if now well rooted, and advanced in top growth, prick out into beds or borders; well watered.

Polyanthus and seedlings—prick in shady borders.

Planting—perform in pricking out seedling prerennials and biennials, or occasionally t plant larger or full flowering plants, required in vacant parts of flower-borders, &c. or in pots, removed with balls; also to prick out early pipings of pinks and carnations, and occasionally to plant slips, off-sets, and cuttings of young flower-stems and shoots, of any curious flowering perennials for increase; likewise to re-plant small off-sets of bulbs; and to finish planting out any remaining annuals, or to transplant others where required, in vacant parts.

Roll—grass and gravel, generally give the gravel-walks a good rolling, once a week, and after rain.

Save seeds—of annuals, biennials, and of any perennials required that are ripe.

Seedling perennials and biennials—finish pricking out, and well watered.

Seedling bulbs—of two years old, take up, when the leaves decay, and plant again in beds three inches asunder.

———— Sow seeds of bulbous roots.

Seedling firs and pines, &c—if very thick in seed-beds, may be thinned when rain, and pricked in other beds in rows six inches asunder.

Shrubberies keep in good order—pruning out any rambling rude shoots, and decayed flower stalks; and hoe and clear off weeds.

Showery weather—is proper for all pricking out, planting and sowing; also for cutting box edgings and evergreen hedges, &c.

Stock gilliflowers—of the Brompton's and Queen, &c. prick out from seed-beds, into other beds or borders; also plant some out finally in borders, beds, pots, &c. to remain; as these plants having naked woody roots, do not succeed well by after-transplanting, when of large growth.

Stake—tall plants and climbers.

Sowing—now is practised only occasionally in some few articles of quick flowering hardy annuals, to flower in autumn; or sometimes auriculas, polyanthus, and bulbous roots, and occasionally any other perennials and biennials (b.) if before omitted.

Thrift edgings—done flowering, cut off the decayed flowers, and cut the sides even, if irregular.

Ten weeks stocks—may be sowed, to flower late, and in winter.

Watering—perform in dry weather, to pots, new planted seedlings, layers, pipings, cuttings, &c.

Wall-flowers—plant slips of the double bloody (b.) [see June], and prick out all seedling walls.

WORK IN THE NURSERY.

Weeding and watering—will now demand particular attention; for as weeds generally at this season continue advancing considerably in all parts, they should be diligently kept under: and in dry weather many sorts of small young plants will need frequent watering; and is particularly necessary to all plants in pots.

Hoeing perform—in dry weather to destroy weeds between rows of young trees, and in all compartments where weeds are advancing in considerable growth, and where the hoe can be introduced; cutting them up radically, not to grow again, both that the ground may thereby appear in a desirably clean neat order, and that by giving a proper hoeing, eradicating the weeds effectually, also loosens and freshens the surface beneficially to the growth of the plants.

Likewise seed-beds and others—of small young plants in close growth, not admissable to the hoe, should be carefully weeded before the weeds increase much in size to spread and entangle with and injure the plants now in their infant state.

Give water—in dry weather to some yet small seedling trees and shrubs, and others of slender growth: also to all plants in

pots, and to any seedling plants lately planted or pricked out, as likewise to lately planted cuttings, slips and layers, &c.

Shading from the mid-day sun—in hot dry weather will still be proper occasionally to some slender seedling exotics, &c. and to any lately pricked out seedling evergreens, &c.

May now prick out some seedling evergreens—such particularly as pines, firs, cedars, &c. if a showery or moist season; and if succeeded by dry weather must be frequently watered, and shaded occasionally in hot sunny days.

Finish pricking out seedling herbaceous plants—of fibrous-rooted perennials and biennials into beds and borders, and watered.

Pruning perform—where necessary, in trees and shrubs, to regulate or displace any rude, rambling, or other disorderly shoots of the same summer.

Prune or trim evergreens—according as particular sorts may require, either to reduce casual rank, or any disorderly or rude rambling shoots of the year, or to trim or train any for particular occasions.

Look over young fruit trees—cut away all shoots from the stems, and any very luxuriant, and rude rambling shoots of the head.

—— *Likewise examine young wall trees*—in training against walls, palings, &c. and cut out close any very rank and ill-placed shoots of the present summer, together with all shoots from the stems, and train in the regular shoots of the head to the wall, &c. in proper order, at their full length.

Budding or inoculating—may now be performed in general, (m. l.) in all sorts of fruit trees as are usually propagated by that method; such as peaches, nectarines, apricots, pears, plums, cherries, &c. as also in any curious, scarce, or particular sorts of ornamental trees, shrubs, &c. this and the beginning of next month, being the principal proper season for that business.

Trim up the stems of fruit tree stock, &c.—intended for budding this season.

Budded trees of last year—now advancing in the first shoots, look over occasionally in order to displace all shoots produced from the stems below the bud shoot

Propagate by layers, cuttings, and slips—of the young shoots of the year, principally in evergreens; or by layers, may be both of evergreens and deciduous trees and shrubs; and in either of which methods, many sorts will root more freely in the tender young shoots of the same summer, than in the older wood.

GREEN-HOUSE.

Water—will now be necessary to all green-house plants every day or two, in dry weather.

Fresh earth—or loosen the earth in the tops of the pots occasionally, especially where the surface appears crusted or binding.

Oranges and lemons—give good attention to water and dry weather, and those in flower, if the blossom is very thick some may be thinned, to strengthen the growth of the others; and those thinned off serve for perfumery, or orange-flower water, &c.

——— Any orange trees, &c. planted this year, and plunged in bark-beds, to strike them more expeditiously and effectual, or seedling oranges in hot-beds to draw up tall for stocks, give now a large admission of free air, and frequent watering, and occasionally shade them from the hot sun; and young seedling oranges, when three or four inches high, prick singly in small pots watered and shaded.

——— *Budding*—may be performed to oranges and lemons, &c. (m. l.)

Shifting—into larger pots, and some fresh earth, may be performed occasionally to any particular plants in pots too small, or to plants of a weak or sickly growth.

Plant slips and cuttings—of myrtles, geraniums, cricus or heaths, shrubby asters and tansey, double nasturtiums, balm of Gilead, &c. and cuttings of succulent plants.

Myrtle cuttings or slips—plant now a principal supply under hand-glasses, if omitted in June. [See as directed in that month.]

Layers make—of lower young branches and shoots, of shrubby green-house plants (b.)

Succulent plants—propagate by suckers, off-sets, and cuttings.

Propagate—different sorts of green-house exotics, by cuttings, slips, off-sets, suckers, layers, and budding.

Seedling green-house plants—when two, three, or four inches high, prick singly, in small pots or several together in large pots, till advanced in growth; give water, and occasional shading from the full sun.

All green-house plants—supply duly with necessary watering in hot weather; sometimes watering all over the heads to wash off dust, &c. and to refresh them; detach all decayed leaves and

shoots; or any advancing in any irregular growth may be pruned as required.

HOT-HOUSE AND STOVE.

The hot-house plants are still principally to remain in this preservatory; and the bark-bed heat continued, especially in the pinery; but no fires, and will now require a large admission of fresh air, and frequent watering; or in hot-houses having many different sorts of exotics much crowded, some may now (b. m.) be removed into a green house or glass-case, with the sashes open in front, and in which to remain five or six weeks, during the hotter season.

The bark-bed—in the pineries, &c. must still be continued in a moderate heat: will require a renewal next month.

The pines—must have frequent waterings, both those now advancing in fruit, and the succession plants of all degrees of growth, applying the water with moderation two or three times a week, and always more moderately in plants, with fruit ripening, than the others.

——— *Shifting succession pines*—into larger pots, may be commenced (l.) but more eligibly next month for general shifting. [See August.]

Air—should now be admitted freely, and the glasses opened considerably in the heat of sunny days, shut close towards evening.

Watering—demands good attention now to the hot-house plants in general.

All exotics of the hot-house—keep clean from any sort of foulness they are apt to contract, washing it off as occasion requires: pick or cut off decayed leaves, and dead or distempered shoots, &c. and extirpate insects in the best manner possible, by cleaning and washing the leaves, &c. and occasionally to fumigate with tobacco, strewing tobacco-dust, &c. over: but in the pine plants particularly the utmost care is occasionally required to keep them clean from the peculiar small vermin that often greatly annoy these exotics.

Any plants of a weak sickly state—shift into new pots with some fresh earth, and plunged in a bark-bed.

Propagate hot-house plants—by suckers, cuttings, off-sets, crowns, layers, &c.

Plant crowns and suckers of pines—obtained from the ripe fruit and old plants, according as they occur, each planted in

a small pot, and plunged in the bark-bed or other hot-bed, under glasses; and in two years they become fruiting plants.

In the propagation of the different hot-house plants—by the several methods of cuttings, slips, crowns, suckers, off-sets, layers, &c. being generally planted in pots, give the assistance of the bark-bed, &c. plunging the pots therein, watered and occasionally shaded.

AUGUST.

KITCHEN GARDEN.

Many early and general summer crops—will now be cleared off: get the ground ready, by dunging and digging for the reception of several principal crops requisite to put in at this season.

As soon as ground is digged—that intended for sowing in particular, if dry weather, generally sow directly while the earth is fresh turned up, and the surface a little moist, which now, if a dry season, will be of particular advantage in sowing.

——— The sowing and planting now required, consists of the following sorts:

Sowing—must be particularly attended to now in several crops, especially cabbages, coleworts, cauliflowers, spinach, onions, lettuce, turneps, carrots, some for autumn, but mostly to stand the winter, and for next spring, and some for early summer crops.

——— Also to sow some late peas, kidney-beans, and radishes, for the present autumn; chervil, corn sallad, borage, angelica, fennel, alexanders, and small sallading, turnep-radish, and black Spanish radish.

Planting—is now required in coleworts, cabbages, broccoli, savoys, celery, endive, leeks, lettuce, and some turnep cabbage, &c. if in request.

Pricking out—in young seedling plants is required for broccoli, cabbages, coleworts, and celery.

Cabbage plants—of the June and July sowing, plant out abundantly for late young cabbage and strong coleworts for autumn and winter.

——— Sow cabbage seed, (b.) for a full crop of young plants to stand the winter, for early and first general crops next summer; and for which have seed both of the early kinds, as

early York and sugar-loaf, or Battersea, Deptford, Antwerp, &c. and large late sorts, and red cabbage, performing the sowing not sooner nor later than about the third or fourth to the tenth of this month, both that the plants may not run in the spring: *(Remark this)* and that they may acquire proper strength to stand the winter.

——— Also for cabbage, coleworts, sow, at the above time, some Yorkshire, Battersea, and sugar-loaf, as being the most close-growing, and quick-hearting kinds.

Broccoli—finish planting the last principal crop (b. m.)

Cauliflowers—planted out last month for the autumn and winter crops, should be hoed, and earth drawn about the stems.

——— Sow cauliflower seed—for a supply of young plants to stand the winter, in frames, hand-glasses, and warm borders: performing this sowing about the 18th to the 21st or 23d at latest *(observe the time,)* and the plants surviving the winter are planted out in the spring for early and main summer crops, and for which be careful to observe the above-mentioned time of sowing, not sooner nor later, for if sowed sooner, many of the young plants are apt to button or run to small button heads in winter, if a mild open season, and if sowed later, will not obtain proper strength before winter, or commencement of cold weather.

Coleworts—plant out plenty in rows a foot asunder, for autumn and winter.

——— Prick out coleworts from seed beds.

——— Snow colewort seed (b.) of the early close-growing cabbage kinds, a full crop to plant out next month and October, for winter and following spring.

——— Or sow also a good crop about the 4th or 5th to the 10th; principally for spring not to run in that season *(observe this)*: and what are not used for coleworts, will advance to good headed cabbages.

Borecole—plant out the last full crops.

Celery—continue planting more into trenches, a plentiful succession crop for winter, and earth-up the former planted moderately, once a week or fortnight for blanching.

—— Prick out the late seedling celery, to grow strong, for final transplanting in the end of autumn.

—— Some of the forward-planted celery in trenches, will now be branched in tolerable perfection to take up for use occasionally.

Asparagus—now all run to stalk, requires only clearing from weeds.

Aromatic herbs—propagate by parting roots, as balm, pennyroyal, mint, chamomile, &c.

—— Gather aromatic herbs for drying and distilling.

Alexanders and angelica—may be sowed to come in sooner next year, than those of the following spring sowing.

Artichokes—now in production of heads, break down the stalks according as the fruit is gathered.

Balm—gather for drying, and plant slips.

Borage, chervil, and corn salad—may now be sowed for autumn and winter, and following spring; sowed either broadcast and raked in, or in shallow drills six inches asunder.

Beans—plant (b.) for a Michaelmas crop of the mazagans, and white blossomed, in a south exposure: they will produce in the latter end of September, and in October, &c.

Cucumbers—now in hot dry weather, want water every day.

—— The cucumbers in frames may now be full exposed, occasionally, or may continue the frames and glasses over some, either in the frame-beds, or some spare frames, &c. placed over some of the hand-glass ridges or picklers to defend them occasionally with the glasses of said frames, from excessive rains, whereby to preserve the plants in a good bearing state, and the fruit of a clean handsome growth and free from spotting.

—— Hand-glasses on cucumber ridges may either be removed, or still continued, to defend the main stem of the plants from intemperate weather.

—— Pickling cucumbers, in the open ground, now come into bearing, should be gathered young for that occasion, or some left to grow larger for other purposes.

—— May sow or split cucumbers (b.) in a slender hot-bed, defended with glasses of nights in favourable weather: and some transplanted in a hot-bed under frames and glasses (m. b.) to produce some late fruit in October, &c.

Carrots—sow a small crop (b. m.) to come in for drawing young in the spring.

Cardoons—advanced to large growth, tie up the leaves close, and earth-up all around each plant, to blanch them.

Celeriac—earth up and plant more in drills.

Drying and distilling herbs—should now be finished gathering (b. m.)

Dill—now in seed umbels, is proper to gather for use.

Endive—should be now planted in full crops for autumn and winter, mostly of green curled for the main crops, and some white curled and Batavia endive, as secondary crops, planting the whole twelve to fifteen inches asunder, each sort separate and watered.

——— Tie up full grown endive every week to blanch.

——— Sow a last crop of endive (b. m.)

Earth-up plants to blanch—as celery, celeriac, finochio, cardoons, &c.

Fennel—may now be sowed, and old roots or off-sets thereof planted.

French turneps—sow (b. m.) and thin the former sowed, five or six inches asunder. [See July.]

Garlic, shallot, and recambole—finish taking up for keeping.

Leeks—complete planting the main crops (b. m.) shorten the long fibres of the root and tops of the leaves, and plant them in rows nine by six inches asunder, and watered.

Gather seeds—many sorts will now be ripe.

In rainy or showery weather—take opportunity to sow, prick, and plant all necessary crops of the season; and to plant slips, off-sets, &c. of aromatic and other pot-herbs.

Herbs, aromatic—gather for drying, &c. of mint, balm, tarragon, sweet marjoram, pennyroyal sage-tops, hyssop, and pepper-mint for distilling.

——— Likewise gather marigold flowers, chamomile flowers, and lavender spikes.

Hotspur peas—may be sowed (b.) [See Peas.]

Hoe—to kill weeds and to loosen the ground between rows of advancing cabbage, coleworts, cauliflowers, savoys, broccoli, borecole, celery, endive, lettuce, leeks, cardoons, peas, beans finochio, kidney beans, &c. and in the stalky kinds thereof draw earth to the stems.

——— Also hoe and thin turneps, radishes, spinach, lettuce, turnep-radishes, &c.

Kidney-beans—may be sowed a moderate crop (b.) of some dwarf kinds, as the Battersea and Canterbury white dwarfs, black and red speckled, &c. for latest production. [See July.]

Lettuces—sow of white and green cos, brown Dutch, imperial Cilicia, and white and green cabbage-lettuce, (b. m. and l.) for autumn, winter, and next spring.

——— Plant and thin the last raised lettuce a foot distance to grow for use this autumn.

Mint—finish gathering, to dry for keeping.

Melons—defend from excessive rain and cold nights, continuing the frames and lights, &c. constantly over the beds.

——— Give air freely to melons in hot dry weather, and occasional moderate waterings.

——— But melons ripening, water but very sparingly.

To hand-glass melon-beds, still continue the glasses over the plants, and defend them also occasionally from excessive wet, by means advised last month.

Likewise observe the same care to melons, under oiled-paper frames.

Ripe melons—be careful to gather when in good maturity. [See July.]

Mushroom beds—may be made; and collect mushroom-spawn. [See last month and September.]

Nasturtium berries—gather for pickling.

Onions—arrived to full growth, in large bulbs, and the stalks and leaves withering, should be pulled up, spread to dry and harden, then housed.

——— Likewise small button onions gather for pickling.

——— Sow winter onions (b. m.) and (m. l.) both of the bulbous and Welch kinds, to draw in young growth, and of autumn, part of winter, and all the spring months; and some of the former to remain for early bulbing next summer, as the Welch onion never bulbs, but is the most hardy to stand the winter for a certain plentiful crop of young spring onions or ciboules.

Let them be sowed very thick in four feet wide beds, each sort separate; tread down the seed, and rake it in regularly.

Pickling articles—will now be proper to gather in various sorts, as cucumbers, kidney-beans, nasturtium-berries, radish pods, love-apples, capsicums, small onions, artichoke bottoms, &c

Peas—may be sowed (b.) in a small or moderate supply of hotspurs and dwarfs, for the last crop.

Parsley—may be sowed, if required (b.)

Plant—all necessary crops for autumn and winter, &c. in proper time, of celery, endive, cabbage, coleworts, savoys, lettuces, broccoli, borecole, and leeks.

Prick-out—seedling celery, cabbages, coleworts, &c.

Pot and sweet herbs—may be planted of different sorts, both in full plants, and in rooted slips and off-sets.

Potatoes—now well increased in size, may be taken up in larger quantities, but the main crop to continue in growth till October.

Radishes—sow (b.) and (m. l.) for autumn, both of the red short tops, and more plentiful of the salmon kind, at this season.

——— Sow also turnep radishes.

——— Likewise sow black Spanish radish (b.) for autumn and winter.

——— *Radish seed pods*—gather to pickle.

Savoys—finish planting the main crops, (b.) in rows two feet distance.

Spinach—sow the winter crop of the prickly seeded, or triangular leaved (b. m.) and towards (l.) this sort being the hardiest to stand the winter, generally sowing the seed

broad cast, and raked in regularly: or some may be sowed in drills.

——— Or may also sow some round leaved spinach, (b.) for use, end of autumn, &c.

——— In sowing the above crop of winter spinach, may scatter a small portion of hardy green cabbage-lettuce thinly, to cut out in winter, and for early spring sallads.

Seed beds of small seeds—lately sowed, water in dry weather, and shade those of cauliflowers, &c. from the mid-day sun.

Seeds ripening—now in many sorts of plants, gather as they attain perfection.

Strawberry-beds—done bearing, clear from weeds, and cut away the large old leaves and spreading runners, that the plants may more effectually acquire a fresh stocky growth before winter.

——— Plant strawberries in young runner plants or side offsets. [See June and September.]

Small sallading—sow once a week or fortnight, watered and shaded in hot, sunny weather, till the plants come up, or sowed in a shady border.

Sweet marjoram—now of full growth, pull up a portion to dry for winter.

Sowing—attend to in the necessary crops of the season in proper time, some for the end of autumn, others principally for winter and spring, and early crops next summer: such as cabbage, coleworts, cauliflowers, lettuces, onions, spinach, turneps, radishes, carrots, corn-sallad, chervil, &c. See the different articles.

Turneps—sow the last crop (b. m.) hoe and thin the young advancing crops sowed last month, &c.

Turnep-radish—sow some small white and red sorts for autumn, the large black Spanish (b. m.) for autumn and winter, and hoe the last sowed young crops, thinning the former two or three inches, the last six or eight.

Turnep-cabbage—if in request, plant out two feet asunder.

Watering in dry weather—is required for all young newly pricked out plants, and others lately planted, and to cucumbers often, and to seed-beds.

Weeds—now advancing numerously in the autumn growth, should be effectually destroyed before they spread or seed.

FRUIT GARDEN.

Occasional pruning and training—in wall-trees and espaliers, will still be required; and if any principal summer pruning, &c. remains to be done, complete the whole now as soon as possible.

No pruning in standards is particularly required at this season.

Wall-trees—of peaches, nectarines, apricots, &c. should have all principal summer pruning and training completed, in cutting out the fore-right and other ill-placed, improper, and superfluous shoots of the year, and the others trained in close to the wall; not now shortened, where room to extend them in length. [See June and July.]

——— Likewise plums, cherries, pears, apples, &c. in wall-trees and espaliers, finish the principal summer pruning and training, as above.

Vines—will still require particular attention, as they will yet advance in many useless shoots, which should be constantly pruned out; and the former-trained shoots, both of the present bearers and others, continue to train to the wall close and regular, to admit the full sun and free air to the grapes, now well advanced in growth, and some ripening; and as the said shoots will now be much advanced in length, any of considerable extent, run beyond their limited bounds, may be shortened; and most of the fruit-bearing shoots, may now also be moderately shortened, or more or less, according to their strength, extension, and situation on the vine: and by shortening or stopping the present fruit-shoots, it will turn the nourishment more fully to the growth of the grapes.

Fig-trees—should have the fore-right ill-placed shoots pruned away; but retain all the others generally at their full length, and nailed in regular, to admit the full sun to the figs now beginning to ripen.

Espalier trees—of apples, pairs, plums, and cherries, &c. finish all principal summer pruning and training. [See June and July.]

——— In wall and espalier trees, pruned the two last months, and the shoots trained in, should be gone over again now, to cut out after-shoots not useful or required, and to adjust any irregularity of the former-trained that project from the wall, and the others that advance in length, nailing and fastening the whole in close, both to preserve the regularity of the trees, and to admit the sun and air freely to the fruit.

——— According as wall-trees and espaliers are pruned, nail and fasten in the proper shoots regularly.

Ripe wall-fruit protect—by placing phials of sweetened or strong-smelling liquor to decoy wasps and flies from the fruit into the bottles, and drown themselves.

——— Likewise net cherries, and other choice wall-fruit to keep off birds.

Prune out improper shoots—in wall-trees, &c. as fore-right, very luxuriant, and superabundant.

Train in necessary proper shoots—such as the well-placed side productions and leaders to the branches, mostly continued still at their full length, where room for their extension. [See June and July.]

Budding or inoculating—should now be finished in fruit-trees, (b. m.)

Fruit ripen—now abundantly, on wall trees, espaliers, and standards, to gather for present eating; as apricots, peaches, some early nectarines, figs, and grapes; plenty of pears, plums, cherries, currants, late gooseberries, raspberries, mulberries, filberts, apples, &c.

FLOWER GARDEN, PLEASURE GROUND, &c.

Sowing, planting, and removing—will be necessary in several sorts of seeds, plants, roots, off-sets, slips, &c.

Articles to sow—are principally auriculas, polyanthus, anemonies, ranunculuses, &c. and seeds of bulbous roots (b. m.) all in large pots, either to move to shade in summer, and shelter in winter; or may all be sowed in a bed or border.

Planting—is necessary in the several autumnal flowering bulbs, to flower the same season, most sorts of small bulbous off-sets, and to plant off-sets and slips of several fibrous-rooted perennials.

Removing and taking up—may be performed in bulbous roots lately done flowering; or to take up and part the off-sets, and to take up, or transplant scaly bulbous kinds, such as lilies, martagons, &c. when the flower-stalks decay, detaching the off-sets, and replanted; or those sorts not remain long out of the ground.

Auriculas in pots—should be fresh potted (b. m.) turn them out of the old earth, detach off-sets and dead leaves, prune decayed parts of the root and fibres, then replant them in pots of new compost, and watered, and placed in a shady border.

—— Plant auricula off-sets, and sow seed.

Annual flowers—now ripening seed gather accordingly of all sorts, as it attains maturity; and to obtain that of tender curious sorts, place some pots in a deep garden frame, or glass-case, to

protect them from rain and cold; as finest balsams, cock's-combs, &c.

—— To annuals in pots—give water often in dry weather. Sow anemone and ranunculus seed.

Autumnal flowering bulbs—finish planting, to flower the same autumn; as colchicums, autumn crocus, sea daffodil, &c. (b. m.) in beds, borders, or pots; also Guernsey and Belladonna lilies in pots, to place under shelter from rain and cold, in autumn and winter.

Bulbous roots—summer flowering, lately out of bloom, and the stalks decaying, may be taken up, if required, and the off-sets separated.

——— Plant all bulbous off-sets, especially small ones, in beds.

——— The main bulbs and large off-sets, now taken up in proper time at the decay of leaves and stalks, may be housed for autumn planting, &c. but if any are unavoidably removed that have commenced a fresh growth in new root-fibres, should be replanted again as soon as possible.

Beds dig—for bulbous roots to improve the soil ready for planting.

Brompton and Queen stocks—may now be finally transplanted into borders, &c. where they are to remain, and some in pots.

Borders—continue always clean and neat, from weeds and litter.

Biennials and perennials—finish pricking out late seedlings, and plant off-sets from old plants.

Box-edgings—clip [See July] and new ones may be planted (m. l.)—[See October.]

Budding—must now be finished in curious shrubs, &c. (b. m.)

Clipping—finish in hedges and box-edgings.

Crocus autumnal and colchicums—plant (b. m.) to flower the same year in autumn.

Carnations—should be finished laying (b.) early layers and pipings well rooted, plant off in beds or pots; and save carnation seed.

Cuttings of evergreens—especially laurel, plant in a shady border (l.)

Daisies—may be slipped (m. l.) or the roots parted into smaller or larger sets, and planted in beds, borders, and occasionally for edgings.

Dry weather—give water to all plants in pots, and to any articles lately sowed and planted: likewise while dry weather continues, hoe down weeds in all borders, beds, &c. that they may soon die effectually.

Dig—vacant beds and borders.

Edgings—in general clip, and trim, as required; and new edgings of box, thrift, daisies, strawberries, London-pride, pinks, &c. may be planted (m. l.)

Evergreens—may be removed and planted occasionally towards (l.) if rain; also plant cuttings of laurel, &c.

Flower plants—continue always in some regularity of growth, by occasionally trimming any ill-growing productions, and give timely support of sticks or stakes, where needful.

Flowering plants required for transplanting—to flower the same year, may be removed with balls, in many sorts of annuals, and some fibrous-rooted, moderate-growing perennials, &c. well-watered.

Gourds—train to walls, stakes, arbours, &c. and watered in dry weather.

Gravel walks—give occasional weeding and sweeping, and often rolled.

Grass lawns and plats, &c.—keep always neatly cut, close, and even, by timely mowing, and sometimes rolled.

Hedges—both deciduous and evergreens, finish clipping, cutting them in close nearly to the old wood, or former year's cut, especially old hedges, that they may not grow out too broad or wide, and clip the sides and top even, in a regular manner. [See June.]

—— *Young Hedges*—yet in training, clip the sides evenly in proper regularity, but the top cut rather sparing or moderately, or only so as to have the whole advance equally in some regular order.

Heart's ease, or pansies—large Dutch and other particular kinds, plant off-sets, slips, or cuttings, in a shady border; or large bushy plants may be slipped or parted into separate rooted off-sets, and planted as above; as the different sorts are not to be depended on from seed, as observed in July.

Hoe and rake—borders, shrubberies, &c. clean from weeds and litter.

Lilies—of the white, orange, and martagon kinds, &c. that are now done flowering, and the stalks decaying may be removed, where required, to part the off-sets, especially where old roots have increased by off-sets into large bunches, which may either be taken up wholly and separated, or the main roots remaining, may detach the outward off-set bulbs; and in either method the whole generally planted again soon after, but especially the small off-sets; the others not kept out longer than next month or October, to have them flower well next summer.

Mignonette—may be sowed, and planted in pots for late flowering.

Off-sets—plant of bulbous roots, and may slip and plant off-sets of perennials.

Polyanthuses—may be parted or slipped, when rain, and seed sowed.

Pinks and carnation pipings—early planted, if well struck root, and advanced in growth, should be pricked out, and finish planting pipings (b.) covered close with a hand-glass, or in this late planting, some pots thereof placed in a bark-bed, &c. would forward them more considerably: giving occasional shade from the hot sun, and moderate watering, to make them strike sooner, and more effectually.

Prune disorderly growths—in flowers and shrubs.

Parting roots—may be performed (m. l.) in perennials done flowering, to propagate any particular sorts.

Planting—may be performed occasionally, such as to finish putting out seedling perennials and biennials from seed-beds, pricking out layers and pipings, to plant off-sets of bulbous roots, autumnal flowering bulbs, slips, and off-sets of perennials; or occasionally present flowering annuals and moderate perennials may be removed with balls to supply vacancies; well watered.

Rake borders, &c.—occasionally to clean and smooth the surface of a fresh neat appearance.

Rolling—is necessary to gravel-walks always once a week, and occasionally to grass.

Seeds gather—of all annuals and biennial flowers now ripe, and of any perennials required.

Slip off-sets—of perennials, and biennials in which they casually occur, to encrease any desirable kinds.

Shrubberies—still continue in neat order, by hoeing down advancing weeds; pruning, trimming, and regulating any disorderly rambling and straggling growths in the shrubs and plants, and clear away all decayed flowers, then rake the ground neatly and clean.

Sweep gravel and grass—from fallen leaves, and other loose litter.

Sow—polyanthuses and auriculas (b. m.) also anemones and ranunculus, and seeds of bulbous roots, all either in beds, borders, pots, or boxes of light mellow earth.

Thrift edgings—cut off the decayed flowers, and in thick close edgings that are considerably spreading and irregular, cut in the sides regularly even; and new edgings may be planted (m. l.)

Ten weeks stocks—may be sowed, to pot for winter.

Turf—may be cut and laid for grass lawns, plats, &c. or in want therefore sow grass seed (m. l.)

Water—give to plants in pots often in dry weather, and to any newly planted; also to late layers and pipings, &c.

Weeds—being unsightly and detrimental, keep them always well under, especially as they will now be advancing numerously in the autumn growth.

WORK IN THE NURSERY.

Complete now all intended budding—for this year, in fruit trees and others, generally concluding the whole by the middle of the month, in which that work may still be performed with desirable success in peaches, nectarines, apricots, plums, cherries, &c. and in any other trees and shrubs, as are occasionally propagated by inoculation.

New budded trees of last month, &c.—being budded three or four weeks, the buds united with the stocks should have the bass tying, where apparently too strait, loosened moderately, that the buds may have proper room to swell.

Examine young grafted and budded trees—in general, both of the present and preceding years; and where any shoots continue pushing out from the stocks below the grafts and buds, cut them off close, that the whole nourishment may ascend to strengthen the grafting and inoculation growths.

Young wall and espalier trees in training—continue to examine occasionally in order to displace irregular and improper shoots of the year, and to train along the others in a regular manner.

Weeding and watering—will still be necessary occasionally, for autumnal weeds will begin to advance numerously, and should be diligently eradicated; and in very dry hot weather some young slender seedling plants, cuttings, layers, &c. and all plants in pots, will require watering.

Hoeing in dry weather—should be properly attended to at this season, in all parts where weeds are advancing in considerable growth between rows of nursery trees, shrubs, and other plants.

Also hand weed—in proper time all beds, &c. of small close-growing young plants.

Give water—in dry, hot weather, to beds of several sorts of small young trees and shrubs, &c. and to beds of any young evergreens lately pricked out: also to cuttings and layers of the present summer, and to all plants in pots.

Prune or train—any very irregular or disorderly shoots of the year in the nursery trees and shrubs, retrenching or reducing any casual, very rampant, or rambling run-away growths, and low stragglers.

—— *And pruning of evergreens*—may now be performed

in any sorts according as they may require, either to regulate disorderly shoots of the year, or to reduce any irregularities in older branches; also to cut, train, or trim particular sorts in any desired form.

May likewise prune flowering shrubs—where it may seem necessary, to reduce rude or strong rambling shoots of the year.

Begin to prepare ground—(m. l.) by digging or trenching in preparation for autumnal planting and transplanting, &c. the latter end of next month, and more generally in October and November.

GREEN HOUSE.

Shifting—into larger pots, may be performed occasionally to any particular plants in want thereof, removed with the ball of earth to the roots, previously adding some fresh earth in the bottom of the allotted pots, placing the plant therein; apply more earth round the sides and top of the ball; and watered.

Loosen the earth—sometimes in the tops of pots where crusted or bound; or also occasionally apply some fresh mold.

Watering—to the green-house exoties must now be well attended to, in dry, hot weather, every day or two, of a morning or afternoon: plants in small pots will need water once or twice every day, when very hot and dry.

—— *Clean the heads and leaves*—of oranges, lemons, &c. by sometimes watering over the tops.

—— To cuttings of myrtles, geraniums, &c. give proper watering.

Pruning—may be performed occasionally to any green-house plants, to reduce casual rambling and ill-growing shoots.

Decayed leaves and dead wood—unsightly and hurtful, always clear off.

Young orange stocks—that are drawing in heat under frames and glasses, expose by degrees (b.) to the full air, to strengthen their growth before the approach of cold weather.

—— Also any orange and lemon trees, &c. imported from abroad, obtained at the Italian warehouses, &c. in the spring, generally with shortened naked heads and roots, and have been placed in a bark-bed in a glass-case, to forward their fresh rooting and producing of top shoots, should now be inured to the full air to strengthen their growth.

Budding of oranges and lemons, &c.—finish (b. m.)

Succulent plants—of aloes, ficoides, sedums, &c. may be shifted into larger pots, if any are in want; and this is a proper season to plant suckers thereof, also off-sets and cuttings.

Planting slips and cuttings—of myrtles, heaths, and geranium, &c. may still be done (b.) covered with hand-glasses, especially the myrtles and heaths, [See May and June, &c.] and if some are also placed in a bark-bed, it would much forward their effectual rooting shaded from the sun; and to those of different kinds early planted if well struck, and of advancing top growth, give now the full air in all temperate weather.

Water and shade—small seedling plants, and new planted cuttings, &c.

——— *And green-house plants in general*—raised this year from seed suckers, cuttings, slips, layers, off-sets, &c. under glasses, and are of advancing growth, should now mostly have the free air all this and next month.

Young plants of seedlings, cuttings, &c.—raised this year of some advancing growth, transplant singly in small pots.

HOT-HOUSE AND STOVE.

Admit air—freely into the hot-house every day, by opening the glasses considerably in sunny weather.

Give water—two or three times a week, or oftener, according as the earth in the pots becomes dry.

The bark-bed—in the succession pineries will want renewing in heat, by application of some fresh tan, preparatory for the succession pines at the time of shifting, which must be performed; also for the younger succession pines, the beds should be kept revived to a proper heat.

Ripening pine-apples—now advancing fast to maturity, give but very moderate watering.

The succession of pine plants—two years old, for producing fruit next year, must now be shifted (b. m.) into the larger pots (24s. or 16s.) finally to remain for fruiting; but previous to which provide a quantity of new tanner's bark, about one third of what the bark-bed contains; the pots then taken out, and the plants shifted mostly with the ball of earth entire into the larger pots, one in each, with some fresh earth previously added in the bottom of the said pots, and then placing the plants therein, one in each pot, as aforesaid, fill up round the ball and roots, with more compost, raising it an inch or two over the top of the ball, and give water; then removing some of the

old decayed tan at the top of the bark-bed, and may then either fork up the whole mixedly together, and directly replunge the pots of plants, or applying six or eight to ten or twelve inches of the new tan at top, in which to plunge the pots, the warm old tan below will soon give it a proper degree of heat; and this also will enliven the old; that both together will soon impart a lively moderate heat immediately about the roots of the plants to forward their free-rooting and proper advancing growth in their new pots, in which they are then finally shifted for fruiting.

—— In the above shifting, if any of the plants appear of an unhealthy weakly state, it would be proper to take them clean out of the ball, trim and wash the roots and repot them in entire new earth; watered, and plunge them in the bark-beds as above.

And other hot-house plants, wanting larger pots, may also be shifted; likewise the younger pines.

Propagate pines—by planting suckers from old plants, and crowns and suckers obtained from the ripe fruit, each in a small pot, watered and plunged in a bark-bed, or dung hot-bed.

Plant cuttings, suckers, off-sets, &c.—of succulent, and other hot-house plants, all planted in pots, and placed in the bark-bed, (b.) to accelerate their rooting; give a moderate watering.

SEPTEMBER.

KITCHEN GARDEN.

Ground now becoming vacant—must be prepared in proper time, by dunging and digging, for succeeding crops.

The several crops to sow and plant—should mostly be put in the beginning and middle of the month, consisting chiefly of the following:

The principal sowing crops—are spinach, lettuce, onions, radishes, turneps, turnep-radish, cabbage, coleworts, corn sallad, chervil, coriander, and borage; and successions of small sallading, as cresses, mustard, &c. [See each sort.]

Planting crops—are celery, endive, coleworts, cabbage, savoys, broccoli, borecole, lettuce, leeks, strawberries, and the several sorts of perennial aromatic and pot herbs, where any are wanted. [See the different articles.]

—— *Likewise to plant in hot-beds*—asparagus mushrooms and cucumbers, for winter.

Asparagus beds—require no particular culture now, only to pull out large weeds. [See October.]

—— *Asparagus to force*—may be planted in a hot-bed (l.) three years old plants, for the first winter crop, to cut in November; and by planting some every month, is continued in succession all winter, &c. [See November.]

Artichokes—according as the heads are gathered, should have the remaining part of the stems broke down, to encourage shoots from the bottom more effectually before winter.

Aromatic herbs—should have the decayed flower-stalks cut down (m. l.) and the beds cleaned from weeds.

—— Several sorts of aromatics may be planted in full plants, as thyme, sage, savory, hyssop, pot marjoram, balm, tansey, tarragon, penny-royal, and roots of mint; also several by rooted slips, roots parted. [See also pot herbs.]

Cauliflowers—the Michaelmas, or autumn and winter crop, hoe and draw earth to the stems.

—— *The young cauliflower plants*---of the August sowing, for the next year's early and main crops, should now be pricked out, (m. l.) or when the first two or three leaves, are about an inch or inch and half broad, pricking them into nursery beds of rich high earth, three inches asunder, watered and shaded till they take root. [See October.]

Cauliflower seed ripening—be now very careful to guard from birds, and gather as it acquires maturity (m. l.)

Beans—late crop, hoe and earth-up the stems, (b. m.) and if in blossom or podding, let the stems be topped, if not done, to make them fruit more abundant, and sooner in perfection, before the approach of cold weather.

Broccoli and borecole—plant out the last crop (b. m.)

—— Early planted broccoli will begin to head (m. l.)

Balm and burnet—may be planted, or the roots slipped, and plant the off-sets.

Beet (red)—the roots will now be of proper size to take up for use occasionally (m. l.)

Borage—may be sowed, and plants thinned.

Cabbage-plants—of the July sowing, plant out plenty (b. m.) for young winter cabbages, and cabbage coleworts; hoe and earth the stems of advancing crops.

—— *The August sowed young cabbage plants*—for next summer's early and first main crops, prick in nursery beds, three or four inches asunder, and watered, [See October] and may sow a finishing small crop (b.)

—— *Red cabbage*—early planted will now be in tolerably

full cabbaged heads (m. l.) to cut for use as occasionally wanted.

Celery—of advanced growth in trenches, earth-up every week to blanch of proper length.

—— Plant out late crops of celery in moderate trenches for winter and spring.

Cardoons—of full growth, tie up the leaves and land up the plants.

Lettuces—raised last month, should now be thinned, and plant some largest (b. m.) for late autumn crops, and for winter; and some on warm borders (m. l.) for winter and early spring, &c.

——— Sow lettuce of cos, Cilicia, brown Dutch, hardy green, and imperial, &c. (b. and m. l.) some to plant in warm borders, and in frames and hand-glasses, &c. others remain where sowed: all for spring and early summer crops.

Marjoram (sweet) and marigold flowers—finish gathering, to dry for winter.

Melons—continue to defend now from rain, and cold nights, with frames, glasses, and mats, &c. both those with ripening and advancing fruit.

Green melons for mangoes—may be gathered in latest fruit, not likely to ripen.

Chervil and corn sallad—finish sowing for winter and spring.

Cucumbers—continue to water if hot dry weather (b. m.) and now gather full supplies of young fruit for pickling before (m.) after which they will decline in production and the fruit become spotted.

—— Gather large cucumbers for mangoes.

—— Defend some holes of best young cucumbers with a frame and glasses (b. m.) to continue them longer in production, of handsome clean fruit.

—— Or plant or sow cucumbers in a hot-bed (b.) to produce late in autumn, &c.

Coriander—where in request for soups, &c. sow in a warm border or frame for winter.

Coleworts—plant out full crops for winter and spring, of the July and earliest August-sowed plants in rows, a foot distance, by six or eight inches in the rows: may sow a small last crop (b.) for late planting in October and November, to remain for spring.

Carrots—young plants of August sowing for spring, weed and thin three inches asunder.

—— The main crops of spring-sowed carrots are now in good perfection, but not to take up for keeping in sand for winter, till (l.) Oct. or (b.) Nov.

Cardoon—celery, and finochio, earth up.

Endive—plant succession crops of green curled in a dry situation, for winter and spring; and full grown plants tie up the leaves in dry weather, of some every week to blanch.

Herbs—finish gathering all sorts (b.) to dry for keeping.

Horse-radish—the roots now well advanced may dig up some for use, as wanted. [See October.]

Kidney-beans—last advancing young crops, hoe and earth up (b. m.)

Herbary—clear from weeds and decayed stalks, and furnish with any necessary aromatics and pot herbs wanted (b. m.)

Hoe—in dry weather, to kill weeds between all growing crops, and in vacant ground.

Jerusalem artichokes—now arrived to a tolerable growth in the roots, begin to take up as wanted (m. l.)

Leeks—plant the last crop (b. m.) and hoe others.

Love-apples—will now be ripe to gather for soups, pickling, &c. or the young green fruit are also proper to pickle.

Nasturtium berries—gather to pickle when in full growth, and while they remain green and fleshy.

Onions—the bulbous crop in full-grown bulbs for keeping, pulled up last month, finish housing while dry.

—— Small bulbous onions to pickle will be in perfection for that occasion.

—— Finish sowing onions, (b.) the last crop to stand the winter for spring and early summer, [See August] and carefully hand weed those come up.

—— Plant coleworts, cabbage, broccoli, borecole, savoys, celery, endive, lettuce, leeks, strawberries, and may plant most sorts of aromatic and pot-herbs.

Parseneps—advancing now to large growth, may begin taking up as wanted (m. l.)

Peas—last crop hoe and stick (b.)

Pompions and gourds—are now ripe for gathering.

Potatoes—advanced now to a considerable size of the roots, may be taken up plentifully for present use as wanted; but not wholly, nor in large quantities, for keeping till (m. l.) October.

Parsley grown rank—cut down close, to come up in a thick low growth, for winter.

Pot herbs—may be planted of evergreen kinds, to use in winter, as thyme, sage, savory, winter marjoram, burnet, sorrel, &c. in rooted full plants, or large off-sets or slips rooted; and may also plant mint, tarragon, fennel, pennyroyal, balm, &c.

—— Or may also slip or part the roots of the above pot herbs for further increase.

—— The pot herbs raised from seed, slips, &c. in spring and summer, may now be transplanted where they are to remain.

Prick out—young cauliflowers, cabbages, coleworts, and lettuce.

Radishes—sow the last principal autumn crop (b. m.) for drawing in October and November.

Sage—may still be planted where required, and rooted young, or full plants.

Salsafy, scorzonera, skirrets, and large rooted parsley—are now in perfection in the root.

Seeds now ripe—gather of cauliflower, leeks, lettuce, radish, onions, spinach, &c.

Spinach—finish the last sowing of the prickly-seeded (b.) for winter and spring; and hoe and weed the August sowed crop, and the plants moderately thinned.

Savoys—finish planting the last late crop, for small heading, or savoy coleworts.

Strawberry beds—clear from the weeds, and cut away all the runner strings, keeping the main plants to single bunches.

—— *Plant strawberries*—(b. m.) of the strongest young runner plants, or young side off-sets, in beds, borders, fifteen to eighteen inches distance, or some in an edging.

Or if any young runner sets were planted into nursery beds in June or July, they will now be fine stout plants, of a stocky growth, for final planting, as above. [See June, &c.]

——— Also plant some good plants of scarlet and Alpine strawberries in pots, for forcing, both of two years old, to bear the ensuing forcing season, and young plants to grow to that age for the same occasion.

Small sallading—if wanted, sow once a week or fortnight.

Sowing—should be finished in spinach, lettuce, onions, radishes, coleworts, turneps, chervil, corn-sallad, coriander, and borage.

Turneps—may be sowed a small crop (b.) for spring, and hoe and thin the August-sowed plants.

Turnep radish—both of the white and red sorts, may be sowed (b. m.) to draw in October and November.

—— Also may sow black turnep-radish (b.) for winter.

—— Hoe and thin the last sowed turnep-radishes, the white and red sorts to about two or three inches, and the black six inches asunder.

Watering—is still necessary, in dry weather, to all new pricked out small plants, and others at first planting; also occasionally to seed-beds of late-sowed articles.

Weeding—must now be carefully attended to in seed-beds,

and others of autumn-raised young plants, as onions, spinach, lettuce, &c. and weeds advancing numerously between wide crops in rows, and in vacant ground, hoe down effectually in dry weather.

Turnip-cabbage—finish planting out (b. m.)

FRUIT-GARDEN.

In this month most sorts of wall and espalier fruit will be ripe and ripening, also many sorts on standards; and as the principal summer pruning and training in wall and espalier trees, was finished in the preceding months, that operation will now be inconsiderable, only to displace any autumnal after-shoots, or to reform casual irregularities, and to extend to the wall the elongated shoots of the former training.

Give still proper attention to wall trees and espaliers in general, it being a particular merit to continue them always well trained, appearing regular and agreeable to sight, and greatly beneficial to the trees and fruit.

The regulations in wall and espalier trees—now required, is principally to complete mostly all that is necessary (b. m.) in the operation of summer pruning and training.

Wall-trees—formerly regulated in the preceding months, go over and cut out any lately produced after-shoots, and nail in the others formerly trained, if any project from the wall, or increased considerably in length, training them in close and regular, not shortened, except where any overtop the wall considerably, or extend sideways beyond their limited bounds.

In peaches and nectarines—the fruit now ripening, cut away improper shoots, and keep the others trained in close, to admit the sun to give the fruit proper flavour.

Likewise in plums, pears, cherries, &c.—in wall-trees; give any requisite regulation as above.

In vines—the grapes now in full growth, and some ripening will require all possible benefit of the sun; the improper and unnecessary shoots should be pruned out, and shorten the long extended shoots, more or less, as it may seem necessary to reduce them within proper bounds; and let all the remaining proper shoots be trained in close and regular.

Fig-trees—having the fruit now ripening, and strong shoots advancing, should have irregular fore-rights cut out, and the others continue nailed in close to the wall.

Espalier trees—in general, give also any necessary regulation, as advised for the wall-trees.

In the above regulations of wall and espalier trees, generally continue the proper shoots entire, only shortening such as exceed the bounds of the wall, &c. above, or sideways, considerably.

Ripe fruit—will now be in perfection almost in general, to gather for present eating, as peaches, nectarines, plums, pears, late cherries; and in figs, grapes, apples, currants, raspberries, mulberries, filberts, and quinces.

Choice wall fruit—protect from birds, wasps, and flies; the former by nets, the two latter by phials of liquor to drown them.

Or ripe grapes—protect the best bunches in paper bags, or rather of thin gauze or crape.

Apples and pears ripe—are now plentiful, continuing in the summer kinds (b. m.) for present supply, but will not keep long; and the autumnal sorts (m. l.) both for immediate use, and to gather for keeping a short time, till the maturity of the winter fruit next month, &c.

Elderberries ripen—now in full perfection to be gathered for making elder wine.

Stones of plums and cherries—save to sow for stocks.

Borders designed for planting—with wall and espalier trees, begin to prepare, by trenching, manuring, &c.

FLOWER GARDEN, PLEASURE GROUND, AND SHRUBBERY.

As in this month and next various kinds of plants, shrubs, &c. may be planted, for furnishing the different compartments where necessary; preparations for that occasion may now be commenced at proper opportunities, and the several articles planted, as hereafter explained.

Continue in good order—all parts of those grounds, by trimming disorderly growths, hoeing and raking borders, and other compartments, clipping edgings, hedges, mowing, sweeping, and rolling grass, and gravel.

Forward digging—vacant beds and borders for bulbous roots, and other perennial and biennial flowering plants, to be planted this and next month.

Planting—may be performed in bulbous roots, various sorts of fibrous-rooted perennials and biennials, slips, off-sets, &c. and may be commenced in many shrubs and the tree kinds, particularly of the evergreen tribe; also deciduous sorts, (m. l.) when the leaves begin to decay.

Bulbous roots—that were taken up in summer, &c. may begin planting (m. l.) as crocus, snow drops, hyacinths, tulips,

jonquils, narcissuses, daffodils, bulbous irises, crown imperials, lilies, martagons, &c. in beds and borders.

——— The more curious bulbs of the above may be planted separately in beds, in rows six to nine inches asunder; the others in patches in the borders, three or four roots together, or the larger kinds singly; planting them two or three inches deep, according to the size of the respective bulbs.

Lily bulbs—of all the scaly tribe taken up after flowering, plant the principal part this month, as white lily, striped leaved lily, orange lily, martagon, crown imperials, &c. as these sort of bulbs will not keep long out of the ground without diminishing in strength.

——— Likewise finish transplanting these scaly bulbs, where required to remove them at this season or to part the off-sets, and on other occasions.

——— All bulbous off-sets plant now as soon as possible, in beds.

——— Finish sowing bulbous-root seed; (b. m.) and the seed-beds of last year have earth spread thin over the surface.

Autumnal bulbs—finish planting (b.) as colchicum, autumnal crocus and narcissus, Guernsey lily, Belladonna lily, &c. to flower the same autumn, this and next month.

Auriculas in pots—finish shifting, or fresh potting (b.) as in August: slip and plant the off-sets, and may sow seed.

——— Or may now (m. l.) plant auriculas in beds or borders.

Aconite (winter) a diminutive early flowering perennial may be planted (m. l.) [See October.]

Annual flowers—give water in dry weather to all those in pots; and save seed of all sorts according as they ripen, as they can only be raised from seed sowed annually.

——— Or tender curious annuals for seed, such as balsam, cock's-comb, tricolors, globe amaranthus, &c. defend some in pots, placed in frames, or glass-cases, &c. to be protected with the glasses from rain and cold, that the seed may ripen more effectually.

——— *Hardy annuals*—of larkspurs and persicaria and adonis, &c. may be sowed in borders (l.) to come up earlier in the spring, either in patches, and the places marked, or scattered promiscuously.

Anemones and ranunculuses—may be planted (l.) and seed sowed (b.) [See October.]

Biennial flowers—raised this year, may be planted out finally (m. l.) [See October.]

Carnation layers—well rooted, plant off from the stools into beds and pots.

Chrysanthemums—plant cuttings, or slips of the young shoots five or six inches long (b. m.) of some best double sorts, planting several or many together in largish pots, to move to shelter in winter; they will strike root, and form proper plants to transplant for early flowering next summer.

Box edgings—finish clipping (b. m.) and edgings may be planted, as directed in October.

Beds and borders vacant—should be digged and prepared, ready for bulbous roots and other plants.

Crown imperials—plant, and finish transplanting any that are intended.

Clipping—finish in all hedges and edgings.

Digging—should now be forwarded in all vacant compartments, where any kind of planting is intended of flowers, shrubs, &c. this or next month.

Daisies—may now be planted, old roots slipped or parted into separate off-sets, and planted in beds, borders, &c. and occasionally for edgings.

Decayed stalks and leaves—of flowers, &c. always clear away from among the growing plants.

Deciduous shrubs and trees—may begin planting some sorts (m. l.) or when the leaves are decaying.

Edgings—may be planted of box, thrift, daisies, pinks, London pride, strawberries, &c.

Edges of grass lawns, &c.—keep trimmed in always close and regular.

Evergreens—may now be planted (m. l.) in most sorts of shrubs and trees, and finish pruning any sorts where needful, and clipping hedges thereof.

——— Likewise make layers of evergreens, as lauristinus, alaternus, &c. and plant cuttings, especially laurel.

Firs, pines, cedars—and other evergreen tree kinds may begin planting (m. l.)

Flowering shrubs—of the deciduous kinds, may begin to plant (l.) also evergreen sorts (b. m. l.)

Gravel walks—should still be continued always clean from weeds and litter, and often rolled.

Grass lawns, plats, &c.—still keep in very neat order, by proper rolling, mowing, and sweeping.

——— For new grass work, or to repair old, may now cut and lay turf successfully; or in want of a sufficiency of turf, may occasionally sow grass seed (b. m.) previously in either method forming a surface of light dry soil, firm and smooth.

Guernsey and Belladonna lilies—plant in pots (b.) to move under shelter of a frame, &c. at the approach of cold or bad weather, that they may flower in good perfection the same season.

Ground for planting—prepare by digging, &c. such vacant compartments as are intended for that occasion.

Hedges—finish clipping, (b. m.)

Hyacinths—begin planting (m. l.) in beds and borders. [See October.]

Hydranga—a beautiful flowering plant, may now be planted in pots, and placed under shelter (l.) for protection in winter.

Hoe and rake borders, &c.—in dry weather, to continue them always in clean neat order.

Laurels—may now be planted, (m. l.) and plant cuttings of the young shoots for increase.

Off-sets—plant of all sorts of bulbous roots; and may slip and plant off-sets of fibrous-rooted perennials.

Lay evergreens—of the young shoots, and former layers rooted plant off.

Layers of carnations—separate from the old stools, and planted in beds, pots, &c.

Lay turf—where wanted for any grass compartments.

Lilies—finish planting and transplanting.

Magnolia (laurel-leaved) rhododendron and arbutus—beautiful evergreens may be planted, allowing them a warm conspicuous situation.

Mignonette—plant some in pots, or sow seed to stand the winter under shelter of frames, &c. for early flowering.

Part roots—of perennials done flowering to increase such as are required. Many sorts may now be propagated by that method.

Polyanthus—may be planted, and old roots slipped or parted for propagation.

Perennials—may now be planted principally for flowering the ensuing year, either young plants or old ones done flowering; or by slips, off-sets, or parting the roots thereof; and plant out from the nursery beds (m. l.) young plants of this year's raising into flower-borders, &c. where they are to remain.

Plants in pots—may be fresh earthed at top of the pots, or the top earth loosened; or where wanted, shifted or fresh potted.

Planting—may be performed in beds, borders, pots, &c. of many sorts of flower plants and bulbous roots for flowering next year; also in evergreens; likewise several sorts of deciduous shrubs (l.) and root off-sets and slips of various perennial flowers.

Pole-grass—to scatter worm-cast earth, where it appears thrown up considerably, defacing the surface of principal lawns, plats, &c. [See February.]

Pipings of pinks and carnations—that are well struck and

advanced in growth, should be planted in beds, borders, and pots.

Prune disorderly shoots—in shrubs and flower plants.

Rolling—perform occasionally in grass and gravel.

Seeds of flowers—gather according as they ripen; but particularly of all annuals and biennials.

Shrubberies—prune and hoe; in which the requisite care now is principally to reduce any very long rambling shoots of disorderly growth, and to hoe up all weeds between the shrubs, and then to rake off the loose weeds and litter, forming a clean, neat surface.

Shrubs may be planted—of evergreens, (b. m. l.) and deciduous, flowering shrubs. (l.)

Slip roots—of perennials done flowering to propagate the sorts required.

Thrift—may be planted for edgings, and as a flowering plant, in borders, &c. When designed for an edging, it may either be planted close, to form at once a complete edging, or where the sets are scarce, may be planted two or three inches asunder to grow close by degrees. [See October.]

Tree planting—may be commenced in evergreens (m.) and some deciduous kinds (l.) when the leaves begin to decay.

Turf for grass-plats, lawns, &c.—may be cut and laid, or grass seed may be sowed, (b. m.) for the same occasion.

Tulips—may begin to plant (m. l.) [See October.]

Watering—will still be necessary in dry weather to plants in pots, and new planted perennials, shrubs, and trees.

WORK IN THE NURSERY.

In this month it is proper to commence the preparation of ground for autumnal planting of various nursery trees and shrubs; which in some sorts, evergreens particularly, may be proceeded in towards the middle or latter end of the present month; but in others, more generally in October and November. Also may begin the autumn planting of cuttings and making layers; likewise to perform any necessary pruning, and to complete all requisite pruning in evergreens in particular, and at this time to continue particular care to exterminate weeds.

Begin to dig or trench ground—preparatory to the autumn planting of trees and shrubs, and sowing seeds thereof, that it may be ready, and have the advantage of meliorating by the weather to an improved state, for the reception of plants and seeds; some the latter end of this month, but the general part the next month and November.

Autumn planting—may be proceeded in towards the middle and latter end of this month, in many sorts of evergreens; but not so general in deciduous trees and shrubs, only some particular kinds, in which the leaves have begun to decay towards the end of the month, discovering they have terminated their year's growth.

In the evergreen tribe however—many sorts may be successfully transplanted (m. l.) according as required, such as pines, firs, cedars, laurels, bays, arbutus, alaternus, phillyreas, and many others.

But in the deciduous trees and shrubs—although some particular sorts discovering a general decay of the leaves towards (l.) may be successfully transplanted, it would be advisable that any general transplanting be deferred till (m. l.) next month, or beginning of November as before intimated.

Make layers of evergreens—in the young wood of last summer, by which several sorts may be propagated; such as alaternus, phillyrea, laurel, lauristinus, &c. they will be rooted by the following autumn, for planting off into nursery rows.

Plant cuttings of laurel—which is the principal method of propagating this beautiful evergreen, and by which it is raised abundantly; choosing the middling strong shoots of this last summer, cut six or eight to ten or twelve inches long, divested of the lower leaves, and planted in a shady border, and watered: they will probably mostly emit roots the same season.

May begin the autumn planting of suckers and cuttings, (m. l.)—of several sorts of deciduous trees and shrubs.

Plant suckers, (m. l.)—of roses, lilacs, gooseberries, currants, raspberries, and several other deciduous shrubs, especially towards (l.) when the leaves begin to decay.

Plant cuttings, (m. l.)—of honey-suckles, gooseberries, currants, and several other deciduous kinds, now the leaves decaying and the trees done growth; and being thus early planted in autumn, will have a chance of rooting the same season, or early in spring.

Plant in pots—any curious young evergreens, as arbutus, magnolia, rhododendron, Chinese arbor-vitæ, and several others, and of any other exotic kinds, of rather tender nature, in order to be removed in their respective pots under temporary shelter in winter.

Likewise may plant in pots—any other evergreen of the common hardy kinds, as may be required for particular occasions.

Plant off-layers of evergreens, (m.l.)—of such as are properly rooted, either of the last autumn, spring, or summer laying, planting the hardy sorts in beds; and any of a tender quality, plant in pots, to have occasional protection in winter.

Watering—will still be necessary occasionally, if hot, dry weather; especially to all plants in pots, and to any lately planted, both in pots and the full ground.

Pruning of evergreens—where any is necessary, may now be performed in most sorts, and in which any considerable work of that kind required, should now be completed before cold weather prevails.

—— Or may also give any necessary pruning to deciduous trees and shrubs; but as these may be safely pruned in any of the ensuing months, it is not so material now.

Weeds—now generally rising numerously, should be very diligently destroyed at this season, before setting in of much wet weather; taking, therefore, opportunity of dry days, hoe between the nursery-rows, &c. cutting the weeds clean up by the roots, that they may be effectually killed; and let seed-beds, &c. be carefully hand-weeded.

Propagate herbaceous plants—of fibrous-rooted perennials, by parting and slipping the off-sets of the roots, especially in those done flowering, and plant the slips and off-sets in beds and borders, pots, &c.

Save plum and cherry stones—ready for sowing, (m. l.) or in October, to raise supplies of stocks for grafting and budding.

GREEN-HOUSE.

The green-house plants continue still mostly in the open air till towards (m. or l.) when, or before, if cold or very wet weather, the tenderest kinds may be housed, especially succulent plants, oranges, and lemons, &c. but if a warm season, they may remain till (l.) this, or (b. m.) next month.

Give proper attention to all the plants—to clear off decayed leaves, prune disorderly and decayed shoots, weed and stir the top earth the in pots, and give necessary watering.

Shifting—into larger pots, and some fresh earth, should now be mostly finished in any plants required.

Fresh earth—to the tops of pots in general (m. l.) before removal into the green-house, would prove beneficial, first loosing the surface of that in the pots.

——— *Or if not fresh earthed*—may loosen the surface earth in the pots occasionally.

Watering—is still necessary; but more moderately after (m.)

But succulent plants—give but very little water now.

Pruning—perform occasionally, to reduce any rude or rambling irregular shoots, whereby to preserve the heads in some

regular order, and cut out all decayed parts, both of young and old growth, that casually occur.

In oranges and lemons—thin the young fruit, if set thick in clusters.

Myrtles and geraniums, &c.—where any were bedded in natural earth in May or June, plant now with balls separately in pots; also cuttings planted early, several or many together in larger pots, &c. if well struck, and advanced in top growth, may plant off in small pots singly; or if small, may remain, or prick several together in large pots, till more advanced in growth; all watered.

—— Cuttings or slips of myrtle, small young shoots, may be planted (b.) in pots, &c. covered down with a hand-glass; and may be forwarded in a bark-bed.

Plant—in separate small pots, any newly-raised green-house exotics remaining several together in larger pots, &c. either young seedlings, or cuttings and layers, &c. that are effectually struck and well rooted, and of some advanced top growth.

Propagate green-house plants—some by suckers, others by rooted off-sets and slips, &c.

Succulent plants—any in want of larger pots may be shifted; suckers and off-sets planted; and if cold, or very wet weather prevail, remove into the green-house the more tender sorts; as ficoideses, cereuses, African aloes, &c.

In planting succulents—give them generally a light dry soil.

Removal into the green-house—commence, if cold or excessive wet weather, first in the more tender succulents (b. m.) and the oranges, lemons, &c. (m. l.) or, the weather warm, may remain till (b.) next month.

Give the full air—to plants now removed into the green-house.

HOT-HOUSE AND STOVE.

In the hot-house and pinery, continue still a proper bark-bed heat; give air and water, and finish shifting into larger pots.

Keep all the plants clean—by washing or watering off any foulness, clearing off decayed leaves, dead shoots, and to exterminate all insects as well as possible.

Shifting—where necessary, into larger pots and fresh earth; finish (b. m.)

Succession pine-apple plants—if not shifted, as advised in August, should now be fully finished (b.) and the heat of the

bark-bed revived, ready for replunging the pots after shifting, giving moderate supplies of water. [See August.]

——— No shifting is required in the pines now in present fruit.

Fruiting pine-apple plants—now in fruit, supply with moderate watering; but more moderately to those in ripe fruit or ripening.

Admit fresh air—still freely in warm sun shining days; but diminish the admission of air as the heat of the season decreases.

Give water occasionally—to the hot-house plants in general, but more moderately to the succulent tribe.

Propagate hot-house plants—by suckers, off-sets, slips, seeds, &c. assisted by the bark-bed.

Plant suckers and crowns—of pine-apple plants, to raise successional supplies; the suckers are afforded from the bottom of old plants, and crowns and small suckers from the ripe fruit, laying them to dry the succulency at bottom a few days, then planted each in a small pot, and plunged in a bark-bed.

Trim and regulate—any hot-house plants in which disorderly growths occur in the branchy-shooting kinds, pruning and trimming to order straggling and run-away shoots; and in general cut out all dead parts, and clear off decayed leaves.

Fresh earth—the tops of any pots where it appears necessary, or to others in which the earth is hard crusted, loosen the surface a little.

OCTOBER.

KITCHEN GARDEN.

In this month all sowing and principal planting should be finished for this year; some necessary for winter, others to remain for next spring and summer.

At this season many crops will be consumed, or past perfection; the ground should be cleared from the refuse, and weeds hoed down, or the ground digged: and all advancing crops should have a thorough clearing from autumnal seed-weeds, &c. some want earthing up, and several root esculents want digging up, to preserve for winter eating.

Attend to the necessary sowing and planting—now required; and perform the principal part early in the month (b. m.).

The sowing crops—are but few; chiefly a small crop of lettuce, some radishes, successions of small sallading, and a few early peas to come in forward next summer.

Planting is still necessary—to perform in several crops; as cabbage, cauliflowers, coleworts, celery, endive, lettuce, and to late broccoli and borecole; also may plant garlic and shalots, several aromatic or pot herbs, some plants for seed, and a few early beans for next summer; and to plant in hot-beds, asparagus, mushrooms, or occasionally cucumbers.

Hand-weeding and hoeing—now demand particular attention to extirpate the numerous production of autumnal weeds before winter.

Prepare vacant ground—by dunging and digging for present and future cropping.

Asparagus beds—begin the winter dressing (m. l.) by cutting down the stalks of the asparagus, now done growth; hoe off all weeds into the alleys, which then mark out the proper width, and then proceed to dig each alley along regularly between the beds, bury the weeds in the bottom as you advance in the digging, and, at the same time, as you proceed, spread a good portion of the earth evenly over each bed.

——— Manure to old asparagus beds will be beneficial once in two or three years, applying it at this season, after clearing away the stalks and weeds as above, using principally rotted dung, laid both on the beds and alleys, fork it into the beds moderately, and dig in that of the alleys, spreading some of the earth thereof over the beds regularly as you advance in the digging.

——— *The young seedling asparagus*—remaining in the seed-beds, need only the weeds and decayed stalks of the plants cleared away (m. l.) or may also spread a little short dry dung over.

——— *Asparagus to force*—may be planted in a hot-bed, three year old plants, for a second or first winter crop. [See September and November.]

Artichokes—need no particular culture till next month.

Cabbage plants—of the August sowing, finish pricking some in nursery beds; and some of strong growth plant out finally for the early crop; the rest not till the spring; or pricked in beds till that season.

Coleworts—finish planting the principal winter and spring crops.

Cauliflower plants—the August-sowed, for next year's early and main crops, should now be planted and pricked in places of occasional shelter for the winter; plant some out finally, (m. l.) in well-dunged, ground under protection of hand-glasses, placed a yard asunder, planting out two or three under each, or may

plant five or six in each glass, to remain for thinning out in the spring; and the rest prick in frames three inches apart, to be defended occasionally with the glasses, or in beds to cover with mats, and in warm borders; to remain for final spring planting.

——— The cauliflowers planted in July, for the present autumn crop, will now be in production.

Aromatic herbs—clear from decayed stalks, the beds from weeds, dig or hoe between the plants where they admit; or in some, of close running growth, as mint, &c. spread some earth over the beds.

Broccoli or borecole—of the advancing crops, hoe and draw earth to the stems, and finish planting out any remaining young plants (b.) for spring.

In the early summer planted broccoli and borecole—the former will now begin to produce some small or middling central flower-heads, in the manner of cauliflowers, for use the present autumn; and successionally in winter, &c. and the borecole will be of full growth, in large spreading open heads of fimbriate-curled leaves, to gather occasionally at this season, and in winter for open greens; and the stems remaining, will produce a plentiful secondary crop of fine sprouts.

Beans—plant a small crop of mazagans in a south border (l.) in a row close to the wall, &c. or in cross rows:—and for transplanting, may towards (l.) this or any time next month sow some thick together in a bed of light mellow earth, in which they can readily have occasional protection in winter, when severe weather, to preserve them more effectually in good condition, to transplant in proper order towards the spring. [See November.]

Cardoons—finish landing up fully, at least eighteen inches to two feet, or more.

Carrots—the main crops now at full growth dig up (m. l.) either part or wholly, and cutting off the tops close, then deposit them in dry sand, in alternate layers, under cover, ready for use in winter.

——— Clean and thin young carrots, of the August sowing, for spring.

Celery—of advanced growth, earth-up fully, and plant out late crops for spring.

Cresses, mustard, &c.—for sallading, sow in warm borders, and under frames, &c. or hand-glasses, towards (l.)

Cucumbers—will now be mostly past production, unless they were defended in September (b.) with frames and glasses, or some then planted in a hot-bed; or, if young plants were raised, may now be planted in a hot-bed (b. m.)

Dung ground—from old hot-beds, and with other dung; being careful to apply it where most wanted.

Dig vacant ground—both for the present occasional crops, and the rest ridged up to lie fallow.

Endive—tie up every week some full grown plants, and plant the last crops in warm dry south borders, or raised banks.

Earth-up—celery as it advances in growth, and cardoons land up fully.

Garlick and shallots—may be planted (m. l.) in dry ground for next summer, to come in earlier and stronger than the spring-planted.

Herbary of aromatics and pot herbs—clean and dress. [See aromatics.]

Hoeing—perform in dry weather, to cut down all autumnal weeds before winter, or much rain; likewise hoe between rows of young cabbages, coleworts, savoys, broccoli, &c. and draw earth to the stems; also between leeks, lettuce, endive, celery, &c. and small hoe spinach.

Hand-weeding—attend to carefully in the beds of young winter onions, spinach, lettuce, &c.

Horse-radish—in plantations of one or two years old or more, will now be advanced to eligible growth and perfection to dig up as wanted; digging a trench along to the bottom of the roots, cut them off level close to the old stools, leaving these undisturbed for future production, turning the earth of the next trench over them to a proper depth.

Hot dung—provide and prepare to make hot-beds for forcing, where required.

Hot-bed forcing—is only practised occasionally at this time for asparagus, mushrooms, and sometimes cucumbers.

Jerusalem artichokes—are now of full growth in the root to dig up for use as wanted, or (m. l.) to take up a quantity to house for winter.

Onions—the young winter crop, will now require a very careful hand-weeding, not thinned.

——— The housed bulbous onions turn over, and pick out any that decay.

Melons—late ripening, defend now constantly with glasses, &c.

Mint roots—may be planted in drills. [See November.]

Love-apples ripe—gather some in bunches to house for future use.

Leeks—finish planting (b.) and hoe advanced crops, to kill the rising weeds.

Lettuce—the autumn-sowed young plants, thin moderately,

and plant out some of different sorts of the first raised on warm borders (b. m.) for winter, and early spring sallads; leaving also some in the seed-beds; and of the younger lettuce, plant or prick a quantity (m. l.) in south borders and warmest quarters, to remain wholly for spring, &c. likewise of the last sowed, prick some cos kinds in frames or beds, to have shelter of glasses or mats in winter, for spring and early summer crops; or plant some also under hand-glasses.

—— Plant also some strongest lettuce plants in warm borders or frames, for transplanting into hot-beds in winter for forcing.

Mushroom beds—if omitted making before, may still be made, and continue them constantly covered with straw and mats.

—— When mushroom beds are in production, look over them often, to gather the produce while young; covering the bed again directly.

Peas—may be sowed (l.) of the early hot-spurs, &c. in a warm border, for the first early crop next summer.

Parsley grown rank—cut down close (b. m.) to shoot out afresh before winter.

Large rooted parsley—is now in perfection in the roots to take up for use as wanted.

Parsneps—are now in good perfection.

Potatoes—acquired full growth (m. l.) should be wholly digged up with forks, and housed to keep for winter and following spring, &c. [See November.]

Pot-herbs, &c.—may be planted of mint, penny-royal, balm, tansey, tarragon, sorrel, burnet, cives, fennel, &c. by rooted plants, slipping or parting roots; also rooted full plants of sage, thyme, hyssop, savory, rue, and rosemary: thus continuing green for use all winter.

——— The young pot-herbs raised this year may be transplanted finally (b.) where they are to remain.

Spinach—winter crop, clear well from weeds by hand or small hoeing, and thin the plants moderately.

Red cabbage and red beet root—are of full growth for use as wanted.

Radishes—may be sowed (b.) to draw young the two following months.

Salsafy, scorzonera, and Hamburgh parsley roots—are now in good perfection.

Seed plants—may now be planted of several principal sorts that are of full growth, as cabbages, savoys, parsneps, carrots, turneps, red beet, and onions, of large sound dried bulbs; and off-sets from old roots of Welch onions: the cabbage and savoys trench down to their heads, in rows two feet asunder; the others planted over their crowns, the same distance.

Seeds saved this year—finish beating or rubbing out, and bagged-up, &c. for next year's sowing.

Small sallading—of cresses, mustard, radish, &c. sow on a warm border, or (l.) under hand-glasses or frames.

Savoys—the main crops will now be finely cabbaged for general use.

Strawberry-beds—which have not yet had the autumn dressing, should now have it completed according to the directions in September.

——— Also strawberries intended to be planted this season, should now be done as soon as possible, as directed last month.

——— And for forcing, may plant strawberries in pots, if not done, two years plants of a proper growth for immediate bearing, in the ensuing forcing season, transplanting with balls into the pots. [See September, &c.]

Thyme, sage, savory, winter marjoram, rue, and hyssop—may still be planted (b.) in rooted full plants; removing and planting them, with balls of earth to the roots, and they will be ready for occasional winter use.

Turneps—latest crops finish hoeing and thinning (b.) about six inches asunder.

Watering—now will hardly be required, unless it proves very dry weather, when a gentle watering may be given to any small new put-out plants.

Weeds—now destroy in all parts, by hand-weeding and hoeing before winter.

Root esculents—may now be digged up in several sorts (l.) to house in sand for winter; as carrots, potatoes, parsneps, red beet, Jerusalem artichokes, salsafy, scorzonera, &c.

FRUIT GARDEN.

Wall trees will still require some attention to nail in any projecting shoots, to admit all possible benefit of the sun, to forward the ripening and flavour of late fruit, of peaches, grapes, plums, &c.

Likewise in this month, many sorts of the autumnal eating and winter fruits, of apples and pears, &c. will require general gathering.

The work of planting and winter pruning—may also be commenced this month (m. l.) in several sorts of fruit trees.

Peaches and nectarines, late ripening on wall-trees—still requiring all possible assistance of the sun, should have all the

shoots of the trees continued trained in close and regular to the wall, that they may not shade, but admit the sun freely to the fruit.

Grapes ripening—demand attention, to assist them with the full benefit of the sun, not suffering any improper shoots, or others of projecting growth, to shade them; but cut away all useless after productions, and nail in the proper shoots close to the wall.

Other ripening wall fruit—as plums, pears, &c. should also have the same care as for the peaches and grapes; continuing the shoots nailed in close to admit the full sun.

Continue to defend ripe grapes—from birds, either by netting them, or by bagging the bunches separately in gauze, crape, or paper bags, (b.) but the two former, where attainable, are preferable to paper for this occasion.

Fruit is now ripe, or at mature growth—for gathering in most sorts, both in wall trees, espaliers, and standards, as peaches, figs, grapes, some late nectarines, many sorts of plums, pears, apples; also medlars, quinces, and some late cherries on north walls, currants, filberts, hazel-nuts, wallnuts, chesnuts, &c. and of which different fruit some are proper to gather principally for present eating, other for keeping a short time, and all winter, and till next spring and summer, as many sorts of winter apples and pears, particularly.

All stone fruits—now remaining on the trees, as peaches, plums, &c. will ripen fully this month for present eating, but will not keep long after being gathered.

Grapes, late ripe—may be gathered (m. l.) cut with part of the shoots, and hang them up on lines in some dry warm apartment; they will improve and continue good some considerable time, for eating as wanted.

The kernelled fruit, &c.—of the late kinds for winter, now remaining on the trees, &c. will all attain full maturity for gathering this month, as apples, pears, medlars, quinces, services, and berberries.

Gather apples and pears—both of the autumnal sorts (b.) for present supply, and to house for keeping a short time; and all the winter kinds (m. l.) some for immediate use, and the greater part for keeping several months, and to acquire mature ripeness as they lie in the fruitery, in which many of the eating winter pears in particular require to lie one, two or three months, in several different sorts, to acquire proper mellowness: but for baking, stewing, &c. any sort may be used both for immediate occasions, and as hereafter wanted, during their continuance.

The maturity of the fruit—or full growth on the trees in apples and pears, is discoverable often by their easily quitting the wood,

or frequently falling; and in many of the summer and autumnal sorts particularly by changing yellowish, &c. or becoming mellow; though this does not occur in many of the winter kinds: and all sorts designed for keeping, should be gathered before mellow ripeness.

To gather apples and pears, &c. for keeping—they should be mostly plucked by hand not to bruise them, which would be unavoidable if shaken down.

——— Carry them, as gathered, into some dry apartment, each sort together in an heap to remain several days to sweat and discharge the watery moisture, which prepares them better for keeping: then being wiped dry should be deposited in the fruitery, &c. upon shelves or other compartments, each sort separate either in single layers, or if straightened for room, several layers one upon another; and, if thickly covered with clean dry straw, to exclude the external air, damps, wet and frost, they will keep in greater perfection for use as wanted.

——— They should be occasionally looked over to pick out any that casually decay.

Quinces and medlars—now at maturity, (m. l.) should be gathered and housed for keeping.

——— Some medlars may be laid in moist bran, to forward their peculiar softness requisite to render them eatable.

Wallnuts and chesnuts—being now fully ripe, should be gathered both for present supply, and for keeping; are of full maturity when the outer husks begin to open naturally, ready to discharge the nuts.

Services will be ready to gather—(l.) and housed to become soft and mellow for eating.

Berberries now ripe—may be gathered for preserving, &c.

Planting fruit-trees—may be commenced towards (m. l.) or when the leaves are beginning to decay, which imply that the trees are done growth; and there is much advantage in early autumn planting.

Prepare for planting—borders, intended for wall trees and espaliers, by digging, &c. if for any general plantation; or where a poor light soil add some rich manure of rotten dung, and a supply of loamy, or other fresh good earth, either wholly, or, at present, only in the places for the trees; also for standards, if the ground is unfavourable, and improvement is thought requisite, give amendment in the same manner; however, it is necessary to observe, that fruit trees may be planted in any common, or tolerably good ground, of a garden, orchard, or field-land, &c. without any or much amendation besides the general culture of the ground.

Wall-tree planting—may be commenced occasionally (b.m.l.)

in apricots, peaches, nectarines, plums, cherries, and pears, done growth, the leaves decaying.

Planting espaliers—where intended, may be proceeded in towards (m. l.) in apples, pears, quinces, &c. done growing, as observed of the wall trees.

Standards likewise may be planted—towards (m. l.) of apples, pears, cherries, &c. agreeable to the above observations.

Gooseberries, currants, and raspberries—may now be planted (b. m. l.)

But for general planting—next month is also an eligible season for all sorts of fruit-trees.

Winter pruning—may be begun occasionally in early wall-trees (l.) if the leaves are fallen, though next month is time enough to commence that business generally.

Orchards of fruit-trees designed for planting—begin to prepare the ground, making choice of a proper situation, and eligible fertile soil, not too low and wet, nor of a very gravelly or clayey nature, but of a moderately dry mellow temperament, and in which, may either dig the ground along five or ten feet wide for each row of trees, or only dig proper holes ready for planting them: or if an unfavourable soil, or of an uncultivated state, it may be improved by adding manure of rotten dung and good fresh earth, and digging it in of some considerable width, where each tree is to stand, ready for early planting next month, as observed in the preceding page.

Sow plum and cherry stones—to raise stocks for building and grafting.

Cuttings and suckers—of gooseberries and currants, &c. may now be planted (m. l.)

Fruit-trees for forcing—plant (m. l.) in hot walls and other forcing departments, as peaches, nectarines, apricots, grapes, plums, cherries, figs, &c. mostly such as are advanced to a proper age for immediate bearing; or if in pots, or transplanted with full balls to the roots, may be forced the ensuing season, or otherwise the year after.

FLOWER GARDEN, PLEASURE GROUND, AND SHRUBBERY.

In this month the several compartments of the flower-garden, pleasure-ground, &c. should be prepared in the best order, to remain clean and neat for the winter season; and in which may commence general autumn planting in many sorts of plants, roots, shrubs, &c. required.

Preparations for planting—should now be forwarded, by

digging vacant beds, and borders for bulbous roots, and various fibrous-rooted flower plants, also compartments for shrubbery planting.

Planting—may be performed in all sorts of bulbous and tuberous flower roots, fibrous-rooted perennials, and biennials; all kinds of evergreens, and many sorts of other shrubs and trees.

Bulbous and tuberous roots—may now be planted of all the hardy sorts, for the main blow next year, as hyacinths, tulips, jonquils, narcissus, gladioles, bulbous and tuberous irises, crocuses, snow drops, &c. some retained to plant in a month or two after, or towards spring for successional flowering, all planted in beds, borders, and some in pots.

——— In planting them in beds, set them six to nine inches asunder, two to three inches deep; small roots only two inches deep, and six inches asunder.

——— *The planting in borders*—perform principally in patches, three, four, or five together; crocusses and snow drops nearest the edge.

——— *Bulbs of lilies, crown imperials, and fritillarias*—should be mostly all planted, especially all the scaly-rooted kinds of lilies, &c. that were taken up in summer or autumn after they were done flowering, for these sorts do not keep well long out of the ground, like solid bulbs.

——— Or where any white or other lilies are unavoidably or occasionally taken up at this time, it is advisable to plant them again as soon as possible, otherwise it will retard the flowering in perfection next summer.

——— *All off-sets of bulbs*—finish planting (b. m.)

Plant bulbs in water-glasses—as dwarf tulips, hyacinths, polyanthus-narcissus, jonquils, &c. to flower early in a house, placed near the windows.

——— Or may also plant full bulbs in pots, and water-glasses, placed in a green-house, to forward their flowering, or for forcing in a hot-house, &c.

Transplanting bulbs—that have remained in the ground, is not proper at this season for general practice, only where particularly required, or to part them when grown into large bunches, and immediately re-planted; but the general removal of the choicer kinds of bulbs should be principally done in summer, &c. soon after flowering, otherwise is apt to prevent their blowing in full perfection the ensuing year.

Anemones and ranunculuses—may be planted now for early spring flowering, in rows six inches asunder and two deep.

Annual flower-seeds—finish gathering (b. m.) when dry weather.

——— *All annuals done flowering*, &c.—pull clean up, as

they do not survive to flower again; except sometimes in India pink, and cuttings of chrysanthemum if sheltered from cold.

——— *Preserve annuals in winter*—young plants of mignonette, and ten weeks stocks, cuttings of double chrysanthemums, all in pots, sheltered in a frame or green-house, to flower early the ensuing spring.

Autumnal bulbs in flower—protect the tender sorts from rain and cold, as Guernsey and Belladonna lily, or any in pots may be placed in a frame or green-house, &c.

Auriculas and carnations in pots—remove to a warm border, or the choice sorts into a frame (m. l.) to have occasional shelter in winter, from severe frost and snow, and excessive rains; but fully exposed to the free air in all open dry mild weather.

——— Finish planting auriculas and carnations, in pots or borders, &c.

Aconite (winter, a small bulbo-tuberous root)—plant in the edge or front of a border for early flowering in January or February, &c.

Autumnal planting—may be performed in most bulbous, tuberous, and fibrous-rooted flowers, to blow next year; and in many tree and shrub kinds.

Arbutus—a fine evergreen and flowering shrub; and ornamental in its beautiful strawberry-like fruit at this season, may now be planted in a warm, dry situation.

Box edgings—finish entirely all clipping (b.) before the season of frosty weather.

——— *New box edgings may be planted*—slip the box moderately small, with roots to each slip; prune the long roots and tops even; then make up the edge of the border firm and even at top, and with the spade cut out a small trench along the edge of the bed or border, making the inside upright; and in which against the upright side, plant the box low, close together, and earthed in near the top, and tread down the earth evenly.

——— *Old box edgings deficient or in gaps*—should be made good by fresh box in a regular manner.

Beds and borders—clear now from decayed flowers, weeds and litter: hoe and rake clean, or dig those that are vacant, ready for planting, &c.

Biennial flowers—raised in spring and summer, may be transplanted into the borders, &c. where they are to flower; removed with full roots, as wall-flowers, stocks, sweet-williams, French honeysuckle, Canterbury bells, &c. or some may remain for spring planting.

Carnation layers—finish planting some best kinds, either singly in small pots till spring, or at once into large to remain.

——— Also plant some in the borders, &c. likewise seedlings.

Christmas rose and cyclamen—being curious early-flowering perennials, if of low growth, may be planted in warm borders, and in pots.

Clipping finish (b.)—in all hedges and edgings.

Chrysanthemum cuttings—finish planting in pots (b.) [See September.]

Cuttings—may be planted of hardy shrubs and trees.

Climbing plants—of different sorts may now be planted (m. l.) [See November.]

Clean all parts—of the flower-garden, pleasure-ground, shrubbery, &c. cutting down and clearing away decayed flower-stalks, hoe and rake the beds, borders, &c. prune, hoe and rake shrubberies: grass lawns and plants, &c. have the finishing mowings now close and even; gravel walks well cleaned from weeds, and all edgings and edges cut and trimmed even and regular, that the whole may remain in neat regular order, for the winter.

Deciduous shrubs and trees—may begin planting in most sorts (m. l.)

Dig vacant beds, borders, &c.—to remain clean, and be ready for roots and plants intended.

Divide or part roots—of fibrous-rooted perennials, for increase.

Daisies—may be planted, and roots parted.

Decayed flower-stalks—clear away constantly, as they occur.

Edgings—finish cutting, and may be planted of box, thrift, daisies, strawberries, &c.

Edges of grass—cut close and even.

Grass lawns, &c.—should now have the finishing mowing and cut neatly, close and even; and occasionally poled and rolled.

——— Grass turf may be laid. [See Turf.]

Gravel—still continue in neat order, by weeding, sweeping and rolling.

Mignonette in pots—remove under shelter (m. l.)

Laurel and lauristinus—two noted hardy evergreens, and ornamental flowering-shrubs, the latter of which flowers numerously in long continuance in spring and autumn, may now in both sorts be planted in shrubberies, or occasionally to cover any naked walls, &c. and other similar purposes.

Lay shrubs and trees—in the young shoots, both of ever-

greens and deciduous kinds; and former layers rooted of last autumn and spring, or preceding summer plant off.

Layers of carnations—plant in pots, beds and borders.

Lay turf—where wanted, either for new, or repairing old work.

Leaves falling—now abounding in great litter, constantly sweep and rake off from gravel, grass, &c.

Lilies—scaly bulbous kinds, should be mostly finished planting. [See bulbous roots.]

Lombardy poplar—a tree of expeditious growth, for shade, shelter, blind, &c. may now be planted, but would not advise such a general planting of this tree as has lately occurred, especially in small gardens, fore-courts, &c. detrimentally to the under plants, flowers, and shrubs, as well as being sometimes rather unsightly in such situations, when in advanced large, exceeding tall growth, and without any variety of other more beautiful and valuable trees; though in particular situations, may be employed occasionally to form a speedy shade, shelter, or blind, &c. and in plantations in assemblage with other different sorts for variety.

Magnolia (evergreen)—a superbly noted evergreen exotic, may now be planted; alloting it a warm sheltered situation, as being of a tenderish nature, in winter when severe frost.

Perennial and biennial flower plants—of the fibrous, tuberous and fleshy-rooted kinds, may be transplanted into beds, borders, pots, &c. all to flower next year.

——— The young perennials and biennials raised last spring and summer, plant out some strongest plants thereof in the borders, &c. to remain.

Evergreens—may be planted of all the shrub and tree kinds, as laurel, Portugal laurel, laurustinus, arbutus, alaternus, phillyrea, pines, firs, cedars, cypress, &c.

——— *Tender evergreens*—plant in warm situations, as evergreen magnolia, arbutus, kalmias, rhododendron, tea-tree, broad-leaved myrtle, &c. and small young kinds of these and other tender sorts, plant in pots to move under shelter in severe weather.

——— *Lay evergreens*—whereby to propagate some particular sorts, which finish principally this month. [See Nursery for September.]

Flowering shrubs—may be planted (m. l.) or when the leaves begin to decay.

Hoeing and raking—now perform effectually in all beds, borders, and shrubberies, to clear them thoroughly from weeds and litter before winter.

Herbaceous plants—of perennials and biennials of most sorts may be planted.

Hedges—omitted clipping, finish wholly (b.) and may be planted both of evergreens and deciduous kinds (m. l.) [See March.]

Hyacinths—may be planted in beds, borders, bulb water-glasses, and pots, &c. [See bulbous roots.]

Hawes—gather and sow for quickset hedges.

Fibrous rooted perennials—may be planted in young or old plants, and may propagate most sorts by off-sets, or slipping or parting the roots.

Forest and ornamental trees—may commence planting (m.l.)

Flower plants—still flowering, continue in neat regular order, by occasional trimming, &c.

Part roots, or slip off-sets—of perennial flowers, to propagate desirable species and varieties.

Pipings of pinks, &c.—finish bedding out (b.) to remain till the spring; or some of the largest early struck, may be planted in the borders.

——— Or strong plants of pinks of this or last year, may be planted out now in borders, pots, &c. to remain for flowering; and may slip or part roots or others, in rooted sets, and planted for increase.

Planting—may now be commenced in great variety, both of herbaceous and woody kinds; such as most sorts of the bulbous and tuberous rooted flowering tube, fibrous and fleshy rooted perennials, and biennial flowers, evergreens, and flowering shrubs, ornamental and forest-trees, box and other edgings, and hedges.

Pole and roll grass—to have a clean firm surface.

Planting in pots—may now be performed in any desirable roots, plants and shrubs, where required, of curious bulbs, perennials, biennials, evergreens, and flowering shrubs.

——— *Plants formerly potted*—the last spring or before, clear from weeds, decayed stalks and leaves; and may be fresh earthed at top; or, where it may seem necessary, any may be occasionally shifted into larger pots and some fresh mold.

——— *Remove plants in pots*—to a warm situation (m. l.) for the winter; or choice sorts place in a frame, &c. both of herbaceous and woody kinds.

Prune shrubs, &c.—from irregular strong shoots, and others of disorderly growths.

Propagation performs—in shrubs and trees by layers, cuttings, and suckers; and herbaceous perennials, by slips, off-sets, and parting roots.

Polyanthuses—plant, and propagate by parting the roots, or by detaching the outward off-sets.

Privet—may be planted for garden hedges, &c. being of quick, close, neat growth.

Pyracantha, or evergreen thorn—very ornamental in its numerous bunches of red berries in winter, may now be planted; and being of feeble growth is generally planted and trained against a wall or building; also in the shrubbery supported with stakes, and the straggling branches pruned a little occasionally to form a somewhat bushy head.

Rake all borders, &c.—occasionally in a clean neat order.

Rolling—still continue in gravel walks once or twice a week, and occasionally to grass.

Seeds of flowers—finish gathering (b. m.)

Seedling biennials and perennials—raised this year, plant out some strongest finally, into flower-borders, beds, pots, &c. and the rest in spring.

Seed pots and boxes—place now in a warm situation (m. l.) to remain in shelter all winter.

Shrubberies, disorderly—prune rude shoots, and hoe and rake the ground.

Shrubberies to plant—dig and prepare the ground, and may be planted with any shrubs and trees required; evergreens any time, and deciduous (m. l.)

Sweep gravel and grass—now frequently, from falling leaves, &c.

Slip roots or side off-sets—of perennials to plant for increasing any desirable sorts.

Stock gilliflowers—finish planting (b.) finally to remain; and plant some best Bromptons in pots, to have shelter in winter.

Suckers plant—from the roots of roses, lilacs, and other shrubs and trees, for an increase where required.

Tree planting—may be performed in most evergreen kinds (b. m. l.) and deciduous commence principally towards (m. l.)

Thrift edgings—may be planted, setting the plants either close, or only two or three inches apart, having for this occasion a proper supply of good fibrous rooted full plants, divide them into smaller slips, roots to each, and either planted in the manner directed for box-edgings close together to form at once a complete edging: or otherwise make up the edge of the beds or borders full and regular, and plant the sets by dibble along the top two or three inches asunder, to grow close by degrees.

——— *Old thrift edgings grown disorderly*—may now be regulated by trimming in the sides, and making good any deficiencies by planting proper sets as required, or, if very irregular, taken up and regulated.

Tulips—plant now, for the principal blow in spring and summer. [See bulbous roots.]

Turf for grass work—in plats, walks, lawns, &c. may be cut and laid, beat and roll it down close and even.

Walls to cover—that are naked or unsightly in fore courts, &c. may plant laurel, phyllirea, alaternus, pyracantha, laurustinus, &c.

Wall-flowers—plant out in borders; and double bloody kinds plant in pots to have shelter in winter.

Gather tree seeds—for sowing, of acorns, ash-keys, beech-mast, lime-trees, chesnuts, walnuts, haws and of other seeds, berries, nuts, &c. now ripe; also flower-seeds of annuals, biennials, &c.

WORK IN THE NURSERY.

In the nursery works of this month is comprehended a great deal of principal business in preparing for and proceeding in the autumn planting and transplanting of many sorts of young trees and shrubs; and in the works of propagation by seeds, cuttings, suckers and layers; and for which occasions the ground must be got ready by digging or trenching, &c. and to perform several other necessary works of culture.

The work of planting—may now be proceeded in successfully in most sorts of trees and shrubs, where it is necessary or intended; evergreens may be transplanted any time in the month, but the deciduous kinds more generally towards (m. l.) when declined growing, apparently by the decay of the leaves.

——— *By thus planting early in autumn*—the trees and shrubs will very quickly take fresh root the same season.

In the business of nursery planting—is comprised that of transplanting many sorts of seedling trees and shrubs from seed-beds, &c. into the nursery quarters in rows one to two or three feet asunder, or smaller plants pricked in nursery beds in rows at less distances; and likewise in transplanting some that have been formerly planted out from seed beds, &c. at small distances in their young growth, and being now much encreased in size, require a larger scope of room in rows more distant: as also in planting some particular sorts in pots as may be required, especially of some more tender or curious plants.

Prepare ground for planting—by proper digging or trenching, both for the immediate reception of young trees and shrubs, cuttings, suckers, seeds, &c. and some to remain, if thought necessary, to mellow and improve by the weather for future

planting in the following month, or spring, and for which it would be proper to dig the ground up in rough ridges, to meliorate more effectually; and may be levelled down when wanted.

—— *Likewise prepare some ground now in beds*—three or four feet wide, in which to prick some small plants, cuttings, &c. and for sowing tree and shrub seeds.

Begin planting out fruit tree stocks (m. l.)—of seedlings and others, into the nursery quarters in rows, two to three feet distance, to remain to attain proper growth of one, two, or three years, for grafting and budding.

Likewise young forest and ornamental trees and flowering shrubs—may begin to transplant (m. l.) such as want removal from beds and other compartments where they are too close or much crowded, transplanting them in rows at proper distances, the smaller seedling plants and others of slender growth may some be bedded out in rows six inches to a foot asunder, and larger kinds planted in the quarters in rows at eighteen inches to two feet and a half, and about half that distance in the lines.

Transplanting evergreens—may be performed any time this month in most sorts of young trees and shrubs, on the different occasions before intimated both of seedling plants, and others raised from cuttings, layers, &c. of smaller or larger growth as occasion may require; such as pine-trees, firs, cedars, cypress, laurels, laurustinus, Portugal-laurel, phillyrea, alaternus, arbutus, and many others; planting them in rows at proper distances, agreeable to the fore-mentioned intimations.

—— *The tenderer evergreens*—plant in defended warm dry situations, such as magnolia, arbutus, and several others of similar quality.

—— *Likewise plant some in pots*—of the tenderer or curious sorts of evergreens, &c. such as arbutus, magnolia, kalmias, olives, candleberry-myrtle, Chinese, arbor-vitæ, rhododendions, and some other less hardy exotics, in order for removing them, in their respective pots, to places of occasional shelter in winter.

—— *Also in pots*—may now plant any desirable or curious sorts of hardy evergreens and flowering shrubs, dwarf fruit trees, and any curious or particular sorts of herbaceous perennials.

Plant young fruit trees in pots (m. l.)—for forcing such as peaches, nectarines, apricots, cherries, plums, figs, vines, &c.

—— *Or may also plant in pots*—any sorts of dwarf fruit trees either for curiosity or forcing, or other occasions as may be required.

Sow tree and shrub seeds—principally of the hardy kinds, such as oak-acorns, beech-mast, maple seed, haws, hips, yew-berries, with many other sorts, as also plum and cherry stones, for stocks, all sowed in beds of light earth, one or two inches deep.

Sow and plant muscel-plums—both of stones of the fruit, and suckers and layers of the trees, to raise stocks for budding with some principal peaches, nectarines, and apricots, which generally make the most successful trees, when budded on this kind of plum stock.

May now propagate by layers, cutting and suckers—in many sorts of trees and shrubs, both evergreens and deciduous kinds.

Make layers of evergreen shrubs—of several hardy kinds, such as phillyrea, alaternus, laurustinus, &c. in the young shoots only of last summer.

Take off evergreen layers—that were layed last autumn, spring, or summer, and now rooted, and plant them in the nursery, or plant some curious or tenderer kinds in pots.

Lay deciduous trees and shrubs (m. l.)—numerous sorts may be raised by that method, as elms, maples, limes, &c. choosing for that occasion the young shoots of last summer, cut a small gash on the under side, which lay into the earth three or four inches deep, raising the top upright several inches above ground, they will be rooted for planting off next summer.

Plant off layers—of the above, of former laying and now well rooted.

Plant cuttings—of several sorts of trees and shrubs, such as laurel, Portugal laurel, poplar, plane-tree, limes, alder, honey-suckles, currants, gooseberries, &c. of the young middling strong shoots of last summer.

Plant suckers—from the roots of roses, lilacs, gooseberries, currants, raspberries, and of many other sorts of trees and shrubs.

Pruning perform—in every sort of trees and shrubs where required, both in evergreens, any time in this month, and deciduous kinds principally (m. l.) when the leaves decay: cutting off all very rude or rank shoots from the stems; and rambling disorderly growths of the head.

In pruning evergreens—it is advisable to complete what is necessary this month, before very cold weather begins.

—— But deciduous kinds may either be pruned now (m. l.) or in the following months.

Young wall-trees for training—plant (m. l.) against walls, pales, or reed-hedges.

Eradicate weeds—now with the utmost diligence (b. m.)

before cold wet weather set in, by hoeing and handweeding at all opportunities in dry days.

Remove pots of tender plants—to warm situations (m. l.) for the winter: as some tenderer sorts of evergreens, &c. placed in frames or awnings where they can be occasionally sheltered from severe frost.

—— Other trees and plants in pots place in some dry sheltered situation; and (m. l.) or next month plunge the pots in the ground to protect the roots more securely from frost.

GREEN-HOUSE.

In this month, as cold weather and frosts sometimes prevail, should finish removing all the plants into the green-house (b. m.) especially the tenderest kinds.

Oranges and lemons—and other tenderest exotics not taken in last month, remove into the green-house (b.)

The hardier kinds—as myrtles, oleanders, winter cherries, geraniums, &c. may remain abroad till towards (m.) if fine weather, but after that time or before, if cold or very rainy, house them as soon as possible; and at any rate, all taken in before (m.)

Succulent plants—finish taking in all tenderest shoots (b.) American aloes, and all others (b. m.)

Previous to removing into the green-house—clear off decayed leaves, dead shoots, &c. and prune irregular growths; weed the pots, and loosen the top earth, and thoroughly wash and clean the heads.

In disposing the plants in the green-house—station the taller sorts more or less back, and the lower plants forward, having the small plants in the front.

Small plants of myrtles, &c.—if not room in the green-house, may be placed in garden frames.

Fresh air—must now be admitted freely every day or night, if mild weather, till (b. m.) then keep close every night.

Water—give now very moderately once a week to the oranges, lemons, myrtles, and other woody kinds: the succulents more sparingly.

HOT-HOUSE AND STOVE.

The cold season now approaching, the bark-bed heat in the pinery, or general hot-house, is not only necessary, but must

have a thorough renewal for the winter; and if cold weather (l.) fire heat must be again commenced, continuing to give proper admissions of fresh air in warm days, and occasional waterings.

Pine-apple plants—requiring to be continued always in the bark-bed, this will now require to be wholly renewed, to have a proper heat all winter, &c.

Bark-bed heat—now mostly exhausted, provide supplies of fresh tan to make entire new beds; screening out the earthy part of the old, retaining only such of the latter as do not pass through the screen, which either level in the bottom, and fill up the pit with new tan, or fork up the new and the remaining old bark together, and is thus ready to receive the pots of pine plants; and will soon acquire a proper temperature of heat.

The succession fruiting pines—two years plants, for producing the pine-apples next year, must now be removed from the succession hot-house, or pits, into the main or fruiting pinery; in which the bark-bed being previously renewed as above advised, with entire fresh tanner's bark, and this having acquired a moderate heat, plunge the pots of pines therein regularly, the largest behind, in gradual order to the lowest in front.

Young succession pines—in bark-pits, or other hot-house appendages, will also now require entire new bark-beds, to carry them over the winter, &c.

Or in want of sufficient bark-pit room, some of the young pines may be placed in substantial dung hot-beds, under frames and glasses; having some old or new tan at top of the bed, six or eight inches depth, in which to plunge the pots.

Ripe pine-apples—still advancing to perfection in late fruit, save the crowns if wanted for planting.

Admit fresh air—to the hot-house plants moderately, every warm day, when sunny and calm.

Water—continue to apply moderately to the plants in general; but less to the succulent kinds than the others.

Plant suckers and crowns of pines—from old plants and the ripe fruit, for young succession supplies. [See August and September.]

To the hot-house plants in general—give nearly the same occasional culture, as suggested last month in the different sorts, according as it may seem necessary in their various orders of growth.

Fire heat—in the hot-house, if cold weather towards (l.) begin again for the winter, moderately every evening. [See November.]

NOVEMBER.

KITCHEN GARDEN.

The business now in the kitchen-garden is sowing and planting some few articles for early crops next year; and some to force in hot-beds for winter consumption, and to give occasional weeding, and sometimes hoeing to advancing late young crops: also to dung and dig vacant ground.

The business of sowing and planting is but inconsiderable at this season; but is necessary in a few articles, both in the open ground, and some in hot-beds.

Articles for sowing—are only some early peas and beans, and small sallading; the two former in warm borders, the latter under glasses, or in hot-beds.

Planting—is required principally to finish what was omitted last month, as cauliflowers, lettuce, cabbage coleworts, celery, endive, garlick, shallots; a few early beans, and some plants for seed; and in hot-beds to plant asparagus, mushroom spawn, mint, tarragon, and lettuce.

Advancing young crops—clear from weeds; winter onions and spinach carefully hand-weed; and hoe between advancing young crops of coleworts, cabbages, broccoli, savoys, celery, leeks, lettuce, endive, &c. loosening the surface of the earth about the plants, which will beneficially encourage their growth, and the hoeing will also kill many of the slugs and other detrimental vermin lurking in the earth at this season.

The preparation of vacant ground—forward, by dunging where necessary; and digging the ground in ridges, to improve for sowing and planting in the spring.

Asparagus—if omitted winter dressing last month, finish now, by cutting down the stalks, landing up the beds. [See October.]

—— Also if manure is required to old asparagus beds, apply it now, as directed last month.

—— *Asparagus to force for winter*—plant in hot-beds, such as have been transplanted two, three or four years, of proper age and strength to produce good shoots; make a substantial hot bed for one or several three-light frames, about a yard high, and two or three inches wider on each side than the said intended frames: and for each frame have several hundred plants or aspa-

ragus roots ; for in hot-beds these plants should be placed as close as they can possibly be crouded together, in order that the bed, according to its extent, may afford a sufficient production at each gathering, either for private or public supply, and in the whole proportionate or equivalent to the trouble and expence of forcing.

—— That having procured the requisite quantity of plants, and the hot-bed made according to the foregoing dimensions, for one or more frames length-ways, proceed directly to planting ; but not to put on the frames as yet, till the violent heat of the bed transpires ; first earth the bed at top with rich light earth, six or eight inches thick, on which raising a small ridge of earth across one end, and against which place the first course or layer of plants very close together, to the width of the allotted frame, the crowns upright, drawing a little earth to the lower end of the roots ; placing more plants against these in the same manner ; and so continue with the rest, placed as close together as possible, several hundred to each frame, as aforesaid, keeping the crowns upright, all of an equal level height ; then, on the outer top edge of the bed, bank up some moist earth close against the outside roots all round, and earth over the crowns only about two inches deep for the present, which concludes the work of planting, but not yet to put on the frames.

Then observing, that as the bed, if extensive, will probably acquire a violent heat, the frames and glasses must still be continued off till the great burning heat has evaporated, which, if confined, would be apt to scorch, or steam-scald the roots, but when become moderate, set on the frames, apply more earth over the crown of the plants by degrees, to the depth of five or six inches or more, in the whole, and put on the glasses, opening them an inch or two occasionally, to admit air and give vent to the stream rising in the bed.

The bed, if it works favourably, will begin to yield a production in a month or five weeks, and continue about three weeks in production ; so that to have a regular succession, a new hot-bed must be made and planted with fresh plants for each bed.

In former made asparagus hot-beds—where the buds are advancing, give air, and keep up the heat of the beds, by a lining of hot dung to the sides, and cover the glasses every night with mats or straw-litter.

—— Gather asparagus in hot-beds when the shoots are two or three or four or five inches long. [See December.]

Artichokes—winter dress ; cut down the large leaves, and dig the ground in a gradual moderate ridge longitudinally over each row, and close up about the plants, leaving the hearts clear.

—— *Late artichoke heads*—may be cut with the full stalks,

and place the stalks in sand under cover, they will continue good.

Beans—plant some mazagans (m. l.) on a warm border, either for the first or succeeding early crop; or sow some also thick in a bed, to be sheltered from frost, for transplanting towards spring, when of one or two inches growth; likewise plant some long pods in a border or quarter, to succeed the mazagans in bearing.

Beet (red rooted)—dig up some to preserve in sand, &c. under shelter from wet and frost.

Broccoli and borecole—are now in perfection in the autumn crops. [See October.]

Cauliflower plants—omitted planting under hand-glasses and pricking in frames, &c. last month, perform it; (b.) this, according to the directions in October; and admit the free air every mild dry day.

—— The autumn and winter cauliflowers planted in July will now be in full production.

Cabbages and coleworts—finish planting out all that are intended before the spring.

Celery—land or earth-up the full grown crops near the top; and others in advancing growth, earth-up in proportion.

—— Finish planting late celery, in shallow trenches.

Cardoons—earth-up finally (b.) some will now be blanched for use.

Carrots—of the main crops, finish digging up (b.) preserve all winter in sand, &c. as advised in October.

Coleworts—finish planting for the spring crops.

Composts prepare for hot-beds—of rich earth, loam, and rotten dung, all blended together in an oblong ridge heap.

Cucumbers—where any in hot-beds, give air daily in moderate weather, keep up the heat by linings of hot dung, and cover the glasses at nights. [See January and February.]

Dig up root esculents—of large carrots, parsneps, red-beet, &c. to preserve in sand for winter.

Dung ground—now with attention, where most wanted, and for principal crops; and digged in only one spade deep.

Digging—forward in vacant ground, laying it in rough ridges, to fertilize by the weather.

Earth-up—celery and cardoons, and hoe earth to the stems of advancing young cabbages, broccoli, &c.

Endive—continue tying up the leaves of full grown plants in open dry weather, to whiten; or transplant also some full plants into the south side of a raised bank of dry light earth, defended in severe and very wet weather, with a frame, &c. to preserve them more effectually for future blanching.

—— And in a similar bank of earth, may plant a quantity of endive (b. m.) in the common method, though only about five or six inches asunder, to stand the winter, and for spring supply; covering with a frame, mats or straw, &c. in severe weather.

Garlick and shallots—finish the autumn planting (b. m.) [See February.]

Mushroom-beds—may be made, if omitted before; and continue the whole constantly covered thick with straw, and mats over that; secure from wet and cold. [See September.]

Onions—the young winter crop, carefully finish weeding, not thinned, except a few as wanted for present use, of any that are of advanced growth.

Parsley—if any remain rank, cut down (b.) to shoot up afresh.

Peas—may be sowed, early hotspurs, in warm borders (b. and m.) either for the succeeding, or first early crops.

Parsneps—dig up a quantity (b.) to preserve in sand, &c. under cover, for ready use in winter.

Potatoes—finish digging up wholly (b.) and housed and covered thick with straw.

Pricking out—finish in young cauliflowers, cabbages, and lettuce in their winter beds (b.)

Plants under frames and glasses—as cauliflowers, lettuce, &c. give the full air every mild day, but defended with the glasses of nights, and cold cutting weather, and from frost and great rains.

Pot-herbs—finish cleaning the beds. [See September and October.]

Radishes—may be sowed, some short tops in a warm border (m. l.) [See December.]

Hand-weed—now with good attention the beds of young winter onions, spinach, and other small plants.

Hoe—in dry days, between advancing crops of coleworts, cabbages, broccoli, savoys, &c. cutting down weeds, loosen the earth, and draw some about the stems of the plants.

Horse-radish—dig up some to lay in sand, ready for use, in case of hard frost.

Horse-stable dung—provide and prepare in a heap for hotbeds, where required for forcing.

Hot-beds—are required in forcing asparagus, mint, lettuce, small sallading, &c. where these articles are in request in winter.

Manure ground—with rotten dung, or such as can be obtained, and apply it where most wanted.

Lettuces—young plants finish pricking in frames, handglasses, &c. and warm borders (b.) for spring. [See October.]

——— To lettuce under glasses, &c. give air freely in dry mild days.

——— Plant lettuce in hot-beds—large plants to cabbage in winter; or in want of hot-beds, may put in some strong plants in natural beds, under frames and lights.

Mint—may now be planted by roots in drills, for next spring and summer production, and for several years to come; draw drills six inches asunder, place the roots along the bottom and earthed over.

——— And may also plant some mint roots in a hot bed to obtain young green mint the present season, or all winter.

Jerusalem artichokes—now in perfection; should dig up a quantity before hard frost prevail, to preserve in sand, or under cover, ready when wanted.

Root-esculents—dig up to preserve in sand, and particularly all the main crops of carrots, some parsneps, red beet, salsafy, scorzonera, black Spanish radish, Jerusalem artichokes, some horse radish, all the potatoes, and removed under shelter, and laid in dry fine sand; or the potatoes, only thickly covered with straw, they will all remain good, ready in all weather when wanted.

Savoys—are now excellent in fine full heads.

Spinach—finish clearing effectually from weeds; and some may be gathered, either by thinning where thick, or take only the larger outer leaves.

Small sallading—sow either in a warm border, under hand-glasses, or in a frame or hot-bed.

Seed-plants—for producing seed, finish planting; as full-headed cabbages and savoys, large carrots, parsneps, red beet, onions, &c. [See October.]

Strawberries—intended for planting this year, finish (b.) and old beds cleaned. [See September and October.]

——— Plant strawberries in pots for forcing, where intended, as advised in September and October, if not then done.

Trench vacant ground—in two feet wide trenches, or or two spades deep, laying the earth of each trench in a rough ridge, to pulverize and improve by the weather; and may then be expeditiously levelled down from sowing and planting in the spring.

FRUIT-GARDEN.

Late fruit of—apples, pears, grapes, medlars, services, finish gathering (b.)

For planting—this is an eligible season for all sorts of wall and espalier fruit trees, as also for all kinds of standards; and it will be of particular advantage to complete the principal supply, that are intended for planting before the spring.

General winter pruning—may be performed in wall trees and espaliers, and to standards where needful.

Borders intended for planting—wall trees and espaliers, if any improvement is required, apply dung, fresh loam, &c. either wholly or only for the present where each tree is to be planted.

All fruit-trees for planting—may be had at the nurseries, either young or advanced trained growth for immediate bearing, in the proper season.

Wall-tree planting—may be performed in peaches, nectarines, apricots, plums, cherries, pears, figs, and vines; allotting a principal supply for south walls of the choicest kinds, and for earliest fruits; others on west and easterly aspects, and also some plums, cherries, and pears, on north exposures.

——— The proper distance for planting wall-trees is, fifteen to eighteen feet, for peaches, nectarines, apricots, plums, cherries, and vines; eighteen to twenty feet for pears and figs.

——— In planting wall-trees, where the walls are of some tolerable height, may plant between the common dwarf wall-trees half standards, to cover the upper parts of the wall.

Espalier trees—plant of apples, pears, quinces, medlars, plums, cherries, mulberries, fifteen to twenty feet distance: and place stakes or rails, on which to train the branches.

For standard trees—to plant in gardens and orchards: the proper sorts are apples and pears in large supplies, next of plums and cherries; also some medlars, quinces, and services, in smaller portions, and a few trees of mulberries: all planted in rows, not less than twenty-five to thirty, or forty feet distance; always in the apple collection plant a good supply of codlins, profitable great bearers, and for their early and lasting usefulness in summer and autumn.

——— Likewise for standards, plant some filberts, berberries, damsons, hazel-nuts, almonds, bullaces, walnuts, Spanish chesnuts; or may also plant filberts, hedgeways for a shady walk, &c.

——— And for moderate standards may also plant some Breda and Brussels apricots in a warm sheltered situation.

——— *In orchard planting*—allot always plenty of apples and pears, with a tolerable portion of cherries and plums; and some of all the other fruits; and may plant walnuts outward. [See October.]

Half standard fruit-trees—may be planted occasionally, as secondary supplies, or for small gardens.

Dwarf standards—may be planted for variety or curiosity, or for small gardens, in borders, adjoining walks, &c. and will bear very agreeably.

The winter pruning—may now be forwarded in wall-trees and espaliers; and to standards, where occasionally wanted; but in wall-trees and espaliers, a winter and summer pruning is necessary every year, to preserve the requisite regularity, and promote fruitfulness: and as the summer pruning comprised a regulation among the shoots of the year only, the winter pruning is necessary, both to regulate the general supply of young wood retained in summer, and occasionally in the older branches.

Wall-tree pruning—forward in peaches, nectarines, apricots, vines, plums, cherries, to cut out the remaining ill-placed, useless, and superabundant shoots of last summer, and improper old wood.

——— In pruning peaches, nectarines, and apricots, they bearing mostly on the young wood of each preceding summer, leave a plentiful supply of the best well-placed side and terminal shoots; and prune out close all remaining fore-right, improper and superabundant, and part of the most super-advanced former bearers, unfruitful and unserviceable old wood, to make room for the young, which shorten about one third, or strong shoots less, and weak ones cut shorter; and then nail the whole tree regular, arranging the branches horizontally, three, four, or five inches asunder.

Prune also plums, pears, cherries, apples, &c.—in wall-trees and espaliers; observing, as these continue bearing several years on the same branches upon small natural spurs, retain only some best well-placed young shoots of last summer, in vacant parts, and a leader to each branch, where room for their extension, prune out all the others; also casual worn-out, irregular, or improper old branches, and dead wood, continuing all the proper shoots and branches at their full length, and trained in regular to the wall, &c. three or four to five or six inches asunder.

Vines—may also be pruned; the last year's shoots are the proper mother bearers; leave plenty of the best in all parts, to train in six or eight inches asunder, cutting out the superabundant and improper, with part of the super-advanced former

year's bearers and naked old wood, and shorten the retained shoots to three, or four, five or six joints, and then nailed in at six or eight, to ten or twelve inches distance.

Fig-tree pruning—is advisable to defer till February, and divest them now of all the autumnal green fruit. [See February and March.]

In proceeding to prune wall-trees—of peaches, nectarines, apricots, vines, &c. generally first unnail most of the shoots that were trained in the preceding summer, and some of the smaller branches that you may have opportunity to examine more readily, what are proper to cut out and retain, and to have room to prune with greater accuracy; as also to have an opportunity after pruning, to arrange the general branches and shoots accordingly in regular order.

——— Observe that in unnailing the shoots and branches should previously strike each nail gently with the hammer to loosen them in their places, that they may more easily draw out without breaking the bricks or mortar.

Standard-tree pruning—is only occasionally necessary to cut out casual, cross placed, or crowded and disorderly branches, or to reduce ramblers and low straggling productions, and to cut out dead wood.

Planting gooseberries and currants—six to eight or ten feet distance.

Plant and prune raspberries—set them in rows four feet and a half by a yard distance; and in old plantations, former planted, cut out the old decayed stems that were last year's bearers; thin the young to three, four, or five, of the strongest, on each stool, and shortened at top.

Cuttings—of gooseberries and currants may now be planted, of the young shoots.

——— Likewise suckers from the roots of one or two years growth, or more, may be planted; or gooseberries and currants, advancing in several stems from the root may be divided into single plants.

Suckers dig up—from roots of fruit-trees; and plant some for stocks; such as plums, pears, codlins, quinces, &c. for grafting and budding with the respective sorts of fruit.

For forcing—in hot walls, &c. may now plant peaches, nectarines, apricots, figs, vines, plums, cherries, &c. mostly trained trees of a bearing state. [See October.]

Keeping fruit—deposited in the fruitery, as apples, pears, medlars, &c. examine, to pick out any that decay, covered thick with straw to exclude the air, frost, and damps.

FLOWER GARDEN, PLEASURE GROUND, AND SHRUBBERY.

Clean the general compartments—cutting down and clear away all decayed flower stalks; hoe and rake, or dig the borders, &c. clean the gravel, grass, and all parts from litter of fallen leaves, &c. the gravel from weeds, and finish mowing the grass, (b.) close and even; and to prune, clean and dig shrubberies.

Planting—may be performed in all sorts of bulbous and tuberous flower roots, fibrous-rooted perennials and biennials, and most sorts of shrubs and trees.

Beds and borders—designed for planting bulbs and other flowers, prepare by proper digging.

Compartments for shrubbery planting—should be digged and laid out, in the order intended, for present planting.

——— *The various sorts of plants, shrubs and trees*—for planting, may be obtained at all the nurseries, &c.

Bulbous roots—generally complete the principal autumnal planting (b. m.) in beds, borders, &c. of tulips, hyacinths, jonquils, polyanthus-narcissus, and all other hardy bulbous kinds.

——— Place also bulbs in water glasses to flower in a room, and change the water when very foul or fetid.

——— Or may also plant bulbs in pots, and boxes of light earth or sand, to blow in a room, or where required; and for forcing in a hot-house, &c.

Almond tree and dwarf kinds—plant in shrubberies; being very ornamental in their early flowering.

Anemones and ranunculuses—finish the autumn planting (b. m.)

Auriculas and carnations in pots—finish placing now under a warm south wall; or in a frame, to have occasional shelter of glasses in severe weather, or great rains, snow, &c.

Biennial flowers—may be planted (b. m.) or not till spring.

Box edgings—may be planted; and finish any clipping in old edgings (b.) before frost.

Carnations—finish planting (b. m.) in borders and pots, and remove those in pots to a warm situation.

Climbing and trailing plants—of the shrubby kind, may now be planted and trained against walls, buildings, and arbours, &c. such as Virginia creeper, ivy, virgins bower, honeysuckles, jasmine, passion-flower, &c. the former (Virginia creeper) will also succeed in towns and cities in any situation, and climb to the top of the highest buildings; also ivy in a more open airy exposure.

Catalpa—a beautiful large-leaved deciduous tree, plant in shrubberies.

Composts—prepare for flower-beds and pots, of good light garden earth, sandy loam, rotted cow-dung, &c. and turn prepared composts occasionally.

Cuttings—may be planted of various sorts of deciduous trees and shrubs (b. m.) or deferred till spring: the young shoots of last summer are proper for this occasion.

Borders, &c.—finish clearing from all decayed flower stems, and give a general hoeing and raking; or may be digged, especially where planting bulbs or other flower plants is intended.

Deciduous trees and shrubs—may now be planted freely of all hardy sorts (b. m. l.)

Double blossom cherry and almond—fine ornamental early flowering-shrubs, may now be planted in shrubberies, pots, &c.

Evergreen shrubs and trees—of all hardy sorts, may still be planted, finishing early, or by (m. l.) for fear of severe frost.

——— Tender young evergreens in pots place in a warm situation; or the more tender young plants place in frames, &c. to have occasional shelter of glasses or mats.

——— Laying evergreens for propagation, finish (b. m.)

Edgings—may be planted of box, thrift, daisies, and strawberries, &c.

Edges of grass—cut or trim close and regular.

Fibrous-rooted herbaceous perennials and biennials—finish the autumnal planting.

Flowering shrubs—may be planted of all or any sorts required for shrubberies, borders, &c. both of the deciduous, and most of the evergreen kinds; but the latter complete soon before the approach of severe frost.

Forest and ornamental tree planting—may now be forwarded in all sorts, both for timber plantations, and to ornament extensive pleasure grounds, parks, &c.

Grass—finish mowing, and occasionally poled and rolled in dry weather.

——— Grass turf may be laid.

Gravel—still weed, clean, and roll principal walks: not dig them up in ridges, as sometimes practised at this season, which renders them both unsightly and useless all winter, without answering any beneficial purpose.

Ground work—forward for planting, and other designs in walks, lawns, shrubberies, &c.

Hedges—omitted clipping, finish (b.)

——— Planting hedges may be performed in quickset or whitethorn, privet, hornbean, elm, poplar, elder, beech, maple,

yew, holly, &c. though in the two latter, and other evergreen kinds, the planting may prove more successful in the spring.—[See March.]

——— Plash and lay the branches of rough grown old hedges in outward fences, &c. that are run up thin, and naked below. [See October.]

Herbaceous perennials and biennials—may be planted to flower next year.

Hoe borders, &c.—in dry days, where weeds appear, and rake them clean.

Hyacinths—finish the autumn planting (b. m.)

Layers may be made—in various shrubs and trees of the young shoots, to raise new plants; and layers rooted, of last autumn, spring, &c. should now be planted off.

Layers of carnations—raised last summer and autumn, finish planting in borders, pots, &c.

Mezereon and dwarf almonds—very early flowering shrubs, may now be planted in shrubberies, and pots, to blow early the ensuing spring.

Ornamental trees and shrubs—of most sorts, may now be planted for the decoration of shrubberies, pleasure grounds, &c.

Planting—may be performed in all bulbous and tuberous roots, fibrous-rooted perennials and biennials, and all trees and shrubs, hedges, edgings, &c.

Seed pots and boxes—place now in a south border.

Shrubberies—commence the winter dressing, by pruning rude or rambling, disorderly shoots and branches, and decayed wood; and the ground then digged between the shrubs, especially where the shrubs stand distinct, not over-spreading the surface in a thickety growth.

Shrubbery planting—may be forwarded in any kind of hardy trees and shrubs.

Sweep clean—all gravel and grass from fallen leaves and other litter.

Stems of trees—may now be pruned up from all lower shoots and branches.

Suckers—dig up from the roots of trees and shrubs; and may plant what are useful.

Strawberries—may be planted for edging occasionally to particular compartments.

Leaves of trees—now fallen, constantly sweep and rake off from grass and gravel.

Lilies—finish planting all that remain out of the ground, or of occasionally transplanting others.

Ornamental trees and shrubs—of all hardy sorts may be planted.

Off-sets—may be slipped from perennials and planted; and finish planting all bulbous off-sets.

Plots of plants and seeds—remove to a warm situation in the sun, or plunge them also into the ground, in a somewhat raised drying light soil, to preserve the roots better from frost; or the more tender or curious place in a frame or glass case, &c.

Part roots—of perennial flowers, to increase the sorts required.

Perennials—of all hardy sorts may be planted.

Propagation perform—by slips, off-sets, and parting roots of herbaceous perennials; and by suckers, cuttings, and layers of shrubs and trees.

Plantations of shrubs and trees—designed for planting, either for ornament or useful occasions, may now be forwarded in the different sorts required, both of the deciduous tribes, and the hardier evergreen kinds.

Pruning—now perform, where required to reduce disorderly or superfluous growths in trees and shrubs, and to cut out all decayed wood; also to trim up irregular growths, in too overhanging boughs, or straggling under branches, &c.

Shelter tender plants—in pots and beds from frost.

Slip root off-sets—of perennials (b. m.) for increase, and plant them in beds, borders, &c.

Stocks (Brompton) and double walls, &c. in pots—remove to a warm place, or under a frame, &c.

Stake—tall new-planted trees.

Sowing tree and shrub-trees—finish principally for this season; as ash-keys, acorns, beech-mast, haws, &c. in beds, inserting them either in drills, especially the larger sorts, or for the whole, or any particular sorts, first drawing some earth off the beds, one to two inches depth, sow the seeds, &c. on the general surface, then pressed down with the back of the spade, covering the whole with the earth, one or two inches deep.

Ten weeks stocks and mignonette—late raised young plants in pots, remove under glasses (b.)

Thrift edgings—may be planted. [See September and October.]

Tree planting—may be performed in general in all hardy kinds, both in the deciduous and evergreen tribes, finishing the latter as soon as possible.

Tender curious plants in pots—place now in a warm situation, or some to have shelter of frames, or awnings, &c.

Trim up the stems of trees, &c.—from any irregular underbranches, low stragglers, and other irregularities as may seem necessary.

Tulips—may still be successfully planted, but generally finish the principal planting (b. m.)

Turf—may still be laid; beat it well down, and rolled.

To force in hot-house, &c.—may put any roots and plants of curious flowers, as hyacinths, dwarf tulips, large jonquils, pinks, roses, hypericums, syringas, cytisus, double-blossom cherry, &c.

WORK IN THE NURSERY.

Continue digging and trenching nursery ground—both in preparation for the present reception of any intended new plantation of young trees and shrubs, and for sowing seeds thereof, and planting cuttings, layers, suckers, &c. and some trenched in edges, to improve by the weather for spring planting and sowing.

All necessary transplanting—may now be performed in the various sorts of hardy trees and shrubs, as occasion may require, both in all sorts of fruit-trees, fruit-tree stocks, &c. for grafting and budding; and all kinds of deciduous forest and ornamental trees and flowering shrubs, and in most of the hardier sorts of evergreens.

Transplanting young deciduous trees and shrubs—where necessary, of any hardy kinds, both from seed-beds and other compartments, where they stand in close growth, requiring more room; also rooted-cuttings and layers, &c. in the same state; plant the whole in nursery rows at proper distances, as intimated in October.

But in evergreens—it is advisable to perform any necessary transplanting as above intended, at this season, in the beginning to the middle of the month, if open settled weather; that they may have a chance of pushing out new roots before attacked by the winter cold; otherwise better defer it till the spring.

Finish making layers—of hardy trees and shrubs, for this season; and will be of advantage to complete it early in the month.

Likewise plant off-rooted layers—if any still remain on the parent stools, of the preceding autumn, or last spring, or summer's laying; and plant them in nursery rows; or also, of any more curious or tenderer kinds, plant in pots, for having occasional shelter in winter.

Plant cuttings, (b. m.)—of any sorts of hardy deciduous trees and shrubs, as are usually or occasionally propagated by that means.

Suckers transplant—from the roots of any kind of trees and

shrubs, in which they are produced; such as lilacs, limes, roses, gooseberries, currants, raspberries, filberts, figs, codlins, and numerous other sorts; and planted in the nursery to acquire proper growth.

Finish planting in pots—any sorts of tender or curious young trees, shrubs and plants as may be intended.

Remove pots of tender evergreens, &c.—in the beginning of the month, if before omitted, to some place of temporary shelter, either garden frames, glass pits or under awnings, in order to have occasional covering in severe frosty weather.

Likewise remove pots of hardy plants—both of trees, shrubs and herbaceous to some warm dry situation; and if the pots are plunged in dry raised ground, the roots will be more effectually protected from frost.

Pruning of trees and shrubs—may now be performed as required, in all deciduous kinds, both in fruit, forest, and ornamental trees and shrubs; principally to cut out or reduce any very irregular, or rude rambling shoots, and other disorderly growths, either in the head or below, likewise in hardy evergreens, may occasionally prune any very irregular super-advanced shoots on the head, and low under stragglers.

Trim up the stems—of deciduous, forest and ornamental trees, by cutting away strong lateral shoots, or smaller ones shorten to two or three inches.

Likewise in fruit-trees—cut out all advanced shoots produced from the stem below the grafting and budding.

Finish the autumnal sowing—of hardy tree and shrub seeds, (b. m.) of the sorts mentioned last month, and of all others intended for sowing this season.

Dig between the rows of young trees—of former planting, of one, two, or several years standing, which should be done annually in winter or spring, both to kill all top weeds effectually, and to loosen and freshen the ground for the benefit of the young trees and shrubs.

Young wall and espalier trees in training—give the necessary winter pruning, by cutting out all fore-rights, and other ill-placed, improper and superfluous shoots, and train the others regular.

Plant young fruit-trees for training—as above, against walls, pales, &c.

——— Likewise plant young fruit trees in pots for forcing—either such as are advanced to a bearing state, or young to train to that degree of growth.

Manure nursery ground—where very poor or much exhausted.

If frosty weather prevail—give attention to tender plants of

evergreens, in young growth, and tender young seedling plants, to give some occasional covering.

GREEN-HOUSE.

As decayed leaves—will frequently occur in many of the plants, constantly pick them off.

If the earth in any of the pots crust or bind—stir and loosen the surface.

Clean the leaves—of oranges, lemons, &c. if they become foul.

Decayed shoots—when any occur, cut off.

Admit air—still freely every mild day, from nine or ten to three or four o'clock; shut close every night, and always, either day or night, when frost or sharply cold, and in foggy damp weather.

Give water—moderately once a week, or eight or ten days, or a fortnight, as required, when the earth becomes dry; but very sparingly and less frequent to the succulent plants; and be very careful never to over-water any sorts at this season, which would occasion the leaves to fall.

If any myrtles, &c.—are in frames, or glass-pits, give them also air on mild days, and gentle waterings occasionally, the glasses shut close every night, and all very cold weather.

In frosty weather—no air or water, or very little must be given, or only occasionally in the middle of fine sun-shining days, if the frost is moderate; but in severe frost, no air, &c. must be admitted.

HOT-HOUSE AND STOVE.

A constant regular heat—must be continued to warm the internal air in a high degree.

In the pinery stoves—if the beds were renewed last month almost wholly with fresh tan, and the succession fruiting, and other pine plants plunged therein, they are to continue for the winter; but if then omitted, it should be effected now (b.)

Fire heat—will now be necessary, in cold weather, every evening supported moderately till nine or ten o'clock, to heat the flues sufficiently to warm the internal air till morning; like-

wise make a moderate fire in cold and in raw foggy mornings, and when frost; also occasionally continued in the day, when severe or immoderate cold weather.

The bark-beds—if renewed, as advised last month, will now be in a lively heat; but if omitted then, perform it (b.) as soon as possible.

Succession fruiting pines—if omitted removing into the fruiting house, or the bark-beds for their final residence, not wholly renewed in October, let it be done now (b.) the first week.

Also the younger succession pines—if not done last month, should have fresh bark-beds (b.) this. [See October.]

Fresh air—admit only in the middle of mild sun-shining days, very moderately; but shut close when cold or cloudy, and soon towards afternoon.

Water—will be required moderately to the different plants occasionally, as the earth dries.

Clean the plants occasionally—from any foulness they may contract, and from insects.

Decayed leaves and shoots—clear away.

To force in the hot-house—may introduce pots and glasses of bulbous roots, and towards (l.) pots of pinks, strawberries, kidney-beans, cucumbers, &c.

DECEMBER.

KITCHEN GARDEN.

All sowing and planting—in the open ground, perform only in open dry weather.

—— The business of sowing and planting is necessary only in a few articles, some in south borders and warm quarters, and others in hot-beds, all for early crops.

Sowing articles—are only a few early peas, and radishes, on warm borders; and small sallading and cucumbers in hot-beds.

Articles for planting—are some early beans, and strong cabbage plants, and coleworts; and in hot-beds, asparagus, cucumbers, and occasionally mint and tarragon.

Continue preparing vacant ground—by occasional manuring,

and general digging or trenching in ridges, to enrich for spring sowing and planting.

For early crops—of peas, beans, and radishes; dig some warm south borders, and warmest dry quarters of ground.

Asparagus beds—not yet winter dressed, complete the whole (b.) [See October.]

—— *Asparagus to force*—plant in hot-beds, either as a first or succeeding crop for winter production, as explained in November.

Artichokes—finish winter dressing, by cutting down the large leaves, and landing up over the rows. [See November.]

Broccoli—hoe and earth-up the stems of advancing crops; the early plants will be now in full heads.

Beans—plant of mazagans and long pods in south-borders and sheltered dry quarters, in larger supplies than before, planted by dibble or in drills, in rows two feet and a half asunder.

Coleworts and cabbage plants—planted out last month or before or since, hoe and stir the earth between the plants.

Cauliflower young plants—in frames and hand-glasses; give air freely in mild weather, by taking off the frame lights in dry days, and the hand-glasses propped up on the south side, or set off occasionally; but all covered with the glasses, &c. of nights, and in frost, snow, or much rain: and in frosty weather the glasses kept very close.

Cabbages may be planted—some strong young plants of early sorts, moderately close in rows, one to two feet asunder, for thinning by degrees for use, in their young growth in spring and summer.

Celery—earth-up fully the advanced crops, if not done; the others according to their growth; all in dry open weather.

Cucumbers—may be sowed in a hot-bed towards (m. l.) for the first early crops. [See January.]

—— To cucumbers now advancing in hot-beds, give air in fine days, and support a proper heat by occasional linings of hot-dung.

—— Or may sow cucumbers in pots or boxes, &c. in a hot-house (m. l.) to try the chance of an early production in that department.

Compost for hot-beds, &c.—prepare of rich earth, and fresh light surface loam and rotten dung, and will be of much advantage to remain several months in preparation, and turned over occasionally.

Endive—tie up full-grown plants in dry weather to whiten; or for the same occasion more securely from rotting at this season, transplant some into raised ridges of dry earth, and if defended with frames, &c. from great rains, frost and snow, it will be more effectual.

Dung for manure and hot-beds—wheel in when frosty and dry weather.

Digging and trenching—forward now at all opportunities in vacant ground, laying it in ridges to mellow by the weather, for future crops.

——— Warm borders and quarters, dig ready for early crops.

Dig up esculent roots—to lay in sand, if not done; as carrots, parsneps, beets, turneps, &c. (b.)

Earth-up celery—in dry open weather.

Frosty weather—the most necessary works are to wheel in dung for manure and hot-beds, prepare, and turn composts; and when severe frost, to protect tender plants, as cauliflowers, lettuce, and early radishes, &c. with proper covering.

Ground vacant—manure and dig, &c. applying dung where most wanted, and for principal crops; and should now forward digging and trenching all vacant compartments, laying the ground in ridges.

Hoe—young coleworts, cabbages, broccoli, savoys, &c. in dry open weather.

Hot-bed dung—for hot-beds, provide from stable-yards, the long and short together, that which is fresh and abounding in heat, forking it in a heap, to prepare a week or fortnight.

Hot-beds make—for early asparagus, sallading, mint, radishes, cucumbers, and lettuce.

Lettuce plants in frames and hand glasses, &c.—give full air in mild weather; but protect every night, and when frost and much wet.

—— *Lettuce to force*—plant some strongest large plants in hot-beds.

Liquorice roots of three years old—being of full growth should be digged up, performed by trenching the ground regularly along by the rows, two or three spades deep, or quite to the bottom of the principal roots, as they generally extend to a great depth.

Kidney-beans to force—sow early kinds in pots or boxes in a hot-house (m. l.)

Manure ground—with dung; and should be digged in only one spade deep, that the roots of the plants may sooner receive the benefit.

Mint, tansey, and tarragon—required early, plant some roots thick in a hot-bed.

Young onions—continue very clear from weeds.

——— *the housed dried onions*—examine and turn over, picking out any that decay or grow.

Open dry weather—perform the necessary sowing, planting, hoeing, and weeding.

Parsneps—finish digging up some to lay in sand.

Radishes—sow some early short tops in a warm border, &c. (l. m.) covered with straw two inches thick, till they come up. [See January.]

——— Sow radishes in a hot-bed (l. m.)

Plant in open weather—beans, cabbages, coleworts, and late celery.

Peas—sow early hotspurs, as early Nichol's Golden's, Charlton's, &c. in warm situations (b. and l.) either as succession or first early crops, in larger supplies than in the two last months, in drills, two feet and a half, or a yard asunder.

——— Sow also a moderate crop of marrowfats, (m. l.) in a warm quarter, in drills, a yard or three feet and a half distance.

——— *Peas to force*—sow some early frame sorts in a frame or hot-bed, (b. m.) or some sowed thick therein, for transplanting into a hot-bed, or forcing-frame, &c. next month.

——— *early peas in borders, &c.*—come up an inch or two, draw earth to the stems moderately.

Spinach—continue clean from weeds; and may gather the largest leaves for use as wanted.

Seed-plants—as mentioned last month, finish planting (b. m.) if before omitted.

Small sallading—as cresses, mustard, radishes, &c. sow in a hot-bed; or in a natural bed under a shallow frame, defended with glasses.

Root esculents—designed for keeping in sand, finish digging up what are intended, before they are locked in the ground by frost. [See November.]

Strawberries in pots to force—remove under shelter of a frame or warm border (b.) to have the plants in good condition, to place in a hot-house or hot-bed (m. l.) or next month, &c.

—— or may now pot two years plants with balls, and place some in a hot-house (m. l.)

Tender plants in frames and hand-glasses—as cauliflowers, lettuce, &c. give full air in mild dry weather daily; but defended of nights, and in rain, snow, and frost; and in severe weather covered also with mats, or more thickly with long litter.

FRUIT-GARDEN AND ORCHARD.

Ground intended for planting—with any kind of fruit-trees; if improvement in the soil is thought necessary, let it be done according to the intimation in the two last months; but may just remark, that fruit-trees will prosper in any good mellow ground of a garden, &c. of one or two spades deep, and that is not liable to be very wet, which always avoid in planting as much as possible.

Planting may be performed—in all wall-trees, espaliers, and standards, when the weather is open.

But in planting—it is advisable to complete what is intended at this season, as soon as possible, while open weather prevails: and not continue it, or have the trees removed for that occasion if appearance of expected frost setting in severe.

Wall trees may be planted—of apricots, peaches, nectarines, plums, cherries, figs, grapes, pears, and some early or choicest eating apples, according to the directions of last month.

Espaliers plant—of apples, pears, plums, cherries, &c. as directed in November.

Standard fruit-trees—of all sorts may likewise be planted, as apples, pears, plums, cherries, and all others, agreeable to the explanation given last month.

Pruning—may be performed at all opportunities, in the different sorts of wall trees, except figs; [See February and March.] and may prune all sorts of espaliers; likewise prune standards as they may occasionally require.

Wall-tree pruning—perform in peaches, nectarines, apricots, plums, cherries, pears, vines, &c. as in November and January.

Espalier pruning—forward in all sorts of trees, in that order of training. [See November.]

Nail wall trees and tie and nail espaliers—according as each tree is pruned, training the branches horizontally, three or four to five or six inches asunder.

Fig trees—defer pruning till towards the spring. [See Feb. and March.]

Vines prune and nail—agreeable to the observation in last month.

Standard fruit-trees—give occasional pruning where required, cutting out cross-placed or other irregular branches, and thin others where too crowded; also to reduce any over-extended branches, low straggling boughs, and to cut away all shoots from the stems, and strong shoots rising irregularly in the head, all dead wood; and eradicate suckers at the roots, &c.

Gooseberries, currants, and raspberries—may be planted and pruned, as directed in November.

For propagating—plant suckers of gooseberries, currants, filberts, hazel-nuts, figs, quinces, codlins, berberries, raspberries; also cuttings of currants, gooseberries, mulberries, vines, codlins, quinces; likewise make layers of vines, figs, mulberries, filberts; all principally of the young shoots.

Stake and support standard fruit-trees—of tall growth, especially where exposed to the wind.

Mulch over the roots—of new planted trees, to keep out the frost.

For stocks—to graft and bud upon, plant suckers of plums, pears, quinces, and hazel-nuts.

Keeping fruits—as apples, pears, &c. in the fruitery, examine to pick out any that decay; and lay some medlars in moist bran, to forward their softening.

FLOWER GARDEN, PLEASURE GROUND, AND SHRUBBERY.

For intended planting—dig beds, borders, and shrubbery compartments.

Bulbous roots—may still be planted (b. m.) in mild dry weather, as hyacinths, tulips, jonquils, crocuses, &c. in beds and borders of light dry earth.

——— Plant bulbs in water glasses, or in pots to blow in a house, or to force in a stove or hot-bed.

——— Change the water in the glasses when fœtid or foul, once in two or three weeks.

Auriculas and carnations in pots—defend best sorts from severe frost, snow, and great rains, in a frame or under an awning of mats, &c. or in want thereof, continue in a warm situation under a south wall.

Anemones, ranunculuses, and winter aconite—may be planted in beds and borders.

Box edgings—may be planted. [See October, &c.]

Crocus and snow drops—plant towards the edges of borders, &c. in small clumps, four or five roots together, each sort separate.

Cedars and cypress trees—may be planted (b. m.)

Clip deciduous hedges—if omitted in summer, &c. of hawthorn, privet, elm, beech, hornbeam, elder, but not of evergreens, &c. at this season.

Climbers—plant to run over arbours, or to ascend upon trees, walls, &c. [See November.]

Crown imperials or lilies—out of the ground finish planting (b.)

Deciduous trees and shrubs—may be planted of all sorts in open weather, for any intended plantations.

Defend curious or tender plants—in pots or beds from severe frost and snow, with a frame, &c. or an awning of mats.

Grass-lawns, &c.—continue clean from all litter, and sometimes poled and rolled in dry open weather.

——— Grass turf may be laid. [See October and Nov.]

Gravel-walks—sweep and roll occasionally.

Ground designed for any pleasurable compartments—should now be forwarded in preparation.

Herbaceous plants—of hardiest kinds, may be planted in open weather.

Hyacinths—may be finished planting (b. m.)

Lilies—complete planting, or transplanting occasionally (b.)

Magnolias and broad-leaved myrtle—and other tender curious evergreens in the open air, should be defended with mats in severe frosty weather.

Perennial flowers—hardiest kinds, may be transplanted in open weather, into beds, borders, &c. as in November.

Composts—for flower beds, pots, &c. prepare; and turn former-made composts.

Edgings—may be planted in open weather of box, thrift, &c.

Elm-trees—of alls orts, may be planted now for any purposes required.

Evergreen shrubs and trees—may continue planting hardiest kinds (b. m.) if the season is mild.

——— Tender curious evergreens defend from rigorous frost, as magnolia, arbutus, &c.

Fibrous-rooted flowers—of perennials and biennials, may be planted, of the hardiest kinds.

Fir and pine trees—may be planted, of young or advanced growth, one or two to five or six feet.

Flowering shrubs, &c.—of all sorts, may still be planted, especially all deciduous kinds.

Forest or any large growing trees—may be planted in open weather, of all deciduous kinds, and hardiest evergreens, both for useful and ornamental plantations, shade, shelter, &c.

Groves, clumps, and spacious walks of trees—proper to ornament extensive pleasure grounds, parks, &c. may be planted now with variety of different sorts of tree kinds, of some advanced growth, five or six to eight or ten feet high, or more, especially deciduous kinds.

Planting—where intended should be performed only in open weather; and discontinue removing or transplanting any trees, shrubs, and plants, when appearance of much frost.

Prune shrubs and trees—where necessary, to cut away or reduce any very irregular or unseemly growths.

Pole grass—in dry open weather, where foul with worm-cast earth, afterwards rolled or swept clean.

Plants in pots—place some tenderer sorts in frames, others in a warm situation, or plunged in some dryround, to secure the roots from frost.

In pots—may plant some bulbous roots; also pinks, &c. removed therein with balls; and may place some of each in a hot-house for early flowering.

Shrubberies prune and dig—cutting out rude and rambling disorderly shoots, &c. and dig the ground between the shrubs.

Shrubberies plant—where intended, with different sorts of shrubs, &c. in a varied order.

Suckers—dig up from roots of trees, &c. and may be planted for supplies of new plants.

Stake and support tall standards—lately planted in exposed situations, to secure them against tempestuous winds.

Tree plantations—may be performed, in open weather, of various sorts of ornamental and forest trees, in groves, woods, thickets, clumps, walks, single rows, dotting, &c.

In forming tree plantations—the trees for this purpose may be of smaller or larger young growth, as required for different occasions, from three, four, or five, to six, eight, or ten feet, but from six to eight or ten feet are proper size for general planting; or for particular purposes, may plant trees of twelve or fifteen feet, or more, of some deciduous kinds particularly; but in evergreens, those from three or four to five or six feet, are the most successful.

Mulch new planted shrubs and trees—especially of the more tender or curious kinds, spreading it on the ground over the roots.

Turf may still be laid—in open weather.

Vacancies—in borders, clumps, shrubberies, and other plantations, may now be supplied with roots, plants, shrubs, trees, &c. in open weather.

WORK IN THE NURSERY.

The work of transplanting—may still be performed moderately in open weather, where required; especially in most of the hard deciduous trees and shrubs, both in some nursery planting occasionally, and for final planting in garden and shrubbery plantations, &c. but if appearance of frost setting in, should de-

cline all planting, or at least of removal or transplanting of any kind of trees and shrubs.

——— However in continuation of open settled weather, any particularly necessary planting and drawing of trees may be forwarded in dry light ground, without any great risk of injury; and may transplant hardier sorts of evergreens (b. m.) for gardens, shrubberies, and other plantations; but more safely if removed with balls of earth about the roots.

——— But in evergreens particularly, it is not at all advisable to perform any general transplanting at this season in the nursery way.

May plant suckers—from the roots of any hardy trees and shrubs where produced; as in roses, lilacs, and many other sorts, planting them in rows, to form new nursery plantations of the respective kinds, to acquire proper growth for their several purposes of final planting in gardens and shrubberies, &c. according as they are wanted for these occasions.

Continue digging or trenching—any vacant ground for spring planting, that it may be ready at that season, and to mellow and improve by the effects of the different sorts of weather in winter.

Dung or manure ground—where it is most required, either in some particular or vacant compartments, or occasionally between rows of young trees of several years standing, or where the ground is either much impoverished, or naturally of a very poor infertile quality.

Digging between the rows of young trees—should now be forwarded at proper opportunities, in open weather, performing the digging neatly one spade deep, being careful not to disturb the main roots, nor injure the others, turning the top weeds clean to the bottom.

Lay mulch about new-planted trees—especially of some principal or more curious or less hardy kinds, laying it on the ground between and round the stems, to keep off the frost as well as possible from the roots.

Defend exotics—and any curious and less hardy young trees and shrubs, or other plants of similar quality, from severe frosts and snow, by awnings or coverings of mats and long light straw litter, &c. or pots containing plants of the above kinds, should now, if not before done, be placed in frames, or under hoop-arches, and covered with mats and straw, or fern or peas haulm, &c. a proper thickness to keep out the frost; but in open weather remove all the covering.

——— Or young exotics in beds in the full ground, and not yet of sufficient strength to bear the rigours of our winters without some protection, should have mulch laid on the surface be-

tween the stems, and when severe frost, either arch over their tops with some dry light covering of straw, peas haulm, or dry fern, &c.

Pruning and trimming—may be performed in any sorts of hardy deciduous trees and shrubs, not generally in evergreens at this season; but in the others it is proper now to forward any requisite work of that kind; such as trimming up the stems of forest and ornamental trees, &c. cutting away all strong lateral shoots, and to prune any irregular growths above.

—— *Likewise in fruit trees*—prune or cut away all shoots from the stems; and in those furnished with a head of branches, if any are disorderly, or of irregular growth, or ill-placed, give a regulating pruning as required.

GREEN HOUSE.

Fresh air—constantly admit in mild open weather, every day, opening the glasses moderately, from nine or ten, to three or four in the afternoon: then shut close for the night.

——— But in giving air, if the weather changes sharply cold, shut close, or only draw down the glasses a little at top.

——— Never admit air in foggy, or very damp weather, nor when much wind.

In frosty weather—keep the glasses constantly close; and when very severe, put up shutters, or nail mats against the glasses, also where flues make gentle fires.

Water—will be required occasionally, but always very moderately at this season, never in frost; and the succulent plants water but seldom, and sparingly.

Stir the surface of the earth—in the pots, where it crusts or binds.

Decayed leaves or shoots, &c.—always clear off from the plants.

HOT-HOUSE AND STOVE.

The bark-bed—renewed in October, or last month, will still be of good heat; or if this, however, is much decreased, fork up the bark, which will revive the heat for a month or six weeks. [See January.]

Fires—continue making every evening, and cold mornings, as advised last month; continuing the evening fires till nine or ten o'clock, sufficient to support a mild internal heat all night

till morning, and in severe frost, or other sharp cold weather, continue moderate fire-heat all day.

For a guide in the proper degree of fire heat—have always a thermometer in the hot-house, as intimated last month.

If rigorous frosts prevail—constant fires will be required; and when the frost is very severe, and no sun, it will be advisable to defend the glasses with shutters, or large thick garden mats.

Watering—will sometimes be required; but give it very gently, once a week or fortnight, where it appears necessary.

The pine apple plants—having been replunged in renewed bark-beds, in the two last months, will now require only some gentle waterings once a fortnight; if, however, the bark-beds decline much in heat, fork them over, and replunge the pots till January, which see.

The proper fuel for fire-heat—in the hot-house, is either coal, peat, or wood; but the former is preferable for steady, regular, and durable burning.

Where vines are trained in hot-houses or pineries for early fruit, let the branches and shoots be regularly trained along the rafters or frames, or the glasses, or some extended longitudinally along the horizontal beams, &c. and where not yet pruned, should now be effected (b. m.) nearly as directed for the wall-vines, or strong shoots may be left longer, ten to fifteen or twenty joints, to train along any extended vacant parts; others cut to three or four to five or six joints in length; all which, being the principal mother bearers for the present year's fruit, train them in accordingly; fastening some lightly to the wood-work, or others to extended wires, and tied loosely thereto: they will soon begin to push buds for present fruit-shoots, &c. next month, which, according as they advance in length, train along as above; managed nearly as the natural vines aforesaid, or some strong shoots thereof, for next year's principal mother bearers may be extended at full length; clearing off all improper and superfluous shoots, continuing the others properly trained, while the fruit is advancing; and it will ripen early accordingly, in May and June.

PRINTED BY S. RUSSELL, MANCHESTER.